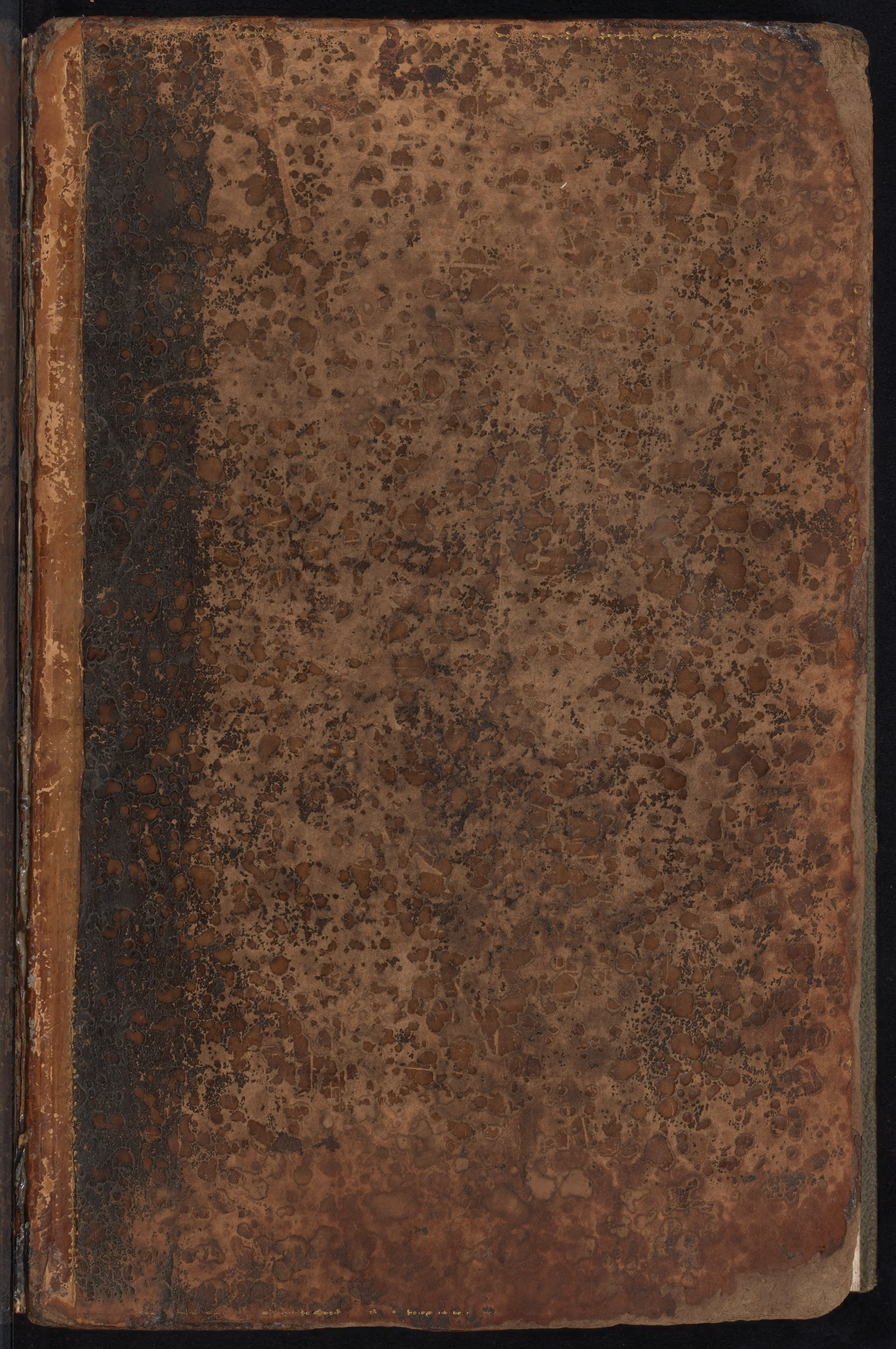




·REGIT·ILLUMINAT·LEVAT·ET·CORONAT·
PATIENTEM·OVEM·AGNUS·EUCHARISTIAE
·EX·LIBRIS·
ARTHUR·T·CONNOLLY·
·ECCLESIAE·
SANCTISSIMI·SACRAMENTI·
·RECTORIS·


B. Picart delineavit ano 1711.

George Blackman

1794

TRAVELS

INTO

MUSCOVY, PERSIA,

And PART of the

EAST-INDIES.

CONTAINING,

An Accurate DESCRIPTION of whatever is moſt remarkable in thoſe COUNTRIES.

AND EMBELISHED

With above 320 Copper Plates, repreſenting the fineſt Proſpects, and moſt conſiderable Cities in thoſe Parts; the different Habits of the People; the ſingular and extraordinary Birds, Fiſhes, and Plants which are there to be found: As likewiſe the Antiquities of thoſe Countries, and particularly the noble Ruins of the famous Palace of PERSEPOLIS, called *Chelminar* by the *Perſians*. The whole being delineated on the Spot, from the reſpective Objects.

To which is added,

An Account of the Journey of Mr. *ISBRANTS*, Ambaſſador from *Muſcovy*, through *Ruſſia* and *Tartary*, to *China*; together with Remarks on the Travels of Sir *John Chardin*, and Mr. *Kempfer*, and a Letter written to the AUTHOR on that Subject.

In Two VOLUMES.

By M. *CORNELIUS LE BRUYN*.n

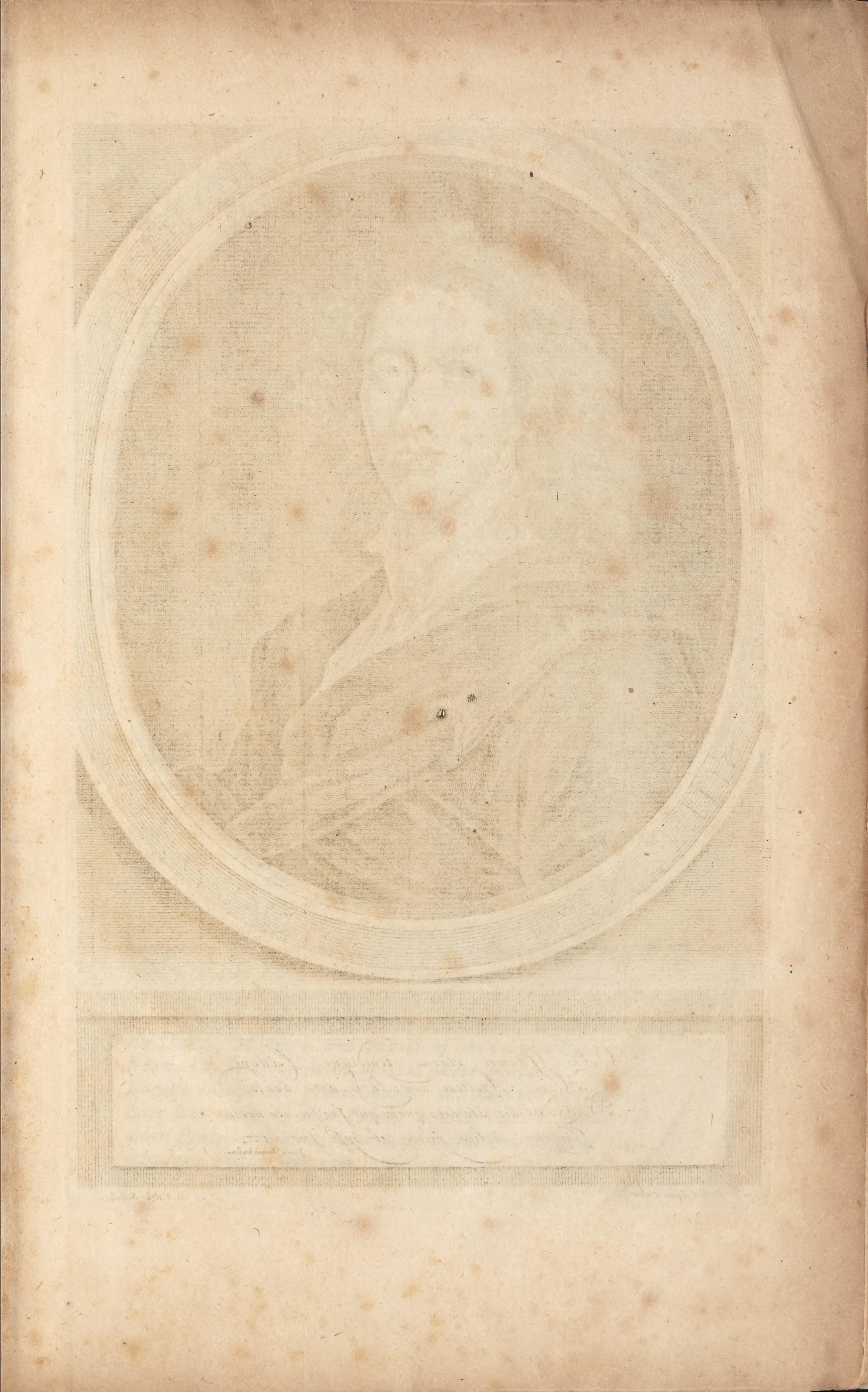
Tranſlated from the Original *FRENCH*.

VOL. I.

LONDON:

Printed for A. BETTESWORTH and C. HITCH, S. BIRT, C. DAVIS, J. CLARKE, S. HARDING D. BROWNE, A. MILLAR, J. SHUCKBURGH, and T. OSBORNE.

MDCCXXXVII.





Orbis Idumei clarius tepidique Canopi
Hospes Apelleae non levis artis honos,
Bruynius hic ille est: quem quo sua saecula norint,
Ingenio melius pictus ab ipse suo est.

Janus Broukhusius.

Godfr: Kneller Eques Pinxit. — G: Valck Schulp:

THE
AUTHOR's PREFACE.

I *HAVE no intention to pre-engage the Reader's Approbation of these Travels, by a studied Preface; and think it sufficient to declare, that nothing will be found here, but what I have seen with my own Eyes, and have examined with the utmost Attention and Care; without introducing any Particulars that have been published by other Travellers, on the same Subject, unless it be to point out their Errors, by those Remarks which are inserted at the close of this Work, with relation to the celebrated Ruins of the ancient Palace of* Persepolis. *I, however, have been careful not to derogate in the least from the personal Merit and Judgment of those illustrious Travellers in every other respect; but it will be evident that they have omitted many remarkable things, and misrepresented others, either through Negligence, or for want of Skill in designing; or, lastly, because they did not continue long enough upon the Spot, to consider those stately Antiquities in a sufficient manner.*

I must observe, with respect to Russia, *that tho' Baron* Herberstein, *together with* Olearius, *and the Earl of* Carlisle, *Ambassador from* England *at the Court of* Muscovy, *as likewise* Allison, *and several others, have published very entertaining Accounts of that Country, they yet have not afforded the curious all the Satisfaction they require; because the Authors were not permitted to draw the least Sketch of the Places and fine Antiquities which are to be found in those Parts. I am the first Stranger who ever obtained that Privilege from his* Czarian *Majesty; and I flatter my self that I have spared no Pains to improve that Favour to the best Advantage. This will be evident from the Plans I have drawn of the principal Cities of that Empire, as likewise of its Buildings, and the finest Prospects in its Provinces; to all which I have added the Habits, Manners, and Customs of the various People who live under the Government of that potent Monarch. I have likewise related the great Changes and Improvements which have been made by that Prince, together with a number of other Particulars that never came to the Knowledge of those who have written before me.*

I might ſay much the ſame of Perſia, *and the auguſt Ruins of the ancient Palace of* Perſepolis, *of which ſeveral Travellers have publiſhed Deſcriptions, without a due Examination of what they ſaw. For which reaſon their Accounts have more the Air of a Romance, than of any Reality, or compleat Knowledge of thoſe fine Antiquities, which is not to be obtained without Pains and a peculiar Application of Thought; and when theſe are wanting an Author muſt inevitably fall into Errors, and lead others into the ſame.* Pietro della Valle, *and* Don Garcias de Silva de Figueroa, *Ambaſſador from* Spain *at the Court of* Abas I. *King of* Perſia, *are the firſt who have treated of theſe famous Ruins with any Solidity. And yet it evidently appears, by the Relation the former has given of his Travels, and by the Account which the latter has publiſhed of his Embaſſy, that neither of them continued long enough at* Chelminar, *to examine and trace out all the Antiquities and Curioſities of that Place, with the Circumſpection that was requiſite, and therefore we need not be ſurpriſed, if they expreſs themſelves in a ſuperficial manner, and ſometimes at random, on that Subject. It appears, however, by the Remarks of the learned* Iſaac Voſſius *on* Pomponius Mela, *that he intended to make uſe of the Relation publiſhed by* Don Garcias de Silva, *and likewiſe of the Writings of the Ancients, in order to diſcover what conformity may be found, between the ancient Palace of* Perſepolis, *and the Ruins of* Chelminar, *from their Deſcriptions of both; but he died before he could execute that Deſign.*

I ſhall not enlarge on the Errors committed by theſe Authors, leſt I ſhould be taxed with an Inclination to recommend my ſelf at their Expence, and to ſet off this Account of my Travels, by decrying thoſe of others. Perſons of Judgment and Taſte will know what to determine concerning us, by comparing our ſeveral Performances, and therefore I ſhall only add, that the Authors from whom I differ, were not long enough upon the Spot, to be capable of making a juſt and accurate Deſcription of thoſe numerous and majeſtic Ruins; and they, perhaps, might want thoſe Lights and Abilities, which alone can enable Perſons to form a true Judgment of ſuch things as theſe.

As my only View, when I entered upon theſe Travels, was to be as ſedulous as poſſible in my Survey of thoſe noble Antiquities; all the Difficulties that oppoſed themſelves in my way, together with the Dangers to which one muſt needs be obnoxious

on

on ſuch occaſions, did but animate me the more. I may likewiſe declare, that I have been altogether induſtrious to afford the Public, and eſpecially Perſons of Taſte, as much Satisfaction as is conſiſtent with my ſmall Abilities. To which I may add, that I have made it an indiſpenſible Law to my ſelf, not to deviate in any reſpect from the Truth, meerly to give an ornamental Air to this Work, in which there are no Facts but what are related with the ſtricteſt Veracity. Nor do I aſſume any Merit to my ſelf, from the extraordinary Expences I have been at to embelliſh this Edition of my Travels, and facilitate the Comprehenſion of the Particulars they contain. The Reader may judge of my proceeding, by the Number and Beauty of the Plates diſtributed through the whole Work, and which are executed with all poſſible Juſtice and Accuracy. I can affirm too, that I have drawn with my own Hand, and immediately from the Life, all the Plates now preſented to the Public, without having recourſe to any ancient Authors who have deſcribed Perſepolis *and its Antiquities, and without adding or diminiſhing any one Particular. The Reader therefore may reſt aſſured, that the whole is conformable to thoſe Originals which are ſtill to be found on the Spot.*

I, however, am not ſo vain as to think my ſelf infallible, and therefore had the Precaution to communicate my Work to ſuch Perſons as had a competent Judgment in whatever relates to Antiquity. My Plates and Deſcriptions were favoured with their Approbation, and they were pleaſed to think that I had placed in their full and proper Light, thoſe Objects which had been ſhaded in Obſcurity for the Space of two thouſand Years. The ſame Perſons, whoſe Modeſty will not permit me to name them, have alſo been ſo good as to compare, at my requeſt, the Plates exhibited in this Work, with thoſe Deſcriptions of the ancient Palace of Perſepolis, *that are to be found in the Writings of* Herodotus, Xenophon, Diodorus Siculus, *and* Strabo; *and they have declared them to be conformable to the Relations of thoſe celebrated Writers. This Circumſtance afforded them ſo much Satisfaction, that they have given themſelves the trouble to enrich my Work with ſeveral Remarks on thoſe ſuperb Ruins.*

It, however, is well known, that when an Author preſents a Book to the Public, he expoſes himſelf to the Cenſure of ſuch as take pleaſure in depreciating whatever is above their Capacity. I therefore thought my beſt method of impoſing Silence on Perſons of that turn, would be to ſtrengthen my Situation,

by ſeveral Fragments of Stone, on which a variety of Figures and Characters are impreſſed; and particularly by one ſide of a Window, repreſented in Plate 137, *and which is now to be ſeen in the Cabinet of Curioſities belonging to his ſerene Highneſs* Anthony Ulrick, *Duke of* Brunſwick-Lunenbourg; *and likewiſe by the Figure exhibited in Plate* 142. *which Figure is now in the Poſſeſſion of Mr.* Witſen, *Burgomaſter of* Amſterdam. *I have the others in my own Houſe.*

I have added to this Work, for the Satisfaction of the Public, a Series of the Kings of Perſia, *who have governed that Empire, from the deſtruction of* Perſepolis, *to the preſent time; together with the Origin of thoſe Princes and the Order of their Succeſſion.*

I have been the leſs particular in the Affairs and Deſcription of the Indies, *becauſe they are well known, and have been treated of by ſeveral before me. I, however, have related all that paſſed there in my time, together with thoſe Particulars of which I was an Eye Witneſs, and this I have done with the ſame Sincerity and Exactneſs I obſerved, with reſpect to the other Countries through which I paſt.*

Upon the whole, I am not ſo vain and partial to my own Capacity, as to flatter my ſelf that I ſhall pleaſe every Reader, but ſhall think my ſelf ſufficiently happy if I obtain the Approbation of competent Judges; and I ſhall not fail to improve any Opportunity they will afford me of rectifying any Errors that as yet may happen to have eſcaped my notice.



THE




Pag. 1.
ISLANDE
M. Hecla
MER DU NORD
Isle de Loppe
Isle de Loeffoort
Maal stroom
C. du Nord
Nordkin
LAPONIE NORVEGIENNE
FINLANDE
LAPONIE SUEDOISE
Kola
LAPONIE RUSSIENNE
NORVEGE
SUEDE
GOLFE DE BOTHNIQUE
FINLANDE ORIENTALE
SUEDOISE
Bergen
ECOSSE
Edinbourg
Stokholm
GOLFE de FINLANDE
Petersbourg
Lac de Ladoga
Copenhague
IUTLANDE
Landscroon
MER BALTIQUE
LIVONIE
GOUVERNEMENT DE Novogorod
NOVOGOROD
ANGLETERRE
Londres
Texel
COURLANDE
Zelande
Amsterdam
Bremen
Hambourg
POMERANIE
Stetin
PRUSSE
Dantzig
le Canal
Paris
FRANCE
PAIS BAS
ALLEMAGNE
Varsovie
POLOGNE
EUROPE
Basle
Geneve
SUISSE
Vienne
Belgrade
UKRAINE
HONGRIE
Venise
ITALIE
GOLFE DE VENISE
DALMATIE
BESSARABIE
Bender
CORSE
Rome
BULGARIE
SARDAIGNE
ALBANIE
MER NOIRE
ROMANIE
Constantinople
MACEDOINE
Messine
SICILLE
ACHAIE
ARCHIPEL
Bursa
NATOLIE OU L'ASIE
Malte
GRECE
MOREE
Rhodes
CANDIE
MER MEDITERRANEE
AFRIQUE
Caire
10
20
30
40
50
60
5
50
5
40
5
30
30
5
40
5
50


ROUTE
D'AMSTERDAM
A
MOSCOW
ET DE LA À
ISPAHAN
ET
GAMRON
Grandes Villes
Petites Villes
Villages
Lieux ou l'on s'arrete
Karavanserais
Route par Mer
Route par Terre
Montagnes et Arbres
Rivieres
Separation des Provinces
NOUVELLE ZEMBLE
Isle de Witsen decouverte en 1688
Weigats
SAMOIEDES
SIBERIE
Obi R.
Tobol
Tobol R.
Irtis R.
Archangel
Wologda
DUCHE DE NOVOGOROD
TARTARES CZEREMISSES
ROY. DE CAZAN
Cazan
Kama R.
ROY. DE BULGAR
TARTARES DE MORDWA
RESAN
Oranienbourg
Veronise
Don ou Tanais R.
Kamuschinka
Guiloi Donetz R.
Donetz Sevierski
ROYAUME D'ASTRACAN
Zaritsa
Wolga Riv.
Astracan
CALMUQUES BLANCS
CALMUQUES NOIRS
Sihoun R.
Gihoun R.
Samarchand
Aloph ou Tanais
Lac Meotide
TARTARIE
COSAQUES
DAGESTAN
TARTARES DE CIRCASSIE
Mont Caucasse
Schirwan
Terki
Derbent
MER CASPIENNE
GEORGIE
Faze R.
Cori
Teflis
Kura ou Ersh R.
Ardevil
Kasbin
Kasjan
Ispahan
Samarcand
Sultania
Ispahan
Persepolis
Gamron
Sigistan
Kerlac
PERSE
CARMAN
FARSISTAN
SUSISTAN
TURCOMANIE
CHALDEE
ARABES
ARABIE DESERTE
ARABIE PETREE
Jerusalem
TERRE SAINTE
Euphrate R.
NOIRE
NATOLIE
MINEURE
CHIPRE
NOVOGOROD






A Tres-haut et tres-puissant Prince
PIERRE ALEXEWITZ
EMPEREUR de RUSSIE
Seigneur d'une grande partie du Globe terrestre, depuis le Pole Arctique et toute la Mer de Tartarie, jusques a celle du Japon, et aux frontieres de la partie Septentrionale de la Chine a celles de la Mer Caspienne, de la Mer Noire, et proche de celles de la Mer Baltique: Souverain de plusieurs autres Royaumes et Provinces: Prince triomphant et Victorieux, par Everard Isbrantz Ides.
NOUVELLE CARTE
DE
L'EMPIRE de RUSSIE
Dressée sur les meilleurs plans, qui aient paru jusques à present, et particulierement sur celui de Mons.r le Bourguemaitre Witzen, levé sur les Lieux, et rectifié par
Everard Isbrantz Ides.
NOUVELLE ZEMBLE
LAPONIE RUSSIENNE
MER BLANCHE
LES SAMOJEDES
GRANDE PERMIE
MOSCOVITE
RUSSIE
LITHUANIE
PODOLIE
BESSARABIE
CRIMEE
PONT EUXIN ou MER NOIRE
PAS D'ASOPH
ROY. DE CAZAN
TARTARES D'UFFIMI
TARTARES DE BASKIR
TARTARES DE NAGAISI
CALMUQUES
OLGARES
CALMUQUES ERRANS
GEORGIE
MER CASPIENNE
ASTRACAN
COSSAQUES
TARTARES DE CIRCASSIE
CHOROSAN
TOBOLSKA
OSTIAQUES
Detroit de Weigats
I. de Wiesen decouverte en 1688
Samarchand
Residence du Prince des Calmuques, Araptan Chan

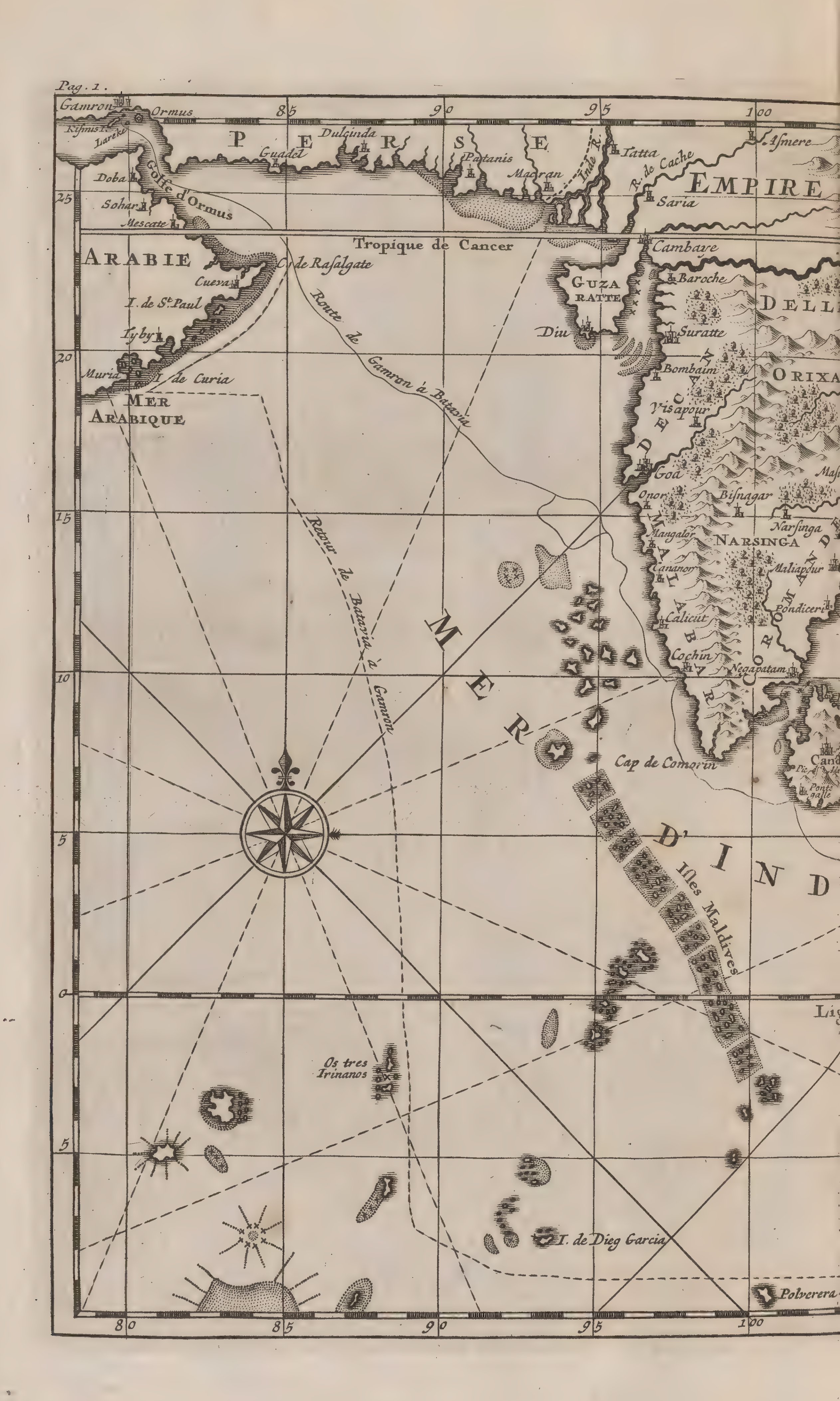
N.° 2.



MER GLACIALE
OCEAN ORIENTAL
PAIS DE LENA
IASAKKES
IAKUTES
TUNGUZES
ZUS TARNU
NIULHAN
PEUPLES GILIAKI
MER D'AMUR
DAURI
OLENNI TUNGUZES
KONNI TUNGUZES
BURATES
KIRGISES
PAIS DES AMADUNS
PAIS DES MONGALES
CALMUQUES
MONGULES BRUNS
AGATAY KABUL ROY
TARTARIE GRANDE
Lac de Baical
Hordes de Punguses
Wergolenskoi
Ilinskoi
Jakutskoi
Lena ou Leny
Selenginskoi
Nerzinskoi
Mergeen
Naunkoton
Angun
Karakaton
NIKANSKOI
LAEO TUNG
CORÉE
MER DE LA CHINE
PROVINCE DE PEKING
PEKING
P. de XANSI
P. de HONAN
P.R. de XANTUNG
LA CHINE
Désert Sablonneux de Xamo
Dalai
Kidak
Amur Riv.
Chat. de Lama
Keyser fec.







Gamron
Ormus
Kismis I.
Larek
Doba
Sohar
Mescate
Golfe d'Ormus
P E R S E
Dulcinda
Guadel
Pattanis
Macran
Inde R.
Tatta
R. de Cache
Asmere
Saria
EMPIRE
Tropique de Cancer
ARABIE
C. de Rasalgate
Cueva
I. de St. Paul
Iyby
Muria
I. de Curia
MER ARABIQUE
Route de Gamron à Batavia
Retour de Batavia à Gamron
GUZA RATTE
Diu
Cambare
Baroche
Suratte
Bombaim
Visapour
Goa
Onor
Bisnagar
Narsinga
Mangalor
NARSINGA
Cananor
Maliapour
Calicut
Pondiceri
Cochin
Negapatam
MALABAR
DECAN
DELLI
ORIXA
Cap de Comorin
MER D'INDE
Isles Maldives
Os tres Irinanos
I. de Dieg Garcia
Polverera
80
85
90
95
100
25
20
15
10
5
0



N.° 3.
Route exacte de Gamron à Batavia et de Batavia à Gamron
Lieües d'Allemagne dont 15 font un degré
DU GRAND MOGOL
BENGALE
Golfe de Bengale
Aracan
Royaume de Pegu
Pegu
Golconde
Siam
Cochin China
Cambodia
Golfe de Siam
Malacca
Isle de Ceylon
Pulo Way
Achem
Sumatra
ne Equinoctiale
Route de Gamron à Batavia
Retour de Batavia à Gamron
Detroit de la Sonde
Isle du Prince
I. d'Engano
Batavia
IAVA
Palimbam
Lampin
Lamby
Siam autre fois Odia ou Aiothya
B. de Martaban
Siriavo
Tavai
Martaban
Outauani
Columpe
Langor
Lian
Caxol
Cambaia
Patane
Perac
Paha
Ihor
Gypry
Gory
Comotay
Deloüt
Barado
Verma
Brampor
Ragemolle
Bengale
Golconda
Mirapour
Carapar
Ciacola
Paliacate
Keyser fecit





THE TRAVELS OF CORNELIUS LE BRUYN.

By the way of MUSCOVY and PERSIA into the EAST-INDIES, and to the coast of MALABAR, the island of CEYLON, BATAVIA, BANTAM, and other places.

CHAP. I.

The Author's resolution. His departure from the Hague, *and arrival at* Archangel.

Introduction.



I THINK I cannot better begin the account of these travels, than by returning thanks to God, who by his divine favor and protection has inabled me to go through them, as well as the former, in which I spent nineteen years with all the satisfaction imaginable.

Upon my return to the *Hague*, I felt myself animated with a desire of paying a second visit to distant countries, that I might maturely consider the people and their manners; and to undertake a second voyage to the *East-Indies*, by the way of *Moscovy* and *Persia*. This design was very displeasing to my friends and relations; who remonstrated to me the consequences and inconveniences of such a project; but the violence of my inclination, added to the success of my former enterprize, prevailed over all considerations whatever.

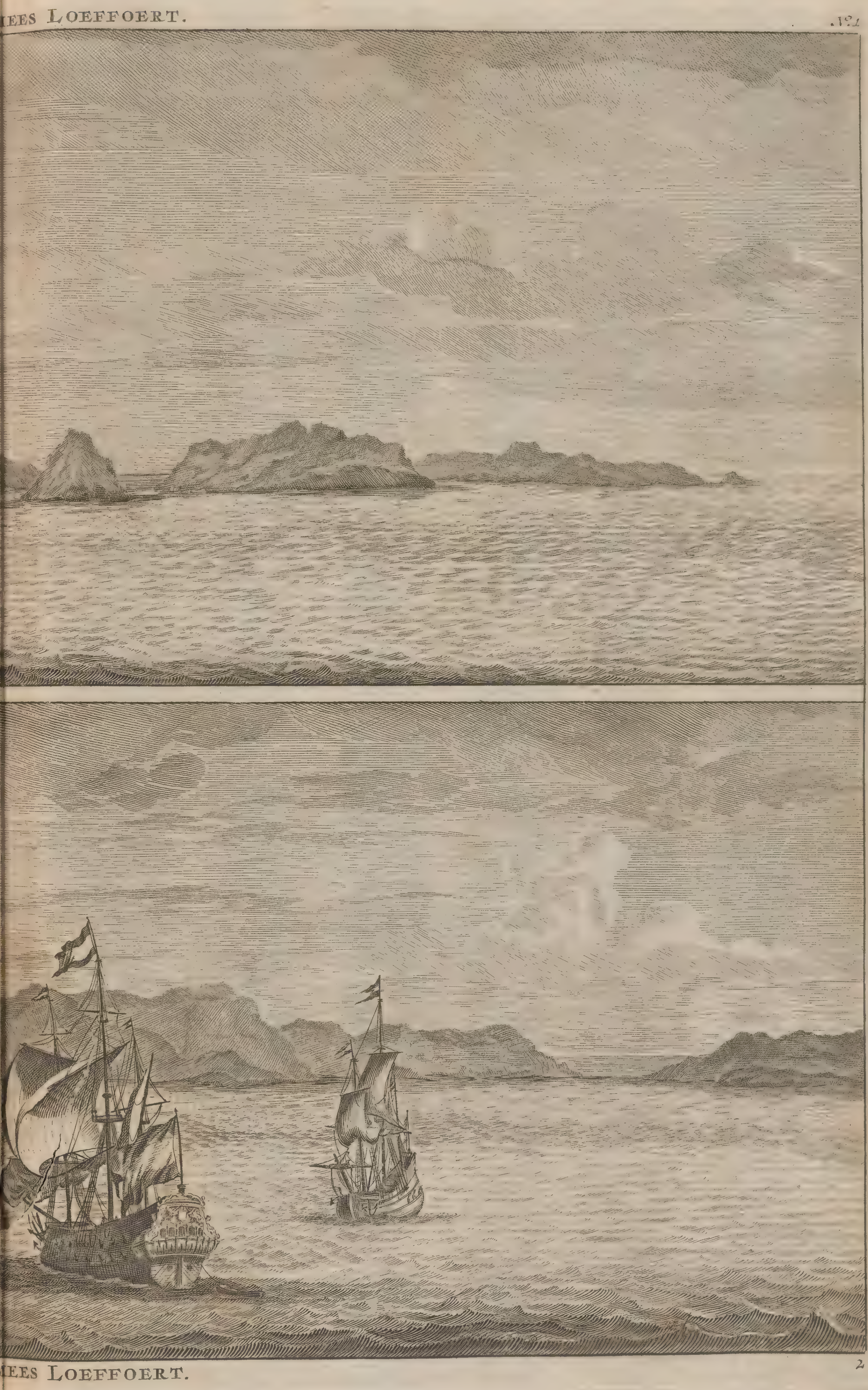
whatever. I reflected within myſelf, that I was much more advanced in years, and indued with greater experience than I had been before, and concluded I ſhould be now better qualified to make obſervations and remarks; and the care I had taken, upon my return, to conſult with men of learning and curioſity, perſuaded me I might poſſibly make diſcoveries of greater importance than I had been able to make in my former travels. Elated with theſe hopes, I carefully viſited and examined ſeveral collections of rarities, and learned how to keep all ſorts of birds, beaſts and fiſhes in ſpirits, and to prepare them ſo as to bring them home without decaying. I reſolved alſo to paint after the life many productions of the ſea, as well as flowers, plants, fruits and the like. But all this was by no means preparatory to the main deſign; my chief purpoſe was to ſearch into the antiquities of the countries in my way, and thereto to add ſuch reflections as might occur; to ſurvey the religions, manners, cuſtoms, polities, government and dreſs, and whatever might be remarkable in practice at the births, marriages, and burials of the various nations who poſſeſs thoſe diſtant countries: In a word, to examine into the ſoil and cities of the ſame, with all the accuracy I could, that I might be able to make a faithful report concerning all theſe things upon my return home.

1701. July 28. *His departure from the* Hague.

I departed from the *Hague*, the place of my birth, upon the *twenty eighth of July* 1701, in order for *Amſterdam*, where I ſtaid till the *thirtieth*, and at four in the afternoon, the next day, I reached the *Texel*, by the ordinary conveyance. I was there informed, that the *Oudenard*, a man of war, commanded by Captain *Roemer Vlak*, who was to convoy the *Ruſſia* fleet, had weighed from thence at nine that morning, with five or ſix merchantmen bound for *Archangel*. The ſhip I was to go in, not being yet arrived, I went to meet her, and got on board of her upon the *firſt of Auguſt*, at ten in the morning. 1701. She was a fine flyboat, called the *John Baptiſt*, had eight guns, and eighteen men, and was commanded by *Gerard Buis* of *Sardam*. We tripped it with a weſt ſouth weſt wind to get into the *Texel*, where we dropped anchor before it was noon. We weighed from thence, upon the *ſecond*, at nine in the morning, and by one in the afternoon we were out at ſea; our pilot now left us, and I gave him ſome letters for my friends. We ſteered away north weſt and by north, till it was night, when we hauled more to the northward, and altered our courſe for north north weſt; and made nine or ten ſail, ſome bound to *Holland*, and others to the eaſtward. At midnight a calm fell upon us, and continued till the morning of the *third* of this month. About noon a ſmall breeze ſprang up at weſt ſouth weſt. Upon the *fourth*, at break of day, the wind freſhned, and we ſteered away north and by weſt; the weather was very variable, and we ſaw ſeveral ſhips ſhaping different courſes. Upon the *fifth*, the wind was at north, and north and by weſt, and we met with ſeveral ſhips, ſome of which were fiſhermen from *Greenland*, who acquainted us with what luck they had had that ſeaſon. The ſame occurrence fell out the next day. Upon the *eighth*, the wind came about to the weſt, and it being very fine weather, we made a diſplay of all our canvaſs. But the wind ſhifting about to the ſouth, and ſouth eaſt, we ſtood away to the north eaſtward, and towards night had got up with the neareſt iſlands of *Norway*, without knowing any thing of the matter, the weather was ſo thick and rainy. Upon the *ninth*, we were in 61 degrees of northern latitude, and the weather ſtill continued thick. Wandring about thus in this ſea, we ſaw a ſort of large fiſh commonly called *billen*, with a ſharp pointed head. We afterwards ſaw of other ſorts called *potskoppen*; theſe had large heads and ſwam about the




MONTAGNES NOMM
MONTAGNES NOMM


IEES LOEFFOERT.
N°1
IEES LOEFFOERT.
2



1701. ship, ten times as big as a porpoise, as large as our boats, and proportionably broader than long, and no where to be found but in the northern seas: After several changes of the wind and weather, the sea being sometimes smooth and sometimes rough, it cleared up. Upon the *sixteenth*, about seven in the morning we made land, being the rocks or mountains that lie nearest on the northern coast, and in our maps, called *Loeffoert*; they are indifferently high and separate from each other, as may be seen in the plate N° 1.

Mountains on the north coast of Norway.

When we had borrowed pretty near upon these hills, I drew the rest of the island, with the other points that stretch out, where I took notice of other smaller rocks which seemed to be joined to this same island, which was about two or three leagues distant from us. You may see it in N° 2. We then proceeded quietly enough, with some ships we had fallen in with by chance, and from time to time we saw fishes of half the length of our ship, thick in proportion, and with prodigious heads. There are some of them said to be something like a staircase, as we were told by persons who had seen them dead. We there also saw a kind of birds not very different from our ducks, or divers, but they are smaller with a sharp bill, black above, and white beneath.

17 August.

This night and the next day being the *seventeenth*, we had a thick fog and rain. About eight a clock we fell in with a ship, who left *Hamburgh* upon the thirtieth of *July*, and was bound to *Archangel*. The fog still continued and prevented us from seeing the land which was not far from us; but the heavens clearing up, we had sight of it. As we proceeded, we came into the latitude of 72 degrees 36 minutes north near the land of *Loppe*, and a high rocky mountain to the south east of us. There we found a *French* ship, whose Master came aboard of us. As he could speak nothing but *French*, and there was no body in the ship that understood him but myself, I was his interpreter. He told us, he had been five months from *Bayonne*, that he had been a *Greenland* voyage, and that he was upon his return home; that he had taken nine whales, and the last of them not above 4 or 5 leagues from the place where we were; and that he hoped to meet with more upon that coast; asking us whether or no we had seen any. Our Master having been very civil to him, he added, that one of the whales he had taken had teeth five inches long; that he had afforded thirty two casks of blubber, and that he had filled seven and a half with the salt he took from behind his neck. He assured us, it was not the first time he had met with the like; that they refined this salt in *Bayonne*, to send it into foreign parts; that it was of wonderful efficacy to clear the complexions of women, and give them a certain bloom of youth; that it was a most excellent remedy in many cases, and that there was a great deal of money got by it. He would also have persuaded us, the *Basques* were the first that undertook a voyage to *Greenland*.

A strange whale.

We met with several other ships in this place, and held on our course in the evening, with the weather very uncertain. Upon the *twentieth*, about eight in the morning, we reached within 6 or 7 leagues of the *Isle of Loppe*, which bore south east of us; but we saw it not, the weather was so thick and gloomy.

Isle of Loppe.

Aug. 24.

Upon the *twenty fourth*, the fog was such, that we could hardly see from one end of the ship to the other. Upon the *twenty fifth*, we were in the latitude of 72 degrees 24 minutes; in the evening it fell calm, and in the night we had a very great fog, during which one of our seamen took a great falcon, which had settled upon our ship; but it was sullen, and would never eat.

A falcon taken.

The fog and the rain still continuing, we did not make land till the *twenty eighth*. When we had got to the northward of *Lambasku*, the weather grew fair, and we had a favourable wind at south south west, which

gave

1701. gave us great pleaſure at this time, and particularly as we could have made no uſe of it, if the fog had continued, for fear of the land. *Coaſt of* Lapland. The land we had then to ſtarboard of us was the *Ruſſian Lapland*, commonly called the firm land or continent of *Lapland*. It contains a ridge of hills of no very great height, and nearly equal; they are not far from the ſhore, of a ruſſet colour and the ſoil is naught. In many parts of theſe hills you may ſee patches of ſnow, which gathers in hollows where it never melts. A calm taking us upon the *twenty ninth*, we dropped an anchor that we might not drive. But a breeze at eaſt ſpringing up a little while afterwards, we ſhaped our courſe ſouth eaſterly, and came in with the land, having ſeveral ſail of ſhips in ſight. Upon the *thirtieth*, we entered the *White-Sea*, whoſe waters are clearer than thoſe of the Ocean, which as you ſtand in for the coaſt of *Ruſſia*, are of a foul muddy green becauſe of the rivers August 30. which fall thereinto. Having paſſed the hilly coaſt we came to another more upon the level, partly covered with copſe wood, and about a league off. About eight of the clock we *The* Iſle of Croſſes. came up with the *Iſle of Croſſes*, which is very rocky, and not far from the main land. This iſle is full of croſſes, which you diſcover Ruſſia. as you ſteer in with it. When we had got clear of this coaſt, we made the land of *Ruſſia*, ſteering away ſouth weſt and by ſouth, to the eaſtward of us leaving Cape *Gris*, which ſhoots out a great way into the ſea. Towards the evening, we ſaw ſeventeen ſhips at anchor upon the coaſt, and about eleven we added to the number, together with two *Engliſh* ſhips, and came to an anchor in three fathom water, before the river of *Archangel*, about 10 leagues from the town. Upon the *thirty firſt*, in the morning, we found we were 21 ſhips in all; 11 *Dutch*, 8 *Engliſh*, and 2 *Hamburghers*, the ſhips which failed from the *Texel* before we did, being of the number. The weather being perfectly favourable, we only waited for pilots to go into the river; 1701. but they were ſo long e're they came, that one of the *Hamburghers* reſolved to pilot himſelf; which he ſoon repented, for he ran bump aſhore upon the larboard ſide of the river. We were not at all ſurprized at this, being told the *Moſcovites* had taken up all the ſea-marks, for fear of the *Swedes*, who had appeared at the mouth of the river ſome weeks before, and alarmed all the neighbourhood. The *Engliſh* alſo grew quite uneaſy at this delay, and towards morning weighed with ſix ſhips; but two of them running likewiſe aground, the other four gave over the attempt. But their pilots coming to them, in the afternoon, they went up the river, followed by a ſmall veſſel of our country, who happily eſcaping all danger, came to an anchor before certain meadows, *Meadows.* by the favor of fine weather. The land there is full of ſmall trees, and ſtretches out on both ſides towards the river, forming a creſcent, as appears by N° 3. Upon the *ſecond of* 2 Sept. *September*, we had all of us pilots, excepting one *Engliſh* ſhip, and, about eleven of the clock, we got under ſail, ſteering away to the eaſtward. We went over ſeveral flats where we had not above 15 or 16 foot water, and dropped anchor about three of the clock near the meadows, about 6 leagues from *Archangel*, the hay being then in heaps upon the ground. The *Engliſh*, and the reſt came to in this place as well as we, none being allowed to lie nearer the town, whither every Captain muſt repair in perſon. I therefore embarked with ſome others about five of the clock, deſigning to take the ſhorteſt way among the iſlands; but it happened that we ſoon loſt ourſelves. We began to deſpair of ſucceſs in our attempt, when meeting with a ſmall veſſel, under the care of a *Moſcovite*, we begged of him to take charge of us as a guide, night coming on, and the weather thick and gloomy; for we had, as I believe, ſteered the

compaſs



RIVIERE D'

TÈNTÉS DES

ARCHANGEL. 3



SAMOJEDES. 4



1701. compaſs three times round, though we had no leſs than four Captains in the veſſel with us. At length we diſcovered the beacon of one of the iſlands, near to which we found a *Ruſſian* bark at anchor. It was now midnight and rained hard, ſo that we reſolved to ſtay here till day-light, it being too dark to ſee our way to the ſhore; beſides, there was not water ſufficient for us ſo to go; if there had, we ſhould have landed, and made a fire in the woods. At day-break we proceeded on our way, and about ſix of the clock reached the *New Dwinko*, about three leagues from the city. Here we ſtopt, it not being permitted to advance any farther, without leave of the commanding Officer of the place. There are but few houſes at this place, where they were raiſing ſome forts, for fear of ſurprize from an enemy. Here alſo they were getting ready three branders, and a chain of ninety fathom, thick as a man's arm, to obſtruct the *Swedes*, who had been every day dreaded, ſince their laſt expedition. I had time to make a draught of the place, whoſe houſes are at ſome diſtance from the river as appears by the plate. The commanding Officer appearing at laſt, entertained us with a glaſs of brandy, and gave us leave to go on. We departed immediately, and upon the *third* arrived at *Archangel*, about nine in the morning. I went to lodge with a countryman of mine, called *Adolphus Bowhuiſen*, who informed me the *Swedes* had appeared in theſe parts, a little while before, with three men of war, one fly-boat, two galliots, and a ſnow, intending to deſtroy the village of *Moetjega*, ten leagues off. That they had certainly gained their end, if a *Moſcovite*, called *Koereptien*, who ſerved them as pilot, had not diverted them, by repreſenting, it would fruſtrate their deſigns upon *Archangel*. Upon this they came, with *Engliſh* colours, before the mouth of the river, where they entered with their galliots and the ſnow, having firſt ſeized another *Moſcovite* to ſerve them as an interpreter. Upon the fifteenth of *June* 1701. they got the length of the *New Dwinko*, about ſeven in the evening; but were vaſtly ſurprized upon being received with ſome diſcharges of cannon, the thing they leaſt expected. This obliged them

New Dwinko.

Arrival at Archangel.

3 Sept.



NOVE DWINKO.

1701. to quit one of their galliots and the snow, and to row away in their boats for the other galliot, who had been aground, but was now afloat again. They then returned to their ships, at the mouth of the river, leaving the *New Dwinko* at midnight, and at a time of the year, when the sun hardly at all disappears from above the horizon. Exasperated at this loss and disappointment, they wrecked their fury upon the light-house, setting fire thereto, as well as to two villages *Koeja* and *Pellietse*, the first of which is not above seven hours from the city on the same side, and the other beyond or on the other side of the *White-Sea:* In short, they for some days cruised in these parts, and then shaped their course for home. The *Moscovites*, rejoiced they had thus got rid of them, fell to drinking the wine the *Swedes* had left them in great plenty, and carelesly firing some salvo's for their victory, the fire caught hold on a barrel of powder, and blew up the best part of the vessel, which proved the death of four of them, besides twenty that were wounded. It is thought the *Swedes* lost but one man upon this occasion, whose body falling into the water, was taken up by the *Moscovites*.

A misfortune by gun-powder.

Upon the *fourth*, several of our ships came to an anchor before the town, having been previously searched for prohibited goods. The *English* ship that continued at the mouth of the river for want of a pilot, would now have come up, but had the misfortune to run aground in the attempt. The next day it blew so hard, there was no going near her to save any of the goods, and the gale increasing, she opened so suddenly, that, in less than half an hour, she had 7 foot water in the hold. It was as much as her hands could do to save themselves with their cloaths, by the help of certain ropes, and a small vessel; but they could get out none of the cargo, which chiefly consisted of tobacco. She was one of the finest ships that had ever been seen in these parts. She carried 300 lasts, and was bored for 40 guns, though they mounted but 18, and had but 30 men on board. She sunk so much in a short time, that the sea washed over her. Her name was the *Resolution*, and she was commanded by Captain *Brains*. The *Hamburgher*, mentioned before, and who ran aground, upon the last of *August*, must it is likely have undergone the same fate, if they had not taken the opportunity of fair weather, to get out her lading, and set her afloat again; for the place where she struck, was still more dangerous than where the *Englishman* was lost. To conclude, having escaped these dangers, we got happily into our port, by the favor of the tide.

A great storm.

1701. Sept. 6.

CHAP. II.

A description of the Samoëds. *Their manners, their habitations, and way of living.*

UPON the *eleventh* of this month I went up the river with my friend, to go to a country house he had, about 2 or 3 leagues from the city. In our way, we landed at a wood, where we saw some of the people called *Samoëds*, which in the *Russian* tongue, signifies, *man-eaters*, or people that devour one another. They are almost all wild, and stretch along the sea coast quite to *Siberia*. Those, we now saw, were

to



NAVETS EXTRAORDINAIRES. 5



TENTE DES SAMOJEDES EN DEDANS. 6

1701. to the number of 7 or 8 men, and as many women, and were divided into five different tents; and had by them 6 or 7 dogs tied to as many ſtakes, who made a furious noiſe at us as we drew towards them. We found them, both men and women, employed in making of oars, and bowls to throw water out of boats, as alſo little chains, and things of this kind, which they ſell in the city and among the ſhips. They have leave to take what wood they want, for theſe uſes, out of the foreſts. They are ſhort of ſtature, and particularly the women, who have very ſmall feet. They are of a ſallow complexion, diſagreeable to look at, having almoſt all of them long eyes, and bloated cheeks. They have their language peculiar to themſelves, though they alſo underſtand the *Ruſſian*; and are all clad alike in ſkins of the reindeer. They have an upper garment which hangs from the neck down to the knee, with the hair outermoſt, and of different colours for the women, who by way of ornament, add ſlips of red and blue cloth. Their hair, which is very black, hangs about their ears like that of the ſavages, and from time to time, they cut it by tufts at once. The women indeed do up a part of theirs, to which they hang ſmall round pieces of copper, by a fillet of red cloth, to give them ſomething of an air. They wear alſo a fur cap, white within, and black without. Some of them have their hair diſhevelled like the men, and then it is difficult to diſtinguiſh them from the men, who very ſeldom have any beard, except a little upon the upper lip, which may, perhaps, proceed from their ſtrange kind of diet. They wear alſo a kind of waiſtcoat and breeches of the ſame ſkin, with boots almoſt all white, in which the women differ from the men in nothing but liſts or ſlips of black upon theirs. The thread they uſe is made of the ſinews of beaſts. Inſtead of handkerchiefs or towels, they uſe very fine raſpings or ſaw-duſt of birch, which they are never without, to wipe them when they ſweat, or at meals, by way of a little cleanlineſs. Their tents are made of the bark of trees, ſewed together in long ſlips, which hang down to the ground, and keep out the weather. They are, however, open at top, to let out the ſmoke, and therefore black there, though they are every where elſe yellow or reddiſh, being kept up by poles, whoſe tops appear above the reſt of the tent. The way into theſe their habitations is about 4 foot high, and covered with a great patch of the ſame bark, which they muſt lift up to go in and out, and the fire burns in the middle of them. They feed upon the carcaſſes of oxen, ſheep, horſes and other carrion they find on the high roads, or that may be given them; or upon the guts and garbage of the ſame which they boil and eat without either bread or ſalt. While I was with them, I obſerved a great kettle upon the fire, full of theſe dainties, which none of them thought it worth the while to ſkim, tho' the pot never wanted it more. The tent alſo was full of raw horſe-fleſh, a horrid ſight! Having taken thorough notice of all theſe things, I drew the deſign you ſee, N° 4. While I was about it, they gathered round me, and looked upon me with an air of ſome underſtanding, and as if they liked the thing. In one of theſe tents, I ſaw a child, about eight weeks old, lying in a cradle, or trough rather of yellow wood, not very unlike the lid of a box. This cradle had a half hoop at the head, and was hung by two ropes upon a pole. It was covered over with a grey cloth, tent faſhion, but open at top, and at the ſide, to take the child out and put it in. The child was wrapped up in cloths of the ſame colour, and bound about the breaſt with ropes or cords, as alſo about the middle and the feet; but its head was bare, as well as a part of the neck. As hideous as theſe people are in themſelves, this child was agreeable enough, and even pretty white. Not having time enough to make an end

1701. Sept. 11.

1701. of my work, and ſome of the women and children being abroad in the woods, I thought it beſt to leave it undone, till I ſhould return; ſo that we proceeded on our way, and in a little time afterwards came to my friend's country houſe.

Extraordinary Turnips. While we were here, they brought us ſeveral ſorts of turnips, of various colours, and ſurpriſing beauty. Some of them were of purple, like our plums; grey, and white, and yellowiſh, traced with a red like our vermilion, or fineſt lake, and more pleaſant to the ſight than the carnation. I painted ſome of them in water-colours upon paper, and ſent ſome of them to *Holland,* in a box of dry ſand, to a friend, who was a lover of ſuch rarities. Thoſe I had painted, I brought with me to *Archangel,* where they could not believe they were copied from nature, till I produced ſome of the originals themſelves; a certain ſign they have there no curioſity in things of this kind. You have a repreſentation of them in number 5.

1701. Sept. 13. Upon the *thirteenth* I returned to the *Samoëds,* and drew the inſide of one of their tents, which I opened on both ſides for that purpoſe. *Tents of the Samoëds.* I had a friend with me, and three women by me, one of which I got to hold the cradle as I would have her, in the preſence of her huſband, as you may ſee in number 6.

Theſe tents are commonly full of ſkins of the rein-deer, which they uſe to ſit upon, and to ſleep upon. And this, together with their manner of dreſſing their victuals, which for the moſt part is nothing but carrion, cauſes an intolerable ſtench. My friend, who ſat by me, while I drew the child and the cradle, was ſo violently affected by it, that he bled at the noſe, and was obliged to go out, tho' we had taken care to prepare ourſelves with brandy and tobacco. *Stench of theſe people.* Nor can it be at all ſurpriſing, for theſe people even in themſelves ſmell very ill, which I attribute partly to their food and to their naſtineſs.

I got, as ſoon as I could, out of ſo filthy a place, and deſired them to come to me to *Archangel,* with one of their handſomeſt women, and to let her be as fine as they could in their way, that I might draw her picture. They promiſed me they would, and were as good as their word. 1701. I painted her as you ſee her in N°. 7. They are dreſt in ſkins of the rein-deer, adorn'd with ſtreaks of white, grey, and black. *Repreſentation of a Samoëd woman.* This woman was dreſs'd out as a bride, and was very neat from head to foot, according to their faſhion. *Neatneſs of her dreſs.* She kept her eyes continually fixed upon mine, and ſeemed ſo pleaſed with what I was doing, that another woman, who came with her, grew jealous at it, and was angry I would not likewiſe paint her picture: but the firſt had given me too much trouble for that, beſides, I intended to paint her huſband. *Picture of a Samoëd man.* His winter dreſs was what I thought moſt proper for me to draw, and I therefore deſired him to appear in that. *His habit.* His upper garment was one piece of ſkin, to which the cap he wore on his head was joined. He put it on and off like a ſhirt, ſo that nothing appeared of him but the face, his gloves being alſo of a-piece with the reſt of his habit: and indeed, he had looked more like a bear than a man, had it not been for the ſight of his face. His boots were faſtened below the knee: but this dreſs was ſo hot, as well as the ſtove of my room, that he was obliged to pull it off ſeveral times, and to go out and refreſh himſelf with a little air.

He is repreſented, N°. 8. with a gut in his hand, to ſhew what they feed upon. You ſee ſeveral others by him, and the head of a horſe flead. This is, becauſe he had had that day given him a horſe that was dying, which he ſent home to the woods, with inexpreſſible joy; he there killed him, flead him, and ſent me his head to paint. But he was not very willing to favor me with this preſent; for theſe heads are in as high eſteem with them, as a calf's head is with us. This horſe was about thirty years old, and yet



TRAINEAU DE



CHANTIE

S SAMOIEDES.

B

R HORS D'ARCHANGEL.



1701. was pretty fat; and the man talked of him with as much pleaſure, as we do of an ox in our parts. I at the ſame time painted one of his rein-deer, and at his feet I placed his bow and arrows, with the points out of the quiver, as the cuſtom is with them. They wear it upon their back, tied to them with a buckle and a ſtrap or thong, which comes over the left ſhoulder. On one ſide of him you ſee what the rein-deer feed upon, which is a white moſs; we ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak of it hereafter. The head of the deer, in particular, I drew bigger than the reſt, the better to ſhew all the parts and features of it. 1701.

As I lodged in a ground room, I made the *Samoëd* come in to me with his ſledge, drawn by his rein-deer, and painted him in that view, to ſhew how thoſe creatures are harneſſed.



UN SAMOJEED.

1701.

Sledges of the Samoëds.

Theſe ſledges are commonly 8 foot long, and 3 foot 4 inches broad, and riſe up before after the manner of our ſkates. The driver ſits croſs-legg'd, and before him is a ſmall board rounded at top, and another, tho' a little higher, behind him. In his hand he holds a long rod, with a knob at the end of it, wherewith to quicken the pace of the deer. At the end of the ſledge are two round pieces which turn like a ſwivel, over which the harneſs is paſſed, from thence between the legs of the creature, and from thence to the neck, where it is faſtened to a collar. The rein, which he holds in his right hand, is tied to a ſtrap which goes about the head of the deer. But as I was deſirous to examine ſtill farther into the nature of this harneſs, and to make ſome farther obſervation upon the motion of theſe creatures, I got this *Samoëd* to prepare two ſledges with two rein-deer to each, and we went upon the ice and croſſed the river ſeveral times. I even got out of the ſledge to take an exacter notice of things, and to make a ſketch of what was before me; upon which I perceived my *Samoëd* had not rightly fitted the ſledge he drove into my room. You may ſee it repreſented in N°. 9.

Horſes fly from the rein-deer.

Upon the river I obſerved that the horſes fled from the ſight of the rein-deer, and the *Samoëds*, whether harneſſed to ſledges or not. The ſame may be obſerved in the city, and it may ſufficiently evince the fear theſe creatures have of this people. *The ſwiftneſs.* The rein-deer run with a ſwiftneſs ſurpaſſing that of horſes, regardleſs of the road, whether it be beaten or not, they go with an equal pace wherever they are directed by the driver, hurrying along with their noſe in the air, and their horns on their back. They never ſweat, but when they are tired, they loll out their tongue on one ſide, and when they are much heated, they pant like dogs. *Manner of taking them.* They have three ſorts of darts, to take them with. The firſt have but one point like common darts, the ſecond have two, and the third are very ſharp before, and ſomething like a wedge, and may be ſeen in the quiver in the plate. They call them *Streli*; the *Ruſſians* call them *Sterla*; a bow they call a *Loack*. *Darts of the Samoëds.* When they go out to hunt the ſquirrel, they uſe another kind of dart, blunt at the end, like a pear which they form of wood, or bone, or horn, to kill them without hurting the ſkin or the fur which would lower the price of them. They hunt the rein-deer in the winter-ſeaſon, and for that purpoſe provide themſelves with a kind of wooden ſkates, about 8 foot long, and half a foot broad, which they faſten to the foot before and behind with a ſtrap. *The hunting of the rein-deer. Skates.* Thus ſhod they will ſkim over the ſnow and mount the hills at an incredible rate. Theſe ſkates are lined at bottom with the ſkin of the rein-deer, to prevent them from ſliding backwards, and to help them to ſtop as they go up the hills. In their hands they have a long ſtaff, with a ſmall kind of ſhovel at the end, with which they throw ſnow at them to drive them towards the place where they have prepared their toils for them, when they are too far off to hit them with their darts. At the other end of this ſame ſtaff they have a ſmall ring about four inches diameter, with cords croſſing each other, chequer faſhion, with which they ſtop themſelves from time to time, the point of the ſtaff which goes through this ring and a little beyond it, making its way into the ſnow, where the ring ſtops it. When they have driven their prey into the ſnares, where they are taken as it were in nets, they run and diſpatch ſuch as cannot free themſelves. They then diſpoſe of the ſkins either by the way of ſale, or reſerve them for their own uſe, as has been ſaid, and feed upon the fleſh. Nor do they reap leſs advantage by thoſe they breed up tame, ſelling a part of them, and keeping the reſt to draw their ſledges in the winter. When a wild male has coupled with a tame female, they kill the fawn, which in three or four days time would infallibly

take

1701. take to the desarts. But such as are tame, feed in the woods about the huts; and come when they are called, and are easily insnared when they are wanted. These creatures look out for their own food, which is a certain kind of white moss in the moors. They know where to find it tho' ever so deep buried in snow, which they throw up with their feet till they have got at it. This is almost their only food, tho' they may also eat grass and hay, when they have none of this moss. They are not very different from our stags, but they are stronger, and have shorter legs, as may be observed in the plate. They are almost all of a whitish colour, tho' some of them there are that are grey, and have hoofs of black horn. They change their branches every spring, when they are covered with a kind of black soft skin, which goes off upon the approach of winter. They seldom live above eight or nine years. Besides this kind of chase, they have another by water after seals, which abound in the white sea, during the months of *March* and *April*, and are thought to come from *Nova Zembla* to breed. They ingender upon the ice, where the *Samoëds* lye in wait for them, dressed in a disguise, which makes them look like nothing less than human creatures. They contrive in this manner. They go upon the ice which sometimes stretches out half a league into the sea, with a staff armed with a harpoon, and with about 12 fathom of line fastened to it. As soon as they perceive any of them, they glide along upon the belly, and get as near them as possible when they are in the act of ingendering, but stop the minute they find they are discovered. They then glide on to them again, and being within reach, they throw their harpoons at them, and the creature is no sooner sensible of the wound, than he takes to the water. The *Samoëd* keeps his hold and draws the line, which is fastened about his middle or to his girdle, till the seal is quite spent and falls into his hands. Sometimes unable to bear with the anguish of his wounds, irritated by the saltness of the water, he jumps out again upon the ice, and is there slain. His flesh serves for food, and his skin cloaths the hunter, who sells his oil. It also sometimes happens that the seal being wounded and hurrying into the water, the man, unable to get rid of the line about his middle, is drawn in after him, and there comes to a miserable end. They have much the same stratagem also for taking of the rein-deer, creeping along in the skin of that animal, in the midst of such of them as are tame, till they are near enough to dart them: but they must be mindful to keep to leeward of them; for this creature being indued with a very nice sense of smelling, would in an instant discover them; and thus they attain their end, and get good prizes for themselves into the bargain.

Food of the rein-deer.

Description of the rein-deer.

Water chase.

Danger of this chase.

I was told all this by the *Samoëd* woman who came with her husband when I drew her picture. She was the prettiest and most agreeable of all I had seen of them; and I endeavored to be fair with her, to get whatever else I might desire to know, out of her: and towards which, nothing proved so effectual, as a stock of brandy I had, which the women in this country fuddle with as freely as the men, and till they can stand no longer. This is what happened to the woman we are now speaking of, and the sight was so wonderfully pleasing to her husband, that he had like to have split his sides with laughing at it. After she had got upon her feet again, she began to cry most bitterly, it just then coming into her head that she was childless, tho' she had brought four into the world. This was interpreted to me by the mistress of the house; reflections of this kind will sometimes arise in the mind when the person is in liquor. Talking with her, one day, upon the subject of children, she informed me of their manner of disposing of them after death, in which there is something very remarkable.

1701. markable. When a child at the breaſt, where they keep it for a year, happens to die without having taſted of meat, they wrap it up in a cloth and hang it to a tree in the woods.

Manners and cuſtoms of the Samoëds.

As their manners and cuſtoms are widely different from what of the kind is to be found in other nations, I made it my buſineſs to inquire as much after them as poſſible. As ſoon as a child is born, they give it the name of the firſt creature that comes into their tent, whether man or beaſt; or of the firſt they meet with in going abroad: nay, it is no uncommon thing with them, to impoſe on it the name of whatever they happen to ſee firſt after the birth, whether river, tree, or ought elſe. Children that die after they are a year old, are put into the earth between planks or boards.

Their marriages.

When they have a mind to marry, they look out for a woman they like, and bargain for her with her neareſt relations, juſt as we buy a horſe or an ox. They give for a wife two or three or four rein-deer, which are commonly reckoned at 15 or 20 *Florins* a-piece; a ſum equivalent to which is ſometimes paid, according as the agreement happens to be. Thus they take as many wives as they can maintain, tho' there are among them who are contented with one. When a wife no longer pleaſes them, they have nothing to do but to ſend her back again to her friends or relations that ſold her, and they are obliged to take her again, the huſband ſtanding to the loſs of the purchaſe he gave for her. I have been told there are other *Samoëds* that inhabit along the ſea coaſt and in *Siberia*, who marry in the ſame manner, and ſell their wives when they no longer like them. When their father dies or their mother, they keep their bones and never bury them; and I have been informed by eye-witneſſes, that they even drown them when they are very far advanced in years, and of no farther uſe. In ſhort, when a man is dead, they dreſs him juſt as when he was alive, put him into a pit, and cover him over with earth; and then, upon a tree, they hang up his bow, his quiver, his ax, his hatchet, his kettle, and whatever elſe was in uſe with him while he lived. In the ſame manner they bury their women. 1701.

Having thus informed myſelf as to their cuſtoms and manners, I wanted to know what might be their belief, and their religion. To this purpoſe, I went with my friends to a *Samoëd*, whom I regaled with ſome brandy, to put him into a good humour, for without that they are very mute, and care not to ſpeak. At that inſtant I called to mind, that in ſcripture it is ſaid, *The heathen without the knowledge of the law, did nevertheleſs by the light of nature fulfil the law*; and thence I concluded this people might poſſibly have ſome knowledge in this reſpect. Having aſked him ſome queſtions upon this head, he told me, he believed with his countrymen There was a heaven and a God, whom they called *Heyha* or *Deity*; that they were perſuaded there was nothing greater or more mighty than God; that every thing depended on him; that *Adam*, the common father of all mankind, was created by God, or proceeded from him, but that his deſcendants neither went to heaven or to hell. That all who did well would be ſeated in a place above hell, and enjoy the happineſs of paradiſe, and feel no pain. They nevertheleſs worſhip their idols, adore the ſun and moon, and other planets, and even certain beaſts and birds, juſt as the whim takes them, or juſt as they expect to get any good by them. They have a ſort of a piece of iron before their idols, to which they hang a number of ſticks of the thickneſs of a knife-handle, the length of a finger, and ſharp at one end, whereby they intend to repreſent the head of a man, and by little holes to expreſs the eyes, the noſe, and the mouth. Theſe ſmall ſticks are wrapped in ſkin of the rein-deer, and thereto they hang the tooth of a bear, or wolf, or ſome ſuch thing.

Belief of the Samoëds.

1701. They have among them a person they call *Siaman*, or *Koedisnick*, which signifies a priest, or a magician, and they believe this man can foretel them the good and evil that is to happen to them; whether or no they shall be lucky in the chase; whether persons sick shall recover again, and much more of the kind. When they want him to tell them any thing, they send for him, and putting a rope about his neck, they pull it so hard that he falls down for dead. At the end of some time he begins to move, and comes by degrees to himself again. When he is going to foretel any thing, the blood starts out of his cheeks, and stops when he has done; when he begins again, it runs afresh; and this I was assured by persons who had oftentimes been eye-witnesses of it. Under their garments these magicians wear plates of iron, and rings of the same, which make a frightful noise when they come in: But those who live in these parts have no such thing; they only wear a net of cat-gut or ought else, to which they fasten the teeth of all sorts of creatures. When one of these *Koedisnicks* happens to die, they raise him a monument of timber, close on all sides, to keep out the wild beasts. Then they lay him out thereon, dressed in his best array, and place his bow, his quiver, and his hatchet by him. To this monument they tie a rein-deer or two, if the deceased had been possessed of any in his life-time, and there they leave them to starve, if they cannot get loose and make their escape. All this, which I had from people who live in those parts, was confirmed to me by a *Russian* merchant, called *Michael Ostaliof*, whom I invited for that purpose, knowing he had crossed *Siberia*, both winter and summer, in his way to *China*, and that he had travelled that way for fourteen years together. He was a man about sixty years old, sound of mind and body, and told me these *Samoëds* spread along on all sides to the great rivers of *Siberia*, such as the *Oby*, the *Jeniseia*, the *Lena*, and the *Amur*, which fall into the great ocean. The last of them is a limit to divide the dominions of *Muscovy* from those of *China*, and therefore these people never cross it. Between the rivers of *Lena* and *Amur* are the *Jakoetes*, who are *Tartars*, and the *Lamoetkie*, who feed upon rein-deer like the *Samoëds*; they are to the number of 30,000, or thereabouts, bold and warlike. Towards the sea-coast there is another nation they call *Jaecogerie* or *Joegra*. These are in all respects like the *Samoëds*, dress after the same manner, and live in desarts. Like dogs they devour the guts and garbage of all sorts of creatures quite raw; and all these people speak different languages. There is also a fourth kind of them called *Korakie*, from the country they inhabit, and who live after the manner of the *Samoëds*. To these also may be added a fifth, called *Soegtsie*, who slit their cheeks, and put in bones of the narwhale to help the scar which they esteem an ornament. Among these, the men wash themselves with the urine of the women, and the women with that of the men. They pass for very wicked wretches, and are reported to be deep in magic: And indeed they boast of it, and always carry about with them the bones of their Fathers for such uses. But what is still more extraordinary, they worship the Devil, and prostitute their wives and daughters to the strangers that happen to be among them; a civility they deem to be absolutely due to strangers. How wide is the difference between the manners of these nations and those of the *Europeans*! The *Russian* who informed me of all these things, told me farther, that after a five or six weeks journey, beyond where these people inhabit, he met with a sixth sort towards the sea-coast, and that they were called *Lasatie Soegtsie*, or *Couchant Soegtsie*, from their lying or sitting in their tents during all the winter season. They are made of the skin of the narwhale, and are covered with snow

Priest or magician of the Samoëds.

Jakoetes.

Other savages.

An odd kind of civility.

1701. for five months in the year. They provide quantities of the whale, which they dry, and never go out till ſpring. They ſay, that ſome years ago, the *Samoëds* of theſe parts had got a trick of wounding the cattle of the *Muſcovites* between the ſmall ribs, or in the ear, with a very fine iron, upon which the poor creatures languiſhed for a time and then died, to the great joy of theſe people who had them to eat. But being diſcovered, many of them were ſeized, who were hung up, ſome by the legs, and others by the middle, as an example to the reſt. Notwithſtanding the terror this muſt have given them, they began again laſt winter, and ſome of them were locked up for it; but they made their eſcape, leaving behind them only a little child, which the Governor of the province took care of, and had it baptized into the *Ruſſian* church.

A new iſland. While I ſtaid here, I was alſo informed, that about ſeven years ago they had diſcovered an iſland to the left of *China*, and that it had been brought under the *Czar*'s ſubjection, tho' it required at leaſt a year to travel between that and *Moſcow*. That it abounded with ſables and other furs; that it was not as yet known but it might alſo afford other commodities of value, and that the inhabitants were juſt like thoſe we have been talking of. 1701.

Upon the *eighteenth* of *September*, we had a violent ſtorm which blew off the roofs of ſeveral houſes. I was then at dinner with the Sieur *Houtman*, little dreaming of what was to come to paſs; but going out of the houſe, there fell ſeveral timbers and planks cloſe by me, and made me hurry into the houſe again. As thoſe in the houſe had been ſenſible of nothing of the kind, they were ſurprized at what I told them, and ſomebody going up to the garret, found moſt of the roof demoliſhed, and we returned our thanks to God for my preſervation. Sept. 18. *A great ſtorm.*

Upon the *twenty-fifth*, about noon, there arrived 500 dragoons from *Moſcow*, in four barks. It was upon a *Sunday*, and every body ran to the water ſide; and as every one had his beſt cloaths on, it was a ſight agreeable enough. *Arrival of ſome* Ruſſian *dragoons.*

Our laſt ſhips departed on the *fourteenth* of *October* for *Holland*, and got happily to ſea, except the *White Eagle*, who ran aſhore by the meadows. They were obliged to take out half her loading to get her afloat again; and even that would not have ſaved her, if the weather had been leſs fair than it was. Upon the *nineteenth* ſhe got out to ſea with the reſt. *Departure of the ſhips for* Holland.

CHAP. III.

A Deſcription of Archangel. *Abundance of Proviſions. Revenue of the Cuſtoms,* &c.

1701. ABOUT a mile and a half to the weſtward of *Archangel*, the Czar has a fine and pleaſant yard, by itſelf, for building of ſhips. All ſhipping that go and come paſs by it. There were ſeveral at anchor, waiting for others to make up a fleet homeward bound, when I drew the proſpect in N° 10. This dock-yard is diſtinguiſhed by the letter A. At a point of land in the river, you may obſerve a ſhip with her decks unlaid. The village hard by, at the letter B, is called *Strambol*. *The Czar's dock-yard.* 1701. 19 Oct.

The city of *Archangel* is in the north-weſtern parts of *Muſcovy*, and lies to the north-eaſtward of the *Dwina*, which falls into the ſea about ſix leagues lower. It lies along the banks of the river, and may be upwards Archangel.

2

1701. wards of two miles long, and about three quarters of a mile in breadth. *The Palace.* Its chief building is the palace, which is of free-ſtone, and divided into three parts. The foreign merchants have their goods and ſome apartments in the firſt, which is to the left as you come up from the river: And here alſo are lodged the merchants that come annually from *Muſcow*, and ſtay till the laſt ſhips return home. Strangers that come annually, are accommodated here, and in like manner; but ſoon after the ſhips are gone, which is generally in *October*, they remove to other places till they go back to *Moſcow*, in the months of *November* and *December*, when the ways are proper for a ſledge to move upon the ſnow; and the ice ſo ſtrong that the rivers may be croſſed.

As you go into the palace, you go under a great gate, which admits you into a ſquare court, where are the warehouſes to the right and to the left. Above, there is a long gallery, to which you may go up by two ſtair-caſes, and from whence you go to the lodgings of the merchants we mentioned juſt now. The ſecond part of this palace has a gate like the firſt, and there you have another building: At the end of which is the town-houſe, with ſeveral apartments in it. You go up ſome ſteps, and then you come into a long gallery, from whence on the left-hand you go into the place where *Court of Juſtice.* they keep their courts; above which there is a door that goes into the ſtreet. The ſentences are all executed in this palace, except in caſes of condemnation to death, which are exhibited in the places appointed by the ſentence. The things belonging to his *Czarian* Majeſty are kept in this palace, in magazines of wood and ſtone, erected for the purpoſe, though they are ſometimes uſed by the merchants. When you have paſſed the third gate, you ſee another body of building, for what belongs to the *Ruſſians*, and where alſo the merchants of that nation have their abode; but they are not ſo commodiouſly provided for as the merchants 1701. that are foreigners. The ſpace or ſquare before this palace is pretty large, and goes down quite to the river. When ſhips come here in ſummer, they raiſe two great timber bridges, that jet out into the river, for the convenience of loading and unloading. The bridges they have for corn are pretty large.

The citadel, where the governor *The Citadel.* takes up his reſidence, is full of ſhops, where the *Ruſſians*, who come at the time of the fair, expoſe their merchandiſe. It is ſurrounded with a wall of wood, which ſtretches down to the river.

All the houſes of this city are of *Buildings.* wood, or to ſpeak plainer, are built of vaſt pieces of timber join'd together, and look odd enough from without; and yet in ſome of the principal houſes you may meet with fine apartments, and particularly among the foreign merchants. The walls of them are even and ſmooth within, and wainſcotted with boards; the timbers being only, or chiefly, for ſupport. There is commonly a ſtove to each room, which they light *Stoves.* from without; moſt of them are very large, and ſo contrived as to be ornamental. The *Merchants from beyond ſea*, for ſo they call the chriſtian ſtrangers that live among them, are as nice in their houſes as the niceſt among ourſelves; their apartments are full of pictures, and finely furniſhed.

The ſtreets are covered with broken *Their ſtreets.* timbers, and ſo dangerous to croſs, that a man continually runs the hazard of falling and doing himſelf a miſchief; beſides, that they are full of the rubbiſh of houſes, which, in many places, looks like the ruins of a fire: but the ſnow that falls in winter covers and makes all ſmooth and even.

There are two churches in this *The churches.* city, the one for the Calviniſts, and the other for the Lutherans, where they preach twice every *Sunday*. They are not far from each other, by the river-ſide. The miniſter lives on one ſide of the church, and the church-

yard,

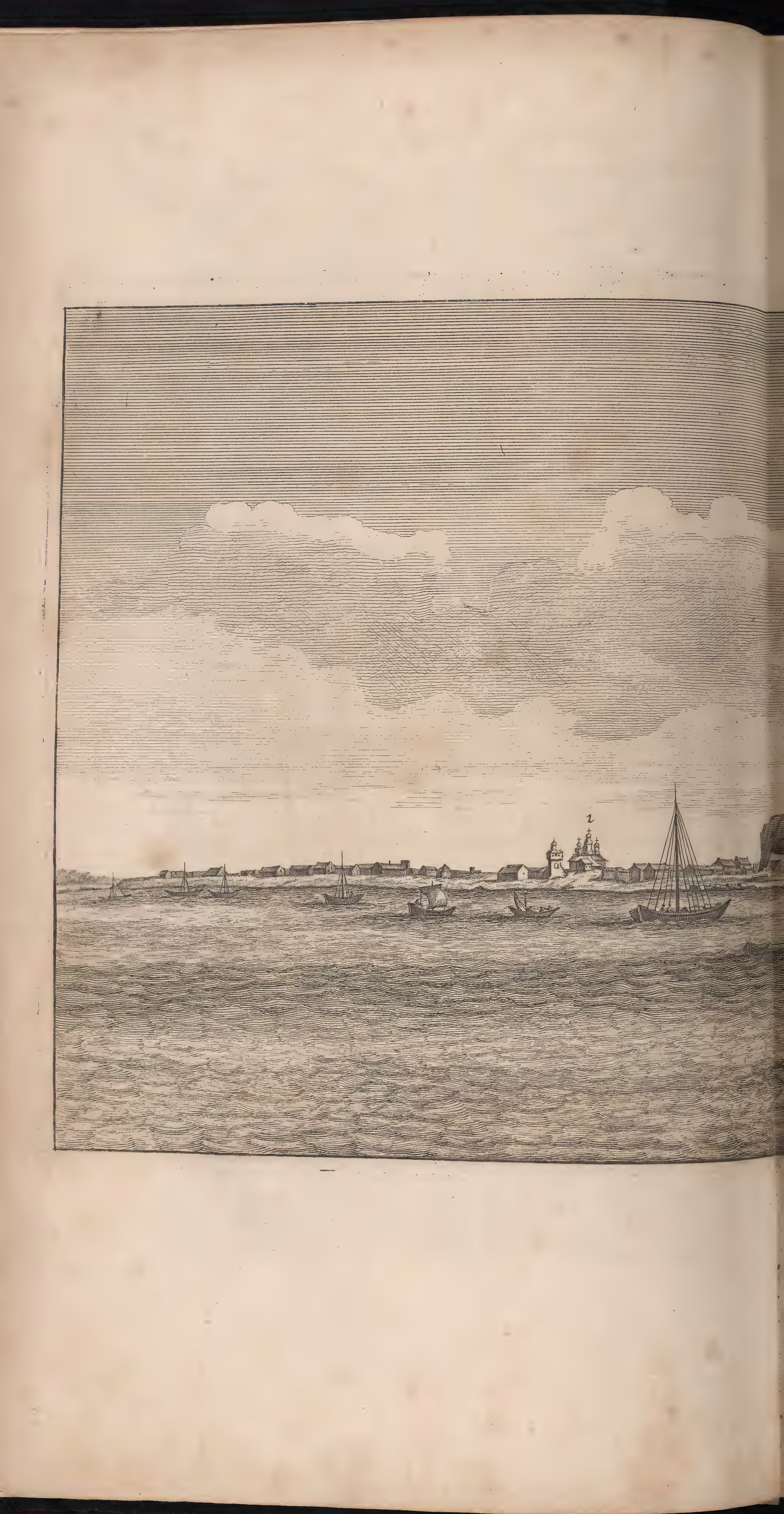
1701 yard, where they bury after our manner, is between both. They have no ſervice in the churches during winter, it is ſo cold; but they meet in a room of the miniſter's houſe which is well heated for the purpoſe.

Proſpect of the city. I took a view of this city on the river from on board one of our ſhips at anchor: you have it in N° 11, where every particular is diſtinguiſhed by a numeral figure, or at leaſt what is to be ſeen; as (1) *Oeſpinge Bogeroediſza*, or the church of the repoſe of the *Virgin Mary.* (2) The *Lutheran* Church. (3) The church of the *Calviniſts.* (4) The palace of *Germany.* (5) The court of juſtice and arſenal of the great Duke. (6) The *Ruſſian* palace. (7) The houſe of the *Gooſt* or great cuſtomer, upon the river. (8) The great church. (9) The citadel. The Governor had formerly an abſolute power over this city, but the form of its government was changed laſt year, and four Burgomaſters were appointed; the firſt of which lives in the city, the ſecond at *Kolmegra*, and the two others in the neighbouring places: ſo that the authority of the governor is confined to the militia, the Burgomaſters being at the head of the civil affairs, and the police. Every year, about the time the merchants arrive, there comes a great cuſtomer, or maſter of the cuſtoms, to watch over the duties belonging to his *Czarian* Majeſty, and to buy what the court has occaſion for. This great officer has four aſſiſtants or deputies who act in his abſence, and are intitled *Goſtieni-Sotni*, or Sub-Delegates; from among which he himſelf is choſen. Beſides theſe, there are others taken from among the people, a number not limited, who are employed in the towns and villages. Theſe people are obliged to ſerve, for a year, without pay or reward, and to obey all orders from the chiefs of the cuſtoms and their deputies; with regard had to the duties and revenues ariſing to the great Duke. They are ſent every where, and, in caſe of need, have ſoldiers allowed them to prevent frauds and ſeize ſmuglers. When they have ſerved their year out, others are ſent in their ſtead. 1701.

Plenty of proviſion. All the neceſſaries of life abound in this city: plenty of fowl very cheap; a partridge is not worth above two-pence. There are two ſorts of them, the firſt of which light upon trees, and look like owls, but are perfectly good: the others are white in winter, an extraordinary thing, and, in the language of the country, are called *Koeroptie.* There are alſo here two ſorts of *Tetters*, birds as big as our turkeys, and of a fine feather: the cocks are commonly black, with a mixture of a very deep blue; the hens are ſmaller, and ſpeckled with grey. Hares are to the full as plenty, and ſell but for a groat a-piece; they are white in winter, and the rabbits are black. Woodcocks are there worth two-pence or three-pence a-piece. You have there alſo plenty of ducks, and, among the reſt, a ſort called *Gagares*, who are very ſwift of flight, and mount vaſtly aloft. While they are on the wing, they make a noiſe not very unlike the human voice. They ſwim with as much rapidity as they fly, but they cannot run, becauſe their feet come out from behind.

Rivers abound with fiſh. The rivers abound with fiſh; you may here have as many perch as would ſerve twenty people for twenty-pence. The beſt are the *Karoetſe*; they are the ſmalleſt, but of ſuch a flavour, as, I believe, is unknown in our country; and therefore I preſerved ſome of them in ſpirits. In ſhape they are very nearly like a roach, brown, with bright and ſhining ſcales. The pike is alſo very common here, as well as a delicious kind of ſmall eels. Plenty alſo here is of ſmelts, gudgeons, roach, whitings, flounders, and a brown fiſh, they call *Garius*, of a moſt exquiſite taſte, and nearly the ſize of a melvel or ſmall codd. All theſe fiſh are taken about twelve miles from the city, in a certain gulf or bay, formed by the river, and where the water is ſtill. It were needleſs to talk of the ſalmon, which every body knows is from hence ſent, ſalted

4 and


1


ARCHANGEL.
2
3
4
5
6
8
9

1701. and ſmoaked, to all parts. There is alſo a white ſort of them, the *Muſcovites* call *Meelma*, and are taken upon the coaſts of *Lapland*, which are dried before they are ſent abroad. I ſaw one not very unlike a ray, and about two foot over behind, which they call *Paſciskaet:* they find two mice in him, called *Miski*, and a medicinal oil.

Meat. Meat alſo abounds in the market; you there buy the beſt beef in the world for a penny a pound; a lamb, of about ſix weeks, for fifteen-pence; a calf of the ſame age for thirty or forty-pence, according to the ſeaſon. Every body here breeds turkies. You may have four or five fowls, or a gooſe, for ſeven or eight-pence. Their beer is very good, but muſt be neither ſold nor brewed without a grant from the great Duke, which is allowed for a certain yearly ſum: but an inhabitant may brew as much as he wants for his family upon paying the value of fifty pence for a certain number of quarters of malt. There are even thoſe who are free from this exciſe.

Wine and brandy. Wine and brandy are brought hither by ſea from *France*; but the laſt is very dear becauſe of the heavy duty upon it. However they extract a kind of malt ſpirit, which is very good, and ſold reaſonably enough. Strangers drink no other.

Revenue of the cuſtoms. The Czar has, every year, a conſiderable revenue levied upon this city. It was formerly ſaid the duties amounted to 300,000 rubles; but upon an exact inquiry I found they did not, in my time, reach beyond 180, or 190,000, of the ſame rubles, each being about equivalent to 5 florins of *Dutch* money. There uſually arrived thirty or thirty five of our ſhips in a year; but in this laſt there came fifty, beſides thirty three *Engliſh*; to which, if we add the ſhips from *Hamburg*, *Denmark*, and *Bremen*, the whole will amount to one hundred and three ſail: the reaſon of which was the war with *Sweden*, which put a ſtop to the trade the *Muſcovites* carried on with *Riga*, *Nerva*, *Revel*, and even *Konigsberg* and *Dantzick*; ſo that the whole trade of *Ruſſia* is now centered in *Archangel*. They compute alſo that his *Czarian* Majeſty has, this year, received, upon the goods from the arrival of the firſt ſhip, in this port, to the laſt, the ſum of 130,000 rubles, or 260,000 rixdollars. It is an agreement that half theſe duties be paid in rubles, the other half in golden ducats; and if payment was offered to be made all in ducats, they would not receive it, tho' they never refuſe rix-dollars. This is to be underſtood of foreign goods, the chief of which are gold and ſilver ſtuffs, and ſilks, cloths, ſerges, gold and ſilver laces, *&c.* gold wyre, indigo, and other materials for dying. But to return to the cuſtoms, levied upon foreign merchandiſe, it is to be obſerved, that from the year 1667, to 1699, they paid the ſum of twenty rix-dollars on every caſk of wine, whereas for three years paſt they have paid but five. They nevertheleſs pay thirty ſix rix-dollars on every barrel of brandy, and forty on a pipe of *Spaniſh* wine containing two barrels. 1701.

From *Moſcovy*, into other parts, they export pot-aſhes, and weed-aſhes for ſoap, leather, hemp, tallow, elks, other ſkins, and furs; all goods of the natural growth of the country. They ſay alſo, that the rivers of *Kola*, *Warſigha*, *Wuſma*, and *Solia*, produce muſcles that yield a very good ſort of pearl. They are ſometimes worth twenty five florins a-piece, and even twice that money in the neighbourhood of *Ombacy*.

This is all I was able to inform myſelf during the time I ſtaid here; what hours I had to ſpare, I dedicated to the converſation of the Sieurs *Brants* and *Lup*, who made it their buſineſs to oblige me. They there divert themſelves with gaming, dancing, drinking and eating, and even till it is pretty late in the night. Mr. *Brants* contributed no ſmall ſhare to theſe diverſions, being a great lover of muſic, and an excellent performer upon the harpſichord.

 CHAP.

CHAP. IV.

The Author goes from Archangel. *How the* Russians *travel in Winter. Description of* Wologda *and of the Monastery of* Trooyts. *His Arrival at* Moscow.

1701. 21 Dec. *Departure from* Archangel. I LEFT *Archangel* upon the *twenty first* of *December*, about *three* in the afternoon, in company with Mr. *Kinsius*, who had two soldiers with him, and a *Podwoden*, or an order for horses upon the road *gratis*, though the people however get some money upon the occasion. He had six sledges, to which I added mine, having disposed of my baggage among that of Mr. *Brants*. When you resolve upon *Manner of travelling.* this journey, you must provide your self with sledges at *Archangel*, for you can meet with no Horses upon the road. The sledges are so contrived that a person may lie along in them very conveniently: you must have your own bed, and good things to cover you up warm from the cold, which is excessive in this country. The hinder part of the sledge they cover with matts, and the rest they line either with cloth or leather. Then over-head you have a skin lin'd with cloth or leather, to keep off the rain and snow. They travel day and night, each sledge with two horses, which they change every fifteen wersts, five of which make a *German* league. The *Russians* cry out *wersta*, at the end of every werst, which at present contains about a hundred fathom, each fathom three *arsiennes*, or *Dutch* ells. You go out of the sledge but once a day to refresh your self. Having passed through several villages, we, upon the *twenty second*, *Kolmogora.* about three in the afternoon, came to *Kolmogora*, about fifty wersts from *Archangel*.

1701. Dec. 22. This city is pretty large, and to the southwest of the *Dwina*, one of the chief rivers of *Russia*. It rises in the southern parts of the province of *Wologda*, and after a long course, being increased by other rivers in its way, it, by two mouths, discharges itself into the *White-Sea*, a little below *Archangel*. Mr. *Kinsius* being acquainted with the *Vladika*, or Archbishop of this city, we went to pay him a visit. He received us very kindly, and treated us with cinnamon-water, red wine, and an excellent beer, the common drink of the country. *Civility of the Archbishop of* Kolmogora. He gave us also some *Egyptian* dates, and several other refreshments. He was a man of fifty years of age, and his name was *Affonassi*. He resided in his own palace, which is pretty large, and joins to the monastery. Having passed two very agreeable hours with this prelate, a man of good sense, and a lover of polite learning, he carried us to see an armory he had below; in which, among others, were two small brass guns of his own casting, and two iron pieces taken out of the *Swedish* vessels we formerly spoke of. When we took leave of him, he ordered five of his clergy to attend us to our inn; one of them carrying five loaves, and the others dried fish and other refreshments. About ten at night we went away with fresh horses, which we had some trouble to procure, because a number of travellers, provided with *Podwodens* as well as we, had lately passed by, and taken up almost all the horses in the town.

Upon the *twenty third* we had fine weather, and passed through several woods full of fir, of two sorts; the branches of the one shooting out at the sides of the trunk, and of the other only from the head. There were also alders and birch-trees. From hence we went on to several villages, and at length to *Saske*, the last in the jurisdiction of *Archangel*.

From

1701. From thence, upon the *twenty fourth* we got to *Briesnick*, in the country of *Waeg*, where we took fresh horses, and were several times to cross the river of that name. Upon the *twenty fifth* we arrived at *Schenkerske*, the capital of the country of *Waeg*, upon the same river. Upon the *twenty sixth* we went through a great village, called *Virghowaesje*, where, once a week, they have a great market. Upon the *twenty seventh* to *Soloti*. Upon the *twenty eighth*, having passed through several villages, we crossed the great forest of *Komenaf*, full twenty wersts in breadth, and came to *Dwienitse*, upon the river of the same name, where we were told that three *Russian* merchants, from *Archangel*, had not long before been plundered by twenty six robbers on the highway; that one of these robbers had taken away a silver cross from the chief of these merchants, a man I knew, though his companions had done all they could to prevent him; the cross here being usually worn on the breast, and held in great veneration: that even this rascal wore a cross himself, which he took from his own neck and put about the merchant's, saying, *There, now we have changed crosses we are brethren.* This piece of news gave us a good deal of uneasiness; but having weighed the matter, we resolved to push on, and not wait for the merchants that might come from *Archangel*, and got ready our arms to defend us in case of need. Upon the *twenty ninth* we got to *Rabanga*, upon the river *Soegue*, and from thence reached *Wologda* about three in the afternoon. This city makes a good figure on this side. We got out at the house of the Sieur *Wouter Ewouts de Jongh*, a *Dutch* merchant, I was acquainted with at *Archangel*, who received us with great civility. The next day I walked about the town, and saw the great church called *Saboor*: it is a fine building, by the *Italian* architect who worked at the castle of *Moscow*. This church has five domes, which the *Russians* call *Glassa*, or *Heads of Churches*; they are covered with plate-tin, and have large crosses. In this city also there are twenty other churches of stone, most of which have also domes covered with tin, and surmounted by guilt crosses, and have a fine effect when the sun shines upon them; besides forty three other churches of wood, three convents of monks, and one cloister of nuns, whose chief ornament is a church of stone, built in the midst, and encompassed with wooden cells for the nuns, in a private place, which you go into by a small door. Having taken a sufficient view of these buildings, I went to see the markets: they are full of shops, and I took notice that each article has a separate place for the sale of it; as meat in one place, wood in another, and so on. From thence I went through the gate of a great building which has never been compleated, and was begun by the Czar *Ivan Vassialiewitz*, who designed it for a citadel; but the fear they were then under of the *Tartars*, who had made this Prince retire from *Moscow*, was the cause it was never finished. I then went to walk on the side of the river *Wologda*, which runs thro' this city. The other side which is not so fine, is called *Dofresene*, which, though it be part of one and the same city, has nevertheless another governor. It is a good league in length, and a quarter of a league in breadth, more or less, in some places. It is the thoroughfare for all the goods that come from *Archangel*; and there are, at this time, three or four warehouses for the goods belonging to our nation. This city is in 59 degrees, 15 minutes, of northern latitude, on the east of the river, which is pretty broad.

Schenkerske. Wologda. The church. 1701. Dec. 29. 1701. Markets.

1701. Dec. 30. Upon the *thirteenth*, at ten at night, we set out from hence, and about six the next morning we reached *Greelnewits*, having travelled forty wersts. We there baited our horses, and need they had of it, for we had still twenty wersts to go. That day we met with fifty sledges, some of which had left *Archangel* before we did, and some after. But we did not all travel the same way; there were

4

1701. were but twenty of them that looked towards *Moſcow*, and at noon we arrived at *Obſnorkoy-jam*, whither we had diſpatched a ſoldier before us, to get us freſh horſes. Sixty ſeven werſts from thence we came

Daniſlofskoy.

to *Daniſlofskoy*, a fine and large burgh, where there is trade, and a fine ſtud of horſes, above two thouſand of which belonged to the Czar.

1702. Jan. 1.

The *firſt* day of the year 1702, we came to *Jereſlaw*, one of the chief cities of *Ruſſia*; the *Wolga* runs

Jereſlaw, *the* Wolga *and* Kotris.

not far off, and is there very broad; we croſſed it, and then the *Kotris*; not far from whence to the ſouthward, it falls into the *Wolga*. There is a great number of ſtone churches in this city, which I ſhall have enough to ſay of hereafter, having, at my return, taken views of them all. When we had croſſed the *Kotris*, we went into a ſuburb called *Troepenoe*, where we changed horſes. We left that place at ten at night,

Roſtof.

and upon the *ſecond* we came to *Roſtof*, which we only traverſed. The Archbiſhop has his reſidence in this city, full of ſtone churches, which are a great ornament to it. It is ſeated, to the right of the lake of the ſame name. When we had croſſed this lake, we diſcerned a great number of ſmall villages, moſt of whoſe inhabitants live upon garlic and onions. The monaſtery of *Peu-*

1702. Jan. 3.

ter Zarowitz, which is ſurrounded with ſome houſes, is but half a league off. At one in the afternoon we came to *Waske*, having travelled thirty eight werſts: we there dined, and at the end of twenty werſts more

Pereſlaw Soleskoy.

we came to *Pereſlaw Soleskoy*, capital of the province of that name; it is but a poor ſort of a city, and ſtands upon a lake. It was nine of the clock when we came thither, and we left it at midnight. Upon the *third*, about ſix in the morning, we went thro' *Tierie berewa*. From

Trooytz.

thence to *Trooytz* you muſt continually go up and down ſmall hills, for the ſpace of thirty werſts. Reaching this laſt place, about one in the

Its fine monaſtery.

afternoon, we went to ſee the famous monaſtery of the name, which we had paſſed by as we came in 1702. with the village. It is ſurrounded with a fine and high wall of ſtone, which is the material throughout the whole fabric. At the corners of this wall, which is ſquare, are fine noble and large round towers; between which there are others that are ſquare. Two of theſe laſt you have upon the front, they are the fineſt, and the road goes by them. This monaſtery, which has three gates in front, is a good quarter of a league from the village which lies to the right-hand of it, as you go to *Moſcow:* that in the middle, which I choſe to go in by, had two arcades, under which there was a little *corps de garde*, where there were ſoldiers, as well as to that without. When you are through this gate, you ſee the principal church ſtanding in the middle, and ſeparate from the reſt of the buildings. His Czarian Majeſty's apartment, very ſumptuous and royal without, is on the right-hand; and the front being very extenſive, you go up to it by two flights of ſteps: it is ſeveral ſtories high; but the inſide does by no means correſpond with the out. The refectory, another great edifice, is oppoſite to this and like it. All the windows are adorned with little pillars, and the ſtones are painted of ſeveral colours. The church we juſt now mentioned is between theſe two. There are four others conſiderable, and five ſmaller. From without, this monaſtery has the look of a fortreſs; and the archimandrite or abbot, is the chief in authority. Here are commonly two or three hundred monks, and ſome of them attended us every where with a good deal of civility. This monaſtery is rich in endowments, levying its revenues upon 60,000 peaſants that depend thereon; not to ſpeak of the great perſonages here intombed, nor the maſſes that are here celebrated, and the like from whence much profit muſt ariſe.

This village is pretty long, and on the right-hand ſide is full of farriers ſhops, with poſts to ſhoe horſes at. Thirty werſts from hence, we

1702. came to the village of *Brato Fiena*, where we were obliged to ſtay till midnight, to have our baggage ſearched, which is here to be ſealed, and not opened again till in the cuſtom-houſe at *Moſcow*, where we arrived upon the *fourth*, at *eight* in the morning, and alighted at the ſlabode, or privileged quarter of the *Germans*, where moſt of the ſtrangers take up their abode; though there are thoſe of them that live in the city. I went directly to Mr. *Jurtſen's*, to whom I had been recommended by Mr. *Brants*, who lived in the ſame place, and was but juſt arrived from *Archangel*. The Czar paid him a viſit the next day, attended by ſeveral Lords of his court in ſledges, of which his Majeſty's made the leaſt ſhow. This viſit laſted for two hours; and this was the firſt time I had the honour of ſeeing this mighty Monarch.

Arrival at Moſcow.

CHAP. V.

The Author is admitted to the Preſence of his Czarian Majeſty. Conſecration of the Water and Fire-work at Moſcow.

1702. Jan. 5. *Viſits of the Czars.*

EVER ſince the year 1649, it has been a cuſtom with the Czars of *Muſcovy* to viſit the chief of their own ſubjects, or of the foreigners, whether in the city of *Moſcow* it ſelf, or in the ſlabode of the *Germans*, a little before *Twelfth-day*. On this occaſion the perſon honoured gives a treat, and this they call ſlaweien. They go attended with the Princes, Lords, and other great perſonages of their court. This ceremony began the year 1702, upon the *third* of *January* old ſtile. The firſt viſit was to Mr. *Brandts*, where about nine in the morning the Czar came, and about three hundred perſons in ſledges and on horſe-back. The tables were covered in very good order, and ſerved immediately with ſeveral dainties of cold meats, and afterwards hot. They were very merry, and there was no want of liquor. His Majeſty withdrew about two in the afternoon, and went thence with his whole court to Mr. *Lups*, where he was treated in the ſame manner, and from thence to ſeveral other places. Then they went to reſt themſelves in houſes prepared for that purpoſe. The next day, among others, he paid a viſit to our Reſident Mr. *Hulſt*. This Miniſter made mention of me to the Czar, upon the recommendation of Mr. *Witſen*, Burgo-maſter, and Counſellor of the city of *Amſterdam*, and did me the honour to invite me; and ordered that I ſhould be placed in a room, through which the Czar was to paſs. As luck would have it the Knez or Prince of *Troebetskooy* came into this place, and having no knowledge of me, and perceiving me to be a ſtranger, he aſked me, in *Italian*, if I underſtood that language; I told him I did, with which he ſeemed to be much pleaſed, and had a pretty long diſcourſe with me concerning *Italy*, and other countries where he had been as well as I. Hereupon he went to give his Majeſty an account of what had paſſed, and he had the curioſity to come with all his train, to the place where I was; but not expecting him ſo ſoon, I was a little in confuſion, though upon a recovery of myſelf, I made my addreſs to him with a moſt profound reſpect. He ſeemed ſurprized at it, and aſked me in *Dutch*, *Hoe weet gy wie ik ben? en hoe Romt gy my te kennen?* "How is "it you know who I am? and how "comes it you know me?" I anſwered I had ſeen his picture at Sir

The Author ſpeaks to the Czar.

1702. *Godfrey Kneller*'s in *London*, and that it made too deep an impreſſion upon my mind to be defaced. As he did not ſeem quite to approve of this anſwer, I added, that I had beſides, had the honour to ſee him come out of his court, when he went to Mr. *Brandts*, which ſeemed to pleaſe him better. He aſked me of what town I was; who were my parents; if they were ſtill alive; and if I had brothers and ſiſters. Having returned the proper anſwers, he aſked me ſome queſtions about my firſt travels, what year I ſet out, how long I was about them, in what manner I travelled, and how I returned again. He then talked to me about *Egypt*, the *Nile*, and *Grand Cairo*; of its extent and buildings, of the ſtate and condition of what belonged to the *Old Cairo*, of *Alexandria*, and ſeveral other places, adding he was ſenſible there was another place called *Alexandretta*. I told him, this laſt place was the ſea-port for *Aleppo*, and acquainted him with the diſtance between them. All this the Czar aſked me in *Dutch*, and would have me continue to ſpeak in that language, ſaying he underſtood me very well. And it appeared that he did ſo; for he explained all I had ſaid to the *Ruſſian* Lords that attended him, with a nicety which ſurprized the Reſident and the reſt of the *Dutch*. He then ordered me to ſpeak *Italian*, to the Knez or Prince *Troebetskooy*, who underſtood it pretty well, and then he left me. After he had been three good hours with Monſieur the Reſident, he went to make ſome other viſits in the ſlabode, becauſe it was the laſt day; the feſtival of the conſecration of the water, being to be celebrated the next day, and the *Monday* being the 6th of *January*, old ſtile. That day the ſon of General *Bories Petrowitz Czeremetof* arrived, and while his Czarian Majeſty was at church, brought him the agreeable news of the defeat of the *Swedes* by the *Moſcovites* in *Livonia*, 5 or 6 leagues from the town of *Deript*. He informed him the *Swedes* had, in this battle, loſt 4000 men, that they had taken 1702. ſome hundreds of priſoners, and that among them were ſeveral officers. This Nobleman, who was in the action, and had been diſpatched by his father with theſe glad tidings, acquitted himſelf ſo handſomly, that he inſpired an univerſal joy. The feſtival I juſt now mention, is in remembrance of the manifeſtation of Jeſus Chriſt, and I was an eye-witneſs of it.

Feſtival of the Conſecration of the Water.

In the river of *Jouſa*, and not far from the caſtle they made a ſquare hole in the ice which was 13 foot from corner to corner, or 52 feet in circumference. This hole was incloſed by a curious piece of wooden-work, having at each angle of it a pillar, which ſupported a kind of corniſh, whereon were four pannels painted in the form of arches, and at each corner a repreſentation of one of the evangeliſts, and above all two kind of half domes, upon the middle of which was a large croſs. Theſe pannels, which were alſo painted within, repreſented apoſtles, and other holy perſonages. The fineſt piece of all this, to the eaſt of the river, was the baptiſm of our Lord, by St. *John*, in the river *Jordan*, with four angels on the right. Each of theſe pannels had on the outſide painted upon them five angels heads with wings. There were four ſteps on the weſt ſide of this hole, to which they had fixed a conſiderable weight of lead to make them ſink in the water. The patriarch or the perſon that performs this ceremony, ſtood upon theſe ſteps quite to the water, which was in this place eight foot deep. Upon the ground they had ſpread large red carpets, ſurrounded with a ſquare incloſure, 45 paces from corner to corner, or 180 in circumference. This incloſure had two others in the nature of baluſtrades, at the diſtance of four paces from each other, four foot high, and, in like manner, covered with red cloths or carpets. They had erected three handſome wooden altars to the weſtward near the edge of the hole. Four doors gave admiſſion

1702. miſſion thereto, the chief of which was to the ſouthward of the gate of the caſtle. They alſo were painted, but ſadly enough, and like the reſt, repreſented ſacred things. Having thoroughly ſurveyed all this, I went to a riſing ground near the caſtle, between the two gates on the ſide of that they call *Taynaimskie*, or the *Secret Gate*, to ſee the proceſſion paſs by. It began to move about eleven of the clock, from out of the church of *Sabour*, that is, *the place of the aſſembly of the ſaints*, which is in the caſtle, and the chief of all the churches in *Moſcow*. This proceſſion conſiſted wholly of churchmen excepting ſome perſons in common dreſſes who led the way with ſtandards made faſt to large ſtaves. The churchmen were all in their prieſtly habits, and made a very fine ſhow. The more inferior prieſts and the monks, to the number of about 200 came on firſt, preceded by ſeveral choriſters and ſinging boys in common habits, with each a book in his hand. On each hand they were guarded with armed ſoldiers, while others with ſtaves attended them to clear the way. After theſe appeared all ſuch as wore the epiſcopal habit, being about 300 in number. The 12 firſt were metropolitans or cardinals, in a habit commonly called *Sackoſſe*. After theſe came four archbiſhops and three biſhops and a great number of archimandrites, or ſuperiors of convents. When about 200 of theſe laſt had gone by, you ſaw every thing theſe prieſts carried in proceſſion, as a pole with a lanthern, repreſenting the light of the word of God, in honour of the pictures of the ſaints, or to give them an air of grandeur. Two cherubims, they call *Lepieds*, at the end of two poles like the former; then two croſſes; a picture of *Jeſus Chriſt*, half-length, almoſt as big as the life; a great book, and then 20 gold and ſilver caps, adorned with jewels, and carried ſeparately, each by a perſon appointed. The ceremony over, the chief of thoſe preſent appeared in thoſe caps, that of the metropolitan being of gold, adorned with pearls and precious 1702. ſtones. The grandeſt of the prelates alſo wear theſe caps, which they call mietris [mitres]. This metropolitan who repreſented the patriarch, came immediately after the great book and had in his hands a great gold croſs, inriched with jewels, which every now and then touched his forehead, and a prieſt had him under each arm to ſupport him. Being in this order got to the ſide of the river, and their ceremonies, which took up a good half-hour, were all over, the metropolitan drew near to the water, and three times dipped the croſs into it ſaying, as the patriarch was wont to ſay, SPACI GOSPODI LUDI TWOYA, I BLAGOSL OWI DOSTOANIA TWOYA. *God preſerve his people, and bleſs his inheritance*. They then returned towards the caſtle, but the 200 prieſts that had preceded as the proceſſion went out, returned not back in the ſame order, but diſperſed. Thoſe who had the ſacerdotal or epiſcopal habit walked back in good order. Among others, I obſerved two men, very poorly dreſſed, with a tub or ſomething of the kind which covered up with a cloth, could not well be diſtinguiſhed. This veſſel was followed by another, and carried in the ſame manner, with a pewter pot full of the water, which having been bleſſed was carried to the caſtle to ſprinkle the apartments, and the paintings. As ſoon as the proceſſion had got in again, they hurried back every thing that had been as a decoration to the water; and I took notice that a *Muſcovite* ſouſed a great broom into the water, and waſhed the ſpectators with it; but they did not ſeem to be a bit the better for it; and in ſhort, I thought there was ſomething ridiculous in this part of the ſolemnity. This proceſſion, which laſted till two in the afternoon, had drawn together a prodigious throng of people, a ſight well worth the ſeeing, if there had been nothing elſe, and had a fine effect upon the river, the caſtle being upon an eminence

1702. eminence we could from thence ſee all the multitude even to thoſe upon the walls. As we were going home again, and had got to the gate of the caſtle, there was ſuch a crowd that we had much ado to get out of it. And indeed our curioſity had like to have coſt us dear, beſides the danger of ſtanding ſo long in the ſnow.

This feſtival was formerly celebrated with much more pomp and ſolemnity than at preſent, it having been cuſtomary for their Majeſties, and the Grandees of ſtate to be preſent thereat. But the preſent Czar has made great alteration in this, as well as in every thing elſe. We ſhall talk more about this in the ſequel.

The *ninth* of this month it began to thaw, and even to rain, the weather being much more open, than had been known for many years before.

Rejoicings for the victory over the *Swedes.* Upon the *eleventh*, there were great doings for the victory his Majeſty's arms had obtained of the *Swedes.* There was a great fire-work on one ſide of the caſtle, in the middle of the *Bazat* or market place; which is very low and pretty ſpacious; and it extended from one end of the place or ſquare to the other. They ran up a great boarded building, full of windows towards the caſtle, in which his Majeſty entertained the principal Lords of his court; the foreign Miniſters were there alſo, and particularly him of *Denmark*, and the Reſident of *Holland*, together with a great number of Officers, and many merchants from *beyond-ſea.* To ſhade as well as to adorn this building, there were three rows of branches like young trees, planted before it. The entertainment began at two in the afternoon, and at ſix in the evening they began to play the fire-work which turned till nine. It was raiſed upon three great tables or theatres of wood, very lofty and ſpacious, on which they had ſeveral figures, nailed to planks and painted of a brown colour. The deſign of this fire-work was after a new manner and different from all of the kind I had ever ſeen before. There was in the middle on the right hand, a figure of time, twice as big as the life, with an hour-glaſs in his right, and a palm-branch in his left, hand, which was likewiſe held by fortune on the other ſide with this inſcription in the *Ruſſian, God be therefore praiſed.* On the left hand towards the boarded-building where his Majeſty was, there was a trunk of a tree which a beaver was knawing with theſe words, *By perſeverance he ſhall be unrooted.* Upon the third ſtage, on the other ſide, there was another trunk of a tree with a young branch ſprouting from it, and not far off a very calm ſea, upon which appeared a half-ſun, which being lighted up looked reddiſh, with this device, *Hope now appears again.* Between theſe ſtages there were little ſquare pieces of fire-works, which continued to burn and were not without their devices. The ſecond of theſe ſmall fires, near which I happed to be, and which was lighted firſt by his Czarian Majeſty, repreſented a croſs with four arms, the third a vine-branch, the fourth a bird-cage, with different devices. As theſe were all illuminated after the manner of our country, it was eaſy to ſee what they were meant for. There was moreover in the midſt of this place a great *Neptune* aſtride upon a dolphin, and by him ſeveral ſorts of fire-works upon the ground, ſurrounded with piles to which caſes or fuſes were fixed, which had a very fine effect, ſome of them forming a golden ſhower, and others throwing out ſtars. When they were upon the point to ſet fire to theſe works, ſeveral of the eccleſiaſtics and other perſons of diſtinction in the boarded building with his Majeſty, came out and went thence into a covered place, in the midſt of all this machinery to perform ſome ceremonies. There was a guard of ſoldiers over the gate of this lodge or building, adorned with a number of ſtandards. In a word, there is no expreſſing the multitude

1702. titude of people gathered together upon this occasion. The *Czar*'s sister also was present at this sight, and was with several Ladies, upon a tower at one end of this market-place. Another tower there was, one of the highest in this part of the town, illuminated from top to bottom. The great stages we formerly mentioned burned each of them above a quarter of an hour. At the same time we heard the noise of the artillery, which had been discharged before the entertainment. When the fire-works were over, the tables were covered again. I withdrew to the slabode, where at ten at night I again heard the report of 90 great guns, and many afterwards. What was to me the most extraordinary, upon such an occasion as this, and in such a crowd, there was not the least disorder; which indeed must be attributed to the care that was taken to dispose of soldiers and guards so as might best prevent any thing of the kind. There were, however, some *French* officers who had a quarrel among them, and began to handle their swords, and made a great noise near his Majesty's lodge; to prevent the consequences of which there was a post put up near the *Dutch* church, in the slabode of the *Germans*, to which were tied a sword and an ax, with the papers affixed in *Russian*, *Latin* and *German*, forbidding any person whatsoever to draw a sword, or fight a duel upon pain of death. 1702.

CHAP. VI.

A severe Execution at Moscow. *The magnificent Wedding of one of the* Czar's *Favourites. The Author is admitted into the Presence of the Empress, the Widow of his Majesty's Brother.*

1702. Jan. 19. *A severe execution.* UPON the *nineteenth* of this month there was a terrible execution at *Moscow*. A woman who had killed her husband, was condemned to be buried alive, up to the shoulders; and having the curiosity to look at her in this condition, I thought she looked very fresh and of a good countenance. About her head and neck they had tied a white linen cloth, which she got to be undone because it bound her too much. She was guarded by three or four soldiers, who had orders to suffer nothing to be given to her, either to eat or drink that might prolong her life. But the people had leave to throw into the pit where she was buried, certain little *Kopykkes* or pence, which she gave thanks for by a motion of her head. The money thus bestowed, is commonly laid out in little tapers, which are lighted up in honour of certain saints, they call upon, and partly in a coffin. I know not whether those who have the guard of these unhappy women, may not seize on a part of it themselves, to allow them some refreshments in private; for some of them live a good while in this condition; but this died the second day after I had seen her. Upon the same day there was a man burnt alive, for some crime which I know not. I shall in the sequel speak more amply of the administration of justice in this country, and therefore shall proceed with my narration according to the order of time.

Upon the *twenty-sixth*, they celebrated the marriage of a certain favourite of the *Czar*'s, called *Fielaet Prienewitz Souskie*, a *Muscovite* Nobleman, *A solemn wedding.*

1702. bleman, with the *Knezna*, or Princess *Mary Swrjovena Schorkofskaja*, sister of the *Knez Eedder Swrewitz Schorkofskaja*, a favourite also with his Majesty. To this solemnity this Prince invited the principal Lords and Ladies of the court, and the foreign Ministers, and some of the *beyond-sea* Merchants and their wives. All that were invited were ordered to dress after the ancient manner of the country, more or less richly, according to the regulation in that case prescribed. The wedding was in the slabode of the *Germans*, at the hotel of General *le Force*, who had some years been dead. It is a great building, after the *Italian* mode, and you go up to it by steps to the right and the left, because of its extent; and in it are magnificent apartments, and a very fine salon, which was hung with rich tapestry, and the place of the solemnity. Here you saw two great leopards with a chain about their necks, and with their fore paws upon an escutcheon all of massy silver; as also a large globe of silver upon the shoulders of an *Atlas* of the same metal, besides great vases, and other pieces of plate which had been partly brought from the *Czar*'s treasury. The place they were to meet at, for the cavalcade, was in the city, near the castle, in two great buildings opposite the one to the other. The Great Duke, and all the guests repaired to these early in the morning, the men in the one, the Ladies in the other. They came out about ten of the clock to go to the castle, in the middle of which I had got to have a sight of this cavalcade, which appeared the finer, as the weather was very fair. First came the *Czar* himself upon a proud black courser, he was habited in a most magnificent cloth of gold; his upper garment or robe was intermixed with many figures of several colours, and on his head he had a great red fur cap. His horse was richly caparisoned with a fine gold housing; having upon each fore-leg a silver hoop of four inches broad. The majestic air of this Prince, who is a good figure on horseback, added not a little to the splendor of the sight, which it must be owned, was quite royal. On his left hand he had the Prince *Alexander Danielewitz de Menzikof*, dressed in the same gold stuff, and mounted upon a very fine steed, nobly adorned, and with silver hoops about his legs like those of his master's horse. The principal *Knezes* or Princes followed two and two according to their rank, all on horseback, and dressed the same, to the number of 48. The *Czar* being in this manner come to the castle, he there stopped to wait for the rest, in the mean time making his horse prance and curvette. He was near the gate of the *Ewaritz*, or the court, where are his own apartments, and overhead was the Princess his sister, the Empress widow of the late Czar, and her three daughters who all sat in an open place. When he went under this gate, the Princesses saluted him with a most profound respect, and he took care to return the compliment to the full. All these Nobles being thus passed on, by two and two, there advanced a number of lights, surrounded by a great body of footmen; and then 120 of the chiefs of the court, two and two, and clad like the former. These were followed by goosts or customers, our Resident, and the foreign Merchants, whose habit and caps were quite different from the rest. They had indeed yellow boots, but their caps were low and common, and nothing at all for magnificence, compared with the others. These were to the number of 34; so that in this cavalcade we may reckon there were 204 persons all for the most part richly equipt. Many of their horses had silver bits, and some of them had chains of the same, two fingers broad, pretty thick, and hung from the top of the horse's head to the bridle and fastned to the pummel of the saddle, which made an agreeable jingle. There were some who had them quite flat and only of plate-tin. After these there appeared

1702. peared five ſledges, in the three firſt of which were the three *German* doctors, and in the two others, the two moſt ancient merchants of our country. Theſe were followed by a great chariot or waggon covered with red cloth, and deſigned for the two Empreſſes. Thus it is the *Ruſſians* call thoſe his Czarian Majeſty is pleaſed to appoint to appear, as Ladies of the ſtate, in this ceremony and ſuch like it. The firſt of the Ladies, the wife of the *Knez Fudder Scuſerwitz Romodanoski*, who commands in *Moſcow* in the abſence of the Czar, was indiſpoſed, and could not be there; ſo that the other, the wife of *Ivanawitz Boeterlien* appeared alone. Upon her head ſhe had a ſmall white high-crowned felt with a narrow brim, with two maids of honour ſeated oppoſite to her in the chariot, waggon, or coach, which was drawn by twelve white horſes, and ſurrounded with ſervants in red. This was followed by twenty five others ſmaller, but covered the ſame with two white horſes, in one of which was the bride, and *Ruſſian* Ladies in the reſt. Among theſe there was an ugly little ſledge, faſtned to the tail of a poor creature of a horſe, and in it a little mean-looking fellow, of a piece with his carriage and dreſſed like a *Jew*. I gueſſed he was drawn in this manner for ſome crime he had committed, and ſo I afterwards underſtood it to have been from people that knew him, and that it was really to puniſh him that he made this figure; he being it ſeems a Jew by extraction tho' he had turned to the chriſtian faith. There came after theſe ſeven other ſledges filled with Ladies of our nation, followed by ſome empty chariots which cloſed the proceſſion; which in this order went through the caſtle, and a part of the city as far as the church of *Bogojaſtenja* or of the *Annunciation*, where the marriage ceremony was performed in the preſence of the Czar, and many perſonages of that illuſtrious aſſembly. My curioſity being thus ſatisfied, I returned to my lodging, and afterwards pitched 1701.
upon a good place in the ſlabode, that I might ſee them go to the place where they were to have the feaſt. They did not come till three in the afternoon, being then to the number of 500 as well men as women, who went into different apartments where the two ſexes could have no ſight of each other. The Empreſs Dowager, the Czar's ſiſter, and her three daughters were at one table with ſome Ladies at court. The bride was at another with other Ladies; and ſhe that repreſented the Empreſs was alone and raiſed above the reſt. The other Ladies, as well *Ruſſian* as others, were in another apartment; and the muſic was ſo placed as to be heard by every body. After the repaſt, which was a royal one, and laſted ſeveral hours, the bride and bridegroom were conducted to the place where they were to conſummate the marriage, at a little diſtance from the houſe upon the river *Yuſa*, being a ſmall building erected on purpoſe; and where they had an ordinary bed prepared for them. Moſt of the company diſperſed between ten a clock and midnight; though a great part of them ſtaid in the ſlabode, in houſes prepared and appointed for them, by order of the Czar, that the *Ruſſians* might the more eaſily meet together the next day at the ſame place, from thence to go to the hotel of the Major General *Meneſius*, whoſe widow was ſtill alive. She who repreſented the Empreſs went thither in the night, and the bride went thither early the next morning. The Czar alſo moved towards it about ten of the clock without the attendance of the ſtrangers, and having been there about an hour, he went in good order to ſee Mr. *Lups*, who waited for him at the door, attended by ſome of the merchants of our nation. He there ſtopt a little with his train, but alighted not from his horſe, though he was well regaled with liquors.

A pleaſantry.

I cannot forbear to mention one thing which contributed much to the mirth of this company: The

1702. bridegroom was upon a very fine horſe, and another Lord was upon a mare full as beautiful; both of them warm, and prepared for what was to happen. The horſe failed not to cover her, and the cavalier upon her was ſo dextrous as to get off unhurt, while the bridegroom kept his ſaddle all the time of the action, which cauſed a great laughter among the ſpectators. They would have done this before, but could not bring it about. The Czarian Prince then appeared on horſeback, attended by ſeveral young Lords of his own age, a groom leading his horſe by the bridle. He was followed by the bride's chariot, and hers by the great one with twelve horſes, with the Lady that repreſented the Empreſs; and this, by many others, full of *Ruſſian* dames. When they came to the palace where the wedding was to be celebrated, and where I had taken care to be by going another way, his Majeſty went in firſt, and was followed by the bride, who went into another diſtinct ſet of apartments on the left-hand, and where formerly lived general *le Fort.* The great chariot ſtopped to make room, it being difficult for it to go on becauſe of its height, and not able to turn the place was ſo narrow. In the midſt of this the young Czarian Prince alighted, and ſtood by the ſide of the chariot, and ſo he continued till it went in, which it did not without ſticking at top. After this the Prince croſſed the court of the palace, and the Empreſs alighting from her vehicle, went up ſome ſtairs on the right-hand. The ſtrangers and their wives repaired thither alſo, and ſtaid much as they did the night before. The third and the laſt day it was reſolved to appear in the *German* dreſs, and every body did ſo, except ſome of the *Ruſſian* Ladies: and thus they repaired again to the new married couple, but ſeparately. The men and the women ſat at table together, as the cuſtom is with us; and there was dancing and ſkipping about, after the entertainment, to the great ſatisfaction of the Czar himſelf, and all his guests: and thus ended a ſolemnity, which being ſo ſingular as it is, I concluded every body would be curious to know as much of it as they could. 1702.

Upon the *ſecond* of *February* they brought a part of the *Swediſh* priſoners, mentioned before, in ſledges. Upon the *fourth* they came for me to wait on the Czar, who was at the palace of his great favourite Prince *Menzikoff.* This palace is called *Semennoſtkies*, the name of a village, a mile and half from the *Slabode*, where I found his Majeſty employed in trying of ſome fire ingines lately arrived from *Holland.* This Prince perceiving me, called me to him, and went again into the palace. *Well*, ſays he, *you have ſeen many ſtrange things, and yet I will venture to ſay you never ſaw any thing like what you are going to ſee.* He then ordered a poor *Ruſſian*, who had been brought on purpoſe, to open his cloaths. I trembled at the ſight; he had an excreſcence beneath the navel, of about the length of a hand, and four inches in ſubſtance, from whence went out all the food he eat; and the poor wretch had been nine years in this condition. This diſaſter happened from the cut of a knife, which had ſo irritated the parts about the common paſſage, that there was no cure to be had. I frankly confeſſed I had never ſeen any thing like it, but ſaid I knew a man who voided his food by his mouth, at which he ſeemed to be not leſs ſurprized. He then ordered this poor man's excreſcence to be ſqueezed, that I might be the more ſenſible of the nature of his caſe, and every thing came out half digeſted. The patient was about thirty five years of age. Having diſcourſed with his Majeſty about two hours, and been regaled with liquors, he left me, and Prince *Alexander* came up to me. He told me the Czar having heard I could paint, was deſirous I ſhould do the pictures of the three young Princeſſes, the daughters of the Czar *Ivan Alexowitz*

The author appears before the Czar.

An extraordinary caſe.

1702. *witz* his brother, who had reigned jointly with him till he died, which happened upon the *twenty ninth* of *January* 1696, and that it was the chief reaſon I had been ſent for to court. I gladly accepted of the honour, and went with this Lord to wait upon the Empreſs, the mother of theſe young Ladies, at a houſe of pleaſure belonging to his Majeſty, called *Iſmeilhoff*, moſt agreeably ſituated, about a league from *Moſcow*, that I might have a ſight of them before I began my work. When I had approached the Empreſs, ſhe aſked if I could ſpeak the *Ruſſian* language; to which Prince *Alexander* anſwering in the negative, they talked together for ſome time: This Princeſs then filled out a little cup of brandy, which ſhe preſented to the Prince, who drinking it off, delivered the cup to one of her maids of honour: She filled it out a ſecond time, and the Empreſs preſented it to me herſelf: She alſo gave us a glaſs of wine, as did alſo the three young Princeſſes. After this a great glaſs of beer was filled out, which the Empreſs again preſented to Prince *Alexander*, who, having taken a ſip, returned it to the maid of honour: The ſame ceremony was obſerved with regard to my ſelf, and I juſt touched it with my lips; for in this court it would be taken much amiſs to empty the laſt glaſs of beer that is preſented. I then talked a while with Prince *Alexander*, who ſpeaks pretty good *Dutch*, upon the ſubject of pictures; and when we went out the Empreſs and the three young Princeſſes gave us their right-hands to kiſs, the higheſt honour that can be received in this country. Some days afterwards there were great nuptial doings at the palace of Prince *Menzikof*, for ſome belonging to the Czar, who was there preſent with the Prince his uncle, and ſeveral Lords and Ladies of the court; nor were ſome of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Merchants and *German* Ladies uninvited. The table, in form of an horſe-ſhoe, was ſpread in the great hall, and the Czar and the *Ruſſian* Lords were on one ſide, and the Ladies on the other. The Czarian Prince, Prince *Alexander*, and the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* merchants were at a round table in the middle of the hall, at which I had the honour of a ſeat. After a magnificent repaſt there was dancing after the *Poliſh* manner; the muſic, which was very good, being on the left-hand.

The author appears before the Empreſs.

Rejoicings at weddings.

Prince *Alexander* went away that ſame evening, in order to ſpend ſome days in the country, where he had ſome buſineſs. Upon the eleventh Mr. *Panwel Heins*, the Envoy from *Denmark* took a tour to his own country, deſigning to return in the ſpring, and to leave his wife behind him at *Moſcow*. Upon the *fifth* of *March* I had the honour to dine with his Majeſty at *Probroſensko*, the uſual abode of that Prince. After dinner he carried me to the Empreſs's palace, to ſee the pictures of the three young Princeſſes, which were begun, and he entertained her a good while upon the ſubject of my travels. Upon the *eleventh* he went with ſome Lords of his court to viſit Mr. *Brants*, and there he ſaw what I had painted at *Archangel*, and ſeemed to be much pleaſed with them. Talking from one thing to another, this Prince, at laſt, made mention of certain pieces of cannon, which were thought to have the arms of *Genoa*, which, as well as thoſe of *Venice*, are a lion with one paw on a book, upon them. He wanted to be ſatisfied as to this, and reſolved to take a view of them, appointing the palace of the Prince to be the place to meet at for that purpoſe. His Majeſty accordingly came at the time appointed, and Prince *Alexander*, in his name, made a preſent of a gold medal to every one there, who were for the moſt part foreign merchants that he had an eſteem for. Upon this medal his Majeſty was repreſented with a crown of laurel on his head, with this title round him, PETER ALEXOWITZ, GREAT CZAR OF ALL RUSSIA. On the reverſe

1702. were two eagles, with the day of the month, the *first* of *February*, and the year 1702.

Having been here entertained with great magnificence, they returned to *Probrofensko*, which is reckoned to be no better than the abode of a captain, his Majesty not having as yet assumed an higher title. This palace is not above three miles from the city, and not far from that of Prince *Menzikof*. It is also the arsenal of the regiment of his guards; we here saw the three guns mentioned before, upon which there was a lion plain enough, though a good deal worn down. They were very short, and like our mortars. But I do not comprehend how they should have formerly fallen into the hands of the *Russians*.

CHAP. VII.

Magnificent Entertainments given by his Majesty in the Country. Particulars concerning the Empress. His Majesty diverts himself upon the River Moska. *Celebration of* Easter *among the* Russians. *His Majesty's Departure for* Archangel.

WHILE we were looking at these guns, they got every thing ready to go to a village belonging to Prince *Alexander*. It is called *Alexcejeskie*, not far from *Lemuenefskie*, about twelve wersts from *Moscow*, where this Nobleman has a very fine country-house upon the river *Yousa*; a charming place where there are wonderful fish-ponds abundantly restored. But I thought nothing here finer than the stables, large, and made of wood, as well as the house, and containing above fifty very fine horses. We here found some *German* Ladies his Majesty had ordered to be here, to provide some agreeable entertainments. We were ten in all, our Resident, three *English*, and the rest *Dutch*, without reckoning some *Russian* Noblemen and Ladies, to the number of thirteen, including Prince *Alexander*'s sister. We were perfectly welcome, and treated with a supper of flesh and fish. They had spread two tables in a great hall, the one a long one, at which sat the Czar, and several of his Nobles on one side, and the Ladies on the other; the other was a round table in the middle, where sat the *English*, and most of the *Germans*, or *Dutch* rather. After supper they retired to their apartments, the *Russians* on one side, and the Ladies on the other; only the strangers staid some time longer together. The next day there was a feast like the former, with music, consisting of violins, basses, trumpets, hautboys, flutes, &c. Then they danced after the *Polish* manner, the Czar, who was in a very good humour, incouraged every body to be merry; nor was there any forgetfulness about the wine. At night every one withdrew to begin again the next day, which was spent like the former, in all manner of diversions, no one being at all overcome with liquor, and then all returned to their several homes.

Agreeable entertainment.

I then got leave to have the pictures of the young Princesses, which I had painted in large, brought home to my lodging, that I might put the finishing hand to them, the Czar having pressed me so to do, because he wanted to send them somewhere.

I obeyed

1702. I obeyed with all the haste I could, and dress'd them after the *German* mode, in which they commonly appear in public; but the heads, which were left to my choice, I dressed in the antique stile.

Picture of the Empress. Let us now take a view of the Empress, *Paraskowya Feodorofna.* This Princess is not above thirty years old, and is pretty bulky, tho' being tall therewith, it does not much spoil her. It may be even said of her that she is handsome, of a very genteel behaviour, and most engaging manners; and indeed, the Czar has a great value for her. The young Czarian Prince *Alexey Petrowitz* often visits her, and the Princesses her daughters, the eldest of which, *Catharine Iwanoffna*, is but twelve years old; the second, *Anne Iwanoffna*, not above ten; and the youngest, *Paraskowya Iwanoffna*, but eight, all three of them likely children. The second has fair hair, and has a fine complexion; the other two are agreeable brunettes: The youngest is a very sprightly child, and all the three of mild and charming affability. It would be hard to say how many civilities I had heaped upon me in this court while I was at work upon these pictures. They never failed in the morning to present me with liquors and other refreshments, and often they detained me to dinner, and always served up as much flesh as fish, which very much surprized me, because they were then in the midst of Lent. In the day-time they always took care to supply me with wine and beer; and indeed I believe no court, especially such a court as this, was ever so kind to a private man; and I shall retain a grateful remembrance of it as long as I live. Imboldened by all these favours, I presumed to *The author presents his travels to the Czar.* offer a book of my travels, which I had got bound on purpose, to his Majesty in the palace of *Probrosensko*, not doubting of a favourable acceptance, in which I was not at all deceived.

Diversion on the river of Moska. Upon the *twenty ninth* he went in a boat upon the river of *Moska*; he went down against tide, three or four wersts beyond the bridge, passing by the castle, and came up again with the tide, at a great rate, three or four wersts on this side of the same bridge, to which he afterwards returned, and where Prince *Alexander* waited for him, attended by some *English* and *Dutch* merchants, whom he again entertained both with fish and flesh, notwithstanding *Lent* and the *Passion-week*, leaving every one to his liberty, but he and his train eat nothing but meat. 1701.

The month of *April* began with so extraordinary a thaw, that in a very little time there was no ice to be seen; and the river, upon this sudden alteration, swelled to a height it had never been known at in the memory of man. The mills upon the *Yousa* were much damaged, and the ponds over-flowed the low land behind the houses, and laid it under water, and the roads and ways were much in the same condition, which is what often happens in spring time, when the snows begin to melt. The *Slabode* of the *Germans* was in such a pickle, that the horse went up to the girth in mud and mire; which being reported to the Czar, he ordered it to be cleansed, that the dirt that might farther center in this part should be diverted, and turned off. *A great flood.*

Upon the *first*, about six in the morning, a fire broke out at the house of one of our countrymen in the *Slabode*; and the Czar was immediately there to give orders, as he always is upon the like occasions. There is a watch every hour of the night, who never fail to give the alarm upon all accidents of this nature. *The vigilance of the Czar when a fire happens.*

That same day they celebrated the feast of *Easter*, to the great joy of the *Russians*, as well because the desired time was come when Christ was to rise, as because it put an end to *Lent*. You hear the bells all the night before, all the day itself, and the next day. They then begin to give *Easter* eggs, which continues for a fortnight, a custom as well among *Festival of Easter.* *Easter eggs.*

1702. mong the great as the ſmall, the old as the young, who mutually make each other preſents of them; and the ſhops are every where full of them coloured and boiled; the moſt common colour of them being a plum blue, though there are alſo ſuch as are green and white, very neat; ſome are very well painted, and worth two or three rix-dollars; and, in ſhort, many of them have theſe words upon them, CHRISTOS WOS CHREST, *Chriſt is riſen.* Perſons of diſtinction have them at their houſes, and preſent them to ſuch as come to ſee them; at the ſame time kiſſing them upon the mouth, and ſaying, CHRISTOS WOS CHREST, to which the other anſwers, WOISTINO WOS CHREST, *Yea, he is truly riſen.* The middling ſort of people give them to each other in the ſtreets in the manner we have ſaid, and no body refuſes them of what ſex or condition ſoever. Servants alſo carry them into their maſters, who make them a preſent called *Praesnik.* They brought me thirteen or fourteen very neatly coloured by women; and formerly theſe preſents were made a very ſerious buſineſs, but things have lately been much altered in this reſpect as well as the reſt. The *Ruſſians* of quality and foreign merchants have indeed preſented the congratulatory eggs to his Majeſty now on the throne, and have received the ſame from him, but the cuſtom is over.

April 9. *Recreation upon the river* Moska. Upon the *ninth* the Czar recreated himſelf again upon the river *Moska.* The watermen in his Majeſty's ſhallop, and thoſe in that of the Princeſs his ſiſter, were in white ſhirts, after the *Dutch* faſhion, laced down before; and all the foreign merchants had orders, the night before, each of them to get ready two. Theſe boats had two ſmall maſts, that they might ſail if there was wind. They fell down the river from the country houſe of the General *Velt-Marſhal Bories Petrowitz Czeremetof*, oppoſite to his Majeſty's fine houſe, called *Worobjowegoro,* where he had the day before entertained his Majeſty and all his train, conſiſting of the Czarian Prince, the Princeſs, his Majeſty's ſiſter, attended by three or four *Ruſſian* Ladies, a number of Lords and officers of his houſhold, our Reſident, ſome foreign merchants, and about fifteen or ſixteen *German* Ladies. All the ſhallops appeared before the houſe of this Nobleman, being about forty in all, with each ten or twelve oars. The Czar being embarked with all his company, they went down the river at a great rate beyond the bridge, and proceeded to *Kolomnensko,* a country-houſe belonging to his Majeſty, about twenty werſts from *Moſcow* by water, though not above ſeven by land, where they got out about ſeven o' clock, and met with a moſt royal ſupper. The next day they were entertained in the ſame manner, and had muſic; and about three in the afternoon they came back to town, ſome in coaches, ſome in calaſhes, and ſome on horſeback. The next day Mr. *Brandts* entertained his Majeſty, attended by the Reſident of *Holland,* and ſeveral others, *Engliſh* and *Dutch.* They were ſo merry that the Czar ſtaid till eleven at night, and the reſt till two in the morning.

Upon the *nineteenth* I had orders to carry the young Princeſſes pictures to the Empreſs, that ſhe might ſee them now they were finiſhed. I went with Prince *Alexander*'s brother-in-law, but this Princeſs was ſo much out of order that ſhe was even in bed. However I placed the pictures ſo that ſhe might ſee them; ſhe ſeemed to like them, thanked, and preſented me with a purſe of gold, which ſhe delivered to me with her own hand, and did me the honour to give me to kiſs. She then aſked me if I ſhould ſtay long enough in the country to paint them over again; to which having returned an anſwer, one of the young Princeſſes gave us brandy in a little gilt cup, then a glaſs of wine, and ſo we took our leave. From thence I carried the pictures to the palace of Prince *Alexander*, where I packed them up, ſo

1702. as to be fit to ſend away. The ſame night the Czar, attended by Prince *Alexander*, the Patriarch *Mekile Moyſewitz Solof*, keeper of the great ſeal, the firſt Miniſter of ſtate, Count *Fedder Alexewitz Gollowin*, the Sieur *Gabriel Gollofkiem*, the *Knez Gregory Gregoiewitz Roſiodanoſkie*, *Bojar*, the *Knez Tuerje Tuerjewitz Froetbetskoy*, and the *Stolnick*, who waits on his Majeſty at table, attended by theſe he ſet out for *Archangel*.

They clean the ways. Mean time they prepared to clean the ways in the *Slabode*, which they began to do upon the *twenty ſixth*; firſt they threw the dirt up along the ſides of the houſes, that ſo it might be carried off, having made choice of two *Germans* to direct the work; and they acquitted themſelves ſo well of their charge, that at the end of the week the ſtreets and ways were ſo mended, that people began to walk up and down a little.

A flood. Upon the *third* of *May* we had advice from *Archangel*, that the thaw had ſwelled the river there to a moſt extraordinary degree, and that it had done much miſchief; that moſt of the houſes near the fort of the new *Dwinko* had been over-flowed; that the timber and work in his Majeſty's dock-yard had been carried off by it; that a ſhip upon the ſtocks had been turned topſy-turvy by it; that certain ſhips at anchor before the town had been driven againſt the bridge of the palace of the merchants: In ſhort that the water had even mounted up to ſome of the gardens in the city.

The next day they began to remove the dirt in the Slabode, every body having leave to do it at his own expence, and to carry it into his garden to heighten, or to diſpoſe of it elſewhere, as he ſhould think moſt neceſſary and convenient. And the more ſtill to forward this work the *German* merchants met at the hall of the Lords, a fine houſe, well ſeated in a fine garden, where they choſe two other ſurveyors whom they added to the two former; this election was by moſt voices, each 1702. writing down the name of the perſon he was for upon a little bit of paper. To theſe, they added eight others by way of aſſiſtants, and inveſted them with a ſufficient authority.

The *ninth*, being the feſtival of St. *Nicholas*, we had letters from *Holland*, dated the 28th of the month before, with the doleful News of the Death of his *Britannic* Majeſty, *William* the III. of glorious memory, after a ſickneſs of but four days. This cauſed a great conſternation among the ſtrangers, but chiefly among our countrymen, who beſt knew the great worth of that Prince, for whom they put themſelves into mourning for ſix weeks.

Upon the *nineteenth*, we had advice of a great inundation that had happened in *Holland*, that it had drowned ſeveral villages, and been the death of a number of people. It was added the Allies had carried *Keyſerſwaert*.

Upon the *twenty-firſt*, they celebrated the feſtival of *Walla Diemerskai Bogarodieſſa*, a town were they pretend the Virgin *Mary* to have formerly appeared, and which they keep in remembrance in one of the churches of this city, conſtantly upon the *Thurſday* before *Pentecoſt*, which they call *Seemie*. Some of the clergy go that day early in the morning, to a pit or ditch, and caſt into it thoſe that have been murdered, and thoſe that have ſuffered execution, for crimes. Theſe pits, of which there are three or four about *Moſcow*, are filled up every year, and new ones are dug, which was done the night before. That day alſo they buried the Empreſs's mother, who died the day before, for they never keep the dead long above ground, which, is what we ſhall have occaſion to dilate on hereafter. This funeral was without any ceremony. The ſame day, in the morning, a fire broke out at *Moſcow*, and could not be put out before 10 of the clock. Upon the

Feaſt in memory of the virgin *Mary*.

1702. *third* of *June* the like happened at a village not far off, and upon the *fourteenth*, for the third time at *Moscow*. About the same time certain Merchants set out for *Archangel*. 1702.

CHAP. VIII.

Productions of the Earth, Fruits, Country-Houses, Fish-Ponds, and other things the Russians *delight in.* Russian *Hermits in Prison.*

I Went sometimes to take the fresh air in the country with my friends; and one day, in *July*, as I was in the woods I found certain Goose-berries, they call *Costenitsa*, which have a very pleasant acid. The better sort of people eat them with honey or sugar as we do straw-berries, and make a sort of sherbet with them, which is a refreshing liquor for sick folks. The woods about *Moscow* are full of this fruit, which grows in the shade of the trees throughout all *Russia*. The word *Costenitsa* signifies a stoney goose-berry, and to say the truth a stone it has. Every stalk produces three or four others smaller, by which hang the goose-berries in clusters of twenty together, as may be seen in the next Plate letter A. Their leaves are green winter and summer, and

Good goose-berries.



they

1702. they are ripe in *July*. There is also another sort of them, called *Brusnitsa*, larger than the former, and grow single like those goose-berries in our Country, which grow 20 or 30 in a cluster. These do not grow above a span from the ground, and others about half as high again. Great quantities of them are every year carried to *Moscow*, where both strangers and *Russians* lay in a store of them. These last put them into tubs or casks of water, and there leave them all the summer; they then draw it off and drink it, and very refreshing and pleasant it is, especially if you sweeten it with sugar or honey, and they are also eaten by way of refreshment. The *Germans* squeeze the juice out of them, which they boil with honey and sugar to a certain consistence, and use it with their roast-meat, which it relishes most admirably. They keep it also in a little cask, and mix it up with the juice of other goose-berries, a liquor wherewith they regale their friends, and is very grateful to the palate. The leaf of these is like that of the rose, as you may see in letter B, and is an ever green.

Productions of the earth. *Russia* naturally produces roots and greens in abundance. They have cabbages they call *Kopoffe*, which they store up, and which the poor eat twice a day; cucumbers also, called *Ougertsie*, which they eat like apples and pears, and are stored up for all the year round, even by the most considerable people. This Country in like manner, produces abundance of garlic, which they are very fond of, as may be smelt at a distance. They call it *Siasnok*. Horse-radish called *Green*, is there very common, and they make good sauces of it, both for fish and flesh. Turneps they have of several sorts, as also red cabbages, and colly-flowers which strangers have brought among them for some time past. You have asparagus there also and artichokes, but nobody eats them but strangers. And the same it is with some things that grow under ground: We taught them the culture of the carrot, parsnip, and beet-root, 1702. of which they have now great plenty, as also of salleting and cellery, to them before unknown, but now admired by them. The places about *Moscow* produce plenty of strawberries, especially of the small sort; the larger they eat in the hand. They have rasberries also, and plenty of a large sort of melon; they are very large, but too watery, not very unlike our cucumbers, and produce no great quantity of seed.

Fruit trees. As for fruit-trees, they have many small-nuts, and a few wall-nuts. Their apples are good, and pleasant to look at, as well the sweet as the sour: I have had some of them so transparent you might see the Kernels in them. It is otherwise with the pears, which are more scarce, and not so good; besides they are small. The same indifference may be expressed of their plumbs and cherries, excepting those in the gardens belonging to the *Germans*; they are very neat, full of good goose-berries, and many kinds of flowers; but the gardens of the *Russians* are wild, artless, and void of ornament. *Gardens of the country.* Fountains and jetteaus are there unknown, though they have water in abundance, and it were easy to have them, and at a very small expence. They begin however, to change in this respect, as well as in that of their buildings, since the Czar has been in our provinces. The *Knez Daniel Gregoritz Serkaskie* has a garden in the *Dutch* taste, near his village, called *Sietjove*, about 13 wersts from *Moscow*; it is pretty large, and neat enough; tho' we must not forget he had a gardener from *Holland*; and indeed it is the finest garden in all the country. Upon the whole there are but few curiosities in *Muscovy*. *Ponds full of fish.* The great beauty of their country-houses, is in their fish-ponds, which are admirable. You have often two or three of them about a house, spacious and full of fish, which they are very fond of; and when any of their friends come to see them, the first thing they do, is to divert them with nets thrown into the water, and sometimes at a

1702. cast they shall catch as much fish as would fill 20 or 30 dishes, and sometimes more.

I shall never forget a party of pleasure I had with some *Dutch* Ladies, with whom I went to pay a visit to Mr. *Stresenof*, a rich man, who lived at the village of *Fackeloof*, 15 wersts from *Moscow*, where he received us very courteously. This gentleman had an handsome wife, a mighty good natured sort of a woman, who did all she could to make us merry. The house was well built, full of fine apartments, and what is remarkable, it had a kitchen after the *Dutch* manner, a very neat one, where our Ladies dressed some dishes of fish after our manner, though we had a good provision of cold meat, beside a score of dishes of fish in the *Russian* way, with good sauces. After dinner they carried us into a room where hung several ropes by the beams. These were to swing in, the usual pastime of the country; and accordingly the Lady of the house took her turn at it, being swung by two waiting maids, who were pretty enough; while she was swinging she took a child in her lap, and began to sing with her maids very agreeably, and in a most obliging manner; begging we would excuse her, assuring us she would have sent for music, had she had time enough. When we had thanked her for her favours, she carried us to the pond, and ordered them to get us some fish to carry fresh home with us. We took leave of our kind entertainers, and got into our coach prodigiously well pleased with them.

On one side of this village I perceived a tree of extraordinary size, with wide spreading branches, finely proportioned with a trunk of three fathom and a half in circumference; it was a white poplar which the *Russians* call *Asina*.

Most of the strangers have gardens behind their houses, or in the country, where they carefully cultivate several sorts of fruits and flowers, which they send for from home. The beds in the gardens are bordered with plank instead of box, and as the country in itself is defective as to flowers, those in the woods being very indifferent, we cannot please the *Russians* better than by giving them nose-gays when they come to see our gardens. There are however some curious people, among the better sort, who have the like, and endeavour to cultivate flowers. 1702.

Manners of the Russians.

Their manners are remarkable enough: When they pay a visit, and go into a room they do not say a word, but look about for the picture of some saint, wherewith their rooms are always hung; they make three low bows to it, and making several signs of the cross they say *Gospodi Pomilus* "Lord have mercy upon "me;" or *Mier Esdom Zjeiewoeso-non* "Peace be to this house, and "to those that dwell therein;" again making signs of the Cross: Then they salute the people of the house, and speak to them. This is a custom they observe even when they go to see strangers, addressing themselves to the first picture they see, for fear they should not pay the first honours to God, as they ought. Their greatest diversion is hawking, and coursing with greyhounds; and they are under good regulations as to this matter, the number of dogs every one may keep being fixed according to his rank; and besides these their private diversions are but few. Their musical instruments for the most part, are the harp, the kettle-drum, the bag-pipe, and the hunting-horn. They take great delight in being with mad people, or such as are deformed, or deep in liquor, when they happen to be so to excess. When they entertain their friends, they sit down to table at ten in the morning, and part at one in the afternoon to go home to sleep, and this they do winter and summer. Their manner of writing is very odd; they take the paper in their left hand, and put it upon their knees and write in that posture; there are however some of them who begin to write like us,

Their manner of writing.

1702. and particularly in their offices. Their manner of sewing is also different from ours; they put the thimble upon the first finger, and with that and the thumb, they pull the thread to and fro, directly opposite to our manner. They use their feet also, which are commonly bare, upon this occasion, and will hold their work between their toes, as well as we can between our knees, or by pinning it fast. But I must own I have seen them do otherwise.

Their manner of sewing.

Russian Hermits.

In the beginning of *July*, I went with a friend to *Probrosensko*, to see three hermits, who had been prisoners there for four or five days. They had lived somewhere about *Asoph*, upon the banks of a small river that falls into the *Danube*. I was surprized at the sight of them; the oldest was about seventy, and the other two seemed to be about fifty. The first had lived forty years in that place, in the hollow of a rock, where he had been once taken by the *Tartars* and sold to the *Turks*; but making his escape in a little while afterwards, he returned to his hermitage, where he had passed his days ever since. They said he was accused of straying from the *Russian* faith; but he denied the charge, desiring he might be examined, and declaring he was ready to suffer the greatest torments for the glory of *Jesus Christ*, though he could neither write nor read. They had nothing on but a dark coarse gown; their hair hung half way down their backs, was never combed, and so covered their faces, there was no seeing them without putting the hair aside; in short they looked like very savages. Upon the breast they had a great iron cross, that weighed four pounds at least; it hung by two bands of the same metal, which went over their shoulders, fell down behind the back, and were hooked to another of the same metal, which served for a girdle and was joined before beneath the cross upon the breast. The two others expressed so great a veneration for the old man, that they supported him under the arms, whenever he rose up, as he did when we came to him. They were to have continued in this prison till his Czarian Majesty should return; they were together, they had no irons on, and sat in an open place upon some mats in a corner, and at some distance from the rest. The prisoners in the same place were most of them chained by the foot, but with so short a range they could hardly stir, and had each of them a keeper within, besides those without, to prevent their escaping. This prison was made of good lofty timbers, small, square, and open at top; tho' there were some covered places in it. I had a great mind to take a second view of these hermits, but was told they were removed to a neighbouring house, and that they were to stay till farther orders. 1702.

Victory over the Swedes.

Towards the end of this month advice came of another victory over the *Swedes*. The Empress sent for me a little afterwards to paint the young Princesses a second time in great and habited as before. I would fain have avoided the task, and humbly besought she would excuse me, pretending I was under a necessity to pursue my travels; but perceiving she was a little out of humour at it, I, for many reasons, resolved to satisfy her, and began the work without loss of time.

The Author paints the young Princesses a second time.

Upon the *fifth* of *June* the merchants, that were left at *Moscow*, went from thence to *Archangel*. We attended them, as the custom is, ten wersts out of the town, to a village upon the *Yousa*, where there were tents spread under them to pass some time with several Ladies: at length drinking to their good journey we returned to the city as we came.

He kills a crane and eats it.

Some days afterwards, as I was walking in the garden behind our house, with a gun in my hand, as my custom often was, to kill snipes and ducks upon the pond or river *Yousa*, I perceived a crane in the air over my head: I loaded my piece with a ball, the common bird shot not being enough to kill so large a bird, and had the good luck to bring

1702. him down into the pond. This was remarkable enough, there being but few or none of these birds in this part, though there are those who have them in the country for their pleasure, but they send for them from elsewhere. I had him roasted, but he tasted of the fen. 1702.

CHAP. IX.

Description of Moscow. *Number of the Churches and Monasteries of this City, with many other Particulars.*

IT is now high time to speak a little more particularly concerning the states of his Czarian Majesty, who, with his own mouth, gave me full leave to write what I should think proper on this subject, so I confined myself within the limits of truth.

I shall begin with the city of *Moscow*, which I took a view of from the top of one of this Prince's palaces, called *Worobjowa*, a wooden building of great extent, and two stories high. On the groundfloor it contains 124 rooms, and, I dare say, there may be as many above, and is surrounded with a wooden wall. It stands upon an eminence opposite to the nunnery of *Dewitse*, on the other side of the river *Moska*, three wersts from *Moscow* to the westward. I had some days before been entertained there, together with some others, and some Ladies, by Prince *Alexander*'s brother-in-law. The Czar had pitch'd upon this place as the most proper for my design, and indeed so it was; but the Princess, his Majesty's sister, having taken it for the summer, I begg'd this Gentleman, the Prince's brother-in-law, to favour me so far as to go with me, to communicate his Majesty's order to her. She answered, I might come when I would, but desired I would bring but one person with me. I went several days together, and performed my task, with water-colours upon paper, from one of the windows of the palace, as may be observed in N°. 12. From hence you had a prospect of every thing in the town and about it, and every particular is carefully distinguished by numeral figures as follows: (1) The new monastery of *Dewits*, or of the maids; (2) The quarters of a regiment of foot; (3) *Worstruki*, or the porter's lodge; (4) A place called *Suschowa*; (5) The cloister called *Nowinskoy Monastir*; (6) *Sawinskoy Monastir*, so called from St. *Sawin*; (7) The church of *Nicolay-na Rhipach*, dedicated to St. *Nicolas*, and so called for that reason; (8) The church of *Blagowsischena*, or the annunciation of the *Virgin Mary*; (9) *Dewits Monastir Strathnoi*, or convent of the maid of suffering; (10) *Ultretenskoia Bachna*, or the tower of the gate of *Ustretens*; (11) *Potrosschey Monastir*, or convent of St. *Peter*; (12) The palace or castle; (13) *Troitska Baschna*, the name of the tower of the church without the palace; (14) The church of *Saboor*, that is the principal church in the city, or where there are most reliques; (15) *Iwan Weliek*, or the high tower of the castle; (16) *Izerkof Philatowa*, or the fine church built by *Philatowa*; (17) The church called *Wassoasenja Boroschak*; (18) *Kodaschewa*, or the place of his Majesty's weavers in linen cloth, on one side of the church; (19) The church of St. *Nicholas*; (20) *Glym Borock*, or the church of *Elias*; (21) *Tugauni*, a church so called from the place it is built in; (22) *Anduanof Monastir*, or the monastery dedicated to *Andronius*; (23) The fine convent


1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

MOSK

9
10
13
15
14
1
11
12
29

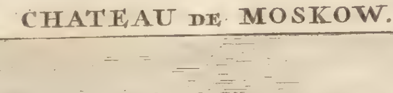
OW




22
23
24
25
26
27
28
30

1702. vent called *Spas-Novoy*, or of the new Savior; *(24)* The palace of the cloister of *Krutisch*; *(25) Donsko Monastir*, or the convent of the *Donsche*, mother of God: *(26) Spasa-Novoj Monastir*, or the new cloister dedicated to our Savior; *(27)* The convent of *Andrew*; (28) The cloister of *Daniel*, called *Danilofski Monastir*; (29) The river of *Moska*; (30) *Worobjowa Gora*, or the hill of *Sparrows*.

Authors misinformed as to this City. Some authors will have it that *Moscow* was formerly as big again as it is now; but upon due enquiry I find it is now greater than ever it was, and that it never so abounded with stone buildings as it does at present, the number of which increases every day. This city is in 55 degrees 30 minutes of northern latitude, and is indifferently called *Moscow*, *Mosko*, *Muskow* and *Moscua*. It stands in the southern parts, and nearly in the center of *Russia*, or of *Muscovy*, upon the little river of *Moska*, whose 1702. name it borrows. It is three good leagues in circumference, without the earth-wall, and has twelve gates: *The bigness of it.* *Its gates.* (1) That they call *Potroffe Warate*, or the gate of *Potroffe*, a whole street of the same name, and stretches away to the *Red-wall* or *Kitai*. (2) The gate of *Mesuite*, which has a street of the same name; these two gates which are of stone belong to the stone-wall. The (3) is called the *Ustretense Bralon*, and is properly no more than a way leading to the gate of the city of that name, for there is no gate on that side, in the earth-wall, there is only an opening. The *(4) Petroffe*, where there is a street the same which leads to the city. The *(5) Twerkske*, where there is a street the same. The (6) *Mekitse*, with a street the same. The (7) *Arbatse*. The *(8) Preszikhwetsche*, formerly called *'t Zertelse*, with a street also. The (9) *Dreswetsche*, situated the


CHATEAU DE MOSKOW.



same.

1702. fame. The (10) *Kaknetske*, upon the river of *Negliene*. The (11) the fame. The (12) *Taganſe* or *Tanſe*, in the fame manner.

Having taken this round, I the next day went about the wall of the city itſelf, called *Beloy Gorod*, and found it was but an hour and half in circumference. Between each of *The wall.* the gates of the city, juſt now named, there are two towers upon the walls, and between ſome three. They are ſquare, but by no means fit for cannon, and 400 paces from one another. There are but two gates, between which there are none, where his Majeſty has made a garden; ſo that there is no going quite round by the ſide of the wall. *Moſcow* is divided into four parts, the firſt of which is the caſtle or palace *The palace.* called *Viremſgorod*, upon the river *Moska*, which flows to the weſtward, and falls into the *Ocean*, near the city of *Colomna*, thirty ſix leagues from *Moſcow*, and the *Oeca* falls into the *Wolga*, near *Niſi-Novogorod*, a hundred leagues from *Moſcow*. This caſtle is ſurrounded with a high ſtone wall, flanked with ſeveral towers, and the plate above is the fine view of it from the ſide of the river near the great bridge. It has four gates, the *Spakae*, where is the dyal, the *Nikolske*, *Demkamennon-Morlu*, the *Triſwalske*, and the *Taynuski*, and is ſurrounded by a dry ditch down to the river. As there is no cannon in this caſtle, they fire in the arſenal upon the rejoicing days, and plant ſome in the bazat or great market-place before the 1702. court. This caſtle, where the Czar never reſides, is built with blocks June 3. of ſtone, and for the moſt part pretty dark; but the Patriarch has his abode there, and the courts of juſtice, called her Prikaes, are held there. The chief Lords of the court had alſo ſome houſes there, which his Majeſty has laid hands on for himſelf, excepting one. In the midſt of the great court, which is ſurrounded with buildings, you ſee a tower called *Iwan Welike*, or great *John*, where is the great bell which fell in the fire of 1701, and ſplit; they pretend it weighs 266666 pounds, of *Dutch* weight, or 8000 poel, each poel 33 pounds of our country; it was founded in the reign of the great Duke *Gudenon*. You go up by 108 ſteps to the place where it is; theſe ſteps are between two towers, and you ſtill ſee it in the place where it fell; it is of an enormous ſize, has *Ruſſian* characters on the borders of it, and three heads on one ſide, in baſs relief. You go up 31 ſteps higher, and there you have eight other bells in the croſs pieces of the windows of this tower, and nine others 30 ſteps above theſe, hung in the ſame manner, ſome bigger than the other, and ſome two and two, which you get at by wooden ladders, the one of twenty ſteps, the other of ten. From the top of this tower you ſee the city with all poſſible advantage, and the great number of ſtone churches it is full of; the domes and ſteeples of ſome of which being gilt, have a fine effect when the ſun ſhines out; but there is nothing ſo magnificent as the church of *Saboor*. Beſides this, there are many fine buildings of ſtone in this city; where they are now at work upon a new arſenal, a great wooden building, before the gate of St. *Nicolas*, for the preſenting of theatrical pieces. They have even this year ſent for comedians from *Dantzick*, who played ſome pieces at the hotel of the deceaſed General *le Fort* this winter; and the *Ruſſians* have already begun to imitate them, having made a little attempt that way, no great matter, in truth, as you may imagine; but this is certain of them, they do not want a genius; beſides that they are fond of imitation, let it be good or evil; and when they are made ſenſible of any fine manners very different from theirs, they frankly confeſs themſelves out done, though, ſay they, our way is good.

1702. *Heavy bell.* *Several bells.* *Church of* Saboor. *New arſenal.* *Comedians.* *Imitated by the* Ruſſians. *Their genius.*

Having thus ſpoken of this firſt part of the town, I go on to the ſecond, which nearly covers a fourth

2 part

1702. part of the caſtle next to the city. It is called the *Kut Kietay Gorod*, and is in about the midſt of the city in general, and ſurrounded with a high wall of ſtone, called *Kraſnajaſtenna*, or the *red wall*, becauſe it really was of that colour formerly, having been whitened in the reign of the Princeſs *Sophia Alexeſna*, and her younger brothers. The church of St. *Troytſa*, or the *Holy Trinity*, built by an *Italian* architect, and the chief in the city, is within this wall, oppoſite to the caſtle. Here alſo is the great market which daily ſwarms with people, the principal houſes, the merchants warehouſes, and the fineſt ſhops, in particular ſtreets, according to the goods they deal in. The ſame there are, in covered places, for thoſe who ſell cloths, ſtuffs, gold-works, ſilks, furs, and the like. The foreign merchants have alſo their warehouſes there, and go there every day upon the buſineſs of their trade. The artificers and pedlars, or ſmall chapmen, have, like the reſt, ſtreets peculiar to themſelves.

Second part of the town. *The red wall.* *Great Church.* *Market.* *Warehouſes of Merchants.*

The third part or diviſion of the town is called *Beloy Gorod*, or the *white wall*. This and the *Kietay Gorod* entirely incloſe the caſtle to the river of *Moska*, and this alſo has its wall. The ſmall river of *Neglina* goes through it, and has on the one ſide the arſenal, and on the other the great *Kabak*, or houſe where brandy is ſold.

The third diviſion of the Town. *The little River of* Neglina.

The fourth part or diviſion contained within the earth-wall, is called *Skerodum*, or *made in a hurry*, this wall having been raiſed in a very ſhort time, and eſpecially towards the rivers *Moska* and *Neglina*, to keep out the *Tartars* in the reign of the Czar *Fedor Iwanowitz* in 1584. This Prince was the ſon of the Czar *Ivan Weſſielewitz*, the firſt that aſſumed the title of Czar after he had ſubdued to his empire the kingdoms of *Kaſiernof*, *Caſan*, *Aſtracan* and *Siberia*. The word Czar, which is a native of the *Sclavonic*, ſignifies a King and not an Emperor, as ſome authors would have it; the *Sclavonians* writing the word *Keiſer* or Emperor, *Zeſar* or *Kezar*, and the word *Koning* or King, *Karotie*. The *Germans* are likewiſe miſtaken when they imagine the word *Czarietſe* ſignifies *Keiſerin* or Empreſs; it ſignifies no more than Queen. 1702.

Fourth part of the City. *Firſt Czar of* Muſcovy.

Moſt of the ſlabodes or habitations of the *Strelſes*, or military men, are in this part, though they were before wont to be within the circuit of the red and white walls; but the Czar has thought fit to diſlodge them thence on account of their inſolence and frequent mutinies.

Now with regard to buildings, nothing ſurprized me more, than the houſes and rooms they ſell here at market. Theſe houſes or rooms are framed of timbers or trees, which you may take to pieces and carry to where you pleaſe, and ſet them up again preſently. They ſell this ſort of building to the value of one or 200 rubles, each ruble worth five *Dutch* florins, and the rooms in proportion.

Houſes and Rooms ſold at Market.

Beyond the earth-wall you ſee certain ſuburbs, villages and monaſteries, which are all round about the town, ſome of them pretty cloſe and full of people, and ſome of them are even cloſe to the wall. The ſlabode of the *Germans* is not above a mile and half off, and there are many other villages to be ſeen beyond it.

The churches and monaſteries of the city of *Moſcow*, the caſtle, the other diviſions of the city, and near the earth-wall on the outſide are ſo many in number that they reckon no leſs than 679 of them, including chapels. The ſtructure of theſe churches is round like an apple, not as ſome pretend to imitate the vault of Heaven, but to help the chaunt of the Prieſts. Some have imagined the *Ruſſians* attributed a certain virtue to bells, which was ſome how or other agreeable to God; but they are equally miſtaken; they only conſecrate them, and ring them upon holydays before divine ſervice.

Great number of Churches and Monaſteries. *Structure of their Churches.*

The monaſteries at *Moſcow* and about it, have different names; there are two of them in the caſtle, the firſt of men, called *Zudoff Monaſtir*, are

Monaſteries.

1702. or the monaſtery of miracles, and here they intomb the Czarina's and the Princeſſes; the Czars themſelves lie in another place to be mentioned hereafter. The other of theſe monaſteries in the caſtle is for women, and called *Woſneſenskoi*, or of the aſcenſion of Jeſus Chriſt. There are ſome very rich ones too without the ſtone wall of the city, as *Spaskoi Monaſtir*, or that of the Saviour of the world: *Simonofskoi*, dedicated to a Saint called *Andronius: Douskoi*, ſacred to the mother of Chriſt, of whom they tell of miracles performed on the *Don* or *Tanais: Danilof*, or that of *Daniel: Dewitſe*, or the great monaſtery of maids: *Nooinskoi, Slatouſtenskoi*, or that of *Chryſoſtom*: *Iwanofskoi*, or that of St. *John: Roſiheſtrumskoi*, or that of the *Incarnation: Warſonofskoi*, to a certain Saint of that name; *Satzatoi*, or that of the *Reception: Moiſefskoj*, or that of *Moſes: Straſnoi*, or the terrible: *Sawiſenskoi*, ſo called from the place where it ſtands: *Stretenskoi*, or that of the meeting: *Mikolaeſkoi*, or that of St. *Nicolas*, with two others of the ſame name, making in all twenty two monaſteries. The ſtreets of the city are almoſt all of them laid with timbers, or wooden bridges, and are not paſſable in ſummer when it rains, for the mud and dirt there always is upon ſuch occaſions. The number of thoſe who keep ſhop in this city, is ſo very great, that they muſt take up with a ſmall place to do their buſineſs in, which they ſhut up when they come home at night, though there are ſome pretty large ſtreets too: There are alſo ſeveral *Prickaes*, courts or offices, the chief of which is that of *Poſſolſe*, for foreign affairs: the *Roſred*, where they keep the regiſter of the *Ruſſian* Nobility, Governors and other Miniſters; the *Dworets* where they keep the accounts of the Czar's houſhold; the *Poſnew*, or regiſter-office for all the lands in *Ruſſia*; and in ſhort, that of the regiſter of the *Strelſes* or ſoldiery, whoſe number has inconſiderably decreaſed ſince the laſt ſedition. All theſe prikaes are built 1702.
in ſtone, and are full of writers or clerks, in ſeveral apartments that look more like priſons than any thing elſe; and indeed they are not ſeldom converted to that uſe; for there they keep criminals chained in ſeparate places, and even debtors, who walk about there with irons at their heels. The chief clerks have rooms or offices apart, and in ſome of theſe prikaes they ſit at a long table covered with a red cloth like the hangings of rooms. The regiſters of the offices of thoſe who had the charge of foreign affairs, is kept in that of *Moſens*. Thoſe of the lands of the kingdoms of *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*, and the provinces thereunto annexed, in that they call *Kaſans d'Woores*. A new office has been erected for the admiralty called *Ruſchewne*, where they keep a regiſter of the arms. The apothecary is in *Apothecary.*
the ſame place, as well as the regiſter of the names of the goldſmiths in his Majeſty's ſervice, and who receive their pay there. The regiſters of the beſt part of the revenues of the ſtate are in the *Bolſchaia Kaeſna*. The nobility, and the commiſſioners or chief clerks, have their trials in thoſe of *Soednoi Wolodinerskoi*, and *Sudnoi Moskoſkoi*. The duties of the ſeals are paid into that of *Petſutnoi*, and are there regiſter'd. All the religious houſes are ſubject to the prikaes of the monaſteries, and ſpiritual cauſes are adjudged in that of the patriarch, *(viz.)* all caſes of marriage, inheritances, arbitrations, diſputes in families, adulteries and the like. That of *Jamskoi* is the office for regiſtring of the carmen or drivers, imployed every year in his Majeſty's ſervice. When I was at *Moſcow*, theſe eighteen prikaes were all kept in the caſtle, but without there were alſo ſeveral others, as that of *Puſchkariſch* for the regiſtring of canon; the *Sibierſch* for the affair of *Siberia*; the *Rosboina*, where they try for murders and other crimes. The head of theſe prikaes is generally one of the chief favorites, and one of the firſt officers of ſtate, whom

1702. whom the Czar invefts with this dignity by favour, or in reward for fervices. It is a ftep alfo towards the very higheft employs, which are *Officers of ftate.* thofe of *Boyard*, or Counfellors of ftate, who cannot more aptly be compared than with the Grandees of *Spain*, and the Peers of *France*; thofe of *Okolnitfches*, who are thofe that wait on the Czar when he goes out; of the *Doemnie Dworens*, or noble Counfellors; of the *Doemnie Diack*, or Secretaries of the Council; of the *Stolniks*, or Officers of his Majefty's table; of the *Worenes*, or Officers of the court; and of the *Schilfi*, an office fomewhat inferior. The firft of the Nobility, and thofe who have the honour to be related to the Czarina, are raifed to be Spalnicks, or Gentlemen of the bedchamber: After thefe follow the ftewards, the carvers, the cup-bearers, and fo on. His Majefty, fince his return from the *Low-Countries*, has created an order *Order of St. Andrew.* of Knighthood under the patronage of St. *Andrew* the Apoftle, wherewith he has already honoured five Gentlemen. The Count *Fewdor Alexewitz Gollowin*, Boyard, firft Minifter of State, and high Admiral; *Hetman*, the great General of the *Coffacs*; Mr. *Printz*, Embaffador extraordinary from the King of *Pruffia*; the General Velt-marfhal *Boris*, and *Petrowitz Czeremetof*; to thefe he made a prefent of the crofs of St. *Andrew*, with the image of that Saint, fet in diamonds. To the *The Czar an abfolute Monarch.* grandeur of this court we may add, that the Prince is a Monarch abfolute over all his fubjects, that his will is the law, that he may difpofe of the lives and poffeffions of all his people from the loweft to the higheft; in fhort, that his power extends itfelf alfo to things facred, and that he may model the divine fervice, juft as the fancy takes him, which is what other crown'd heads forbear to meddle with, for fear of provoking the clergy.

Punifhments. Having thus fpoken of the rewards beftowed upon merit, and thofe who acquit themfelves handfomely of their duty, either in peace or in war, and have the adminiftration of public affairs, we will now take 1702. fome notice of the punifhments inflicted on crimes. The moft fevere and dreadful is that of the flames; *Burning.* to which purpofe they erect a little fquare wooden houfe, which they load with ftraw within and without; in this the criminal is fhut up when his fentence is pronounced, they then apply the fire, and the unhappy party is prefently ftifled and reduced to afhes. They behead with an ax *Beheading and hanging.* upon a block, and hang as elfewhere. They alfo bury alive up to the fhoulders, as has already been noted. *Burying alive.* Now all thefe executions are performed with fuch filence, that when they happen at one end of the town, the other knows nothing of the matter. As for thofe who are judged to be not quite worthy of death, they punifh them with the knoet, a great leather thong or whip with which they ftrike fo furioufly upon the bare back, as fometimes to put an end to life. Their way of giving this punifhment is pretty odd; for the executioner pitching upon the man who feems to be the ftrongeft and moft robuft of the ftanders-by, mounts the criminal upon his back, *Whipping.* with his arms over the man's fhoulders, and meeting upon his breaft: he then ties his feet, and one of his affiftants taking him by the hair of the head, he gives him the number of ftrokes he is doomed to have, which when well applied, never fail to take off the fkin. Drubbing with a ftick is for leffer crimes; they *Drubbing.* in this cafe lay the criminal flat upon his belly, one fits upon his head, and another upon his heels, while the fentence is executed. When they *Torture.* torture for confeffion, they hang the criminal up, and ftrike him with the aforefaid knoet, and then draw a red hot iron over the wounds he has received: but the moft cruel of all tortures is when they fhave the crown of the head, and drop cold water upon it. The punifhment of *The punifhment of debtors.* infolvent debtors, or of fuch as can and will not fatisfy their creditors is thus: they expofe them without the Prikaes, and at feveral times give them

1702. them three ſtrokes of a cudgel on the ſide of the legs. Thoſe who are indebted to the amount of 100 rubles, or 500 florins, are ſerved in this manner every day for a month together, and thoſe whoſe debts fall ſhort of that ſum, are puniſhed in proportion. And when after all this, they cannot clear themſelves, they make an appraiſement of all they have, and deliver it to the creditors; and in ſhort, if this will not do, they deliver up them, their wives, and children, to the creditors to make them amends by ſervice; for which ſervice they wipe off but five rubles a year for a man, and the half of it for a woman, becauſe they muſt both feed and cloath them; and thus it is that they muſt remain in the ſtate of ſervice till the laſt penny is paid.

They ſay *Moſcow* is in the center and beſt part of *Muſcovy*, 120 leagues from the frontiers all around; 86 from thoſe of *Poland*, and 460 from the empire of *Perſia*, or the town of *Tarku*, which is under the *Muſcovite* on this ſide the *Caſpian*, allowing each league to be equal to an hour. From *Moſcow* alſo to the laſt frontier place belonging to the Czar in *Siberia*, or to the river of *Argoen*, which divides the dominions of this Prince from thoſe of the Cham of *China*, 7600 werſts, or 1320 leagues, and from thence to *Pekin*, the capital of *China*, 2500 werſts, as I have been told by the Sieur *Everhard Isbrants*, who travelled this journey in quality of Envoy from *Ruſſia*. As for *Muſcovy* in general, what the *Latins* call *Ruſſia*, *Nigra*, or *Rubra*, *Black* or *Red Ruſſia*, and ſometimes the *Leſſer Ruſſia*, that is in the ſouthern parts of *Poland* between *Poleſia*, *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, *Tranſilvania* and *Hungary*; while *Ruſſia* is to the northward of the *Red*, and is the largeſt country in *Europe*, lying between the *Jey* ſea, the river of *Jaick*, the *Caſpian* ſea, a part of the *Wolga*, the *Crim* or *Precopian Tartary*, the *Nieper* or *Boryſthenes*, the great Dutchy of *Lithuania*, *Livonia*, *Eſthonia*, *Ingria*, *Sweden*, and the *Swediſh Lapland*. Its chief cities are *Moſcow*, *Wolodimet*, *Novogorod*, *Smolensko*, *Caſan*, *Bulgar*, *Aſtracan*, *Wologda*, *Plekow*, *Reſan*, *Jeroſlaw*, *Pereſlaw*, *Archangel*, and St. *Nicholas*. In the year 1533, this empire of *Ruſſia* was under the Great Duke or Czar *Iwan*, or *John Baſilowitz*, an horrible tyrant, who died in the year 1584. His ſon *Fedor* or *Theodore Iwanowitz*, ſucceeded him that ſame year, and died in the year 1598. *Boris Goudenon* poſſeſſed himſelf of the crown, and died ſuddenly in the year 1605. He was ſucceeded by his ſon *Fedor Boriſſowiſz Gudenon*, who reigned but three months, and was put to death by the falſe *Demetrius* in 1606. He uſurped the throne, and was burnt by the *Ruſſians* after he had reigned a year. He was ſucceeded by *Baſil Zuski*, whom his ſubjects delivered up to the *Poles*, and died in the year 1610. Prince *Uladiſlaus*, the ſon of *Sigiſmond* King of *Poland*, reigned in his ſtead, and in the year 1613. *Michalowitz*, or *Michael Federowitz* of *Romanof*, ſeized on the ſcepter, and reigned till the year 1645. He was ſucceeded by his ſon *Alexius Michalowitz*, who died the 29th of *January* 1676. *Fedor Alexewitz* appeared in his place, and died the 27th of *April* 1682, without iſſue. The *Ruſſians* ſoon after elected his brother *Peter Alexewitz*, and a faction againſt him crowned his brother *Ivan Alexewitz* the ſame year, whom they made a partner in the throne with him. He died on the 29th of *January* 1696.

Situation of Muſcovy.

Chief cities of Muſcovy.

Czars of Muſcovy.

They reckon here but eleven Patriarchs down to the year 1700 (1) *Joff*, (2) *Germogen*, (3) *Ignatius*, whom, however, they do not reckon among the reſt, becauſe he was a *Roman Catholic* under the pretender *Demetrius*, (4) *Philaret*, (5) *Joſaff*, (6) *Joſſiff*, (7) *Nikon*, (8) *Joſaph*, (9) *Peſterim*, (10) *Joachim*, (11) *Advan*; ſince whom no one has been choſen to this day.

Patriarchs.

In the year 1689, there were 44 *Boyars* or Counſellors of State, of the following families, (2) of the Family

Counſellors of State.

2 ly

1702. ly of the *Zerkaſſes*, (3) of that of the *Galithens*, (1) of the *Odoeſskoy*, (3) of the *Ptoſorefskoy*, (5) of the *Sollickowes*, (3) of the *Wruſorey*, (3) of the *Czeremetof*, (1) of the *Dolgoruki*, (1) of the *Bonodanofski*, (1) of the *Trokurof*, (1) of the *Repum*, (1) of the *Wolenskoy*, (1) of the *Koſlofskoy*, (1) of the *Berantenskoy*, (1) of the *Tzerbatof*, (2) of the *Golowins*, (1) of the *Scheyn*, (2) of the *Bakurlino*, (1) of the *Puskin*, (1) of the *Chilkoff*, (1) of the *Stueſchnoff*, (1) of the *Sabakim*, (2) of the *Miloſlafskoj*, (2) of the *Nariulkuns*, (1) of the *Sokoffmus*, (1) of the *Tuſchkoff*, (1) of the *Matunskin*. Theſe ſerve the Czar in his councils, and have the public Adminiſtration of affairs.

The Czar's forces. The troops this Prince commonly keeps on foot amount to 46 or 50 thouſand, beſides ſome regiments of horſe and lances, who are paid out of the royal treaſury, and receive an annual ſtipend in money, in corn and in other neceſſaries. In times of war they ſummon the whole body of the *Ruſſian* Nobility, a potent body, which they compute at 200000, including their ſervants, many of theſe Gentlemen coming attended with 10, and others with 20 perſons, and the leſs conſiderable with two or three.

The revenues of Ruſſia. The principal revenues of *Ruſſia*, which have been already mentioned, ariſe from the skins and furs, corn, leather, aſhes, hemp, matts, tar, tallow and the like. A great ſum ariſes alſo from the *Kabaks*, which are houſes belonging to the Czar, and where they ſell brandy, beer, and mead. The cuſtoms inward amount alſo to a conſiderable deal. From *Archangel* they tranſport into foreign countries *Caviar*, and iſinglaſs, which is the bladder of the ſturgeon, and is taken in quantities at *Aſtracan* and other places on the *Volga*. This ſame iſinglaſs is uſed for the fining down of wine, and 1702. makes a good glue. It is alſo of uſe in dying.

Length of the days and nights. I think it may not be amiſs here to give you the length of the days and nights in *Ruſſia*. The equinox falls out upon the eighth of *September*, and makes the days and nights equal. Upon the *twenty fourth* the day is 11 hours and the night 13. Upon the *tenth* of *October* the day is 10 hours and the night 14. Upon the *twenty ſixth* the day is 9 hours and the night 15. Upon the *eleventh* of *November* the day is 8 hours and the night 16. Upon the *twenty ſeventh* the day is 7 hours and the night 17. Upon the *twelfth* of *December* the days begin to lengthen. Upon the *firſt* of *January* the day is 8 hours and the night 16. Upon the *ſeventeenth* the day is 9 hours and the night 15. Upon the *ſecond* of *February* the day is 10 hours and the night 14. Upon the *eighteenth* the day is 11 hours and the night 13. Upon the *ſixth* of *March* the vernal equinox makes the day and night equal. Upon the *twenty ſecond* the day is 13 hours and the night 11. Upon the *ſeventh* of *April* the day is 14 hours and the night 10. Upon the *twenty third* the day is 15 hours and the night 9. Upon the *ninth* of *May* the day is 16 hours and the night 8. Upon the *twenty fifth* the day is 17 hours and the night 7. Upon the *twelfth* of *June* the days begin to ſhorten. Upon the *ſixth* of *July* the day is 16 hours and the night 8. Upon the *twenty ſecond* the day is 15 hours and the night 9. Upon the *firſt* of *Auguſt* the day is 14 hours and the night 10. Upon the *twenty third* the day is 13 hours and the night 11. Then comes the autumnal equinox and makes the day and night equal again.

CHAP. X.

Change of Faſhions and Manners in Ruſſia. *Triumphal Arches raiſed at* Moſcow. *The Czar's Triumphant Entry for the taking of* Notteburgh.

Changes brought into the Empire. TIME has wrought great changes in this Empire, and eſpecially ſince the Czar's return from his travels. He immediately altered the faſhion of dreſs, as well with regard to the men as to the women, and particularly with regard to thoſe who had dependance on the Court, or enjoyed any office there, not excepting one ſoul, not even children; and the *Ruſſian* merchants and others *Change of faſhions in dreſs.* dreſs ſo as not to be diſtinguiſhed from the people of our country. The ſame year an order was publiſhed, forbidding all *Ruſſians* to appear out of doors, without a coat of the *Poliſh* faſhion, or being dreſſed after our manner. The ſervants to ſtrangers were the firſt that were compelled to this; for if they did not comply, they were ſure to be taken from behind the ſledges, and pay a fine before they had their liberty again; but this did not affect the peaſants and people in the country. As this great alteration may in time blot out the remembrance of the ancient dreſs of the country, I painted the dreſs of the Ladies upon canvaſs, and have given a ſide view of it, that you may the better diſtinguiſh the ornaments behind the head. This you have in N° 13, and the whole figure in N° 14.

It muſt be obſerved that to have the hair uncovered is the ſign of a maid; it would be a kind of infamy for a married woman not to have hers covered. Theſe have a fur cap upon the head, flat at top, and round at bottom, pointed round in form of a crown and inriched with precious ſtones as well at top as bottom. It is a little longer behind than before, and has two points; this cap is called *Tryoegh*.

The ornament upon the head of the young Ladies here repreſented is alſo in form of a crown, or diadem rather, ſet off with pearls, and diamonds, and called *Perewaske*. Some tye a ribbon to it, which they call *Swirtske*; what they wear about there neck *Oſarelje*, and the earrings *Sergé*. The upper garment lined with furs, is called *Soebe*, the garment beneath *Telagree* or *Serrataen*; the ſhift *Roebactis*; the ſleeves of which are ſo wide and ſo plaited that they take up ſixteen or ſeventeen ells of cloth. The bracelets or ornaments for the arms, which fall upon their hands, are called *Sarokavie*. Their ſtockings, which are not to tye up, *Zoelki*; and their ſlippers, which are either red or yellow, with very high and ſharp heels, *Baſmakje*.

Beſides this alteration in dreſs the *Ruſſians* were obliged to ſhave the face, *Beards cut off.* all but the upper lip, and thoſe about the court, as well as ſome others, do not even ſpare that. That this order might be executed to the utmoſt, there were perſons imployed to cut off the beards of all manner of perſons without diſtinction; this ſeemed ſo very ſevere to ſome that they offered to dazzle the eyes of thoſe, who had this extraordinary commiſſion, with money; but to no purpoſe, for they immediately met with others who would give them no ſort of quarter. And this was even done at the Czar's table, and every where elſe, to people even of the very firſt quality; nor it is to be conceived what grief it cauſed; many there were who could not be comforted for the loſs of their beards; their beards which they had worn ſo long, and looked on as marks of honour and diſtinction; numbers there were who would

1702. would have given any thing in the world to have been free from the power of this deſtructive law.

Alterations in dreſs however have not been ſo very extraordinary among the women, excepting among the higher ſort, who dreſs juſt as the women do with us.

But to effect all this thoroughly at the beginning, it was neceſſary to ſend for hats, ſhoes, and the like, from beyond-ſea; but as this was both inconvenient and chargeable, the *Ruſſians* began to imitate thoſe things, ill enough, as you may believe in the beginning; but they did better afterwards when they had once got workmen from abroad to inſtruct them a little; for as we have already ſaid, they are good at imitation, and love to learn.

Regulations concerning beggars Good regulations were alſo made concerning beggars, who uſed to be about the ſtreets in ſuch numbers, both men and women, that you was alſo ſurrounded with them if you but ſtept into a ſhop to buy any thing at *Moſcow*. But what is worſe thieves uſed to mix with them, to have the opportunity of cutting a purſe or picking a pocket, things which a *Ruſſian* conſcience knows how to digeſt with great eaſe. The Czar reſolving to put a ſtop to theſe things ordered that no beggar ſhould preſume to aſk for alms in the ſtreets, and that no one ſhould preſume to give them any thing, under a forfeiture of five rubles or 25 florins. *Hoſpitals for beggars* But that the poor might have ſome ſubſiſtence, hoſpitals were erected for them not far from each church as well within as without *Moſcow*, which the Czar endowed with an annual income. And thus were people delivered from a terrible inconvenience; for there was no ſtirring out of a church without being perſecuted by theſe wretches from one end of the ſtreet to the other: And it produced ſtill another good effect, for many of theſe beggars bethought them of working for fear of being locked up in an hoſpital; for beggars naturally hate work, nor can indure to have begging thought ſhameful; which juſt puts me in 1702. mind of a ſtory which I muſt tell.

A ſtory of a young beggar. There came one day a young man to the houſe where I lodged, to aſk charity of a merchant who hapned to lodge there. The merchant asked him why he did not rather chuſe to work for his bread, or get into ſome ſervice. The young beggar anſwered he did not know how to work, having never been taught to do any thing, and that as for going to ſervice there was nobody would take him. The merchant upon this obſerving him to have a good honeſt face, aſked him if he would come and ſerve him, if he would do it with diligence, and if he could get any body to anſwer for his fidelity; for it is quite neceſſary, and very common in this country, to require ſecurity from ſervants, for if you have it not, you have no remedy to reſort to if you are robbed. The poor lad anſwered he knew nobody that would be bound for him but God, whom he called to witneſs that he would ſerve him honeſtly. The merchant was ſatisfied with this, took him into his ſervice, and he proved a faithful ſervant; but it hapning that the young fellow grew a little too great with a ſervant maid, and he getting her with child, it was no ſooner confirmed to her, than ſhe told him of it, and ſince he had brought her to ſhame, he was ſeriouſly adviſed to marry her. He had no great mind to this, becauſe ſhe was an overmatch for him in years, but being urged to keep his promiſe with her, and others aſking him if he thought to juſtify his conduct with his ſecurity, [meaning God] he confeſſed he ſhould be put to it ſo to do, and promiſed to marry the woman. He did ſo, and began a little trade with what he had ſaved in his maſter's ſervice, and he thrived ſo well that he keeps now one of the top woollen-drapers ſhops in *Moſcow*, and is reckoned to be worth above 30,000 livers. His wife is ſtill with him and they live very well together; but as ſhe is upwards of *ſixty* and the children he had of her are dead,

1702. he would fain perſuade her to let him maintain her in a convent, that ſo he might have the propagation and enjoyment of a new family, which he might without any infringement of the laws of *Ruſſia*, but he has not as yet been able to prevail on her.

Alterations in the offices. These alterations have even affected the publick offices, where all writings are now performed after our manner. The Czar has this much at heart, as well as every thing elſe that may be for the good, welfare and ſecurity of the ſtate, where nothing is done without his participation, every thing goes through his hands. He has with extreme diligence already fortified *Novogorod*, *Pleskow*, *Aſoph*, *Smolensko*, *Kieof*, and *Archangel*; and notwithſtanding the vaſt expence of all this, he has been ſo good a manager that he has ſtill 300,000 rubles in his coffers; this he told me himſelf, and I had it afterwards from ſeveral others; and that after having provided for all the expences of the war, for the building of ſhips, and all the other exigences of the ſtate. It is true indeed with regard to the building of ſhips, that is at the publick expence, every thouſand of the peaſants being obligged to bring in all that is neceſſary for building of a ſhip, and every thing relating thereto. Theſe peaſants are either the vaſſals of this Prince or of ſome Lords, or gentlemen, or monaſteries, which laſt have great numbers of them, and particularly that of *Trooytz*, as has already been ſaid.

Places fortified.

Treaſury of the ſtate.

The expence of ſhip building raiſed upon the public.

And thus the ſubjects of this Prince have great reaſon to pray to God to preſerve him, and to bleſs his reign, that they may draw nearer and nearer to the knowledge of ſuch things as may be of uſe and benefit to them. And great reaſon they have to hope they ſhall, for the young Heir to this Empire, now is but 14 years old, who, young as he is, treads already in the footſteps of his father, and gives great ſigns of underſtanding and genius; he takes notice of every thing, is very inquiſitive, and is of a fine diſpoſition; nor is the Czar unmindful to cultivate all this in him, taking a moſt particular care of his education, and, among other points, making him learn *Latin* and *German*. 1702.

Fine qualities of the young hereditary Prince.

Upon the *fourteenth* of *September*, 800 *Swediſh* priſoners, men, women and children, were brought into this city, and many of them were ſold for 3 or 4 florins a head, ſoon after they raiſed the price to 20 or 30. This incouraged the ſtrangers to buy ſome of them, to the great good luck of theſe poor people, it being their intention to keep them no longer than the war laſted, and then to give them their liberty. The *Ruſſians* alſo bought ſeveral, but miſerable was the lot of thoſe who fell into the hands of the *Tartars*, who carried them off into ſlavery, a moſt deplorable circumſtance. *Swediſh Priſoners.*

Upon the *twentieth*, news was brought that *Notteburgh* had been taken by his Majeſty's arms, and that the place had ſurrendred upon certain conditions, after it had ſuſtained three aſſaults, and upon the *twenty third* they ſung *Te Deum* upon this occaſion. *Notteburgh taken.*

Towards the end of this month it began to ſnow, and in the beginning of *October* it froze, but nothing came of it, it rained ſoon after, as it had to our great inconvenience for a long while before.

A great number of merchantmen arrived this year at *Archangel*; they reckoned no leſs than 154, *viz.* 66 *Engliſhmen*, under the convoy of 4 men of war, as many *Dutchmen*, under the convoy of three, 16 *Hamburghers*, 4 *Danes*, and one *Bremener*. The truth is there were ſeveral ſmall ſhips among the *Engliſh*, whoſe cargoe was no great matter. *Ships at Archangel.*

In the middle of *November* the river of *Yuſa* was frozen over behind our ſlabode, and ſeveral of the *Dutch* and ſome of the *Ruſſians* ſkated over it, no ſnow having as yet fallen. I had got a hand-ſledge made after the manner of our country, and I took this opportunity to divert a young Lady upon the ice with it, a ſight

1702. a ſight they had never ſeen before. This was the ſecond time I had had ſkates on for 32 years before, and I found a man does not eaſily forget what he has once well learned; but this was a ſhort-lived diverſion, ſnow falling the next day.

An office burnt. Upon the *twenty-fourth*, the *Prikaes* or office of *Poloſke*, in the caſtle, was reduced to aſhes, and cauſed a great conſternation.

In the beginning of *December*, word came that the Czar was arrived at the town of *Peſchik*, 90 werſts from *Moſcow*; from thence he came to *Salnikof*, a country-houſe belonging to Prince *Lofreilis*, his uncle, 30 werſts from this capital, from thence to *Nikoolskie* at the houſe of the *Knez Mighalo Sakoliets Serkaske*, Governor of *Siberia*, but 7 werſts from this city.

Preparations for the Czar's entry. Every thing was then got ready for his Majeſty's entry; and moſt of the foreign merchants had orders to provide themſelves with a greater number of horſes than uſual, with a ſervant, dreſſed in the *German* faſhion, to conduct the artillery that had been taken from the *Swedes*. The foreign Miniſters, our Reſident, and the *Engliſh* Conſul, and ſome of the merchants, went the next day to pay their compliments to the Czar at *Nikoolskie*, and returned the next day in the morning, which was the *fourth*, and the day this Prince was to make his entry. *Triumphal arches.* To this purpoſe there had been prepared triumphal arches of wood in the ſtreet of *Meeſniets*, the firſt in the red-wall oppoſite to the *Greek* monaſtery, near the printing-houſe, and the houſe of the Velt-Marſhal *Czeremetof*, the ſecond in the white-wall, near the Admiralty office, about 400 paces from the other. The ſtreets and the fields were full of people to ſee this ſolemnity, and I croſſed the town, and went out of it to ſee the beginning of the ſight. When I came I found there was a ſtop, to put things in order, and that the Czar was buſy about it in perſon, and being on foot I drew near to him to pay him my compliments and congratulate him upon his return: He thanked me, and embraced me, and ſeemed to be pleaſed I was ſtill in his dominions. He then took me by the hand and told me, *He would ſhew me ſome ſhips colours, and that he gave me leave to draw whatever I would.* While I was ſo doing, a certain *Ruſſian* Lord, attended by ſome ſervants, came and took the paper out of my hand, and called a *German* officer to know what I was about; but when he underſtood I was at work by the order of the Czar, he gave it me back again, and I made an end of my work, which it had been impoſſible for me to have done without his Majeſty's leave. 1702.

Triumphant entry. This entry was made in the following order; firſt came the regiment of guards conſiſting of 800 men, and commanded by Colonel *de Ridder*, a *German* by birth. One half of this body was cloathed in ſcarlet, in the *German* manner, the other in the *Ruſſian*, becauſe there had not been time enough to finiſh their new cloaths. The *Swediſh* priſoners as well ſoldiers as peaſants walked between two, three abreaſt, and were divided into ſeven bands, each of about 80 or 84 perſons, making in all about 580 men, between three companies of ſoldiers. After theſe came two fine led-horſes, and a company of granadiers in green lined with red, in the *German* faſhion, except that they had bearſkin caps inſtead of hats; theſe were the firſt granadier-guards, and after theſe came ſix halberdiers, five hautboys and ſix officers. Then came the royal regiment of *Probroſensko*, 400 of them new cloathed after the *German* manner, in green lined with red and white-laced hats; with the Czar and Prince *Alexander* at the head of them, preceded by nine *German* flutes, and ſome fine ledhorſes. This regiment was followed by a party of that of *Semenoskie*, his Majeſty's guards alſo, in blue lined with red, and after theſe came the colours taken from the *Swedes*. Firſt two ſtandards followed by a

1702. great flag which had been displayed upon the castle of *Notteburgh*, carried by four soldiers; and then six ships colours, and 25 ensigns, blue, green, yellow and red, each carried by two soldiers. Most of these ensigns had two golden lyons, and a crown at top. After these came 40 pieces of cannon, some drawn by four, some by six horses of a colour, four great mortars, 15 great brass field-pieces little and big; then another mortar, and then very long and heavy brass cannon, some drawn by six and some by eight horses. After these came a great chest of kitchen utensils, ten sledges with fire-arms, three drums, and another sledge with smiths-tools, and a great pair of bellows. Then came the officers that were prisoners, about forty in number, walking each of them between two soldiers, and then some sledges with the sick and wounded, followed by some of the *Russian* soldiers, closed up the march. It was one in the afternoon when they entred the city; and having passed the gate of *Twerskie* which is to the *northward*, they advanced up to the first triumphal arch, and the regiment of guards went through, and here the Czar halted a good quarter of an hour, to refresh himself and receive the congratulations of the clergy. As the street here was pretty broad the triumphal piece erected was composed of three arches, a large one in the middle, and a small one on each side, and was so covered with tapestry, pictures, figures and devices that there was no seeing the wooden work, with a balcony at the top where were eight young musicians, two and two, most sumptuously dressed. The great arch was crowned with an eagle and trophies of colours and the like; and the houses near it were also hung with carpets, tapestry, and pictures; the balconies were full of streamers, musicians and all sorts of instruments accompanied by an organ, which made most delightful harmony. The streets were strewed with green branches and other verdure in this place, where was a great number of the Nobility. The Princess, his Majesty's sister, the Czarina and the Princesses her daughters, attended by a great number of *Russian* and foreign Ladies were a little beyond, at the house of the Sieur *Iakof Wassieliof Feuderof*, to see the show. The Czar having saluted the Princesses, advanced on to the second arch, adorned like the first, and having in this order marched through the city, he went out at the gate of *Meesnietse*, and proceeded towards the slabode of the *Germans*, where being arrived, the *Dutch* Resident made him an offer of wine, but he chose beer, and I had the honour to present him a glass of it. He drank but a little of it, and went on to *Probrosensko*; but night coming upon him, as he was going out of the slabode, he mounted his horse and there was an end of the show. Tho' there flocked together an unspeakable number of the people upon this occasion, there hapned no mischief that I know of; every thing went on orderly and quietly, to the satisfaction of every body, tho' the streets were full of scaffolds.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Confecration of the Palace of Ifmeelhoff. *Prefents carried thither. A* French *Surgeon killed. Cuftoms with regard to Births, Funerals and Marriages, even among the Foreigners.*

UPON the *twelfth* of this month the Czar came unexpectedly to dine, at ten in the morning, with the Sieur *Lups*, juft arrived from *Archangel*. I went, without knowing his Majefty was there, to wifh that merchant joy of his return: the Czar had only two *Ruffian* Noblemen with him, and having had a fight of me, he ordered me in to him, and I took the opportunity to prefent him with fome verfes I had made upon the taking of *Notteburgh*, defiring him to excufe their Imperfections, in confideration I was no poet, and to look on them only as the effects of my zeal for his honour, and joy for his victories. He received them very gracioufly, made me fit down, and ordered me to give the Sieur *Lups* an account of his entry, which I did to his full fatisfaction, and having drank fome bumpers to a continuation of fucceffes, his Majefty went away at two in the afternoon.

The Author congratulates the Czar upon his conquefts.

Upon the *nineteenth* I had orders from the Emprefs to carry the young Princeffes pictures, I had painted a fecond time, to the palace of *Ifmeelhoff*. They went from *Mofcow* juft at the inftant I did, and had but juft ftept out of the coach when I came. The Emprefs's brother and fome priefts waited to introduce them in proceffion into the palace, which having fallen to ruin was rebuilt this fummer; and this was the day it was to be confecrated before the court came to live in it My orders were to ftop in the firft apartments, where I found feveral Ladies of the Court. The floor was covered with hay, and on the right hand there was a large table on which were both fmall and great loaves, upon fome of which there was an handful of falt, and on others a filver falt-feller full. It is the cuftom of this country that the relations and friends of fuch as are going to live in a new houfe, fhould, in fome fort, confecrate it with falt, and that for feveral days together; which they mean alfo as a token of the profperity they wifh the parties, and that they may never want the neceffaries of life: And even thofe that remove from one houfe to another, leave hay and bread upon the ground of the houfe they go out of, to exprefs the bleffings they wifh on thofe who are to come to live in it after them. The rooms of the apartment where I ftopped were hung, above the doors and windows, with 17 different pictures in the *Greek* manner, reprefenting their principal faints, whom they commonly have in the firft room, nor are they wanting in others. The Emprefs's brother was at the end of this room, accompanied by fome priefts ftanding with books before them, and finging of hymns; and while they were about this, which lafted a good hour and a half, her Imperial Majefty was in an inner apartment next but one; and the ceremony being over I was carried into another room where this Princefs came, and having an interpreter by my fide I wifhed her all forts of profperity. She took me by the hand and faid, *She would fhew me fome other apartments*, which was a furprizing courtefy in a perfon of her high rank. She then ordered one of her maids to fill me out a little gold cup of brandy, which

Confecration of the palace.

The Author congratulates the Emprefs upon her coming into a new palace.

1702. which ſhe preſented to me herſelf, and then did me the honour to give me her hand to kiſs, as did alſo the three young Princeſſes then preſent; after which ſhe diſmiſſed me with orders to come again in three days time.

The Author's preſent to the Empreſs. As the *Chriſtmas* Holydays were coming on, I took the liberty to preſent the Empreſs with a picture I had drawn of the birth of Chriſt, together with ſome beads I had brought from *Jeruſalem*, and prayed her to accept of them inſtead of bread and ſalt. She ſeemed to be very much pleaſed at this, and thanking me, made me a preſent in her turn; and as I had alſo brought beads for the young Princeſſes, ſhe ordered me to carry them to them myſelf. I did ſo, and finding them at table in another room, and having made them my preſent, I returned again to the Empreſs; but one of them followed me to her mother, and preſented me with a ſmall cup of brandy, and then gave me a great glaſs of wine; upon which I withdrew, with returns of my moſt humble thanks.

Upon the *twenty fifth* the *Ruſſians* celebrated the feaſt of *Chriſtmas*, according to their rites, and the Czar began his round of viſits to his friends as he had done the year before.

We had very wet weather till the end of the year, which had made the ways ſo bad, that the merchants and others from *Archangel* and other places, were five or ſix days longer upon the road than uſual; ſuch a winter had not been known for many years before. But upon the beginning of *January*, the weather changed all at once, it cleared up, and began

1703. to freeze in good earneſt. The *firſt* day of this year was taken up in preparing for a fire-work to be played for the taking of *Notteburgh*; it was upon the ſide of the river *Moſka*, behind the caſtle, in a place called the royal mead, the graſs or hay of which is according to antient cuſtom, carried upon a certain day into the churches. This fire-work did not differ from the former in any thing but the figures and devices. *Fire-works for the taking of* Notteburgh.

The next day the Czar came to Mr. *Brants*, attended by 200 perſons, who were all entertained in a room below, with the ſound of trumpets and kettle-drums. Here, among other things, was ſhewn a ſword of prodigious ſize, five foot and half long, and three inches and half broad in the ſheath; it was well proportioned, and weighed 30 pounds. I deſired the perſon whoſe it was, to draw it, and found it was waved on each ſide; the blade however was pretty light, and ſerviceable, in proportion to the hilt. When it was in the ſcabbard and the point upon the ground, it was as much as a man of good ſtrength could do to poiſe it with one hand; but three of us, one after the other, did it, without flattering the gentleman it belonged to, who was the ſon of the laſt Governor of *Aſtracan*, called *Petrofski*, who was put to death by the *Strelitſes* or ſoldiers, who threw him down from the top of a tower. This ſon of his was but a child when this happed; and yet they were ſo cruel as to hang him up by the heels, and ſuffer him ſo to hang for 48 hours together; which ſo ſpoiled his feet that it made him a cripple, and obliges him to have ſhoes of a particular make, and crutches to enable him to walk. 1703. *The Czar viſits Mr.* Brants. *An extraordinary ſword.* *Barbarous uſage and miraculous deliverance*

Towards the evening there appeared one to repreſent the Patriarch, habited in a pontifical mantle, and ſinging to the ſound of a bell. This was a ſignal to depart, and the Czar immediately went his way, with all his train to make an end of his viſits. Upon the *ſixth* of this month they kept the *Twelfth-day* in the manner they had the year before; but it is to be obſerved there were not ſo many churchmen as before, nor ſo great a number of the fine caps or mitres we mentioned; ſo that there is reaſon to believe time will make ſome notable changes in this anniverſary ſolemnity. Upon the *twentieth* the Czar ſent an order to the chief of the *Ruſſian* Noblemen, Ladies and others to the number of 300, to be at *Iſmeelhoff* at nine in the morning. The ſame had been commu- *Arrival of the perſon who repreſented the Patriarch.* *Twelfth-day.*

1703. communicated to the foreign ministers, merchants, and their wives; so that there was an appearance of about 500 persons, and it had been expresly recommended to every body to come with a present for the Czarina to be given her at the time of congratulation. These presents consist usually in curious toys of gold and silver, pretty medals, and such like things, according to the abilities and inclinations of the donor; but before they are presented, they are registered with the name of each person, and then they were delivered to one of the young Princesses, who in return offered her hands to kiss. Most of the Lords and Ladies of the country withdrew immediately, but the rest were detained to dinner, after which there was dancing and diversion till midnight.

Presents to the Czarina.

An ugly accident.

That same night there happened an ugly accident at the wedding of Captain *Staets*, where two Surgeons dancing with their wives, two officers who were just come in, would have taken them to dance with them. Words upon this arose, and one of the officers in the service of the *Czar*, called *Bodon*, ran his sword through the body of one of the Surgeons, called *Gurée*, a *Frenchman*, who had nothing to defend himself, and fell down dead on the spot. The other, whose name was *Hovy*, was at the same time wounded by another officer, whose name was Captain *Saks*; perceiving himself wounded, he stopped his wound with his Finger, and got away, but the Captain pursuing him, he was obliged to come into the house, and in a fainting fit fell down by the side of his dead companion, but one of his friends sucking the blood out of the wound, he came to himself again. These officers had attack'd them once before, but one of the Surgeons getting hold of a sword, and the other laying hands on a chair, drove them out of the room; enraged at which, they returned to the charge, and before the whole company committed the fact here related. It is not hard to conceive what a terrible disorder and consternation this murderous violence caused, by the favour whereof 1703. the perpetrators of it made their escape for the present, tho' they were taken two days afterwards. Their Colonel who was present when they did this, by good words prevailed on his servant to take the crime upon himself, and to say it was he who committed the murder, promising him not only a pardon, but to make him an Ensign; and the innocent man prevailed on by this means, gave out that he was the criminal: but he was no sooner put to the question by torture, than he disowned the whole, and named the assassin, tho' too late, as shall be observed in a proper place.

The murderers taken.

Preparations to go to Veronis.

The *Czar*, at this time, resolved upon a tour to *Veronis*, attended by some *Russian* Noblemen, and some *Germans* whom he ordered to be ready for the journey. Upon the twenty fifth, I received the same order by the Sieur *Heinsius*, who told me his Majesty was desirous I should see that place, the ships there, and whatever else was remarkable.

But it is now time to talk of the marriage of the Boyar, *Iwan Feuderowitz Golowin*, or *John Theodore* the son of Count *Golowin*, first Minister of state, with the Lady *Boreesowitz Czeremetof*, the Daughter of *Boris Theodore*, Velt-marshal of *Czeremetof*, who was employ'd by his *Czarian* Majesty on several Embassies, and particularly to the Court of *Vienna*, where he acquired a very great reputation, and received the order of *Malta*.

Extraordinary wedding.

As there is something remarkable in this wedding, and as it was celebrated between two of the most considerable personages of the state, I will here give a particular account of it, which was upon the twenty eighth of this month in the palace of the Boyar *Feudor Alexewitz Golowin*, which was fitted upon this occasion. This is an handsome wooden edifice, well designed according to the rules of art, full of fine apartments above and below, and upon an eminence, a little beyond the slabode of the *Ger-*

1703. *Germans*, on the other ſide of the river *Youſa*. In the great Salon were ſeveral tables placed in good order, with muſic, and in another apartment was a table for the *Czar*'s ſiſter, the Empreſs and the three young Princeſſes; for ſeveral Ladies of the Court, and for the Lords and Ladies of the country who were apart; nor was there wanting a great crowd of ſpectators. About eleven o'clock the bridegroom appeared alone in the chamber of audience, on the left hand, where he received the congratulations of the Nobility, whom he treated with diſtilled liquors. About noon they came and acquainted him it was time to repair to the place where he was to be married, and he was conducted with trumpets and kettle drums, that waited for him at the door, to a ſmall chappel in the palace, but a few ſteps off. It would be no eaſy matter to diſplay all the pomp of this feſtival wherein the *Czar* condeſcended to officiate as Marſhal, and was every where. As ſoon as the bridegroom had got into the chappel, the bride was ſent for; ſhe had paſſed the night before at the houſe of the late Mr. *Houtman*, in the ſlabode of the *Germans*, oppoſite to the *Dutch* church, and had by the Czar's order been ſome time delivered up to the Velt-marſhal, the bride's father. All the *Ruſſian* and *German* Ladies invited to this wedding, repaired thither alſo to wait on this Lady, who was conducted to the place in the following order. The firſt that appeared was a kettle drummer upon a white horſe, followed by five trumpets mounted upon the ſame: then 16 ſtewards of the houſhold, as it were, choſen from among the *Ruſſians* and the ſtrangers: then the Czar himſelf in a fine coach made in *Holland*, and ſix dapple gray horſes. After him, five empty coaches and ſix; then a calaſh and ſix for the bride, and ſome other Ladies. In the midſt of this, the Princeſs his Majeſty's ſiſter, the Czarina, and the three young Princeſſes came to the nuptial palace in coaches without wheels, after the manner of ſledges, each in one, and each drawn by ſix horſes; beſides a great number of Ladies of the court. In about half an hour the bride herſelf appeared with the Ladies of her train, who had got into the empty coaches. When got out at the palace, ſhe was received by two Noblemen who were to be her fathers, the one a *Ruſſian*, the other Count *Koniſgegg*, Envoy from *Poland*, who taking her by the hand, conducted her into the chappel, and placed her on one ſide of the bridegroom. She was followed by the Czar's ſiſter, the young Princeſſes, and other Ladies of the court, who ſtopped in the entrance of the chappel; and ſome *Ruſſian* and foreign Ladies ranged themſelves on the ſides without, the chappel being ſo ſmall it could not hold above ten or a dozen perſons; ſo that thoſe who went in, were only the Czar, the Czarian Prince, the Bride and Bridegroom, the two Fathers, and two or three other *Ruſſian* Noblemen; but as I was very deſirous to behold this ſolemnity, I got behind the bridegroom, who was richly cloathed, after the *German* faſhion, as well as his bride, who was in white ſattin wrought with gold, with her head-dreſs ſet off with diamonds; and behind her hung a great treſs of hair, under her fontange, a faſhion which has been long in uſe with the *Germans*, and upon her head ſhe had a ſmall crown with diamonds. When the ceremony opened, the prieſt came and ſtood between the couple, and began to read in a book, he held in his hand, in conſequence of which, the bridegroom put a ring on a finger of the bride's. Then the prieſt took two crowns joined together, of ſilver gilt, which he made them kiſs, and then put upon their heads. After this he began to read again, and the couple gave their right hands to each other. and in that manner went three times round the chappel. The prieſt then took a glaſs of red wine, and made the new married pair drink of it, which when they had done, they returned it to him, who gave it to thoſe

1703. those who officiated near him. The Czar who was walking about all the time, with a marshal's staff in his hand, perceiving the priest was going to his book again, commanded him to cut his work short, and a minute afterwards he pronounced the nuptial benediction. His Majesty then ordered the bridegroom to kiss his bride, which she refused to let him, till the Czar repeated his command, and then she obey'd. The ceremony over, they went to the bridal hall. During the time of the ceremony the Czarina and the Ladies of the court were at the windows opposite to the chappel. In a little time they sat down to table, the bridegroom among the men, and the bride among the women, at the common table in the great hall. The rejoicings continued for three days together, which were spent in dancing, and all kinds of merriment. The third day they regaled the gentlemen who had appeared in the character of stewards. This wedding was very different from the old way of celebration, which it were needless for me to speak of, so many having done it already.

Having thus sufficiently dilated on the head of marriages, I pass on to the customs at births and burials among this people.

Russian *customs at births.* As soon as ever a child comes into the world, they send for a priest to purify it. This purification is extended to every one present, whom they call over by their names, and give them the blessing, never suffering any one to enter the room till the priest is come, and when he is, they name the child after the Saint, whose day was kept eight days before the birth of the child, or that is to be kept eight days afterwards. They administer the sacrament after their rite, to the child, before the baptism, and especially among people of distinction, and seldom baptize but at the end of five or six weeks, when the infant is strong and hearty. When it is a boy they church or purify the mother at the end of five weeks, and when it happens to be a girl, at the end of six. They then chuse a godfather and a godmother, and never change them afterwards; nor can these godfathers and godmothers marry together, nor those in the third degree from them. 1703.

At the funerals of the better sort, all the friends of both sexes follow the body, tho' uninvited. They put the body upon a bier carry'd by four or six men, the coffin being covered with a fine pall, and the women nearest of kin, make loud lamentations, as I mentioned in my first travels. The priests intonate the funeral hymn; but all this is done with much less ceremony among the common people. *Funerals.*

The customs among the foreigners are different from these with regard to births and marriages, and the same with us, excepting in the form of celebrating a wedding exclusive of the religious part, and this is carry'd on with great solemnity. They send two representing stewards to invite those they would have, and these stewards do it in winter, in a fine sledge, drawn by two horses dressed up in ribbons, and attended by two servants behind the sledge. The number of guests is commonly 100 or 150, and sometimes more, according as it is thought proper, and according to the number of the Gentlemen and Ladies of the country that are asked. The Marshal is the chief man at these festivals, and goes about with a truncheon and a ribbon at the end of it, and he, assisted by the stewards, begins all healths; and besides these it is usual to have four or six, or eight under-stewards, who have the care of preparing all things in the house, as well with regard to the furniture as other necessaries. These help the stewards to serve the guests, and are to be known by a fine scarf on the right arm, which they have in common with the steward, except that his is richer; these the bride-maids tye on for them. These maids are introduced into the hall where the feast is, with great ceremony, and the sound of instruments; and the more to honour the bride and bridegroom, they *Customs among strangers.*

on

1703. on each side chuse two fathers, two mothers, two brothers, and two sisters, who are introduced in the same manner; then they sit down to table in the places appointed for every one. The carver gets between the two bride maids opposite to the bride, and they tye him on a scarf upon his arm. The bridegroom sits between the fathers and brothers, and the bride between the mothers and sisters. When they have done, they in another room entertain the Marshal, the stewards, and the carver. Then they dance, the Marshal opening the ball with the bride, and then the other Ladies are desired to dance with the stewards. The fathers and mothers dance after these, then the brothers and sisters, and at last the new married pair, and two or three other couple. This done, the Marshal cries out *Liberty*, and then dance who will: these doings commonly last three days together, and upon the last, the bride-maids entertain the Marshal, the stewards, their deputies, and the carver.

Funerals. Their funerals are in this manner. They keep the body for some days, and invite the chiefs of the nation, and afterwards most of the merchants, and other friends, as well in the city as in the slabode; which is done by two persons of their nation, appointed for that purpose, or chosen by the friends and relations of the deceased; and these wear long black cloaks, and a crape hatband. Tho', upon these occasions, the company commonly meet at two in the afternoon, it is night before the body is committed to the ground in winter, and pretty late in summer. They have 15 or 16 mourners, and 12 bearers, all married and dressed in black, with great cloaks of the same, which they keep for that purpose in the churches. The mourners sit in the best room on the right hand, with the male relations of the deceased, and every one that comes in salutes them. The bearers have a crape hat-band, and a scarf over the shoulder of the same, and sometimes white gloves. They have all sorts of refreshments upon two different tables, and they are 1703. continually serving you about with wine, flip, sweatmeats, toasted bread, and lemons, when they are to be had. Before the corpse goes out of the house, it is usual to present each of the bearers with a silver spoon, with the name of the deceased engraved upon it; the same is also sometimes presented to the minister, the schoolmaster, and the mourners; but when it is a maid they are carrying to the grave, they give gold rings with the name also of the deceased instead of spoons. The bearers nail up the coffin before it goes out, and as soon as they begin to move, the schoolmaster and the scholars begin to sing with each a book in his hand; but the *Calvinists* do so only at the church-yard. The young scholars go before, followed by their master, the minister, and the chiefs of the funeral; then comes the body, and after it, the nearest relations, the mourners, the merchants, and officers, who do not go regularly two and two as with us, but four or five at a time, just as it happens, or as they please. When they have reached the church-yard, and deposited the corpse in the grave, they begin again with some funeral psalms and chaunts; then the minister makes a discourse, and thanks those who have attended the corpse for the honour they have done him; and the bearers who have each a shovel in their hand, throw in the earth till the grave is nearly filled up; then all that were invited are desired to return to the house of the deceased, but few go in besides the bearers, who are entertained with drink and tobacco. Sometimes they have a funeral sermon at church, and the women are invited to be there. The widow of the deceased comes with her nearest female relations all covered over with crape, and these oftentimes give evident tokens of their grief even in the streets. Sometimes also they give an entertainment afterwards. They go in coaches or on horseback in summer, it being impossible to go on foot. The coffins

1703. were formerly made of oak; but this is now forbidden, the Czar designing to preserve that wood for other uses.

The number of *Calvinists* here may amount to about 200. The *Lutherans* are much more numerous, and indeed they have two churches, while the others have but one in the slabode. There have been two *Jesuits* for some time settled here, who teach *Latin* to several children of their rite. 1703.

CHAP. XIII.

His Czarian *Majesty's departnre for* Veronis, *whither the author and several others attend him. Things remarkable on the way. Arrival at* Veronis.

Journey to Veronis.

THE time appointed for the Czar's departure being come, he was attended by *John Alexewitz Moesin Poeskin*, first inspector and visitor of the monasteries of *Russia*, who had been Governor of *Astracan*, an office he had executed with great honour; *Alexis Petrowitz Ismeelhoff*, the Knez *Gregory Gregoriwitz Gagarin*, *John Andrewitz Tolstoy*, Governor of *Asoph*, *Ivan Davidewitz*, Governor of *Kolomna*, *Alexander Wasselewitz Kisken*, great Steward of the houshold, and Gentleman of the chamber to his Majesty; *Nariskie*, the son of his Majesty's uncle, and by many other Lords who came to *Veronis* after us. The Czar also did the Sieur *Konigsegg* Envoy extraordinary from *Poland*, the Sieur *Keiserling*, Envoy from the King of *Prussia*, the Sieur *Bellosseur*, Agent from the Sieur *Ogienskie*, one of the first Generals, and one of the best friends to the King of *Poland*, to some officers of his houshold, and the sons of the famous General *le Fort* the honour of requesting their company. He took with him also three merchants, Mr. *Steel*, a fine gentleman much esteemed by this Prince, and Mr. *Hill*, *Englishmen*, and the Sieur *Kinsius* a *Dutchman*, all three extremely well affected to his Majesty, who desired I should go before with them, and we set out upon the *thirty first* of *January*; and the next day the Czar came after us with all his company. We had got the bottom of our sledges shod with iron, that they might the better be able to carry us thro' our journey, the ground being scarcely covered over with snow; and his Majesty had granted us post-wodens, and we had six sledges for us and our servants. We left the slabode of the *Germans* about three in the afternoon, and we were to have relays of fresh horses every 20 wersts. There are posts at the end of every werst between this and *Veronis*, upon which in *Russian* and *German* characters you see the date of the year 1701, the time when they were set up. Between each of the pillars which are painted red and pretty high there are 19 or 20 small trees on each side, and sometimes three or four together, interwove with branches like gabions, to defend them and keep them in the ground. There are 552 of these pillars, amounting to near 110 leagues, reckoning five wersts to a league, and which give you the distance between *Moscow* and *Veronis*, and the neighbouring places; and, I believe, the number of the small trees I have mentioned may amount to about 200,000; a contrivance so much the more useful, as without these posts and trees it would be next to impossible to keep the road for the snows on the ground, besides that you may by this means travel as well by

1703. by night as by day. In two hours we came to *Sgelina,* and there changed horſes to go to *Oeljamina,* where we arrived about eight of the clock; and here we got out at a Kabak belonging to his Majeſty, a pretty good wooden building with ſeveral apartments in it. You there go up by a fine ſavare of five ſteps with five angles, and were entertained with beer and good fires, the Czar himſelf being expected, who has cauſed theſe houſes to be erected every twenty werſts for the convenience of travellers. Here we ſtay'd but two hours, and went our way in a very damp night. Horſes were every where ready for us, and there was fire in all the villages, where the peaſants ſtood at their doors with truſſes of ſtraw lighted to ſhew their joy for his Majeſty's arrival, which in the night time had a very pretty effect. We had 30 werſts to travel from hence to *Kolomna,* where we had got before day, and there waited for his Majeſty, who came about nine in the morning, while I was gone to take a view of the inſide and outſide of the town. I went out by the gate of the *Pjaetnietske,* or of the *Friday,* or of the fifth day of the week, and went to that of *Coſſi,* which are the only gates here. This town is ſurrounded with a good ſtone wall, about ſix fathom high and two thick, and flanked with ſeveral towers, ſome round and ſome ſquare, about 200 paces diſtant from each other, but not adapted for cannon. It is about a mile and half round, and the little river of *Kolommenske,* whoſe name it borrows paſſes by it. I ſhould here have ſpoken of the river of *Moſcow,* but as we croſſed it afterwards by water, I ſhall defer it to another time, while I go on with the deſcription of this city. The wall is almoſt all fallen down on one ſide, and you muſt go over a pretty high hill to get at the hinder gate, where the land lies low beyond the river; and there is a ſuburb at the other gate, where they expoſe their goods to ſale, and by this gate I ſaw a great number of

Situation of Kolomna.

the country people come in with things to ſell in the town. The form of it is almoſt round, and there is a dry ditch on the higheſt ſide, where there is alſo a very high wall. Its fineſt building is the church of *Uſplenja,* or of the ſeparation of the mother of God, well built of ſtone, and indifferently large; whereto we may add the archiepiſcopal palace; the reſt is ordinary enough. Having ſatisfied my curioſity, I went to the Governor's houſe, *Ivan Davidewitz,* where I found the Czar and all the company at table. When I had got up to this Prince to pay my duty to him, he turned about and kiſſed me, and when I had given him an account of what I had done, he made me ſit down. At two in the afternoon we proceeded on our journey, being to go to the country houſe of Mr. *Alexander Waſielewitz Koecken,* five werſts from this city. There we were well entertained. It is a wooden building of two ſtories, with fine rooms. We ſtaid there till five of the clock, and about nine in the morning we arrived at the little lake of *Ivan,* near the village of *Ivanofra,* 130 werſts from the houſe of Mr. *Koecken.* The *Don* or the *Tanais* riſes in this lake, from whence it flows in a long canal, whoſe water is very clear and well taſted, as the Czar himſelf thought, and the reſt of the company; tho' the lake, which might be better called a pool, is very marſhy. One half of its water goes one way, and the reſt another, a very remarkable circumſtance. Here it was that his Czarian Majeſty in the year 1702, began to dig a canal to open a communication between the *Don* and the *Baltic.* The Czar ſurveyed the whole ground then in perſon, as he did now again with us. This canal which is very deep derives its water from the *Don* or *Tanais,* and is to croſs the lake *Ivan,* to the little river *Schata,* which falls into that of the *Upa,* and this into the *Occa* which falls into the *Wolga*; and by this means might be attained the end propoſed of making a communication between this river and the

Little lake of Ivan.

The Don *of* Tanais.

Great Canal.

1703. the *Baltic* sea. And it is to be effected by the contrivance of sluices 80 paces in length, and 14 in breadth, under the direction of Prince *Gogarin*, whose worth and excellent endowments, as well as his zeal for his Czarian Majesty's service is not to be expressed. His Majesty had us carried in sledges upon these canals, having first ordered the horses to be shod for ice, and shewed us this work compleated and consisting of seven close sluices of grey stone. I there also saw a mud engine, made after the *Dutch* manner, with which, and the ice broke, the Prince got up earth proper to make turf, which they there order as they do in our provinces. There were several houses full of it, which we tried and found to be very good.

Great close sluices.

Turf made in those parts.

His Majesty having entertained us at noon, we went away about three of the clock to go 30 wrests to a country-house belonging to Mr. *le Fort*. As this village is not upon the high-road, three of our guides turned to the right, instead of following the company, and went to a house of his Majesty's five wersts from thence. The night being come on I went in there with two *French* officers, and there we staid till 10 at night expecting our companions, but perceiving noboby came near us we continued our journey through a desart, where we met with nothing but some coppice, here and there. Upon the *third* at nine in the morning we arrived at Prince *Alexander Danielewitz de Mensikof*, 110 wersts from Mr. *le Fort*'s. It is a great and a fine building like a house of pleasure, with a turret or lanthorn upon it, covered with a detached roof, and neatly painted on the outside with all sorts of colours; this house contains many fine and good rooms and lofty enough; nor is there any way to it but by the gate of the fort, they being both within one common enceint of earth, of no very great extent. Here are several fine works well mounted with cannon, and covered on the one side with a hill, and on the other by a fen, or kind of lake. I had no sooner got into the Czar's presence than he asked me where I had been? I answered where it had pleased Heaven and our guides, seeing I knew nothing either of the way or the language. This he laughed at and told the *Russian* Lords that were with him. He then gave me a bumper by way of punishment, regaled us to perfection, and had the cannon fired at every health. When we had done he carried us upon the ramparts, and there treated us with different liquors upon each work. Then he ordered sledges to be ready to carry us upon the lake, then frozen over, that we might thence take a view of the whole at leisure; and he took me into his own sledge, still mindful of the liquor which followed us every where at the heels in great plenty; and from thence we returned to the castle, where the glasses began to dance about again, and to warm us till at last the place having never as yet been named, his Majesty called it *Oranjenburg*. Prince *Alexander*'s village, which is on one side, is called *Slaboolke*. From this agreeable place we went at nine in the night. Upon the *fourth* we went a great way, but afterwards we travelled at a much less rate, because of the little snow upon the ground. The Czar, however, did not stop till we had reached *Stepena*, where they had built ten ships. We held on our way in the night, and upon the *fifth*, at one in the morning, we arrived at *Veronis*, which is 190 wersts from the new *Oranjenburg*. The company being divided in the night, we dropped in one after another, the first that appeared at the place being young Mr. *le Fort* and my self, and as there had been no regulation made as to the article of lodging, we went directly to the house of Vice-Admiral *Rees*. We were told he had kept his bed for three weeks past, for a hurt he had received by a fall; and as soon as it was light we waited on him with assurances of the share we had in his

Oranjenburg.

1703. his misfortune; he received us very kindly, and desired us to be quite free with his house and table. The Czar himself arrived at one in the afternoon, under the discharge of the cannon in the castle and in the ships that were frozen up; and in an instant afterwards he came to see the Vice-Admiral. He thence went to Mr. *Fewdor Mashewitz Apraxin's* a Lord of the Admiralty, who commanded in the place. We had orders to follow him, and were well entertained, in the midst of the noise of the artillery, fifty cannon being from time to time fired off, and so the day was brought to an end. In the mean time orders were given for rooms to be ready in the castle, for the strangers, that they should be made much of, and have whatever victuals they had a mind to; nor was there any forgetfulness as to drink, and Monsieur, the Envoy *Konigsegg*, who had the charge of the table, accquitted himself very handsomely. The Sieurs *Steel, Kinsius* and *Hill* lodged at a friend's, and Mr. *le Fort* and I at the Vice-Admiral's; going every now and then to eat at the castle. His Majesty was at a private house upon the key with the *Russians*. Upon the *sixth* we went to see the ships, and tippled with great gaiety. *Fewdor Mashewitz* treated us at noon, and the next day; and so ended our feastings, the great fast of the *Russians* beginning upon the *eighth*. Upon the *ninth*, I sollicited the Czar for leave to draw what was most worthy of notice, and he immediately gave it me, saying, *Come, we have lived well, and been merry, and have had a little rest after it, it is now high time to think of work.*

CHAP. XIII.

Description of Veronis. *The* Don *or the* Tanaïs. *Return to* Moscow. *His Majesty departs for* Sleutelenburg.

Situation of Veronis. THE City of *Veronis* is upon a high hill in 52 degrees and a half of *northern* latitude; surrounded with a wooden wall, all rotten, and divided into three parts, in one of which called *Jakatof*, the chief of the *Russian* merchants have their abode. There is a great rope-walk in this city, and the powder is kept in subterraneous magazines without the wall. Upon the side of the hill, along the river, there are several houses, in an extent of 400 paces; the chief of them belong to the Admiral *Golowin*, Mr. *Apraxin* of the admiralty, the Boyard *Lofkrielowitz*, Prince *Danielowitz*, and other *Russians* of quality. Most of these houses are over against the citadel, and those of the Vice-Admiral and other officers on the side of them, and behind these are streets for those employed in ship-building and the like. This city stands on the *west* of the river of *Veronis*, whose name it borrows, and the citadel is on the *The Citadel.* other side, to which there is a large bridge of communication. The ditches about it are full of water from the old river. This citadel is a square building with towers at the four corners, has very large apartments, and makes a great figure from without. The sands of the downs so choak up the new river that it is not navigable, and the ships are obliged to go through the old one. The citadel is the chief magazine, and indeed they so term it, and have above 150 pieces of canon in it, though most of them without carriages for the more ready transporting them in case of need. Again, this citadel is defended with pallisades


L
K


VERONIS.
15
I
H
F
E
D
M
B
A
N
O

1703. pallifades in feveral places, and filled with a pretty good garrifon,as well as the country about, to withftand the *Tartars*. The conveniences for fhip-building are one fide of the citadel, whereas before they built them all about. The ftorehoufe is on the other fide, a great building, three ftories high, the two firft of which are of ftone, and the third and uppermoft of wood. Here are many places full of all forts of naval ftores, each in a place apart, even to cloaths for the feamen, and every thing elfe they can want. The fail houfe or loft is on one fide of this ftorehoufe; and they compute that in the town and about it, there may be ten thoufand perfons. You fee two or three villages in the plain.

Docks for fhipping.

Number of inhabitants in the town and about it.

Upon the *tenth*, I went in queft of a proper ftand, from whence to take a fketch of the city; and I pitched upon the higheft part of a hill, which is but two werfts to the fouthweftward of it; there I began my work, but could not go on with it for the bitternefs of the cold and ftrength of the wind. The next day I walked thither to get myfelf a little heat by the way, with nobody but my fervant, and three men belonging to the Vice-admiral, to keep off fuch *Ruffians* as might have the curiofity to interrupt me. I ordered them to get a mat, fome poles, an ax, and a fpade, to dig a pit for me, where I might conveniently take my ftand. When this was done, I fcreened myfelf from the wind in my back with the mat; and in this plight it was eafy to fee me from the town and from the river fide. And indeed I was not here long without a difcovery; two *Englifh* fhipwrights taking notice of me from the river, fent two or three of their people to know what I was about. Seeing them come towards me, I ordered my feamen, who were armed with half-pikes, to keep them off; to tell no foul what I was about, and if they were asked the queftion, to fay they knew nothing at all of the matter. In the mean time a number of above 50 *Ruffians* got together upon the hill, drawn thither by the novelty 1703. of the fight, unable to conceive what fhould be the meaning of it; but my people driving them back, they did not dare to come near enough to me. When I returned to the town, the Vice-admiral told me the vogue had been, that, upon the top of the hill, one of the Czar's domeftics had been buried alive, nobody knowing wherefore, or who it was; and that the faid man buried up to the middle held a great book in his hand,which was the paper I was drawing upon; and that no one was allowed to approach him, three centinels being appointed to keep off all that attempted it; nay even the officers themfelves enquired of each other, who it was that was under the circumftances of execution. But obferving, upon the *twelfth*, that the criminal had fhifted his place, and confequently that they were miftaken, they took another whim into their heads. There was a little farther off an old burying ground, where they had feen me fome days before, and where I went that day to take a draught of it. The *Ruffians* at their wits end, now fancied I might be fome prophet from beyond fea to vifit the old burying grounds, fay maffes for the dead, and perform other religious offices, and particularly as I always appeared with a book in my hand. They took notice to one another that I had commonly a *Hungarian* veft on, and that I was attended by a fervant, who carried after me a kind of blue cloak; in fhort that I had three of the Vice-admiral's people fet to guard me. This whim, extravagant as it was, might have been attended with ill effects, had not the Czar himfelf been in thefe parts, and been a check upon the crowds that would otherwife have gathered together.

You have a reprefentation of the town in number 15. the letter *A* diftinguifhes his Majefty's place of refidence; *B* the place where the fhips are built; *C* the *d'Woritz* or the citadel; *D* the *Ambaet* or the ftore-houfe; *E* the fail-houfe or

Reprefentation of the town.

1703. loft; *F* the houſe of Prince *Alexander Danielowitz*; *G* that of *Feudor Maſhewitz*; *H Uſplenje Dogeroditza*, or the church of the conception of the mother of God; *I Cuſma Idemjan*, or church dedicated to *Coſmus* and *Damian*, brethren, in the liſt of Saints; *K Saboor*, or the church of the aſſembly of the Saints; *L Petritza Bogoroditza*, or the *Friday* church, ſo called; becauſe there the Virgin *Mary* appeared in an extraordinary manner upon a certain *Friday*, and was judged thence to have required it to be ſet apart in honour of that day of the week; *M* the old river; *N* the new river; *O* the hill from whence I drew the proſpect of the town. The old tombs, mentioned before, ſeeming to me very extraordinary in their kind, I drew them as well as the ground they ſtand in. They are upon a hill which has ſuffered by the injuries of time; this hill is by itſelf, and from the top to the bottom ſcattered over with ſkulls and bones, and pieces of coffins. There are two at the top, the one a little damaged, the other to pieces. I ordered a *Ruſſian* to climb this hill, which has two trees upon it, to try if he could not get ſome bones which appeared upon the ſurface, and which had been blanched by the air, to the whiteneſs of chalk, which had a pretty odd effect in that black ſoil; but the earth was ſo frozen he could not bring them with him. You have all this repreſented in number 16. what lyes before this burying ground was formerly a part of it, and the way to it on this ſide the river, is beneath this hill on the left hand, and on the right you have *Sieſoſskie* in the bottom near the river, with ſome mills. *Ships.* With regard to the ſhips here, we ſaw fifteen in the water, four men of war, the biggeſt of 54 guns, three victuallers, two fireſhips, and ſix bombketches. On ſhore and ready to be launched, were five men of war, after the *Dutch* faſhion, from 60 to to 64 guns, two after the *Italian* from 50 to 54, a galeaſs after the *Venetian*, and four gallies, beſides 17 gallies at *Sieſofskie*, two werſts from the town. 1703. Beſides all this, they were at work upon five men of war after the *Engliſh* built, two bored for 74 guns, and two for 60 or 64; the fifth which is called after his Majeſty, becauſe he had the direction of her upon the ſtocks, is bored for 86 guns. They were at work alſo upon a packet-boat, and aſhore on the other ſide of the river, were about 200 brigantines, moſt of them built at *Veronis*; and at this time there were 400 ſtout brigantines upon the *Nieper*, and the *Boryſthenes*, in the neighbourhood of *Crim Tartary*, and 300 flat bottom veſſels upon the *Volga*; beſides 18 men of war at *Aſoph*, a bomb-veſſel and a yacht. The Czar has ſeveral other ſhips, the largeſt of which is of 66 guns, four from 48 to 50, five of 36, two of 34, and others ſmaller, the leaſt of 28 guns.

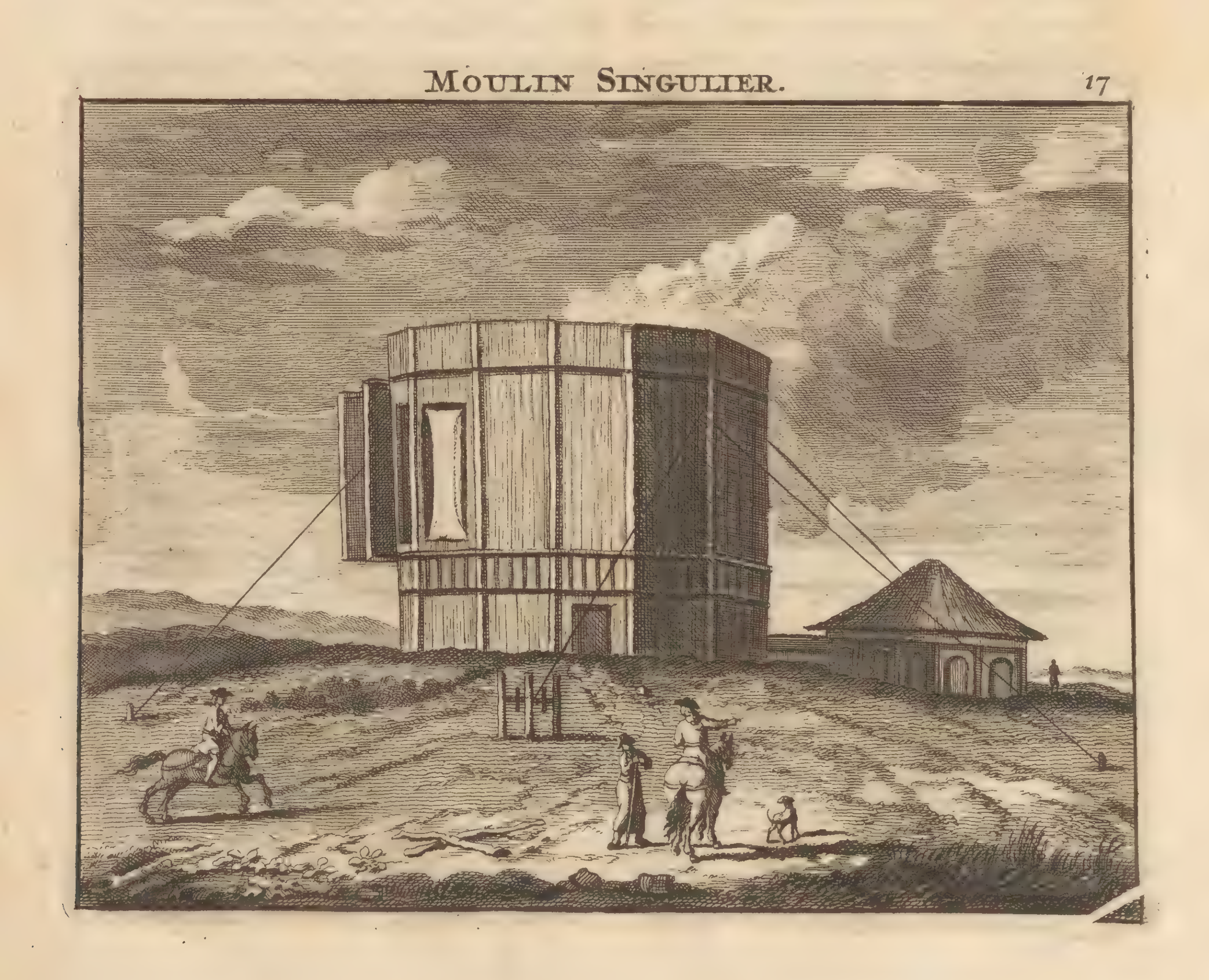
That day the Czar took the diverſion of ſailing upon the ice, in a level place fit for the purpoſe. Upon the *thirteenth* at night they fired a ſcore of bombs from two veſſels, and ſeveral from a pinnace or galley of 20 oars; when I returned the Vice-Admiral told me the Czar had ſent a meſſage to me. I went immediately on board the ſhip where he was, and ſaw ſeveral bombs fired off in my way: I found his Majeſty at his liquor, and underſtood he was the next day, being the *fourteenth*, to go with all his train to the *Don* or *Tanais*, about 12 werſts from *Veronis*, to take a ſurvey of the ſhipping there. *Journey to the* Tanais. We ſet out at three in the afternoon, moſt of us on horſeback, and the reſt in waggons or coaches, and when we had got a little way from the town, his Majeſty ſtopped at a ſmall church, and we went a little aſide to ſee a mill of an extraordinary contrivance by a *Circaſſian*, and of an *octogon* form. *An extraordinary mill.* Within it are four mills which work together, without ſails or ought elſe for the wind to take hold on outwardly; but within there are ſeven ſails, like thoſe of a veſſel, and ſhut up without by great windows or doors; when there is wind



VIEUX CIMETIERE. 16



MOULIN SINGULIER. 17



1703. wind ſtirring they open two or three of the windows on the ſide next to it, ſo that ruſhing upon the ſails, it ſets the machine a going with great violence. You have this repreſented in number 17.

Arrival at the Tanais. The Czar came up with us in a calaſh, and deſired us to mend our pace, which every body was not able to do; but we got to our journey's end before it was night. There was a general diſcharge of guns immediately from the ſhips, and we went to ſee ſome of them where they made us drink moſt heartily; and at night we were entertained at the houſe of *Ivan Alexewitz Moeſin Poeskin*. Supper over ſeveral of the company retired to the ſhips for lodging which was not to be had on ſhore; for they have not as yet begun to build in this place, tho' they talk of a town intended to be here. The next day we went to ſee the works they were about in order to ſtop the courſe of the *Don*, and turn it another way; to which purpoſe they had a ſluice, on the ſide they deſigned it ſhould run: This river called *Tanais*, and by the inhabitants *Donetz*, is famous in *Ruſſia*; it croſſes the *Precopian* or *Little Tartary* to the eaſtward, and having winded for a great way, it takes a vaſt ſweep towards the *Volga*; and having been ſwelled by ſeveral ſmaller rivers, falls, by *Aſoph*, formerly *Tanais*, into the lake *Mæotis*, or ſea of *Zabaskey*, where it divides *Europe* from *Aſia*. In theſe parts, we to our great ſurpriſe found ſeveral elephant's teeth upon the ground, one of which I keep as a curioſity, but cannot conceive how they ſhould happen to be there. It is true indeed, the Czar told us that *Alexander* the Great having croſſed this river, as we read in hiſtorians, came as far as the little town of *Koſtinke*, but eight werſts from thence, and that poſſibly it might have been that ſome of his elephants died there, and that theſe teeth might be the remains of them.

Courſe of the Don.

Elephant's teeth.

Return to the ſhips. We then returned to the fleet, where they made very much of us. Here were in all eleven men of war and victuallers. One of theſe ſhips was built under his Majeſty's directions, and outſhone the reſt with all ſorts of ornaments, and the Captain's cabbin was lined with walnut-tree; tho' there was another along-ſide of this of great beauty alſo, and built by an *Engliſhman*; but the reſt made no great matter of ſhow. We were entertained with fiſh at noon, and then returned to the ſhips where we drank deep to the roar of the cannon. 1703.

An unlucky accident. In the midſt of theſe carouſals, a *Ruſſian* ſeaman was fool enough to put his hand to the mouth of a gun, and was ſo hurt thereby that he fell from the top to the bottom, and by the fall, it is likely, broke ſome of his ribs. They endeavoured to keep this from the Czar; but he coming to the knowledge of it, went to ſee the poor wretch, and found him drawing towards his laſt.

The author takes leave of the Czar at Veronis. We broke up about *eight* in the evening, and at *ten* got to *Veronis*, in the midſt of rain. Upon the *ſixteenth*, having obtained the Czar's leave for that purpoſe, I prepared to return to *Moſcow* with my three friends; but the rains having made the roads very bad, we were obliged to get eight waggons, and to arm the wheels with iron. Upon the *ſeventeenth*, in the morning, we took our leave of his Majeſty, who gave us his hand to kiſs, and then embracing us, wiſhed us a good journey; and recommended it to us to take a ſight of ſome mortars, upon the river ſide, about two werſts from the town, which we did without making any ſtay there. They were againſt a hill, near a barn, where they had been caſt. About noon I had orders to repair once more to the Czar, who was taking the diverſion of ſailing upon the ice; his veſſel was overſet in taking of a ſhort turn, but ſhe was ſoon ſet upright again. About half an hour afterwards he ordered me to follow him alone. He got into a hired ſledge with two horſes, one of which fell into a hole, but the other ſtanding firm upon the ice, he was ſoon got out again; he made me ſit by him, ſaying, *Come let us go*

to

1703. *to the ſhallop, I will have you ſee a bomb fired off, becauſe you was not there when the laſt were fired.* Being arrived, we examined the veſſel, and the wooden bed where the mortar was fixed, and which you might turn to all directions. The bombardeer being ready, the ſignal was given for thoſe in the plain to get out of the way. We then went out of the veſſel, and fire was ſet to the fuſee, but the bomb burſted in the flight. This being a kind of diſappointment, his Majeſty was ſo good as to aſk me if I would ſee any more, but I told him it was needleſs. I then waited on him to Mr. *Sleits*, and ſoon after to his own abode, which was not far off, and there I had the honour to take leave of him: He embraced me, and as his uſual way was, ſaid, *God preſerve you.*

It was about three in the afternoon when I returned to my lodging, whence I made all the haſte I could to depart, after a ſhort meal. I thanked the Vice-admiral for the honour he had done me, and for all his favors, and to my great joy, left him in a better way than I found him. He is a very worthy man, much eſteemed by every body, but by nobody more than by the Czar himſelf.

Departure for Moſcow.

We departed in the evening, and that night we had ſnow, and after it ſome rain. Upon the eighteenth in the morning we were 58 werſts from *Veronis*, having three horſes to each waggon, which carried us back the ſame way we came.

We took notice that moſt of the *Kabacs*, or Czar's houſes towards *Veronis*, are inhabited by *Circaſſians*.

Manners of the Circaſſians.

Theſe are a neat and cleanly people both in their perſons and in their houſes; they are of a pleaſant humour, and live agreeably, diverting themſelves every day with the violin, and another ſtringed inſtrument. You have theſe minſtrels in all his Majeſty's houſes to that of Prince *Alexander*; they never fail to play as ſoon as you come in, and they commonly ſell you mead or brandy, and among them are women who are kind to ſtrangers. Their dreſs is remarkable, and quite different from the *Ruſſian*, and eſpecially with regard to the women. Their common dreſs is a ſhift with a girdle, round which they plait a piece of ſtriped ſtuff, which hangs down to their feet like a petticoat. They wear a white linen cloth wound round the head, and a part of their chin is covered; one end of this cloth is genteely turned up on one ſide of the head, and the reſt are ſometimes looſe or hang down. They wear alſo a piece of linen in gathers upon the forehead, which goes over the head, and is flat behind after the manner of the *Arabs* and *Jews* in the eaſt. Their ſhift is gathered two fingers breadth about the neck, as formerly with us when they wore ruffs; but you will beſt comprehend this by the plate beneath, which I drew in ſmall from one of the moſt agreeable of theſe women, and juſt as we found her in her ſtove. Near was a maid-ſervant kneading of dough for bread, and ſome children ſitting after their manner upon the oven. It was three in the afternoon when we left this place, in mizzling weather with ſome ſnow; but an hour afterwards it came on to blow from the northern board, and began to freeze. When we had travelled 15 werſts, we came to a ſmall river, partly frozen over, but too deep to ford, which we ſought to do for two hours, to no purpoſe. In ſhort we ſent two of our ſervants over on horſeback, and a third to a village to enquire if there was not ſome place where we might croſs; but he brought us word there was none, and did not dare to croſs the water a ſecond time, ſo that we ſent him back to the village whence he came, with orders there to wait for us till morning. Mean time we had no news of one of our ſervants who had got drunk the day before, and whom we had thrown into a countryman's ſledge; and as in this caſe our people were in danger of freezing, we crowded our waggons together to ſhelter them, while we conſulted what we had beſt to do. It was nine in the night, and

Violent cold.

FEMME CIRCASSIEN.



and we were ſtill quite at a loſs, till, at length, conſidering there were no houſes in this part of the country, we reſolved to go back again, in queſt of a village out of the main road, where we arrived at eleven in the night, and got ſome refreſhment for ourſelves and our horſes. The ſervant we had loſt came here to us that night, and told us his driver had taken the horſes out of the ſledge while he was aſleep, and carried them away, that he perceived nothing of the matter till he awoke, and that he had been obliged to look out for another, which he had done in vain, had it not been for the prevalence of money and good words; and to conclude, that it was with great difficulty that he had got to us. The next day I diſcovered, that by the negligence of our people, the axle-tree of my waggon was broken, in conſideration of which, as well as of the froſt, and of the ſnow that had fallen in the night, I reſolved to fix it upon the bottom of a ſledge, and to take the wheels with me, in caſe a change of weather ſhould happen. For the reſt, one of our drivers had given us the ſlip, a thing not unuſual in this country, and had left us his horſes, in hope, his companions would bring them back with their own; ſo that we were obliged to take another in his ſtead. We took three, with ſledges and horſes, and provided ourſelves with plank and timber to help us in croſſing the river. The ſun ſhone out

1703. out, but it was exceſſively cold, and about ten o'clock, we came back to the place where we had endeavoured to croſs the evening before, and found the river ſo frozen, that ſeveral horſes went over upon the ice, tho' indeed ſome of them fell in. We took our horſes out, that our waggons might croſs the ſafer, and we made uſe of our boards and timbers in the deepeſt places, and yet ſome of our people fell in; but as every body was ready to lend a helping hand, they were ſoon got out again. At one in the afternoon we went on, and in an hour's time came to a place where we found freſh horſes ready to put to. We had now, in all, travelled but 28 werſts, and had two more to go, before we got to a ſmall town called *Romanof*, where we croſſed the river of *Belle Kolodis* or the *White Pit*, by a bridge cover'd over a foot and a half thick with ice, and dined to the ſound of the *Circaſſians* inſtruments. It was eleven in the night before we could get away from hence, for before then we had not been able to prevail with the Governor for horſes. Here they took the wheels off from the other waggons, and loaded them upon ſledges as I had done, and in the night we went thro' a great village called *Stoeduncke*; and upon the *twentieth*, at break of day, we came to the pillar of 136 werſts, where we took freſh horſes without ſtopping. Two werſts from thence, we paſſed the town of *Dobri*, a werſt from the great road, upon the river *Veronis.* At the end of 151 werſts we came to a great village, and another at the end of 154, where you go up a hill ſo very ſteep, that there are rails on the left hand from top to bottom, to prevent your falling. We afterwards went through three villages, upon the poſt of the laſt of which we ſaw 157 werſts. Soon after we found the high road ſo full of ice, it was impoſſible to keep it, ſo that we looked for a better way on the right hand, and ſucceeded, ſo that we all got thro', except one waggon, which being very heavily laden, fell through the ice, but was 1703. got out again without damage done to any thing in it. In ſhort, after we had again skirted it along ſome villages, we reached the houſe of Prince *Alexander*, 190 werſts from *Veronis*; but here we made no ſtay, and went on to a village not far off, and there we dined. It was ſix in the evening, and we waited till ten before our horſes were ready. Upon the 21ſt, at four of the clock we were at 218 werſts, ſoon after at 238, and then 257 werſts, whence, on the right, we ſaw the town of *Schoppin*, which ſeems conſiderably large, and ſome villages between that and us; and as our poſtwodens reached no farther, we went thither, and croſſed over a bridge a werſt in length, and over a great moor. This town, however, is in itſelf no great matter, and the caſtle where the Governor reſides, and which ſtands at the end of the high ſtreet, has nothing remarkable either within ſide or without. They immediately appointed accommodations for us, and the burgomaſters came to us on the part of the Governor, and brought us refreſhments of brandy, mead, beer, bread, and the like. Here we made a demand of 30 horſes, inſtead of 24, the better to carry our wheels with us, and this being granted us, we departed hence an hour before ſunſet, and that night travelled 40 werſts, then changing horſes we reached 311 werſts, and came near the houſe of Mr. *le Fort*, where we arrived upon the *twenty ſecond*, at nine in the morning. This gentleman had written to his ſervants, ordering them to uſe us the beſt they could, and to let us have horſes, and every thing elſe we might want. Here we left our waggon-wheels behind us to be the leſs incumbered, and to rid the more way, with the fewer horſes, the froſt and ſnow having much mended the ways. Here we had freſh horſes, and having ſtopped about an hour, we proceeded on our journey, and got the length of 329 werſts, and at three in the afternoon we came to 347, and to the

Schoppin.

Governor's caſtle.

1703. the village of *Podassincke*, where we cheered up the heart. It snowed, and continued both to freeze and to blow, and having again changed horses in the evening, we went thro' several villages in the night, and thro' the town of *Nikole Saraiske*, a place tolerable enough; but it was not without difficulty we got thro' it, because of the great number of country people who had crowded it with their sledges laden with things for *Moscow*. Upon the *twenty third* in the morning, having got to the end of 420 wersts, we held on our way, with fresh horses, to *Grodno*, where we got at nine o'Clock, but made no stay, and seven or eight wersts from thence we met with the river of *Occa*, which we were some time in crossing. We had then to go over a very steep and lofty hill, where there was but one narrow gut on the left hand of the river; and as we were going up we met with some sledges, who obliged us to stop that they might get by, which they could only do upon the very brow of the hill, the way being too narrow for them and for us too, and the way they took was so bad, so steep, and so full of great stones, that both horses and sledges were in great danger, most of the horses going on at a venture without drivers; and not only so, but words arising between these sledgemen and our servants, they came to blows, the cause alledged, that the one had not made room timely enough for the other. Several of these people being in liquor, exasperated those who had already got down below, and made them come up after us, to the number of about twenty. I was lying along in my sledge when I understood this, and leaped out immediately with Sword and Pistol in hand, and the Sieurs *Kinsius* and *Hill* came after, armed also, the one with his pistols, the other with his sword. In this posture we went down to Mr. *Steel*'s sledge, who was the last of us, and most exposed to the fury of these madmen. He had but just got out, but had no arms, and the *Russians* about him were at him with their Threats; but he, like a prudent man as he was, made signs to his servant to get out of the way, and began to sooth them with fair speeches, judging, and with good reason, that a contrary procedure might prove fatal, observing there was beneath us a great number of *Russians* who would have infallibly fallen upon us, on the very first onset. And these observing we came up to them without any seeming Disposition to quarrel, kept back those that were drunk, and submitted to reason. The most troublesome of them being gone off, we went our way on each side, tho', for my own part, I would not go again into my sledge till we had gained the height of the hill, tho' I had much ado to walk, it was so slippery, and the wind so strong; besides that it was so exceedingly cold I could hardly stir my fingers. In the midst of this I took notice of a sledge and one horse going down without a driver, tho' heavily laden; the poor horse, unable to turn a corner so nicely as he should, for the wind and the ice; in short, unable to keep the beaten track, and borrowing too much upon the precipice, he fell perpendicular down upon the bank of the river, a sight dreadful to behold. The sledge broke into a thousand pieces, and the horse it is most likely broke all his ribs, tho' I afterward saw him lift up his head. At length, having with difficulty reached the top of the hill, we went on, and at one in the afternoon came to the city of *Kolomna*, 456 wersts. We waited in the suburbs for an answer to a letter of the *Czar*'s, which we sent in, and the Diack or Secretary of the city no sooner received it, than he came to us, and offered us his service, and even desired us to go into the city to entertain ourselves; but we excused ourselves, and he sent us mead, brandy, beer, and some provisions, which we returned back again, having sufficiently provided ourselves with *necessaries*. We talked with him about two hours, and drank some-

Nikole Saraiske

Great danger.

Terrible fall of an horse.

2

1703. ſomewhat briskly about, and at four we departed with freſh horſes, and travelled 25 werſts before nine to the village of *Koſachof*, where we baited two or three hours, for the ſake of our horſes, who were to carry us quite to *Moſcow*. Upon the *twenty fourth* by eight in the morning, we had got near the village of *Oſtraweets* in 46 werſts farther. We here reſted and fed our horſes, and in two hours went away, and about noon arrived in the *German* ſlabode at *Moſcow*, in 25 werſts ſtill farther.

An aſſaſſination. Upon the *twenty ſeventh*, the ſchoolmaſter and reader of the *Lutheran* Church called *John Frederick Maes* of *Koningsberg*, was without any provocation murdered by a *German* Enſign, called *Kraſſo*, who being taken confeſſed the fact.

The author indiſpoſed. I thought to have reſted me after ſo fatiguing a journey, but upon the fifth of *March*, towards the evening, I was taken with an extraordinary heat of body, like a fever, and going immediately to bed, had a very troubleſome night of it. I roſe up, however, at break of day next morning, but was ſo weak, I could hardly ſtand upon my legs, and had beſides a continual cough day and night. The fire within me was ſo fierce, that had I drank an hundred times a day, it could not have been extinguiſhed. Sometimes I drank milk, ſometimes I drank beer, and ſometimes water boiled up with tamarinds and ſugar, which I found relief from in *Egypt*; and to keep my ſtomach in ſome degree of ſtrength, I drank alſo of rheniſh wine, and other things good for that end. In this manner did I paſs five days and five nights without any reſt, and in the night particularly was apt to be ſomewhat delirious. My friends, upon this, obſerving me to grow weaker and weaker, advifed me to ſend for a phyſician, but I told them I was always my own phyſician, that I knew my conſtitution better than any body, and conſequently what was beſt for me; that I was perſuaded, as I knew the cauſe of my ſickneſs, a good regimen would do me more good than all the phyſicians in the world; beſides that, I had been for ſome time ſenſible of what was coming upon me. Upon the ſixth night and that following I reſted indifferently well, and found myſelf greatly relieved; in ſhort, after a continual regimen for ten days together, I began to take in ſtronger broths, and eat meat. I bled alſo a little at the noſe at night, and that eaſed my head.

He is his own phyſician.

Upon the *eleventh*, the Czar returned, with all his train, from *Veronis*, and upon the *thirteenth* he cauſed Colonel *Bodon*, already mention'd, to be beheaded in his preſence. He was executed in the *German* ſlabode, on one ſide of the poſt, on which the ſword and ax had been hung up, and Enſign *Kraſſo* was at the ſame time hanged; he then fixed up an order, that no one ſhould preſume to draw a ſword, upon pain of death.

Colonel Bodon *beheaded, and* Kraſſo *hanged.*

The Envoy of France *admitted to an audience of the Czar.* Upon *Sunday*, the *fourteenth* of the month, Monſieur *Caſimir Bolus*, Envoy from *France*, who had been ſome time incognito at *Moſcow*, had a private audience of the Czar at Count *Feudor Alexewitz de Golowin*'s.

The Czar viſits Mr. Brants. This Prince, the ſame day, went with a ſmall attendance to ſee Mr. *Brants*, where he was entertained with cold meats and ſome other refreſhments. I came out of my room upon this occaſion, to have the honour of taking leave of his Majeſty, and to beg he would grant me a paſſport to go out of his dominions. Obſerving me to be much altered, he was ſo good as to aſk me what was the matter with me, and what had been the cauſe of my illneſs; and upon my telling him I attributed it to ſome exceſſes on my journey from *Veronis*, he anſwered, nothing in the world was ſo good as a hair of the ſame dog; but the Reſident and ſome others coming in upon us, we were interrupted.

The author takes leave of the Czar. Having obtain'd the leave I wanted, and an order to count *Golowin* for a paſſport, I took leave of the Czar, who did me the honour to give me his hand to kiſs, and then beſtow-

2 ed

1703. ed on me his bleſſing, *God preſerve you.*

It was about ten when this Prince went away to Mr. *Lups*, and to ſeveral *Engliſh* Merchants, before he ſat out for *Sleutelenburg*; and upon the *fifteenth*, early in the morning he ſat out, without ſo much as going to *Probroſensko*.

Malefactors puniſhed.

Upon that day they were to execute the two other criminals, Captain *Sax*, and the ſervant of Colonel *Bodon*, whoſe head and body lay ſtill upon the ground, as *Kraſſo* hung upon the gibbet, guarded by ſome ſoldiers. They were both upon the block, and the executioner ſtood by with the ax in his hand, ready to give the fatal blow, when they were at once reprieved, the Captain to be ſent a perpetual Exile into *Siberia*, and the ſervant to receive thirty ſtrokes of the knoet, and then be a ſlave in the gallies for life; but I a little while afterwards heard he died of the knoet. 1703.

Our Reſident having demanded a paſſport for me, in the name of his Majeſty, Count *Golowin*, whoſe buſineſs it was, ordered it to be immediately diſpatched.

Upon the *twenty firſt* they celebrated *Palm-Sunday*; upon the *twenty fifth*, the Annunciation of the bleſſed Virgin *Mary*, in high reverence with the *Ruſſians*, and upon the *twenty eighth*, the feaſt of *Eaſter*. Nothing elſe remarkable occurr'd, except that a fire broke out at *Moſcow*, upon the *thirtieth*, and that the river of *Moska* thawed, and was open upon the *firſt* of *April*. So thorough a thaw made the ways very bad, and upon the *third* the waters were riſen higher than had been known in the memory of man. At this time I was taken with a tertian ague, but after three or four fits it left me.

CHAP. XIV.

The Author is ſhown every Thing remarkable in the Churches. Cloth that waſtes not in the Fire.

WHEN I was recovered of my ague, I went to *Moſcow*, to wait on *Ivan Alexewitz Moeſin Poeskin*, whom the Czar had ordered, at *Veronis*, to ſhew me every thing that deſerved to be ſeen in the churches, and other places of this city. This Nobleman, whom I have elſewhere mentioned, favoured me with a very civil reception, and told me he was ready to obey his Majeſty's orders, whenever I required it: I told him it ſhould be as ſoon as he pleaſed, becauſe, as his Excellence knew, I was on the point of ſetting out for *Perſia*. Upon this he appointed me to be with him at his houſe upon the *tenth* in the morning, which I took care to be, and found him ready to mount to go into the country; but he obligingly told me, the Gentleman with him would take care to go with me every where. In the firſt place we went to the church of *Saboor*, where they pretend to ſhew a picture by St. *Luke*, and Chriſt's garment upon which the ſoldiers caſt lots. They ſay this garment fell to the lot of a ſoldier, who happened to be a *Georgian*, and that he carrying it into his own country, made a preſent of it to his ſiſter, who was a maiden; that ſhe conceiving a great veneration for it, deſired upon her death-bed it might be buried with her, and that ſhe might be covered with it; that this being done, there aroſe a great tree from out of her tomb; that the *Perſians* afterwards poſſeſſing themſelves of *Georgia*, the King heard of this tomb, ordered it to be opened, and took out the Garment, which

A ſtory about Chriſt's garment.

1703. he carried away with him into *Persia*; that some time afterwards sending an embassy to *Moscovy*, he made a present of it to the Great Duke, as he was a Christian; that the *Muscovites* desirous to be certain it was the very garment, got together all the blind, the lame, and others labouring under other afflictions, not doubting, but if it was, what it was said to be, it would heal them; that the effects proved equal to their wishes; that it had ever since been kept to be of use upon the same occasions, and that it had never once failed to answer the end. All this they affirm for gospel, and therefore I resolved it should be the first thing I took notice of.

The church of Saboor. This church is square within, and 96 foot in length, the vault is sustained by four great pillars, and the whole is full of pictures of Saints and the like. There are some of them in the *Greek* taste, not to be called bad, even in the five little domes, in form of lanthorns, the largest of which is in the middle, and the other four at the four corners. The picture they *Picture by St.* Luke. will have to be by St. *Luke*, is on one side of the high Altar, and is a half length of the Virgin, represented with Christ kissing her, their faces being close together. It is very gloomy and almost black; but whether this proceeds from the effects of time, or the smoke of the tapers, or the fancy of the painter; certain it is there is no great matter in it, besides that it is all gilt but the faces and the hands. This Virgin has a fine crown of pearls and precious stones upon her head, and a collar of pearls which hangs down from about her neck. In short this picture is placed in a nich, under which there is a stall or seat. Between the two pillars of the high Altar, there is a great silver hanging sconce with branches, made at *Amsterdam*, like those in our churches; and besides this, there are three of copper well disposed of in the body of the church; tho' it must be observed there are few or no ornaments in their churches, however it happens that there are ten silver lamps about the Altar of 1703. this. But in these lamps they burn no oyl, which is not in use with the *Russians*, but tapers which are put into nossels fixed upon the lamps. To the bottom of their great sconces, they commonly hang an Ostrich's egg. As we went out of this, we *Church of the Patriarchs.* went into the Patriarch's church, which is above small, and in form of a dome. On the right hand overagainst the chappel there is an apartment, with Christ represented sitting in a chair, in a picture all gilt except the face and hands; the Virgin *Mary*; St. *John Baptist* on the left, and on each hand an Apostle kneeling, with a silver lamp. Between this piece and the door of the chappel there is a bench, raised upon some steps, and thereon the Patriarch's seat covered with black velvet; and as you go into this little church, you see an Altar, behind which is a small choir, full of pictures from top to bottom, each representing stories of Saints, divided from each other by columns in the manner of windows, and here every thing is gilt: the other side of the walls is painted blue. Again in the crown of the dome there is a head of Christ, which nearly fills it, and about it several other representations. The Patriarch's hall of audience which is tolerably large, is overagainst this church; on the right as you go in you have the patriarchal chair all gilt, with a green velvet cushion and gold fringes about the arms, and upon an estrade of three steps high; it has at top a small Christ in painting. As we went out of this hall they carried us up to a room where they keep the treasures of most of the Patriarchs, and full of chests and trunks, which they opened for me. In the first were six patriarchal caps, two of which were of great value, divided from the others, and enriched with great pearls, large diamonds and other precious stones; the others were the same, but not so costly. There was a seventh adorned with pearls only, and belonging to the metropolitan; then they shew'd a box full of jewels, and among

1703. mong the rest diamond crosses hanging by golden chains. All these things had belonged to several Patriarchs who had appeared in them upon processions, and upon other such public occasions. There were also several *pojasses* or girdles with precious stones; many of the combs that had been used by the former patriarchs, most of them large and made of tortoishell; their crosiers with jewels at the end; several presses full of patriarchal robes and vestments, 79 in all, and all of gold brocade, and adorned with pearls and precious stones. In the chief of them were nine vestments, of extreme magnificence and beauty, and all set with precious stones: in others were fine stoles, a palm and a half broad, and among the rest that worn by the Patriarch *Constantine* in the year 6176, as the *Russians* compute: it is of a plain silk, and has suffered somewhat by time; they have an extraordinary regard for it, and keep it among their most magnificent vestments. In the same place you see several dishes of silver gilt, with great vases, and other vessels of the same. Having satisfied my curiosity in this place, I deferred till the next day, being *Sunday*, to see the rest of the churches. First I waited upon Mr. *Moesin Poeskin* to know of him if I could not have a sight of Christ's garment; but he told me it was impossible, being in a place sealed up with the Czar's own seal, and that without an express order from him there was no setting eyes on it; and sorry I was I had not had some intimation of this in time. In short, I went again to the church of *Saboor* to see what there was still curious to be seen; and they shewed me a great chalice or cup of gold, about two palms high, which they use in the administration of the sacrament, crowned with four fine jewels, and the foot enamelled with the sufferings of the Saviour of the world: A great dish of the same metal, enamelled like the chalice, and in like manner adorned with four jewels; two plates, a spoon with an agate handle, a golden stirrer for the wine in the cup, and a crown all adorned with pearls and precious stones, together with two other small chalices of agate, enriched also with jewels. All these jewels, say they, were found at the bottom of the great cask which St. *Anthony* the *Russian* got fished up by certain fishermen, when he was transported from *Rome* to *Nieugart*, sitting on a mill-stone, having made it his bargain to have all that came up in the net. Then they shewed me a great book, which, upon certain holidays, they carry in procession; it is adorned with precious stones, full of scripture stories in paint, and all in characters of gold; all these things are kept separate in cases of red velvet. They shewed also the body of the archbishop *Peter* in silver, with a bass relief of him above; a small reddish slip of Christ's garment, already mentioned in a case covered with glass; the body of the archbishop *John*, in a coffin like the former, and that of *Philip* in another. Then they shewed me the reliques of saints; the hand of *John Satoesteva*; the skull, and all the head of *Gregory Bagastovo*, and the like. From hence, having thanked the Priest for the trouble he had been at, I went to the church of St. *Michael* the Archangel, very fine within, and full of pictures like the former. Here all the great Dukes of *Moscovy* are entombed all in one place, excepting the two last, brothers to the present Czar, who are in another. Their tombs are raised up, and upon them you have rich habits of red velvet, with bands of green velvet, and thereon in *Russian* characters, their birth, their age, and time of their decease, with great pearl crosses; but none of them for magnificence comes near the last of *Ivan Alexewitz*, which is all adorned with precious stones. I left this church and went to that of the Annunciation, or, as they call it, *Blagoweesine*, small and full of pictures like the last. Here, in a room, they shewed me 36 silver boxes, and some gold ones full of the reliques of saints, which they had taken the 1703.

Miracles of St. Anthony.

Reliques of Saints.

Church of St. Michael.

Church of the Annunciation.

1703. pains to spread out upon a long table against I came. In the first there was some of the blood of Christ, and in the others, a small cross made of the true cross; a hand of the Evangelist St. *Mark*; some bones of the prophet *Daniel*, and other Saints, like *Mummy*; several heads, and other reliques all very brown. Having shewn me all this, they would have carried me to see other churches, but my curiosity being satisfied, I excused my self, and thanked my conductor for the trouble I had given him, and the rest for the favour they had done me, which was quite unusual, and perhaps without example in that country.

Upon the *fifteenth* of this month, I went with Mr. *Poppe* to visit the Knez, *Bories Alexewitz Galietsen*, at a pretty country house five wersts from *Moscow*, and as we went thither passed by the fine estate of the Knez, *Mighaile Serkaskie*, the richest of all the Princes of this dominion, and so powerful that besides a great number of villages he is lord of, he has above 20000 peasants his vassals. We found the Knez, and I begged of him to grant me a passport from the office of the prikaes of *Casan*, of which he was Vice-roy, as well as of *Astracan*. And this I did, because Mr. *Poppe* had given me to understand that the Governour of *Casan* and him of *Astracan*, would pay no regard to a passport from the prikaes of *Possolsch*, and might put a stop to my journey. The Knez *Bories* agreed to it, and dispatched me one, in consideration of Mr. *Poppe* who was his friend, and at the same time wrote to the Governors of *Casan* and *Astracan* in my behalf. For which we returned him our thanks, and took leave of him. This Lord had, some months before, been at *Casan* to make up a difference between two *Tartar* Princes, father and son, which arose as follows. The son having with him a woman the father was in love with, the latter got her spirited away from the former, who enraged at what had been done, declared war with his father, and appeared in the field at the head of 20000 men; the father on his side in a hurry got together 40000, and they were ready to fall on each other, when the Knez arrived and made them friends. The *Tartar* Prince among other things made him a present of a piece of coarse cloth, which neither burns nor consumes in the fire; and the Knez giving some of it to Mr. *Poppe*, he gave it to me. He told me it was made in *Katay*, between *China* and *Boggaer*, and that they there continued to make it. From the island of *Cyprus* I formerly brought some of the stone *Asbestos* which may be spun into thread, and will not waste in the fire, and in former days they made a cloth of it, but the art of doing it is now lost. *Pliny* mentions such a kind of cloth, as do some moderns who have treated of the *Roman* antiquities, and the use of lamps in the monuments of the ancients.

Difference between two Tartar Princes.

Remarkable cloth.

Upon the *sixteenth* I dined in the city with Mr. *Poppe*, and returning to the slabode, I observed there was a fire in a certain place, whither I went to see how they contrived to put it out, but they do no more than throw down the next houses.

My passports being dispatched, I prepared for my departure, in company with an *Armenian* merchant, called *Jacob Daviedof*, who had travelled from *Ispahan* to *Holland*, and had been some time at *Amsterdam*. We agreed to set out upon the *twenty second*, and to fall down the river to *Astracan*. The time I had left was employ'd in taking leave of my friends, and particularly Mr. *Vander Hulstd* our Resident, and the Sieurs *Brants* and *Lups*, to whom I owed a thousand obligations, and especially to Mr. *Coyet*, who being perfectly skilled in the language, and informed of the customs of the country, gave me such hints and instructions as were of great use to me in the sequel of my journey. I went from *Moscow* about noon, and finding no vessel to carry me on board of the ship where the *Armenian* was already embarked, and which was fallen down

Departure from Moscow.

1703. down to *Malsko*, to have the benefit of high water over the sands, I was obliged to hire three waggons to carry me thither. 1703.

CHAP. XV.

Departure from Moscow. *Course of the* Wolga. *Description of the Towns and Places upon that River. Arrival at* Astracan.

Kolommenske. IN my way to the ship I passed by the town of *Kolommenske*, on the right hand upon an eminence; it makes a good figure, has a fine monastery, a church and two towers. You enter the two sides of it by crossing a raft of timbers fastened together, so that part of them may be removed when ships are to pass, and be put together with the rest again. I also went by several villages, charmingly situated on an eminence on the right hand of the river. Towards evening I got into a wood of low trees, and being some hours in going through it, it was late before I got to *Matsko*, where I heard the barks of the *Armenians* were not yet come. Here were two houses, and yet I lay that night in a barn half open, and upon the hard floor. Upon the *twenty third* in the morning, my fellow-traveller came down with four barks, and three other *Armenians*, who were going also to *Ispahan*, and informed me the ship we were to go in, and on board of which he had a great quantity of cloths, was fallen down still 60 wersts lower; so we followed her by water, and reached her at ten at night; but as it was late, and every thing topsy-turvy, we did not care to go on board, but went on shore, where we made a good fire, and fed upon good pike and perch we had, as we came along, bought of some fishermen for three pence. From hence I wrote some letters to my friends in *Moscow* and in *Holland*, and upon the *twenty fourth*, about ten in the morning we imbarked. In these parts they have small flat-bottomed vessels, which the *Russians* call stroeks, and which carry about 300 bales of silk, or about 15 lasts: They are capacious, and have but one mast and one sail, a very large one, and of use chiefly when the wind is aft; but when the wind is not either right astern, or well upon the quarters, they row with sixteen oars. They have no rudder, but a long kind of paddle, broad at the end in the water, the other end is supported by a kind of crutch adapted to the purpose, and this the patron or master manages by a tackle reeved on each side, which keeps it steady, and which may be taken on or off at pleasure. We had on board 23 sailors, and 52 passengers, as well *Russians* as *Armenians*, reckoning servants into the number. The river hitherto winds very much, and is every way about 40 fathom in breadth. In about two hours time we came to the monastery of *Smolenski*, which makes a figure at a distance, and has a fine steeple, and is on the side of a wood about 100 wersts from *Moscow*, nor did we lose sight of it till about four of the clock; and after this we, on each hand, saw a country more open and full of villages, and afterwards a more lofty scene of land, and dropt anchor when it came on to be dark night. Upon the *twenty fifth*, about nine of the clock, we arrived at *Kolomna*, to the south-west of the river of *Moska*, an episcopal see in the southern parts of *Russia*, to the eastward of *Moscow*. This city I drew on the north-side, without any sight of the river,

Form of the vessels called stroeks.

Monastery of Smolenski.

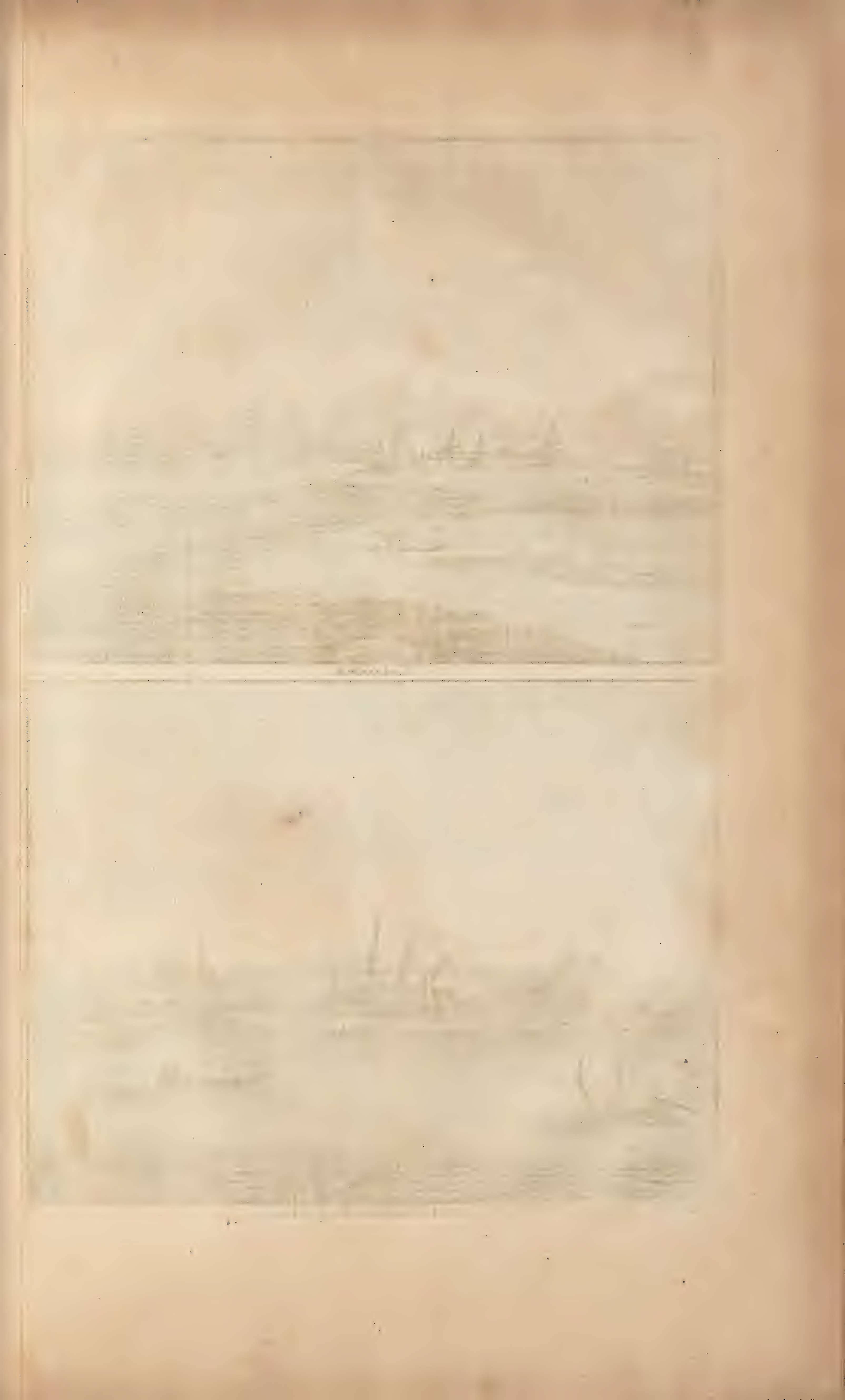
Kolomna.

1703. river, and you have the profpect of it in N°. 18. This city, which has already been mentioned in my journey to *Veronis*, is 180 werfts from *Mofcow* by water, becaufe of the great fweeps of the river, upon which it has a bridge, or a raft rather, fuch as we juft now defcribed; and here we ftaid feven hours to give our people time to get ready their canvafs and geer for failing. Towards the evening we came to the river of *Occa*, which comes from the fouth, where the *Moska* falls into it: It is very broad as well as the *Moska*, which till then had feemed but fmall to us, and its fource is not far from the *Crim Tartary*. It croffes the fouthern parts of *Mofcovy*, and flows away to the eaftward of the city of *Mofcow*, through the dutchy of that name, and falls into the *Wolga* at *Nifi-Novogorod*. This part of the country is very pleafant, and on the right hand is the town of *Kiekiena Serophof*, where there are two great buildings, in one of which the Governor refides, and on the left a village, with another large edifice, 10 werfts from *Kolomna*. The courfe of the river being more direct than hitherto, we advanced at a greater rate, and did not come to in the night. Upon the *twenty fixth* in the morning, we paffed by the village of *Dedenawa* on the left hand, and here there is a fine church upon the river, 30 werfts from *Kiekiena*; and here to the right and the left you fee a wood of fmall trees, and the river is every where of the fame breadth. That day alfo we paffed by feveral villages, and then met with lands higher, yet very agreeable, but there the river begins to wind again. Steering our way eaft-north-eaft, the land and the trees appeared to us of a charming verdure, and at the laft turn of the mountain I took the view you have in N°. 19. Being beyond thefe mountains which we had only to the right of us, we found the river much ftraitned, and about even we had, to the right and left of us, hills covered with fmall trees. Upon the *twenty feventh* in the morning we faw a lofty mountain to the right, and feveral villages to the left, with cows and fheep feeding about the country: In the mean time we had every day fifhermen, who came to us in fmall boats [canoes] hollowed out of the trunk of a tree, and fold us more pike and perch for three or four pence than feven or eight perfons could eat. Advancing ftill eaftward, we, on the left hand of us, met with an ifland of fome length full of trees, and afterwards with feveral villages at the foot of mountains, and the fine monaftery of *Bogoflova*, built of ftone, and very agreeably fituated among trees, upon a hill, and on one fide a great green plain full of cattle, quite down to the river. This monaftery is north-weft 20 werfts from *Pereflaw*; a profpect of which you have in N° 20. The foil here is very fine and full of villages. About *three* we had a low country, and an hour afterwards we came in with a gulf of the river *Prorater*, 15 werfts from *Pereflaw*; and foon afterwards we came in with another, as big as a river, and ran up a great way into the land; and an hour afterwards a third, on the right, which ftretched up the land, towards the mountains, and fpread out on both fides; for my part I take it to have been a flood; and here the river again begins to take its fweeps. About fix we had fight of the village of *Fabrenewa* upon an eminence, and the country overflowed all beneath, nay over the tops of the trees; it had the look of a fea; the foil here appeared to be fandy. There we often met with veffels coming from *Cafan* and other places, towed along with a rope, by men with great labour and difficulty; tho' they have the relief of failing when the wind can ferve them. Here we faw ftore of ducks, fnipes, and other game, and at the evening arrived before the monaftery of *Borofske*, built of ftone, and upon a hill not far from the river, and near a village, three werfts from *Pereflaw*, where we ftaid all night. Upon the *twenty eighth*, we paffed by this town, in thick cloudy weather, which

The Occa.

Fine monaftery.

Pereflaw.



18



KOLOMNA.



20

CLOITRE BOGOSLOVA.



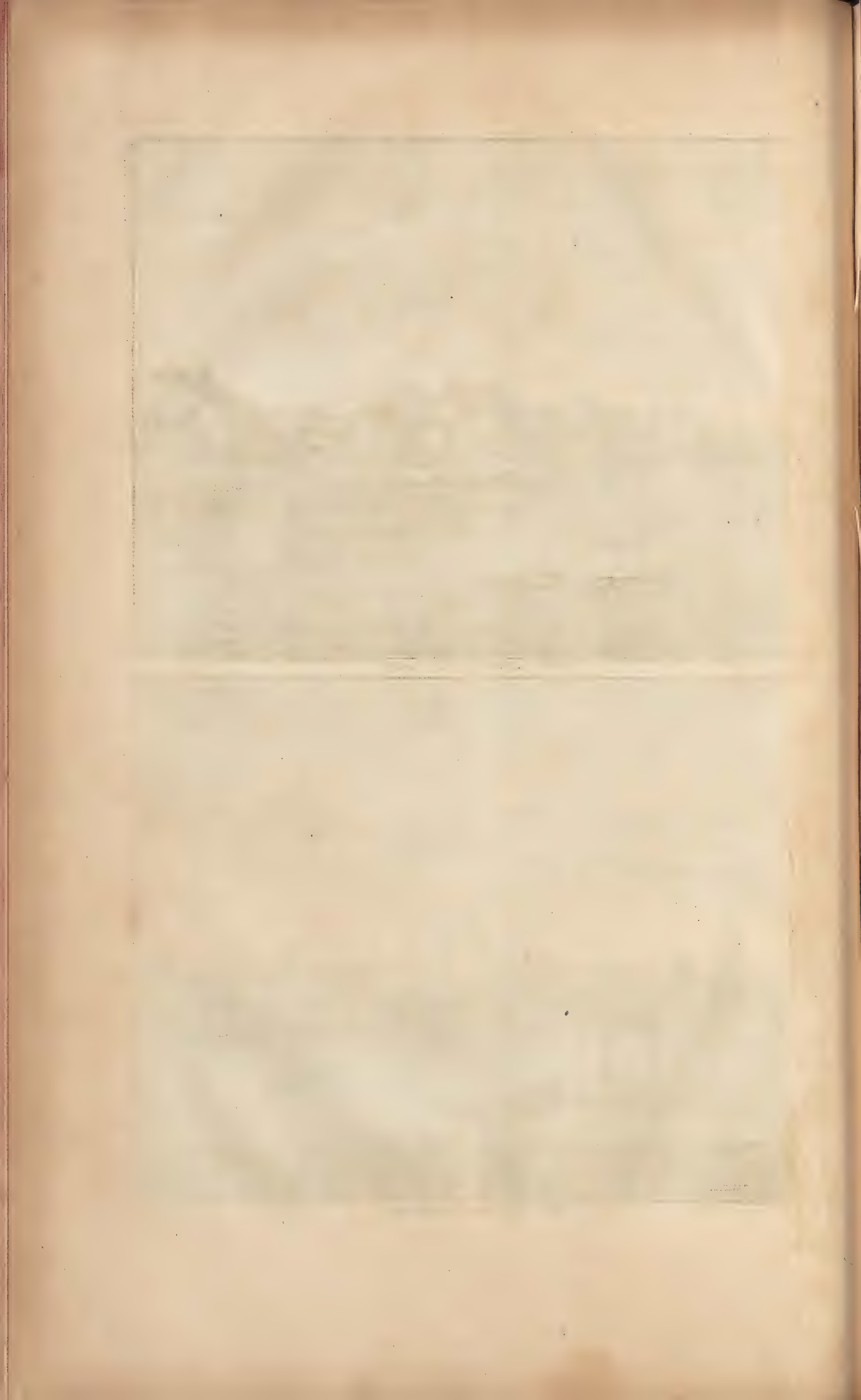
20

VÛË SUR LA RIVIERE.



VÛË SUR LA RIVIERE.

21



1703. which prevented us from feeing it as I could have wifhed. It is upon a rifing ground not far from the river, in latitude of 45 degrees 42 minutes, and is called *Pereflaw Refanske*, a name it derives from the province of *Refan*, the capital of which it is. We afterwards went by feveral villages upon hills, and faw overflowed land, which looked like our combuftible foil of which we make turf, in the paffage between *Leyden* and the *Hague*. Eight werfts from *Pereflaw* we faw a great village belonging to *Tifmaffe, Ivanitz, Erfofskie*, Governor of *Aftracan*, and fome *Ruffians* under tents, diverting themfelves along the river fide; but farther on we faw many villages, and all a flat country to the right and left, covered with water above the tops of the trees. The river is very broad in this place, and in the evening we were furrounded with trees; but the water had fo covered its banks, it was hard to know them to walk upon. The weather was very fine, tho' very hot. I went on fhore with the boat, which did fo every day for wood, to fee if I could meet with no game, and about the evening a great bark rowed by us from *Mofcow*. Upon the *twenty ninth* in the morning, 10 werfts beyond *Rezan*, upon the left, we met with an opening of many fathoms within the land, where the river having made its way, formed a great lake, navigable for fmall craft; but the weather being thick and hazy we could fee no villages. A league from thence we had fight of another gulf, where the lake, juft mentioned, terminated in a round form; the meadows hereabout were full of horfes and cattle, and beyond them were high mountains. At nine we faw more lands under water, but coming to a point where the river formed a little gulf, we faw dry ground again, and a place called *Kieftrus*, where were only fome poor wretched houfes, and feveral veffels. Here we hoifed fail for the firft time, with an eafy gale, and to the right of us, faw the monaftery of *Terigho* with a fmall village, and foon after 1703. that of *Solofade*, with a church indifferently large, and built of ftone. Then we came again to great Inundations, and faw feveral great trees with water up to their branches, and this is every year the cafe till *July*, when the waters begin to abate. Upon the *thirtieth*, coming to a pretty place 100 werfts from the city of *Kefiemof*, I drew the profpect of it as in N°. 21.

We got under fail a fecond time, with the wind at north-eaft, but we did not continue to be fo long, and were obliged to handle our oars again; and having paffed by fome villages, we came up with a country fo drowned, that we could fee nothing but sky, water, and the tops of trees. Towards evening we met with a veffel belonging to his Czarian Majefty, and laden with anchors for *Afoph*, with another with her of fmaller dimenfions; and we faluted each other with firing of muskets. When we were within 30 werfts of *Kafiemof*, we Kafiemof. made ufe of but eight oars, that the crew might take turns to relieve one another, half and half. Upon the *firft* of *May*, at one in the afternoon, we appeared a long fide of *Kafiemof*, feated upon the left hand of the river, and upon the top and declivity of an hill. Tho' it be confiderable for extent, it has no walls, and all the houfes are of wood, as well as the four churches. Here is a tower to a mofch, belonging to the *Turks* and *Tartars*, that live here, where I landed with fome *Armenians*, to buy provifions and beer, but could get none. We rowed after the bark that kept on her way, and had much ado to overhaul her, in a full hour, paffing by feveral villages in our way. But our people who went afhore in our abfence found afparagus, and got a good ftore of it. They were long and flender, but well tafted, and good to ftew; and taking the largeft of them, I dreffed them after our manner. Having gone by feveral villages, there came up fo ftrong a gale againft us, that it was as much as we could do to avoid ftriking on the ftarboard

1703. board shore. The wind was at south-east, and we did strike and stick a little once, but we soon got afloat again; and upon this occasion I observed of these barks, that they are not ready at answering the helm. At night we came up with a village, spreading down the declivity of the hill towards the river, and there I took a prospect which you have in N°. 22. Upon the *second*, in the morning, we arrived at *Alaetma*, 60 wersts beyond *Kasiemof:* It is upon the top of a hill, and lies inwards the land, so that it is not quite to be viewed from the river; is considerably large, has eight churches, and has some houses on the sides of the river; and is surrounded with several villages, and has pleasant woods on each side. We afterwards saw several villages, and a great mead full of cattle, and beyond that another gulf of the river, which seemed to wind among the meadows and their trees to a village at the foot of a mountain. The river is here very broad, and the banks on each hand are full of trees, and here we saw a prodigious flock of geese in the air.

Alaetma.

Moruma. Upon the *third* we passed by *Moruma*, a town upon the declivity of a hill, tolerably large, with seven stately stone churches, and several others of wood; and here they say is the best bread in all *Russia*. It is inhabited both by *Russians* and *Tartars*, and here begin the *Tartars* of *Mordua*. As we went on we saw again several villages and lands under water; the river is here very broad, and one of these villages was at the foot of a mountain, which runs away some leagues farther. The soil is sandy and so full of stones, that it is difficult to land: Here we saw a man continually making signs of the cross, and every now and then bowing down to the ground; which our *Russians* observing, went in the boat to him, with what every one had been pleased to give him, and among other things some loaves; for he was a poor beggar, and a little after we in the same manner saw three women with their children, on whom also we bestowed our alms. These poor people live in the mountains, and no sooner see a vessel approach than they come down for charity. After this we came among some lofty hills, bare of trees, and yet very green. At length, reaching a kabak, we landed in hopes of getting some beer, but it was bad, and we had a good deal of trouble to fetch the bark; then a brisk gale sprung up against us, which forced us to lie still for some hours. After this we crossed the mouths of two rivers, the *Molsua Raka* to starboard, and eight wersts further on the larboard side the *Clesma*, which comes from *Volodimer*. Upon the *fourth* we came into the midst of a lofty country, and got down to the village of *Isbuletz*, 40 wersts from *Nisen*. Here we met a bark with ten oars, which made good way against the stream of the river, whose banks were very level on each side, and covered with trees, with hills at a distance. About *three* we drew near to the monastery of *Dudina*, most pleasantly situated amidst trees, upon the declivity of a hill, on whose top is a village, of which you can only see the spires of the steeples. At night it came on to blow so strong, and such a sea was raised, that we were glad to take shelter on the larboard shore of the river. Upon the *fifth* the wind fell, and we got under way again before it was day, and having gone by several villages, we came at length to the shipyards, which lie along the river, and reach to the suburbs of *Nisen*, where there is a fine and great monastery surrounded with a wall; a stone church in the bottom, beset with wooden houses down to the river; another stone church, indifferently large, and well built against the hill, on the top of which is a village. The *Russians* commonly call this city *Nisen* or *Niesna*, others *Nisi-Novogorod*, or the little *Novogorod*, and some *Nisen Nieugarten*. It is the capital of the small Dutchy of the name, and has a citadel upon a rock, or the conflux of the *Occa* and the *Volga*. This city is

Beggars.

1703.

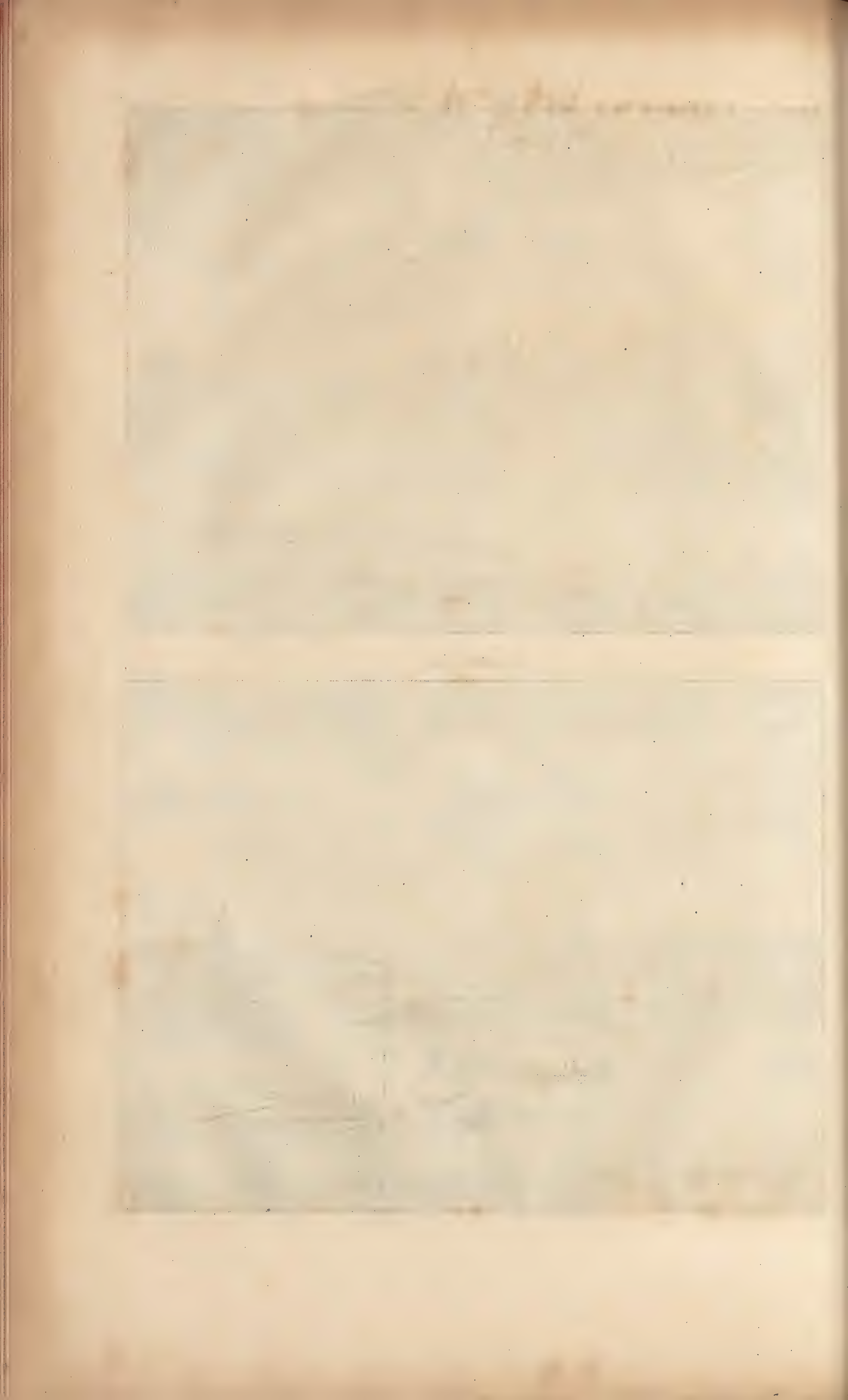
Its situation.

VEUË SUR LA RIVIERE. 22



ALAETMA. 23



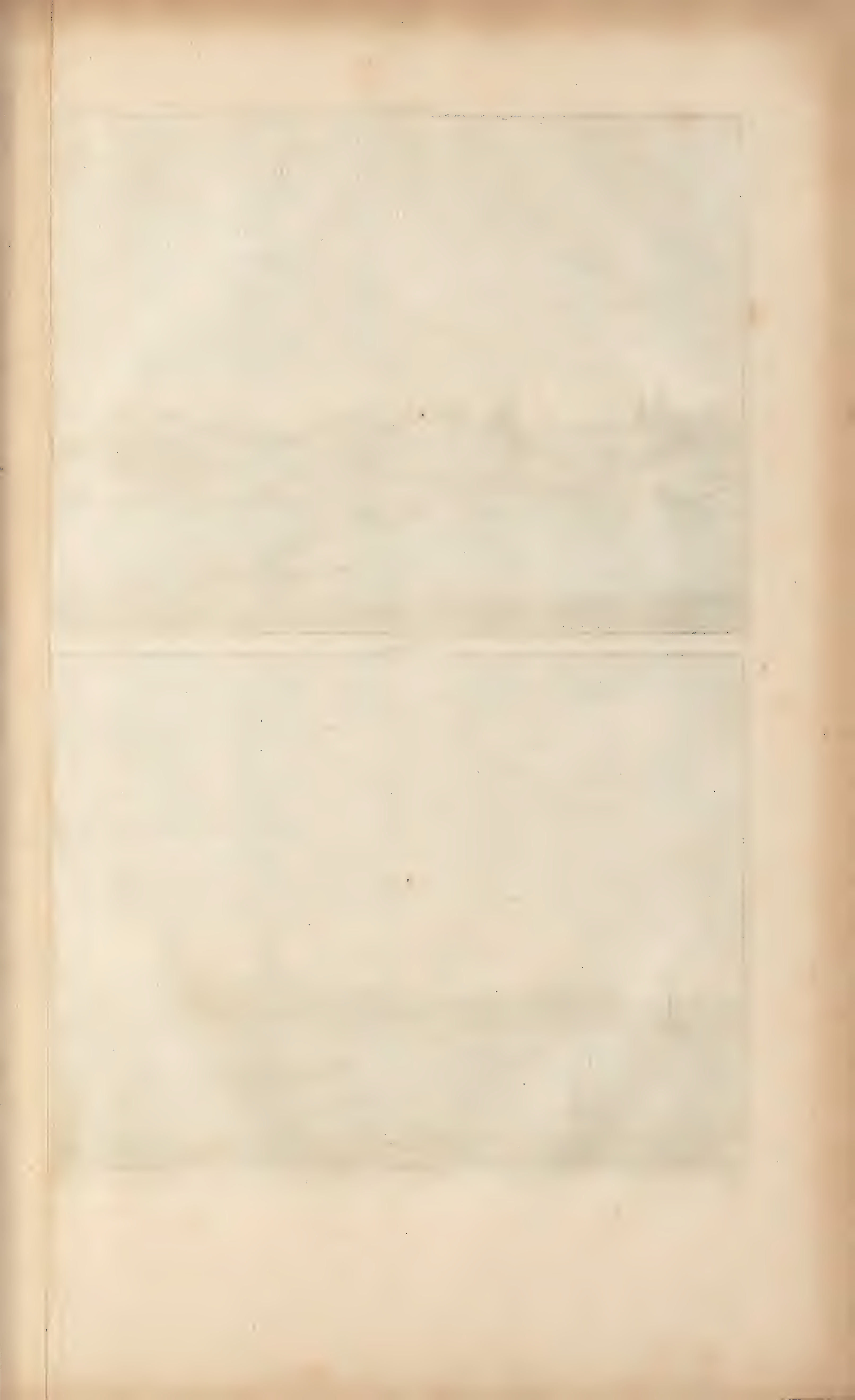


1703. is begirt with a fine ſtone wall, and you go through a great bazar or market before you get to the gate called *Iwanofskie*, which is towards the river. This gate is built of huge blocks of ſtone, and is very deep; from hence you aſcend by a great ſtreet full of wooden bridges, till you come to the gate called *Diawietrofskie*; near which is the great church, built of ſtone, and with five domes varniſhed over with green, and adorned with fine croſſes. On one ſide of this church is the archiepiſcopal palace well built of ſtone; and within its incloſure a pretty little church with a ſteeple, and two other churches, the one of ſtone, the other of wood. The prikaes or chancery is alſo near this gate, and of wood, as is alſo the Governor's houſe. However, there is no great ſight to be ſeen in this city, whoſe circumference is not very great, and all its houſes of wood; nor has it more than two gates. The country about it is pleaſant to the eye, full of trees, and well ſtored with houſes. Its walls are flanked with towers both round and ſquare, and among them is one more conſiderable than the reſt, and to be ſeen at a great diſtance. In the gate on the land-ſide, in the paſſage to the guard room, were four pieces of cannon. But the ſuburbs of this city are very large, eſpecially next the river, where are ſeveral churches of ſtone, and where the hill, divided into ſeveral parts, on which there are churches and houſes, has a very fine effect; but there is no ſeeing of the circuit of it, becauſe of the heights and the depths which intercept the ſight. The river here is always crowded with a great number of embarkations going and coming from all parts. Upon the ſide of it is a great village belonging to Mr. *Gregory Demitri Strogenof*, where there is a fine ſtone church, and a great houſe of the ſame where this merchant ſometimes reſides. About eight there went away 48 great barks with ten oars each, and 40 hands to load wood; and all theſe belonged to this Gentleman, who is reckoned to be the richeſt merchant in all *Ruſſia*; and to each of thoſe who went to fetch his wood he gave three rix-dollars. At night they began to ring the bells for the feaſt of the Aſcenſion which was to be kept the next day. Here we took in a ſtore of proviſions, and particularly brandy, which is at this place both good and cheap, for you have eight bottles of it for 40 pence; nor did the *Armenians* forget to take as much of it as they thought they ſhould want. Nor are eatables leſs plentiful: You may here buy a lamb or an ordinary ſheep for thirteen or fourteen pence; two ſmall ducks for a penny; a good pullet for three-pence; twenty eggs for a penny; two white loaves, reaſonably big, for a penny; a brown loaf of ſeven or eight pound for the ſame price, and the beer is both good and cheap. This city is computed to be 800 werſts from *Moſcow*, which make about 160 *German* leagues, tho' the diſtance is not above 100 of the ſame leagues by land; and ſtands upon the *Occa*, which we entered at *Kolomna*, as we have ſaid; and here this river falls into the *Wolga*, formerly called the *Rha*; and theſe two rivers thus united, are about 4000 foot broad, if we may rely upon thoſe who have meaſured them in winter upon the ice. This place is at preſent inhabited by none but *Ruſſians*; here are no *Tartars*; it is very populous, and in the latitude of 56 degrees 28 minutes. I ſhould have been glad to have ſeen it in front, and have taken a view of it from the river, but they would not ſuffer me to do it, no not for money, becauſe of the holiday; for upon holidays, the *Ruſſians* do nothing in the world but get drunk; and in this pickle did I ſee many of them wallowing in the ſtreets. It is odd enough to ſee how the poor keep all day long before the kabaks, or houſes where they ſell brandy; I ſtaid ſome hours in that where we bought ours, to ſee the pranks and mummery of theſe drunkards, when the liquor firſt begins to operate; but they muſt ſtand in the

1703. *The* Russians *love to drink.* the street, they must not presume to go into the house. At the door there is a table where they deposite their money, and then they give them the quantity of brandy they want, which is taken out of a great kettle, with a wooden ladle, and poured into a cup of the same material, the smallest measure of all costing an halfpenny. And thus are they served by a particular person who all the day long does nothing else, attended by another, who receives the money; nor is this publick practice of drunkenness common to the men only, it is the very same with the women. In short, I saw this scene over again at a kabak for beer, where they are allowed to go in to drink. Upon the *sixth* we embarked to get our people on board, and passed the night upon the river; early the next day we proceeded on our voyage, and as we passed by the city and the suburbs, I like the view of it so well, that you will find it drawn by me in N°. 24. Advancing forward we saw two villages on the larboard of us, one of which was very great and called *Weesna*, and on the starboard the monastery of *Bestjerske*, a great building all of stone, the roofs excepted, with several houses to the right and left, a werst from the city. We also saw a small church called *Jassoosni* upon a hill, and some hundreds of persons going to it from all parts to celebrate the festival, and spreading their tents to divert themselves under. We continued at three wersts from the city till the *seventh* at *seven* in the morning, and about noon we came up with an island, about two wersts in length, and covered with trees. We then went by several hills, and another island without trees; and left the river of *Kersimia*, and the monastery of *Macaria* to the larboard of us. This monastery is a great building of stone, and looks like a castle or fort, being surrounded with a fine square stone wall, with a tower at each corner of it: I should have been glad to have taken a view of it, but the day was too far spent. On one side there was a village, and a chan or caravanserai built of wood, where 1703. the merchants keep their goods; and is a place where there is a great fair every year, in the month of *July*, whither most of the traders in *Russia* resort, tho' it lasts but a fortnight. Our *Russians* going thither to buy fish, were told, that not above a fortnight before a certain Governor coming from *Moscow*, had been there attacked by three barks, manned with each 18 *Russian* pirates; that the Governor's was so well provided with arms, and defended itself so well as to kill three of the pirates, and oblige the rest to betake themselves to flight; that this accident had driven the Governor back again to *Moscow*, but that he had left one of his people in the village to be dressed of his wounds he had receiv'd in the skirmish.

This made us resolve to keep upon our guard, and we prepared our arms to defend us in case of need, being provided with about 40 muskets and pistols, and all the night we had a *Russian* and *Armenian* passenger upon the watch.

Upon the *eighth*, at break of day we arrived at *Bormino*, 100 wersts from the last town we had passed; and here we had the shore on each side full of trees, and the river of small islands, and about eight we got to the town of *Goekina*, which belongs to Count *Golowin*. This place stretches a good way along the river, and is said to contain 7000 houses; and here the country people brought us bread to sell. As we held on our course we saw several floating islands upon the river, which is here very broad; and about *ten* we crossed the mouth of the *Soera*, which comes from the south, where begins the high mountains, at the foot of which is a great village called *Wassiel*, and at top the town *Wassieligorod*, which is not to Wassieligorod. be seen from the river. They told me it was small, had no wall, and all wooden houses 120 wersts from *Nisen*; and these parts are full of *Czeremissian Tartars* who reach quite to *Casan*. About *four* we arrived at the town of *Kusmademianski*, 40 Kusmademianski. wersts from the last. It is tolerably large, and stretches along the river,



24

NIESNA.



CASAN.



26

SWYATSKI. 25



SAMARA.



27

1703. river, and partly up the hill, but has no wall. The wind being southerly we got up our sail, and as we went on, we observed the two shores to be full of linden trees, and several islands, but saw no hills. In the night we passed by *Sabakzar*, which is 40 wersts from the former; upon an eminence also, and I thought it looked very pretty; and 30 wersts from thence we saw the town of *Kokshaga* on the larboard of us. Upon the *ninth* we were at some high hills, and came up with a great bark attended by several others, bound for *Casan:* The weather calm, moist and hot. About noon we passed before *Blowolska*, but 80 wersts from *Casan*, on the starboard side, and thence to *Bellawalska*, where our people went for some refreshments. At *three* we steered by the town of *Swyatski*, with a fair wind. This place is upon an eminence, is provided with a citadel, and has several churches and monasteries of stone, but the houses and walls are of wood; and the whole is formed into an island by the *Swyage*, which comes from the south-east, and here falls into the *Wolga*. Over against the town, on the side of the *Wolga*, at the point of a hill, you see the village of *Soldaetske* slabode, between which and this town this river falls into the *Wolga*, as has been said, and as appears by N°. 25. where you see an island before the river of *Swyage* or *Swyatski*. We coasted this hill or mountain, and steered away south half east, and at six had sight of the city of *Casan*, on larboard of us, distant four wersts. It makes a great figure because of the churches and monasteries it is full of, and its citadel surrounded with an enceint of stone. We had a little before sailed by the yards where they build the ships, six or seven wersts from the town, in a reach where the river is very broad, and here we saw 40 vessels of all sorts upon the stocks and many others more nearly compleated, on the side of the town. They told us they were to build 380, most of which were to

Sabakzar. Kokshaga. Swyage. Casan.

go to *Astracan* for the service and care of the *Caspian* sea, and the rest to other places. I took a view of *Casan* as we went by, in the best manner I could, and as you may see in N°. 26. It is in *Asia*, and in the southern parts of the *Muscovite Tartary*, upon a river of the same name, which the inhabitants call *Casanske*, and falls into the *Wolga*, and is the capital of the kingdom so called, between that of *Bulgar* and the *Czeremissians*. This city has a wall of wood. Beyond this we met with several islands, which seemed like forests in the river, and upon the hills took notice of a kiln, where they were at work, and on the left of us lands under water. Upon the *tenth*, we came to the mouth of the river of *Kama*, which falls on the larboard side into the *Wolga*, at the distance of 60 wersts from *Casan*; it is very broad and comes from the north-east, and falls with such a torrent into the *Wolga*, as alone to hurry on vessels for some leagues. They say the water of it is brown, which I did not perceive, tho' it is certain so sweet, that it mends the *Wolga* very much for drinking. About noon we came to the small town of *Tetoetsie* or *Tetus*, upon a lofty hill, 90 wersts from *Casan*; it is surrounded with a wooden wall, and consists of poor wooden houses, and small churches: You can only see a part of the walls as you go by. There is also, upon the river side, a small village, where our people went for provision and ice to cool our drink. We then went by a great island called *Stariso*, 40 wersts from *Tetus*, and at night by several others full of trees; and here the river is a good league in breadth, and has mountains on the starboard side of it: As the wind was both strong and against us, we rode at anchor a part of the night. Upon the *eleventh* I went ashore with my *Armenians* and some *Russians*, to buy provisions near the town of *Simbierska*, which is on the right upon a hill, three wersts from the river. They say it was formerly a large city, and destroyed by the great 1703.

Its situation. *River of* Kama. Tetoetsie. Simbierska.

1703. great *Tamerlane*; tho', as I understand, there are no remains of it at this day, nor had I time to search for any. Some will have it there were other cities and iſlands higher up, of which there are ruins ſtill to be ſeen, but it is a matter to be doubted: Tho' they aſſured me, that near *Zariets* there were ſtill ſome footſteps of an old caſtle and its walls. Upon the whole they affirm, there are very conſiderable and very ancient cities between *Caſan* and *Aſtracan*, and among the reſt *Acktoeba*, upon the river of *Oeſſa*, tho' concerning this I have been able to gather nothing certain. True it is the *Oeſſa* is known between *Saratof* and *Zaritha*, on the other ſide of the *Wolga*, and that it falls into this river and waſhes even a part of *Siberia*. It is known alſo that the city of *Acktoeba* was upon this river, but there are not the leaſt traces of it left now, all the ſtones having been removed to build *Aſtracan*, and ſome other places. Being on ſhore I found the purlieus of the village of *Simbierska* of great extent, partly upon the river, and partly upon the hill which we were to go up, before we got to the *Bazar*. When we came a fire had juſt broke out among ſome houſes upon the hill, and had already deſtroyed five or ſix of them, and in leſs than half an hour there were above 20 burnt down; for the wind was ſo high that they were in flames before they could pull them down to ſtop it: We here found every thing as cheap as at *Nieſna*; I ſhould have been glad to have gone quite up to the place itſelf, which is 180 werſts from *Caſan*, but our veſſel being under way there was no doing it. I was however informed it was large, ſurrounded with a wooden wall; that in it were eight ſtone churches, three or four monaſteries, and above 10000 houſes all inhabited by *Ruſſians*, the *Tartars* keeping in the villages. We were almoſt two hours before we could overtake our bark, nor was it without danger we rowed after her, the river whirling about violently in ſome places, and being very deep, has ſuch a troubleſome ſwell that a ſmall boat can hardly live in it. We again met with ſeveral places covered with trees, and very pleaſant to look at, and hills alſo that ſhew themſelves through theſe ſame trees. Thirty werſts from this town we came to the village of *Siengiela*, and ſeveral others inhabited by *Ruſſians*, and ſoon after to the town of *Nove Devitzke Salo*, of great extent, very cloſe, with many churches and a great ſteeple. In the night we met with a bark rowing and full of *Ruſſians*, who aſked us whence we came, whither we were bound, and what we were? We anſwered, we belonged to his Czarian Majeſty, and adviſed them to come no nearer for fear they repented it; we apprehended them to be rogues. Upon the *twelfth* in the morning we ſaw hills on each hand of us, ſome of them covered with fir, a ſight we had not ſeen till now. The river was not a werſt broad in this place, tho' to make amends it was very deep. It had been ſo high this year, that it had drowned all the land we have ſpoken of, ſo that there were even rivers that could not be diſtinguiſhed. The *Ruſſians* are very ignorant in thoſe things, and could tell me nothing of the cauſe of it, neither could I get any information on ſhore, becauſe our veſſel made no ſtay here. At *nine* we got to the village of *Siera Barak*, 40 werſts on this ſide *Samara*; here our people went aſhore for proviſion, and the river widened, and we ſaw an iſland under water, and on the left of us a high round hill with hardly any trees, called *Sariol Kiergen*. The *Ruſſians* told us it was the tomb of a King, or Emperor of *Tartary*, called *Mammon*, who came up the *Wolga* with 70 other *Tartar* Kings to ſeize upon *Ruſſia*: That dying in this place, his ſoldiers whom he had brought in great numbers on this expedition, filled each his helmet and buckler with earth, to raiſe him a mountain, which is this hill. A ſmall league from hence you meet with another

River of Oeſſa.

Story of a Tartar King.

4

1703. another called *Kabia Gora*, covered with trees, and extending to *Samara*, those on the left are so thick that there is no seeing thro' them, the growth being chiefly alders and willows. Here they find the best sulphur in the world, a discovery which has not been made above two years; and here were then at work upon it 4000 persons, as well *Russians* as *Czeremissians* and *Mordwatians*; over whom the Czar has surveyors and soldiers. These hills are on the west of the river, and at two in the afternoon we came to *Samara*, on the east of the same, and upon the acclivity and top of a hill, not very high, and bare of trees, and ending with the town itself upon the river side, as you see in N°. 27. and not as others have written two wersts from the river. At the end of this town you have the river *Samar*, whose name it bears, and they say it falls into the *Wolga* five or six wersts from thence. This town is indifferently large, all of wood, with poor wretched houses. Its walls are of wood also, and flanked with towers, of which there is a very great one on the land side. The city covers almost the whole hill, and the suburbs stretch along the side of the river. They compute it to be 350 wersts from *Casan*, and as you go by it, you see a gate, and several small churches with some monasteries. *Twenty five* wersts from hence, we, on the starboard side, saw a river called *Askula* fall into the *Wolga*, and into this does the *Samar* discharge itself. Here we lost sight of the hills and mountains, the river was very broad, and shortly after we had sight of them again very near us upon the right hand. We met with several vessels that day, and saw ducks of an extraordinary size, brown and white, and thwarted the river *Wassiele* on the larboard of us; it is but small, and near it, in the *Wolga*, a narrow slip of an island covered with trees, and under water, which we thought very strange. Then we met with another vessel from *Astracan*, whose master told us he had fourteen others coming after him, all bound for the fair of *Makaria*, we have mentioned elsewhere; part of them went by us in the night. Upon the *thirteenth*, on the left of us we saw *Kaskur*, 120 wersts from *Samara*; it is small, with a wooden encient flanked, with towers of the same, and has also some churches the same. Its suburb or village is on one side, as may be observed N°. 28. About a league farther there is another town, called *Sieseron*, indifferently large, and with several stone churches. The mountains here are dry and bare; but they are much better a little farther on. The *Calmuc Tartars* scour these parts, and carry off man and beast, and whatever else comes in their way. A little still farther on, the river winds very much, among great islands full of trees, and the country was so overflowed, that it was difficult to distinguish the bed of *Wolga*. We then saw the hills again upon our right, but parched up with the great drought and heat of the sun, whereas at other times they are covered with verdure; and indeed the country people earnestly longed for rain, being at a loss for wherewithal to keep their cattle. We then went on to *Sela* at the foot of the mountains, 60 wersts from *Kaskur*; and there we met with three great *Stroeks*, one of which belonged to his Czarian Majesty; they were full of *Cossac* women, whom they were transporting to *Casan*, and whose husbands had been hung up the year before for their robberies, concerning which we shall have occasion to speak hereafter. From hence we crossed the entrance of the river *Wasshele*, opposite to which you have the *Nove Derevene*, or the *New Village* belonging to Count *Golowin*. We rode part of the night at anchor, to ease our people, who had been fatigued with a spell of 60 wersts. Upon the *fourteenth* we had the wind aft, and went down the river at a great rate. A vessel laden with crockery, and bound for *Astracan*, passed by us; and about *eleven*

Fine sulphur. Samara. *Its situation.* Wassiele. Kaskur. Sieseron. Calmuc Tartars.

1703. *ven* we got to *Woskresinska*, 65 miles from *Saratof*, where the hills were very steep, covered with a grey sand, and full of stones. Here we met with fishermen, who gave our people a great deal of fish for a little brandy, which they are not allowed to sell: This part abounds with oaks. Soon after this we were taken with a violent storm of wind, thunder, and rain, which made the river as rough and boisterous as a sea, and obliged us to come to anchor under the larboard shore, where our vessel struck so hard against some trunks of trees, that we were in imminent danger, and had like to have lost our boats; for these barks have but a small anchor, which they dare not let go in the open channel, when the wind is high, because it would not be sufficient to keep them from driving; but the storm did not last long. At night we went on shore, 20 wersts from *Saratof*, where we lighted up a good fire, and met with oaks, wild roses, and other flowers; and having recovered ourselves, we returned to our vessel: But we had no sooner got on board, than one of our *Armenian* merchants had a fit which made us despair of his life; and in it he continued for two or three hours, when he began to move a little, but without any power to speak. In the midst of this we came to *Saratof*, and brought him upon deck, where we saw clotted blood come out of his mouth, which made us fancy he had an imposthume in his throat, and that he would hardly recover. In the mean time we sent to the town for a Physician or Surgeon, but none being to be found, and perceiving I could be of no use to the sick man, I went to see the town, which is in the south-east of *Russia*, and on the north-east of the *Wolga*, against, and in part upon a hill, its suburbs stretching along the river. I found it had no walls in the highest parts, but wooden towers at some distance from each other. It has a gate a quarter of a league from the river, and another on the left hand, separate from the town, and a third on the side of *Moscow* by land, with some palisades between them. When you come to the side on the right hand of the river, you have a descent with gardens; and beyond this last gate you see an open country and a beaten road, frequented by those who travel from *Astracan* to *Moscow* by land; and here are several wooden churches, besides which there is nothing remarkable; except that the inhabitants are not only all *Russians*, but almost all soldiers, under the command of a Governor. Eight years ago this town was reduced to ashes by a fire, but is now all rebuilt. In these parts the *Tartars* commit continual ravages, extending quite home to the *Caspian* and the river of *Jaika*. They reckon it is 350 wersts from *Samara*, and in the latitude of 52 degrees 12 minutes. There we saw several vessels full of soldiers, designed for *Asoph* and elsewhere, and we departed before noon. From the river you see nothing but the towers and the tops of the churches, because the suburbs is between the city and the river. 1703.

A sudden illness.

Situation of Saratof.

Tartars *ravages.*

When we came back to our vessel, we found the sick man in the condition we had left him, and he died about *three*, which surprised us the more, as we had before seen him ashore brisk and seemingly in good health. His companions expressed great sorrow for him, and covered him over with a cotton cloth, which they tied about his legs, putting a book upon his head, a cross upon his breast, and incense at his head. Then two of them began to read out of a book for two hours together, and in the mean time they prepared him a sheet, a shirt and drawers of new cloth: This done, his servants went on shore to look for a proper place to bury him, but before they carried him thither, they read and sung a second time beside him: When he was on shore they stripped him, washed his head, and then his whole body, which they placed upon a plank, and put him on his

Death of an Armenian.

Grief of his countrymen.

Their funeral ceremonies.



KASKUR.



VÛE SUR LA RIVIERE.



MONT GORO SOPONOFSKI.



ZARITSA.



1703. his new drawers and ſhirt, a croſs about his neck, which fell upon his breaſt, a chaplet of beads in his right hand, and a taper in his left. They then put plaiſters or linens upon his eyes, mouth and ears, and croſſed his arms; and this done, they wrapped him up in a ſheet, and put him upon a bier covered with a carpet. Thus they carried him in proceſſion to the top of the hill, where they had dug a grave for him, and then began again to ſing and to read; and the *Armenians* kiſſing his forehead one after another, they committed him to the earth, and threw each a handful of ſand upon him, with ſigns of the croſs and other ceremonies. At laſt they filled up the grave with earth and ſtones, and placed a great wooden croſs at his head, and three ſmall ones acroſs one upon another, and threw great ſtones upon the grave, and ſtrewed gunpowder about it; not forgetting a taper at the head. Theſe ceremonies over, they each of them in order kiſſed the higheſt ſtone, and burned the incenſe upon it, and ſetting fire to the gunpowder, they preſented every one preſent with a ſmall glaſs of brandy. Every one belonging to our veſſel attended this funeral, nor could ſeveral forbear to mix their tears with thoſe of the *Armenians*, ſo mournful was the office, and eſpecially for a man we had ſo very lately ſeen in perfect health. His name was *Peter Archangel*, and he lived at *Iſpahan*, where his wife and children longed to ſee him with the utmoſt impatience.

This hill, which is divided from the reſt, was ſurrounded with oaks, willows, alders, and here and there had roſe trees in the bud; and if the ground had been a little moiſter, we ſhould certainly have met with flowers and herbs; tho' we could not go down to the village for the waters that were out: This mountain is called *Goroſoponofskie*, and is 26 werſts from *Saratof*. After this we had ſeveral of the moſt pleaſant proſpects in the world. Upon the *ſixteenth* we had ſight again of ſteep mountains crumbled away in ſeveral places, very ſandy, and full of ſwallows neſts, and ſaw there birds continually flying in and out. The river is here alſo full of iſlands, and at a diſtance we deſcried the *Golden* mountain, which they call *Soloſtogori*, and ſome others more covered with verdure and trees; and between two the ſmall river of *Doezinke*, which runs towards the north-weſt, 25 werſts from *Saroegamis*. Then we met with a wood between us and the hills, partly in the water, and where two barks had been caſt away when the river was at the higheſt, and were ſtill entire. We here alſo ſaw ſome fiſhermens huts, and towards night we paſſed by *Saroegamis*, a town they had been building for four years, and was now pretty far advanced, indifferently large, and ſurrounded with a mud wall, which they were hard at work upon; and near 400 families were already come to ſettle here from *Moſcow*. The hill it is built upon is lofty towards the river, ſteep, and very rocky. On the left hand, beneath the town, you have the river of *Kamuſchinka*, which goes away weſterly, and they ſay it ſprings from the canal of *Iloba*, which falls into the *Don*, which diſembogues itſelf into the lake *Mæotis*, and divides *Europe* from *Aſia*. They ſay the *Coſſacs* upon the banks of the *Don* were uſed to come upon the *Wolga* in boats, and commit great depredations in thoſe parts, though men of warlike profeſſion were frequently ſent to repreſs their inſolence; but as all was in vain, this town was built as a bridle upon them. They were alſo at work upon a fort, with a mud wall on the other ſhore of the *Kamuſchinka*; but this building went on heavily, the workmen not being able to ſtand the badneſs of the air: And had it not been for this, the Czar would have dug a canal from hence into the *Black Sea*. I went to ſee this work, and they told me the firſt deſign was to have built this town, where the firſt was begun; but that it had been given over, on account of the

The hill of Goroſoponoſkie.

River of Doezinke.

Saroegamis.

1703. the badneſs of the air. It was reſolved alſo to make a dyke from one mountain to the other, to intercept the courſe of the *Kamuſchinka*, and prevent it from falling into the *Wolga*; but this alſo they were obliged to give over, becauſe the gates of the ſluices could not bear up againſt the weight and violence of the waters, which from time to time come down from the mountains; beſides that the ſoil beneath the ſtream was ſo ſtony, and even ſo much upon the ſolid rock, that there was no driving into it. All this conſtrained the projector to deſiſt from his undertaking, to avoid the vexation of mind he muſt have ſuffered by a diſappointment.

We had got ſo far, very little by the help of our ſails, but by the rapidity of the current, and the uſe of our oars, going on at the rate of 120 werſts a day, or 24 hours. Upon the *ſeventeenth* in the morning we thwarted the river of *Bobloclea*, 90 werſts from the laſt town we went by, and there met with a ſtout bark belonging to the Czar, and coming from *Aſtracan*. In this place I drew a proſpect, which you have in N°. 30.

About eleven we had a violent ſquall from the hills, and were forced to double man our oars, and with all their pulling, it was as much as they could do to keep clear of the larboard ſhore: And at laſt we were obliged to make faſt to ſome trees in the water, at the foot of the mountains, but fair weather coming on again, we went our way, and came to an iſland on the left of us, called *Alinda-Loeka*. The mountain runs out ſo in a point towards this iſland, that the paſſage between them is very narrow; this place is 60 werſts from *Zaritſa*. A flurry blew us aſhore ſoon afterwards, but we were not long before we were on float again; but the wind continuing, and even gathering ſtrength, and the rain falling apace, we thought it beſt to ſhelter ourſelves under the lee of the hills, and make faſt a ſecond time to the

Iſle of Alinda-Loeka.

trees. We then went aſhore in our boat, which had been impracticable with the bark, and made up a fire to cook ſome victuals; while the reſt were at this, I went up the hill to look for flowers and plants, but every thing was burnt up and withered, and beſides the wind was ſo high, it was difficult to ſtand againſt it, and I went back again as faſt as I could, but in my return, I found upon the withered plants and herbs, a ſort of butterflies, blue on the outſide, and of a grey ſpeckled within, ſome of which I brought away with me for the eauty of their colours variety. 1703.

The weather continued as it was, and with a nipping cold till eight at night, when the wind began to grow duller and ſhifted in our favour. Whereupon we immediately got up our canvaſs, and at two in the morning we arrived at *Zaritſa*, where we ſtaid till the day broke, being the *eighteenth*, and at ſun-riſe we departed. This town is upon a low kind of a hill; is ſmall in compaſs, and ſeemed to be ſquare, with a wall flanked with towers. Its ſuburbs ſtretches along the ſhore, and goes partly about the town, and its chief church is of ſtone, but not then finiſhed, the reſt are of wood only, and ſcarce at all to be ſeen; I took a view of it however as we paſſed by as you may ſee in N°. 31. It is in the latitude of 48 degrees 23 minutes. From hence to *Aſtracan* the woods abound with liquorice, with a ſtalk three or four foot high, and the iſle of *Serpinske*, which is twelve werſts in length is not far from hence. Behind this iſland there is a canal of communication between the *Don* and the *Wolga*, which it ſeems is not navigable, and which, as well as the iſland, the *Ruſſians* call *Serpinske*. We then began to loſe ſight of the mountains, and by *ten* we were 60 werſts from *Zaritſa*, having paſſed by ſeveral iſlands in our way. Mean time the hills ſtretched away farther and farther from us up the country to *Tzenogar*, from whence we were as yet 40 werſts, the river

The town of Zaritſa.

Iſle of Serpindske.

2 being

1703. being here three or four werfts in breadth. After this we had the wind right aft, but fo brifk that we had much ado to keep our veffel from yawing to one fide or the other, fo as to run aground; and one of our boats ftruck with fuch violence againft our rudder, that we were obliged to cut her away, and let her fink; a lofs which might have been fpared, for I had not been out of her a minute, on account of a hound I had in her, which I removed into the other boat upon obferving her to make water; nay even fome of our paffengers lay in her in the night, there not being fufficient room for them in the veffel herfelf. At fun-fet we arrived at *Tzenogar*, 200 werfts from *Zaritfa*, the wind having ftood fair for us all the day. This town is 300 werfts from *Aftracan*, and upon a hill on the ftarboard fhore. The firft thing you fee here is a *corps de garde*, of which you only fee the top or roof, and on the other fide you have another of wood, and in form of a Lanthorn. The town itfelf is fmall, furrounded with a wooden wall, and defended with towers; but it has nothing remarkable within, and no more than feven or eight wretched houfes without. The *Ruffians* wanted to land here, as I believe, to diftribute fome money they had raifed among them, in the bad weather, to the poor; but the wind was fo high, and the current fo rapid, that we fhot a good way beyond the town, and were forced to come to anchor, but the cable, too weak to bear the effort both of the gale and ftream, parted, and we were adrift. This I had forefeen, and advifed our people to hand their fail, before they had quite reached the town, and come to with their oars; but as it was, and the fhore being very fteep, they were obliged to get into the water to hale our veffel on fhore with hawfers; and then they took the boat and went to the town, while we ftaid under the lee of the hills. I went alfo to the town, but being fomewhat belated they would not let us in, the foldiers and the country people fhutting the gates upon us; tho' indeed they were fo good as to bring us beer, bread, milk and eggs to fell. Every body returning to the veffel, fearch was in vain all night made for the anchor; but the next morning they found it. This town is inhabited by none but foldiers, who are kept here to withftand the ravages of the *Calmuc Tartars*, who fometimes come and carry off cattle, and fcour the country quite to *Samara*. Upon the *nineteenth* the wind was againft us, and we got out our oars, and, as we rowed along, we faw feveral fteep hills, green at top, and all about the fides fandy; and here the river was a werft broad. We then rowed away to a great wear or fifhery, 80 werfts from *Tzenogar*, called *Kaflarskie*, and which produces moft admirable fifh; and here alfo we faw a gulf the *Wolga* has formed by incroachment on the lands. Having gone 125 werfts we came to an anchor in the night; at break of day, upon the *twentieth*, we weighed and departed; and the wind being fair for us, we were by noon within 100 werfts of *Aftracan*. There we doubled a point where the river fweeps round with fuch a torrent, that veffels are frequently loft; and here you have 40 fathom of water. A little farther we met with a number of ducks, and an ifland ten werfts long, in a reach where the river is very wide. At the point of this ifland there was a guard of 30 foldiers, in three or four cabbins, where all veffels muft ftop. While we were here, we faw two barks from *Aftracan* on the oppofite fide, but the foldiers having fight of them, they got into a boat and failed after them. We had at anchor with us two large veffels bound for *Cafan*, but we ftaid here no longer than an hour, and at a diftance faw hills which ftretch away to *Aftracan*. About *feven* we were within 22 werfts of this city, and an hour afterwards we faw a ftout bark on fhore, and partly to pieces, tho' there were people ftill on board of her. Soon after this we

The town of Tzenogar.

1703. we had sight of the church of *Saboor*, a very great one, and about eleven at night we arrived at *Astracan*, 2000 wersts, or 400 *German* leagues from *Moscow*, *Casan* standing in about the mid-way. 1703.

CHAP. XVI.

Description of Astracan. *Situation of the gardens. Abundance of fish. Manner of living among the* Tartars.

Arrival at Astracan. WHEN we landed they searched every thing we had on board, except my baggage. I went directly to wait on the Governor *Timase Ivanowitz Ursofskie*, and presented him my two passports and a letter from the Knez *Boris Alexewitz*. He received me very kindly, *The Author well received by the Governor.* and having perused my letter, made me an offer of his house, and every thing I might want during my stay in this city; but I returned him thanks, and told him, I was under a necessity to be with my *Armenians*, whose language I understood, and with whom I was to go on to *Persia*. He was satisfied at this, and sent for my things, which, unsearched, he ordered to be carried to the Caravanserai of the *Armenians*, where I lodged with Mr. *Jacob Daviedof*, of whom I have made mention before. We had scarce dined when eight or ten persons came to us from the Governor with a present of refreshments, consisting of a small cask of brandy, a large vessel of copper tinned, full of red wine, and two others like it, full of mead and beer; four large loaves, two geese, and several pullets. These, to whom, as my way was, I made a small present in return, were no sooner gone, than two soldiers came to do duty at my door, and were to be relieved every eight days. They also sent me a *Russian* Ensign who understood *Dutch*, to carry me about, and be my interpreter. At that time the *Fortress of* Neyen *taken by the Czar.* Governor received advice of the taking of the fortress of *Neyen*, which the Czar had carried by assault upon the 2d of *May*, and where he found 80 pieces of cannon, 8 mortars, and a *Swedish* garrison of 3500 men, to whom, as the report was, he had given their liberty.

I went to walk about the town, which is upon the east of the *Wolga*, in the ancient *Scythia*; tho' now *Situation of* Astracan. the whole tract between the *Wolga*, the *Jaika*, and the *Caspian* is called *Nojaia*, and the country in general the kingdom of *Astracan*, from the city of *Astracan*, the capital of that name, which is in the *Asiatick Tartary*, upon the frontiers of *Russia*, and upon the principal branch of the *Wolga*, which a few leagues from thence empties itself into the *Caspian*; concerning which we shall be more ample in what is to follow. This city is in 46 degrees 22 minutes of northern latitude, in a little island called *Dolgoi*, formed by a small river which may be seen from one of the towers. The best ground about it is eastward towards and quite to the river *Jaika*. To the westward of it, there is a great heath, which is said to be 70 leagues, and to extend towards the *Black Sea*, and even some leagues southerly quite to the *Caspian*. Here you have a very fine salt, which is sent all over *Russia*.

This town is defended by a good stone wall, a league in circumference, and with ten gates. I went *Gates of the city.* out by that of St. *Nicholas*, or the *Nikoolske Warate*, and followed the river upwards to go round it. From thence I went to the *Red Gate* or

1703. *Kraſnie Warate*, in the higheſt and moſt advanced part of the town. From thence ſtriking into the country, I came to the gate of the *Granary* or the *Gietnie Warate*, which is ſhut up, but there is another which goes into the citadel, where they go in and out. This *Granary* which is without the enceint of the town, is ſurrounded alſo with a ſtone wall. From hence you go to the *Motſagotskie Warate*, near which at ſome diſtance from the city, is another gate of wood, which is not reckoned into thoſe of the town; it is the gate of the *Tartars*, who live on that ſide, and where there is always a guard of *Ruſſians*. Afterwards you come to the gate of *Reſoltiſnie* and that of *Wiſneſenske*, between which there are two towers in the walls, 300 paces from each other. From hence you turn down towards the river to go to that of *Spaskie*, and from thence to that of *Iſadnie*, without which is the fiſh-market, the bread-market, the herb-market and the like. At ſome diſtance from hence you ſee another tower, and then the gate of *Garenskie*, and near that without, the wood-market, and the place aſſigned for bakers, who are not allowed to be within the town. From this gate you go to that of *Kabatskie*, paſſing by a tower between that and the former. Six of theſe ten gates are upon the river, and two belong to the citadel, which makes a part of the city wall; and it has a third called *Prieſtmiskinske*, or the *clean gate*, which goes into the city oppoſite to the *Bazar*, or great ſtreet called *Bolsjaulitz*, where you have the greateſt ſhops both of the *Ruſſians* and *Armenians*. As you go through this gate to go into the citadel, you have on the left of you the church of *Saboor*, which they had begun five years before, at the expence of the metropolitan, whoſe name is *Samſon*. This prelate has his peculiar rights over the clergy, and an office or ſpiritual court of his own; and is alſo the metropolitan of *Tirk*, a city under his Czarian Majeſty, on this ſide the *Caſpian*, upon the mountains of *Circaſſia*, about 700 werſts from *Aſtracan*. As they were laſt year at work upon the dome of this church, a part of it fell down, thro' fault of the foundation, which was too weak, and they are now about building five ſmall ſteeples with domes, upon which they are to have croſſes. This church is ſquare, and about 200 paces in circumference, the front is 67 broad, and the ſides 47 long, and the back part of it is partly upon the wall of the metropolitan palace, the chief edifice of the town, of great extent, and all of ſtone. Not far from thence, and in the fine part of the ſpace within the citadel is the Governor's palace, a large wooden building, ſurrounded with a wall of its own, which is of wood alſo, with two gates, the one before, the other behind, and the chappel of the court is without the incloſure of this palace. Between the front gate, where there is always a guard, and the Governor's palace, there is a fine yard, and the enceint of this court is called *Iwan Bogaſloof*. In this palace are many apartments, well lighted, and very pleaſant, but eſpecially a great and very lofty ſalon with charming proſpects on every ſide. There is always a guard at the gate of the citadel, which is well mounted with artillery. As you go into it on the right hand you have the chancery, a ſtone building with many rooms, and in the Governor's chamber there is a table covered with a red cloth or carpet.

The great church.

Church of Iſdwieſinje.

The chief church after that of *Saboor*, is that of *Iſdwieſinje*, of brick plaiſtered over. The dome of it is gilt as well as the croſs, which is three fathom in length; that beneath is green as well as thoſe of the ſteeple. All the reſt of the churches are of wood, as well as the monaſteries of *Troyts* and *Pettenske*, the laſt of which is for women.

Tartar market.

In the morning there is every thing to be had at the *Tartar Ba-*

zar

1703. zar or market, where the *Ruſſians* and *Armenians* alſo have liberty to expoſe their goods to ſale; but this market is over by the afternoon, when the *Ruſſians* have theirs, tho' to this alſo the *Armenians* are admitted; as for the *Indians* they do their buſineſs in their caravanſerai.

Streets. As for the city moſt of the ſtreets are narrow, and well enough to walk in when it is dry weather, but impaſſable when it is wet, becauſe the ſoil is very fat and full of ſalt, the reaſon why the ground has a whitiſh caſt when it is dry.

Government. It is governed by the Governor and three burgo-maſters, the firſt of which is preſident of the town-houſe; the ſecond has the inſpection of the kabbacs or houſes where they ſell wines, beer, and mead, and the third has the direction of his Majeſty's fiſhery.

Beyond the river and without the enceints of the city, you ſee the monaſtery of *Iwan*, a fine ſtone building, and two other cloiſters, and ſeveral ſlabodes or ſuburbs, the chief of which is that of the ſoldiery, to the eaſtward of the city, along the river of *Koetoeme*, which falls into the *Wolga*. His Majeſty's ſhips lie along that of *Balda*, over againſt the city. Thoſe of *Caſauſe* and *Stepielewe* are for all ſorts of people. The ſlabode of the *Tartars* is divided from the reſt, and almoſt all built of earth and clay hardned in the ſun; and here they are during winter, but in ſummer they are in the open country. Laſt year one half of this town was reduced to aſhes, and many ruins are ſtill to be ſeen, but they are hard at work in rebuliding it.

Having thus in part ſatisfied my curioſity, I deſired the Governor to give me leave to draw what I ſhould think fit, and he granted my requeſt upon the ſpot. With this intent I went upon the water in a ſmall bark with oars, but I found the river too rapid to let me do my work, upon which the Governor was ſo good as to let me have a larger veſſel provided with an anchor; but it coming on to rain when I would have 1703. made uſe of her, I was obliged to defer what I would have done till we had fairer weather. I thought the town looked very handſome from the ſide where the ſhips are, and took it as you may ſee in N°. 32; where every particular is diſtinguiſhed by figures, (1) The monaſtery of *Iwan* or St. *John*. (2) The *Wieſniſſenske* or monaſtery of the Aſcenſion of our Lord, both without the town. (3) The *Wieſniſſenske Warate*, or gate of the Aſcenſion. (4) The church of *Smolenske*. (5) The *Spaske monaſtir*, or monaſtery of Jeſus Chriſt in ſwadling clothes. (6) The church of *Ariſhetwa*. (7) Of the *Wieſinje Sirko*, or church of the Annunciation. (9) The gate of the *Cabbac*. (10) The *Kreml* or citadel whoſe wall begins in the town. (11) The *Klocknitſe* or the ſteeple. (12) The *Siaſloeni* or the clock tower. (13) The *Saboor* or the great church. (14) The monaſtery of *Troyts*. (15) The gate of St. *Nicholas*. (16) The Governor's palace. (17) *Iwan Bagaſloef*, or church ſo called, in honour of a certain Saint. (18) The *Woskriſſinie Sirko*, or church of Chriſt repreſented in ſwadling clothes. (19) The *Red Gate* the fartheſt advanced towards the river on the ſide of the *Caſpian*. (20) The *Wolga* on the other ſide of which are the ſhips over againſt the city. There were two of them aground, and all rotten, by the miſconduct of a certain *Hamburgher* called *Meyer*, a captain of a ſhip. And a little higher there were fifteen other ſhips that were come that year from *Caſan*. There is a great number of gibbets in this *Gibbets.* part, and on the other ſide of the town, to each of which hung half a dozen naked *Coſſacs*, whoſe cloths had been ſold at market by the *Ruſſians*, who had ſtripped them. Theſe carcaſſes had been ſo broiled by the heat of the ſun, that they were as black as a coal, and frightful to look at; but thoſe that had been hung up nearer to the city had been carried off by their friends. Theſe who had been joined by ſome rebels and deſerters




1
2
3
4
5

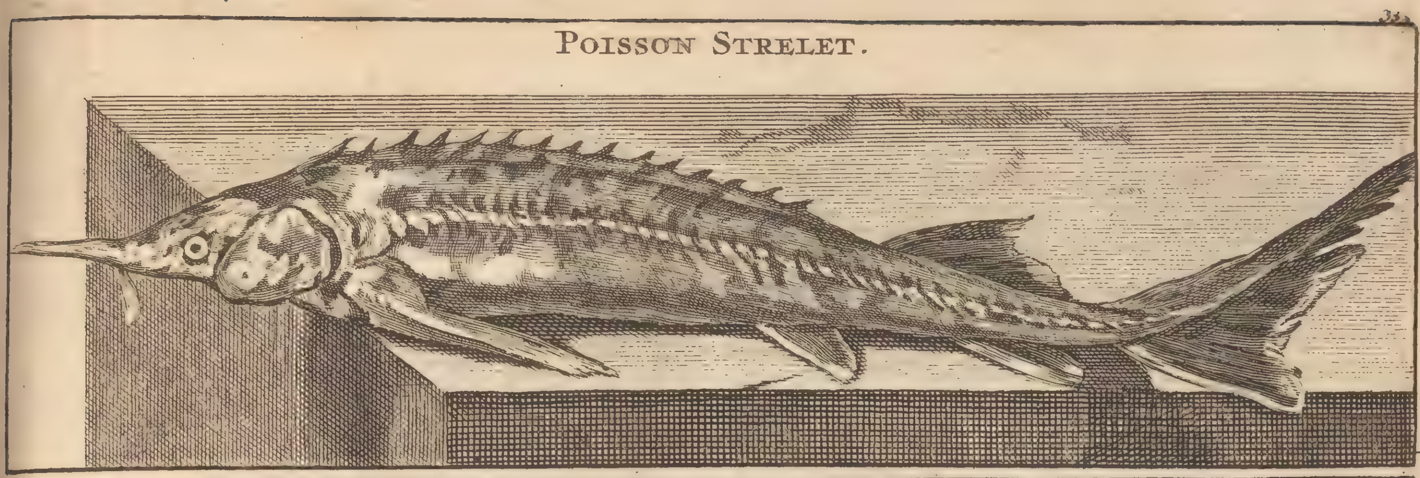
ASTRAKAN.

6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20

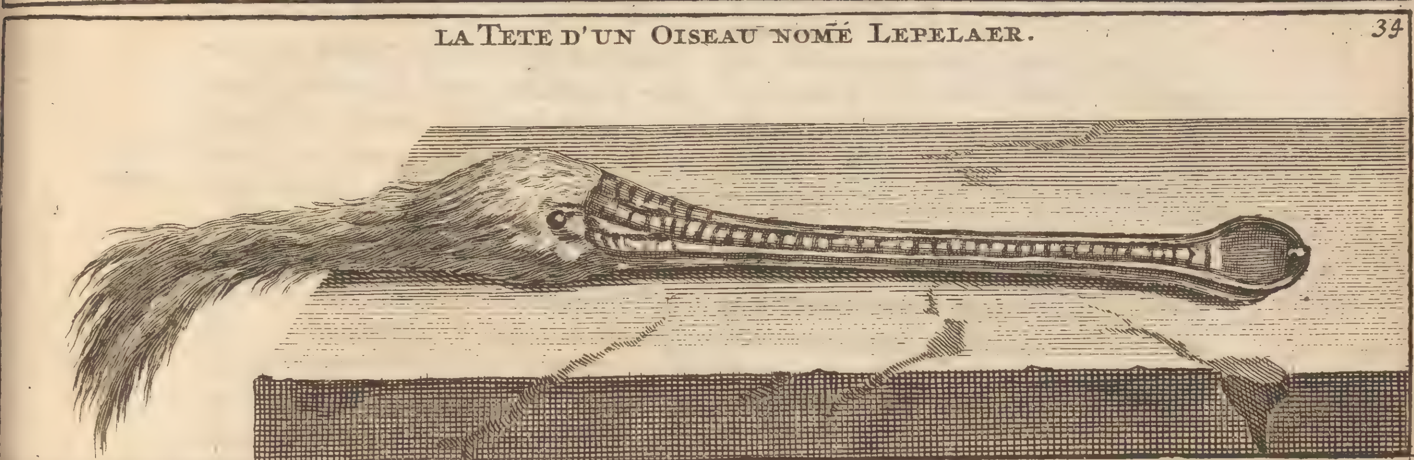


33.

POISSON STRELET.

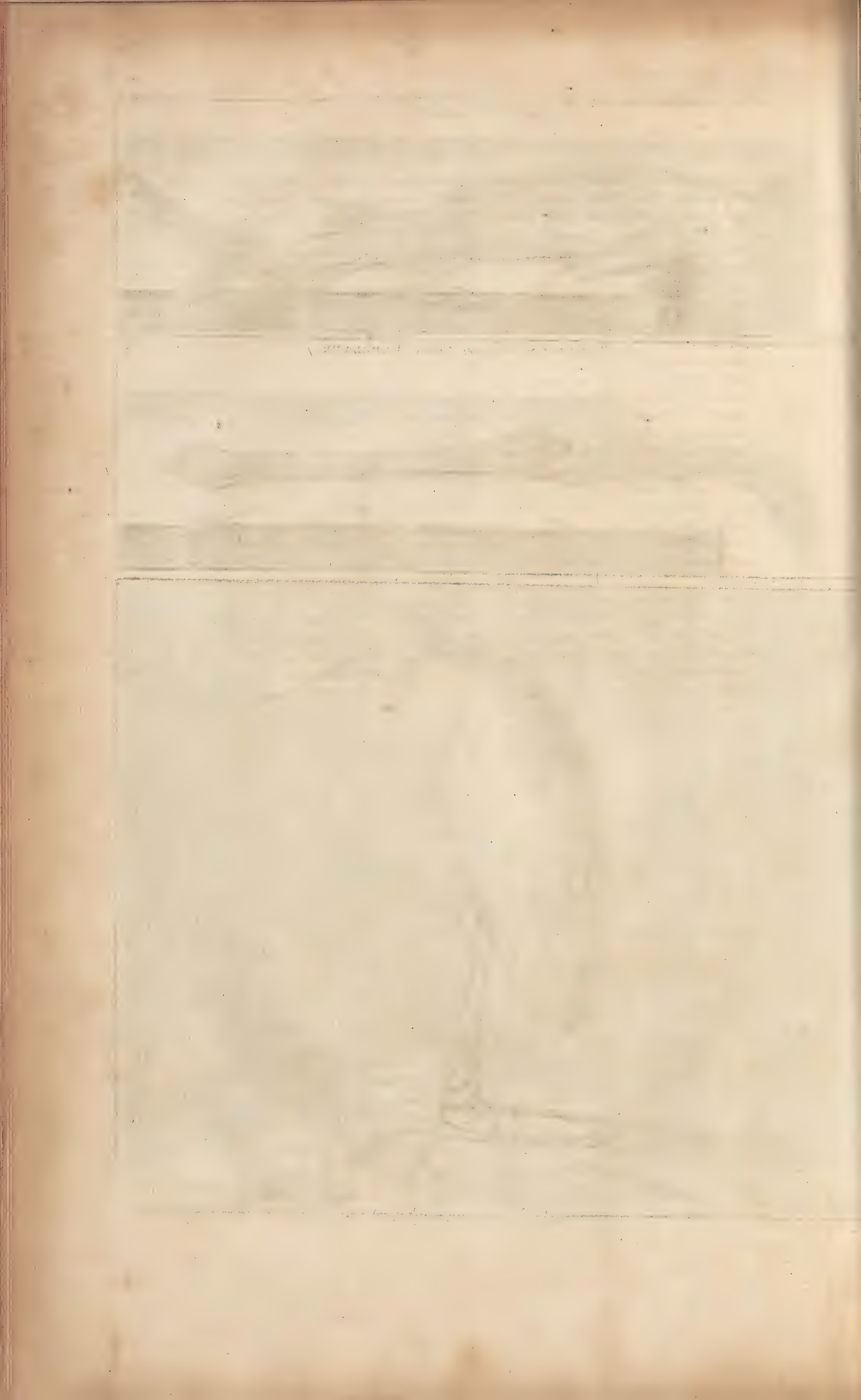


LA TETE D'UN OISEAU NOMÉ LEPELAER. 34



M Pool, Sc.

ESPECE D'UN HERON. 35



1703. deserters from *Astracan*, had posted themselves at a place called *Gargan*, upon a river of the same name, with three pieces of cannon and two ensigns; here they were besieged and in a fortnight's time obliged to surrender at discretion, after a stout defence; this happened upon the 10th of *August* last year. Most of them were hanged upon the frontiers of *Russia*, where they had been most guilty of their robberies, and some of them suffered the same death at *Astracan*, besides 30 of the ring-leaders, who were sent to *Moscow*, where some were beheaded and some hanged; as for their wives and children they were sent to *Casan*. The Prince or Knez *Aldrige Chan Bolatuwitz*, a *Circassian*, was present upon this expedition with 400 of his *Tartars*, and Mr. *Wigne*, a *Swede* by nation, was there with 1000 *Russians*, whom he commanded in chief; and to these were joined 500 Strelses. The regiment of *Wigne* had four pieces of canon and two mortars, and the Strelses had eight pieces of canon, but these arrived too late. Mr. *Wigne* declared to me, that during the whole course of the siege, he had at midnight heard the howling of 4 or 500 jackalls or wild dogs, in a most inconceivable manner, and that none of them were either heard or seen after the surrender of the place.

Rebels punished.

Extraordinary howling of wild dogs.

The troops at this time in garrison at *Astracan*, were the regiment of *Wigne*, of 1000 men, without the officers, *(viz.)* the Colonel, two Majors, five Captains, ten Lieutenants, and ten Ensigns, the Serjeants and Corporals being included in the number of common men; 600 *Muscovite* Strelses commanded by six Captains, and twelve Serjeants; three other regiments of Strelses, natives of the country, of 300 men each, commanded by a Colonel and three *Stolnics* or Captains; two regiments of horse, each of 500 *Russians*, natives of this city: in all about 3500 men. The regiment of *Wigne* had 13 pieces of canon, the rest more or less in proportion.

Provisions abound in this country, wheat excepted, which is brought from *Casan* and other places, but especially fish, of which the most esteemed is the *Baloege*, some of which are two fathoms in length. The *Strelet* is an ell long, and we may safely say it is the best fish in all *Russia*. One of them alive at *Moscow* will sell for six or seven rubles, but here you may have one for two-pence or three-pence. They clean it and boil it, much as we do salmon, and it is certainly the most delicious fish one can eat. They are of two sorts, the one with a longer beak than the other, but in general it is not very unlike a sturgeon, as you may see in N°. 33. I got two of them dried to keep. The *Severoekes* differ in nothing from a sturgeon, which they call *Assetrine*; and cavear is made from the *Beloeges*, the *Assetrines*, and the *Sevroesmes*, and from hence exported to all parts. They have also a very good fish which they call *Soedak*, which they dress like the *Melwel*, or the stock-fish; quantities of pike and perch, a fish like a herring, and many other sorts. The largest of those that are worth the least are the *Modienes*, with great heads. The fish-market is twice a day full, morning and night, and the *Wolga* affords such a glut, that what they cannot sell is every day given to the hogs. They will give to the common people three or four fish, a foot in length, for a bit of bread, and bread is far from being dear. As for bream and carp they abound no less. In short you may buy of the fishermen without the town, *Severoekes* as big as cod, for the value of five-pence or six-pence, and so I leave you to judge what must be the price of fish in general. Besides these they have a small round fish, three or four inches broad, and long in proportion, which they call a *Vioenie*, and which are found as it were in pits near the mouth of a small river, where I have taken numbers of them in a sieve, and of several sorts, some of

Abundance of provisions.

The Strelet *fish much esteemed.*

Soedak.

1703. which I preserved in spirits with small Soedaks; and I should have saved others of them had they been smaller.

There are about forty *Armenian* families about this city, who keep shops, as I have already observed. The *Indians* live in their caravanserai, where they carry on their business; and are not inferior in number to the *Armenians*, but they have no women.

This caravanserai is indifferently large, and surrounded by a square stone wall, with several gates, at the two chief of which there is a guard, and at a certain hour of the night they are shut up. The *Armenian* merchants who only go and come, take up their lodging here also, and here it was that I staid with them; and there are, indeed, some who even live and keep shop there, where they have chans or separate places for themselves. That for passengers or travellers is two stories high with galleries, and that of the *Indians* is on the other side, and all of wood; but they have lately built them a stone ware-house for fear of fire; a building tolerably spacious, being 40 foot square: And the *Armenians* are following their example, the foundations of theirs, when I was there, being raised six foot.

Place for the Indians *and* Armenians.

The Author visits the deputy-governor.

I had not been long in this city, when the Deputy-governor, or King's Lieutenant, *Mekiete Ivanowitz Apcochtem*, sent to desire I would come to him. I went the next day, and had the good luck to find there the Governor with all his family, and some Ladies in the *German* dress, upon just going away, their coaches waiting for them in the yard. They received me very handsomely, and having entertained me with beer and brandy, the governor said I had not only been recommended to him by the Knez *Bories*, but even by his Czarian Majesty, and then turning to me, desired *I would come to see him every day, and let him know in what he could be of use to me.* I returned him thanks, and he went away a minute afterwards. When he was gone the Deputy-governor carried me and my fellow traveller Mr. *Jacob Daviedof*, into another room, and gave us some *Persian* refreshments, and behaved to me with great kindness and complaisance, which is quite in his nature. 1703.

Gardens.

Most of the gardens about the city are full of vines and fruit trees, and particularly apple trees, pear trees, plum trees, and apricot trees, but their fruit is far from the best: But you have water-melons here which surpass even the *Persian*. They let their vines grow to the heighth of a man, and prune them so as to shoot no higher, and fasten them to poles or props. Their grape is indifferently large, black or of a deep blue, as they say, for I was not there at the season. Those that grow in the gardens of private persons, whether *Armenians* or others, which are in no great number, are sold at market; but they make wine of those in the vineyards, which belong mostly to the Czar, who has all the profits of them. These wines are red and pleasant enough, the soil is very sandy, and as they have store of springs, they sink pits in their gardens, and supply them with water by subterraneous canals; and out of these pits they draw it with a great wheel to which they fasten buckets, which deliver it into wooden gutters or spouts which distribute it as they please in the garden; and one camel is enough to turn all these wheels. These gardens or vineyards are two or three wersts from the city, and their number increases every day, and being open they have guerites or watch-houses at certain distances, where they have sentries to take care no body makes free with the grapes in the season. They told me it was above 100 years since they began to plant these vineyards, and that it was thought to have been first done by *Persian* merchants, who had brought some plants or slips from their country.

Water-melons.

Vineyards.

The author visits the Persian *ambassador.*

Some days after my arrival, I went to pay a visit to Mr. *Serochan Beek*, who was designed ambassador to

1703. *Sweden* by the King of *Persia*; but the Czar who was at war with that kingdom, refused him a passage through his dominions, and even put him under arrest, so that he had been three years in *Moscovy*. He had about 60 persons in his train, and had left *Moscow* some days before I did. He was sitting upon a sofa, after the eastern manner, received me very obligingly, and gave me coffee and *kullabnabat*, a very pleasant white liquor made of sugar and rose water.

His picture. He was a man of a comely presence and great affability; his mustaches reached to his very ears, and his beard hung a quarter of an ell below his chin, which was shaved. His turban was white, and his kaftan or vest was tied about him with a sash of gold cloth; he had a fine ganjar at his side, and smoked with a *kaljan*, after the *Persian* manner. He had two servants at his sides, and he on the right hand was armed with a great sabre, whose hilt appeared out of a red bag. Among other discourse, he asked me, if I would not go with him to *Ispahan?* but I excused myself.

I then went to visit Mr. *Wigne*, a man of worth and honour, and Captain *Wagenaer*, who came to see me upon my arrival. Mr. *Wigne* carried me upon the river in a vessel of 24 oars, manned with 44 soldiers, and had with him ten or a dozen flutes and hautboys, and some drums who beat the march as the *Germans* do. We went seven wersts from *Astracan*, to the place where the old city had stood, about 120 years before, tho' no traces of it be now to be seen, except the bones deposited there, some of which I saw. *Saltpeter discovered.* About seven years ago they made a discovery of saltpeter in the mountains, and work upon it with good success. The place where it is found is to the eastward of the city upon the left hand of the river as you go down. We amused ourselves with shooting at pigeons as we returned, and went by the ships on the other shore.

Upon the *fourth* of *June* there came on a violent storm, which wrecked a vessel laden with wood 1703. before the town; and of 71 souls that were in her 29 were drowned.

Upon the *sixth* there arrived eight barks from *Persia*, four of which belonged to *Russians*, and the rest to *Mahometans*; they had some *Armenian* merchants on board of them.

All the time I was in this city the governor never once failed me in his kindnesses, sending me frequent presents, and entertaining me at his house with all sorts of *Persian* refreshments, and continually urged me to tell him in what he could be of use to me; but of all his offers I accepted of nothing but his beer, for such was not to be had for money, nor did he forget to let me have a store of it. As he knew I was to be some time in this city, he desired me to draw him the picture of himself and his son, which I could not refuse him; and he on his part did every thing he could to oblige me. Among other things he made me a present of a bird which had been shot in the plain, but was still alive. *An extraordinary bird.* In the body and feet he did not ill resemble a heron, but not at all in the head, which was quite beautiful, as well as his bill. He had a white cop on the head, and his bill was black, ten inches long, and an inch and half broad, and the end of it was like two spoons, with a small yellow spot. It is called a * *Lepelnaer* and *Colpetse* in the *Russian* language. They say they have them also in *Persia*, where they are called *Goli*. I kept the head of one of them, which you may see in N°. 34. They have herons also in this country, which they call *'t Sepoere.* They are of different colours, as white, and purple like peacocks, grey and black. I have drawn one of them with his neck shortned, as you may see in N°. 35.

* Lepel *signifies a spoon.*

The Tartar manner of living. I often went with Captain *Wagenaer* to the place where the *Tartars* are, which is but three or four wersts from the city. They camp in troops, each family apart, and at some distance from the rest. Their tents are made like parrot cages, except that

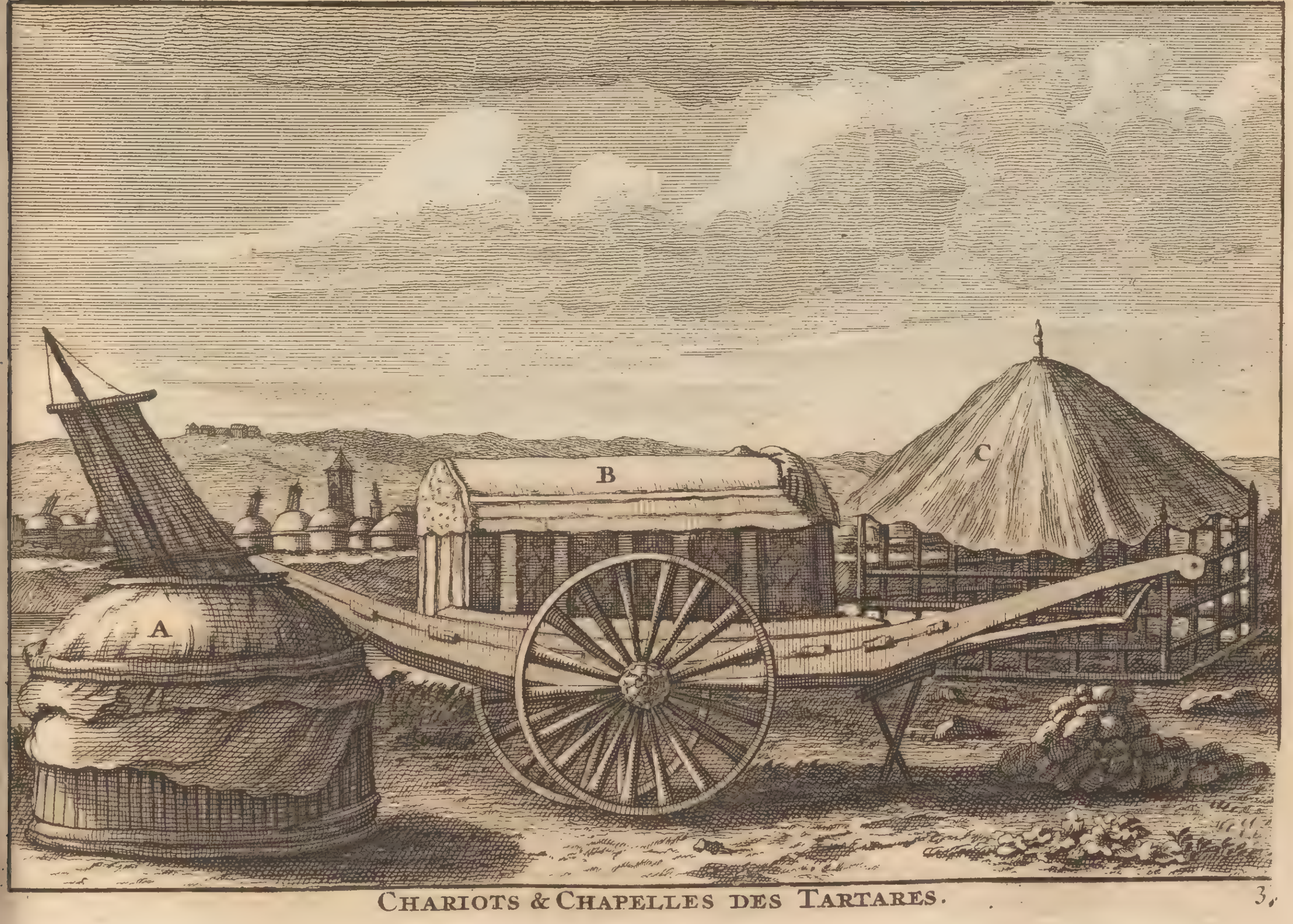
1703. that they are not ſo lofty in proportion, and are built with laths of three or four inches broad, covered over with a felt, or a hair cloth. There are ſome which do not fall but within a foot or two of the ground, and are done round with thatch or ſtubble. The chief of them have a covering of cloth, with an opening at top to let out the ſmoke, with a pole in the middle, which ſticks out four or five foot to the end of which they faſten a kind of ſail of various colours, which falls down to the ground, where it is faſtned by a large ſtrap without one of the ſides of the tent, and by the means of which, they turn this ſail as they pleaſe, to keep out either the wind or the ſun. When all the ſmoke is gone out of the tent, and they have a mind to be warm, they cover it up, and it is as hot as a ſtove. The bottom of them is covered with pretty ſtuffs or fine carpets, and eſpecially among the better ſort they have a ſofa raiſed a little, after the *Turkiſh* manner, which takes up a third part of the tent: and in ſome of them you ſee fine cheſts and trunks, in which they lock up their valuable things, and in general every thing about them is extremely neat and in good order. When they change their place, they put their tents upon waggons, and take off the covering, and the women and children ſit in them, while the men attend them on horſeback. When they perceived it was curioſity only that drew me among them, they ſhewed me whatever I wanted to ſee, but they were ſhy of me at firſt, never ſuffering any body to come near the tents where their women are. In one of them I ſaw a very charming and well dreſſed brunette, whoſe head attire was very remarkable, being of gilt ſilver or copper, and all covered with gold ducats, pearls and precious ſtones; I was delighted with her, and reſolved to paint her, as I afterwards did. In the mean time I drew ſome of their tents, as they were pitched one by another, as you may ſee in N°. 36. and one in particular in N°. 37. at the letter *A.* In the ſame you have the form 1730. and manner of their waggons in letter *B.* upon two great wheels: It is of painted wood covered with ſtuff, ſupported by two croſs ſticks before, and reſted upon two beams. When they mount their tents upon them the wheels of them are covered. Their chappel is on one ſide diſtinguiſhed by the letter *C.* Their common tents are covered only with felt, and of the ſame is the ſail above, and very ordinary within. As theſe people ſubſiſt but by their cattle, they look out for the beſt paſtures. Their women are imploy'd in making of cloaths, and the like, which they go to town to ſell. They ſew as the *Ruſſians* do, and ſpin as we do with a turning ſpindle, and card wool for the felts of their tents, and for other ſtuffs. Their firing is cow dung, which they take and dry, much as we do our turf, and have it in heaps on the ſide of their tents. While I was buſy in drawing them, they crouded about me, and ſeemed to be much pleaſed, and to wonder at my dreſs as much as I did at theirs, which procured me ſome liberty among them. Their manner of living is not very unlike the *Arabian*, and they appear to be as ſatisfied with their wandring abode as thoſe with us who are ſettled in palaces and the fineſt houſes; and this calls to my mind the ancient manner of the orientals; and I ſuppoſe it was thus that *Abraham* ſojourned and the reſt of the patriarchs, and that if we were uſed to the ſame, we ſhould not diſlike it.

Dreſs of the Tartar *women.*

As for the dreſs of the women, I drew the picture of a young Lady of this nation at the Governor's palace where I had a more commodious opportunity to do it than in their tents. She had a fine upper garment, covered with a white veil which hid her face; but ſhe took it off at my requeſt, and appeared with her head covered with another very fine white linen, ty'd about her neck in a very genteel manner, and through which I could ſee her head attire. I beg'd of her alſo to pull that off, be-

TENTES DES TARTARES. 36





CHARIOTS & CHAPELLES DES TARTARES. 3.





FEMME TARTARE.

cause it concealed her finest ornament which I wanted to paint, and ſhe appeared ſuch as they are in their *kaftan* and in their tents. This attire was all covered with gold ducats, as has already been ſaid, and pointed at top like a mitre, bordered with a great number of pearls, ſome of which were ſtrung, and hung before her like treſſes. A kind of coloured ſcarf faſtned behind this mitre came about her neck, and partly fell down before. Beſides this, ſhe had ſilver chains over her ſhoulders, and about her waiſt, by one of which there hung ſome little boxes of the ſame, where ſhe had her little prayer books and toys. Her hair was done about with a broad black ribbon, with two great tufts of ſilk at the end, as appears by the plate above. This Lady was one of the moſt conſiderable among the *Tartars*, and was attended by three women of her train, and uſhered by a *Tartar* who was known to the governor.

The *Ruſſians* call the *Tartars* hereabouts by the name of *Jurtſge*, be-

1703. cause they are born there; nor indeed do they pay any tribute to the Czar; they are only obliged to send a certain number of their people to war when he requires it; and yet they can bring 20000 men into the field upon occasion. The *Tartars* who are called *Indians* at *Astracan*, shave their heads in a strange manner at a certain time of the year; they tear it up by the roots with the point of a penknife, so that the blood runs down their cheeks. Their priest, or the person they call such, has the first stroke, and when he does it not as he should, they all begin again, crying out, *Suksemakse*, *Suksemakse*, or *Bassou*, *Baksou*, dancing and jumping about at the same time; and this they look upon as a kind of offering to their idol *Suksemakse*. This ceremony was performed near the granary, without the town, sometime before I arrived; and those who practise it are *Indians*, some of whom live in the slabode of the *Tartars*. Those of *Nojay* are in tents about the city of *Tirck*; but the *Tartars* of *Crim* never settle there, and only from time to time bring their cattle to market.

How the Tartar Indians *shave the head.*

Governor's feast.

Upon the *twentieth* of this month, the governor gave a great entertainment, to which I was invited, as well as the principal of the *Russian* officers, and most considerable of the *Armenian* merchants. First they conducted us into an apartment, where were the governor's wife and daughter in law attended by several women of their train, and on the right hand was a table full of dainties and liquors fit for the morning. These Ladies presented us each with a small cup of brandy, a piece of civility usual in this country, and from thence we went into the hall where the dinner was ready, and they sent us home in coaches. The *twenty first*, being St. *Peter's*, was his Czarian Majesty's name day, and the governor gave another entertainment where the patriarch was present, and all the chiefs of the city; but being out of order, I could not be there myself, nor go with them to the church of *Saboor*, to assist at the solemnity to which I had been invited some days before: and upon this occasion they had great rejoicings and repeated firing of canon upon the ramparts and before the palace. The Ladies were in another apartment, according to custom, and the next day they treated the subaltern officers, and sent them away early. 1703.

Another Feast upon his Majesty's name day.

Upon the *second* of *July*, news came that the Czar had got within 15 wersts of *Nerva* with his army, and had taken every thing in his way.

The next day I went in a chaise towards the heath, with the governor's son, and some officers who had a hawk with them. We saw a good deal of game about 20 wersts from the city, but we could get at none of it, because of the waters which covered the country; tho' I happen'd to kill a duck that was flying by me. Mean time we diverted ourselves with fishing in a small river, where we caught a good deal of pike and perch, which we dressed and ate. That day we saw a number of *Tartars* encamped, and fine pasture lands full of horses belonging to the inhabitants of *Astracan*. Some of them were handsome enough, and we would have drove some of them in our chaises, but they were too skittish, having been at grass all the summer, in fine fields which are very frequent in these parts. All the carmen of this city have fine horses; you shall hardly see a bad or a lean one among them, which is what I never observed any where else.

Tartar horses.

As the time of my departure drew near, I desired and obtained as much room as I wanted in such of the barks I liked best; so I made choice of the largest and fittest for my purpose. Most of the *Armenians* also prepared to depart, as well as some *Persians*, who were returning from *Moscow* to *Samachi* [*Samashi*]. The *Cham*'s falconer was among the rest, with 5 or 6 hawks he was carrying into *Persia*, from whence he had brought an elephant for the Czar of *Muscovy*, which

5 he

1703. he had delivered to the governor of *Aſtracan*, who ſent it to *Moſcow* under the care of ſome *Ruſſians* and a *Georgian*, but it dy'd in the way at *Zaritſa*. This falconer came in the governor's name to deſire me to allow him a place in my bark, and I went on board of her the next morning with that intent, but I found the *Armenians* had crammed her ſo full there was no room left. I went to the governor with complaint of this, and to deſire he would order ſome of the bales out, that we might have a little elbow room; but he anſwered there were ſtill other veſſels to go in, and that I had nothing to do but to take out of them what I would, to be at my eaſe. I embraced the favour, and took up what place I wanted, having ſuffered much upon the *Wolga*, before I reached this city.

Mr. *Wigne* at that time had news that the Czar had promoted him to the rank of Colonel, and upon the eleventh he entertained the governor and chief officers of the garriſon. I was of the number, and he treated us very ſplendidly, with the diſcharge of artillery, and the ſound of drums and trumpets. Leaving him, I went with ſome *Armenians* to take a little country air at a houſe upon the river. The grapes were at this time tolerably large, but moſt of the other fruits had been deſtroy'd by inſects. 1703.

When I was on the point of departure, and had got every thing I might want, not forgetting wherewithal to ſave me from the flies which are very troubleſome in theſe parts, the governor ſent me two ſmall casks of brandy, the one of the beſt, the other of the common ſort; a ſmall cask of vinegar, four of beer, one of wine, three flitches of bacon, a quantity of dry'd fiſh, and a bag of biſket, and ſome other proviſions. He granted me alſo a ſmall bark, to go before, and unlade the great one of part of her cargoe, as we drew near the *Caſpian*, a thing abſolutely neceſſary, becauſe of the great droughts that ſometimes happen in thoſe parts. I took leave of the governor at four of the afternoon, and returned him a thouſand thanks for all his favours. When I had got back again to my lodging, he ſent me three ſealed bottles of diſtilled liquors. At length I embarked in a ſmall veſſel, with five ſoldiers to carry my things on board of the ſhip. The three *Armenians*, my companions, had, in like manner, each of them a ſmall veſſel, for the ſame purpoſe.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVII.

Reasons for inserting in this place the rout of Mr. Isbrants Ides *thro'* Muscovy *in his way to* China. *His departure from* Moscow. *Source of the* Dwina. *Arrival of that minister in the country of the* Syrenes. *Description of the people of that province,* &c. *He embarks upon the* Kama, *and crosses from* Europe *to* Asia.

1692. *Mar.* 14

Reasons for inserting in this place the rout of Mr. Isbrants Ides.

MUSCOVY is now grown to be very considerable in the world, and has for some time been so much the subject of discourse; and the Prince at present on the throne having made himself famous for his conduct, his victories and care he takes to cultivate the minds and manners of his subjects, by introducing into his dominions all that can contribute to their advantage, all *Europe* is attentive to what concerns this great empire, and inquisitive to know what passes therein. It would be difficult to give a more circumstantial, more sincere and more interesting an account of it, than that of Mr. *Le Bruyn* contained in this voyage; but as he only traversed a part of it, it has been thought it might be acceptable and useful to the publick to add in this place the rout that was held by Mr. *Isbrants Ides* from *Muscovy* to the court of *China*, by the way of *Tartary*, a country but little known, and almost wild, in quality of envoy extraordinary from their Czarian Majesties *John* and *Peter Alexowitz* in 1692. and the rather as this minister has enriched the account of his journey with very judicious and instructive remarks.

His departure from Moscow.

He left *Moscow* in a sledge upon the *fourteenth* of *March*; but he had hardly got on his way, when it began to rain so plentifully, that he was exposed to a thousand dangers by the abundance of waters in his way to *Wologda*, where he stay'd three days to recover himself from the fatigues he had undergone, and wait for fair weather. The frost began again upon the second day, and was so very hard, that at the end of twenty four hours, all the ways were passable; whereupon he began his journey further, the *twenty second*, towards *Suchina*, where he arrived upon the *twenty third*, and thence proceeded without delay to the city of the great *Ustiga*, where the *Suchina* and the *Irga* uniting their streams, form the famous river of *Dwina*, whose name signifies a *double River*.

Source of the Dwina.

The *Suchina* runs almost directly north in a fertile soil; with several good and well-peopled villages on its borders, and on the left a pretty good town called *Totma*. A great number of travellers fall down this river every year, to go from *Wologda* to *Archangel*, with their goods, while the waters are open: but the bottom being rocky, care must particularly be taken to secure the stem and stern post, and rudder, as well because of the many rocks in this river, as because of the rapidity of its current, or you might be in danger of being lost. *23 March.*

The great Ustiga.

The city of the great *Ustiga* is at the mouth of this river, where this minister was obliged to stop for 24 hours, to refresh himself and to see the *Waivods*, his friends, who entertained him very chearfully. Upon the *twenty fourth*, he arrived at *Solo-*

1692. *Solowitzjogda*, a great town with many good merchants, and excellent workmen in silver, copper, and ivory. Here also are fine salt-pits, which produce a great quantity of that mineral, which is from hence transported to *Wologda*, and many other places.

Solowitzjogda.

Country of the Syrenes. *The people of it described.*

From hence he departed upon the *first* of *April*, and the same day arrived in the country of the *Syrenes*, or of *Wollost-Usgy*. The inhabitants here speak a language, which has no affinity with the *Russian*, tho' it has some with that spoken in *Livonia*, as he was informed by such of his train as were of that country. They are of the *Greek* rite, and subject to his Czarian Majesty, to whom they pay the customary dues, but have neither governor nor waivode. They chuse their own judges, and when any dispute arises which these judges are unable to decide, they go to *Moscow* where they have recourse to the prikaes of *Posolske*, or office for foreign affairs. In dress and stature they differ hardly at all from the *Russians*, and are thought to have been originally from the frontiers of *Livonia* or *Courland*, tho' they know nothing of it themselves, no more than how it comes to pass they speak a language different from that of all *Russia*, whither they may have been in times past driven by the calamities of war, or by some other accident which they now have no remembrance of. They subsist by agriculture, all but a part of them, who are upon the banks of the river *Zisol*, where they have grey furs. This country is about 70 long *German* leagues in length, and extends quite to *Kaigorod*. These people hardly live at all in towns, but for the most part in small villages and hamlets, scattered up and down in the woods.

This country butts upon a great forest, where this minister was a second time taken with a violent thaw, and a heavy rain, which in one night's time caused a flood of the waters all about the wood, where in this condition he was retarded for four days, without being able to go either backwards or forewards, the ice being 1692. scarce able to bear on the rivers. At length, with inexpressible difficulty he got away, by throwing of bridges over these rivers, and by the means of several other helps. And upon the *sixteenth* of *April*, quite fatigued and thoroughly wet, he arrived at *Kaigorod*, a tolerably considerable fortress upon the *Kama*. Kaigorod.

He would willingly have held on his way quite to *Solikamskoi*, the capital of the great *Permia*, to go by land to *Syberia*, over the mountains of *Wergotur*; but the thaw continuing, he was put beside his purpose; and being just at the tail of the winter season, he stay'd some weeks in this city, expecting when the *Kama* should be navigable. Here in the mean time he provided himself with every thing necessary for the continuation of his journey, as also for defence against the free-booters in these parts, and who not long before had pillaged even the city of *Kaigorod* itself.

Pillaged by pyrates.

The governor of this place informed our author, that upon a certain day, about noon, they saw a number of barks full of men falling down the river, with colours flying, and drums beating, and making directly for the town, which they had no sooner reached, than the people of them jumped on shore; that the inhabitants not in the least dreaming of a surprise in the face of the sun, and at a time of peace, suffered them unmolested to draw near, not doubting but they were neighbours and friends who were come from the villages round about to divert themselves: that these pirates set fire to the south end of the town, and put all they met with, at the other, to the sword: that they then went to the *Waiwodes*, where they committed all sorts of hostility, and used their servants in the very worst manner they could, and upon the whole went their way laden with booty, and none to oppose them: that it was afterwards understood they were vassals of certain lords, from whose obedience they had withdrawn themselves,

1692. felves, to commit all forts of violences, and that fome of them had been taken and executed as an example to the reft. This made it prudent for him to provide himfelf with arms, and to ftand upon his guard.

He departed hence, upon the *twenty third* of *April*, when the *Kama* was become navigable, and happily upon the *twenty feventh* got to *Solikamskoi*. From hence he was to have taken the way of the mountains of *Wergotur*; but as that is impracticable in fummer, becaufe the country is full of fens and marfhes, travellers and merchants muft ftay the fummer in this city, till winter comes on and it freezes again, that they may crofs thefe mountains. It is, indeed, poffible to go about by water to the weftward, but that is abfolutely forbidden: the governor of this town, however, apprifed of the importance of this minifter's bufinefs, difpatched him without delay, and furnifhed him with the neceffary embarkations, that he might commodioufly navigate the *Sufawaya*.

Solikamskoi.

Defcription of Solikamskoi, *and its falt-works.*

Solikamskoi is a very fine, large and rich city, where are numbers of confiderable merchants, very fine falt-works, and above 50 boilers of 25 or 35 ells in breadth. They here make very great quantities of falt, which are every year fent on all fides, in large veffels built for that fervice, in each of which they load one hundred and twenty thoufand weight of falt, or eight hundred or a thoufand lafts, without reckoning feven or eight hundred hands, for whom they have kitchens, furnaces, and other things neceffary for tranfportation. Thefe veffels which are 35 or 40 ells in length, have but one maft and one fail, which is thirty fathom long, which they ufe in going up the river when the wind is fair; whereas in going down, they ufe their oars only, to keep their veffel fteady in her fteerage, which the helm alone would not be fufficient to do. They are flat at bottom, and have neither bolts nor nails; and thus it is they fall down the *Kama* to go into the *Wolga*; they then turn back againft the ftream, by the help of tow-lines, or of their fail, when the wind is fair, and go with their falt to *Cafan* and *Nifna*, and other places upon that river. 1692.

He embarks on the Kama, *and croffes over from* Europe *to* Afia.

Upon the *fourteenth* of *May*, he embarked at *Solikamskoi*, and having croffed the little river of *Ufolkat*, half a league from this city, he entered the *Kama* again, and croffed that river from *Europe* to *Afia*. Upon *Whitfunday* he went on fhore, and went up a pleafant hill where he ate his laft meal in *Europe*, and then returned to his veffel to continue his way.

CHAP. XVIII.

His arrival in Afia. *Defcription of the country of the* Tartars *of* Syberia; *their religion and manner of life.*

1692. 14 *May*.

His arrival in Afia.

THIS minifter being arrived in *Afia*, upon the *Sufawaia*, obferved it to be not fo pleafant as the *Kama*, which is a very fine river, full of all forts of fifh, and adorned with fine large and populous villages, fine falt-works, ploughed lands, woods, fine meadows enamelled with all forts of flowers, and every thing elfe that can be pleafant to the fight, from *Solikamskoi* quite hither. Not but that the country watered by the *Sufawaia*, which falls weftward into the *Kama*, is very fine and very good, but it is tirefome to go up againft the ftream, one rids no way, and efpecially when the waters are fwelled, and it is neceffary to ufe the

1692. the tow-line. Upon the *twenty fifth* of *May*, he arrived in the country of the first *Tartars* of *Syberia*, called *Wogulski*; which is indifferently well peopled along the banks of this river, and of charming beauty. At the entrance and going out of the hills, they have all sorts of flowers and odoriferous herbs, and prodigious numbers of deer, and all sorts of game. As the *Tartars* of *Wogul*, upon this river, are heathens, he had the curiosity to go on shore and talk with them, concerning their belief, and manner of life.

Description of the country of the Tartars *of* Syberia.

Their religion and manner of life.

They are robust, with large heads, and their religion consists of no more than making an offering once a year. To this purpose they assemble in the woods about, and there kill a beast of each kind; tho' their chief victims are horses, and a kind of goats. They flea them, and hang them up by a tree, and then fall down before them, and this is their only worship. Then they eat the flesh together, and returning home, perform no other religious office that year; and why should we, say they? they can assign no manner of reason for their belief or worship: we had it, say they, from our fathers, and that's enough for us.

They pray but once a year.

He asked them if they had no knowledge of God, and if they did not believe there was a supreme being in heaven, who created all things, and governs the world by his good providence, and who gives rain and fair weather? They answered the thing might very likely be so, seeing the sun and moon, those fine luminaries, which they worship, and the other stars were placed in the firmament, and that there was doubtless a power which ruled them. But they would by no means agree there was a devil, because he had never made himself known to them. And yet they deny not the resurrection of the dead, but know nothing of what is to be their lot, or what is to become of their bodies. When one of them dies, he is deposited in the ground, and covered with his most precious ornaments, whether the deceased be man or woman; but tho' they erect no monuments to commemorate their dead, they put money by them, in proportion to their means when living, that they may want nothing necessary for them on the day of resurrection. They cry out and make loud lamentations about the bodies of their deceased, nor must any man marry a second wife till he has buried his first a year. When it happens that they lose a dog, that has been serviceable to them in hunting, or any other way, they in honour of him erect a little wooden hut, six foot high, upon four posts, where they place him, and let him remain as long as it lasts. They may have as many wives as they can maintain, and when the women draw near the time of their delivery, they retire into a wood, to a cabbin prepared for them on purpose, where they ly in, nor may the husbands go near them for two months. 1692.

They acknowledge no devil.

Their funerals.

Those of their dogs.

They allow of polygamy.

Lyings-in.

When they want to marry, they buy their wives of their parents, and have scarce any ceremony at their weddings, they only invite their nearest relations to be present, and having entertained them, the new married man goes to bed to his wife without more ado. They have no priests, and may not marry but in the fourth degree of consanguinity. This minister arguing with them, exhorted them to acknowledge the Saviour of the world, and be converted unto him, assuring them that in so doing they would be happy in this world, and in the world to come. To this they answered, That they every day saw a great number of poor *Russians*, who had much ado to earn a living, as much Christians as they were; that with regard to eternal life, it was what they did not trouble their heads about, and in short that they would live and die as their fathers had before them, whether their faith was founded well or ill. You may judge of their dress and manner by the plate following.

Their marriages.

Their dress.

They



Their habitations. They live in ſquare wooden hutts after the manner of the *Ruſſian* peaſants; but uſe hearths inſtead of ſtoves, and burn wood. They cover the opening of the roof where the ſmoke goes out, with a piece of ice, as ſoon as the wood is burnt to a coal, and by that means retain all the heat in their room, without at the ſame time keeping out the light, which ſhines through the ice at top. They have no uſe of chairs, but inſtead of them have benches of three ells in breadth, and an ell from the ground, upon which they ſit croſs-legged after the manner of the *Perſians*, and the ſame ſerve them for beds at night. *They ſubſiſt by hunting, and bow.* They ſubſiſt by hunting, the chief of their game being elks, which abound in this country. They ſhoot them with arrows, and dry their fleſh which they cut into ſlices or ſlips, and hang it up in the air about their houſes; and when it has been thoroughly wet, and is quite putrified, they dry it a ſecond time, and then it is they account it moſt delicious food. For the reſt they eat neither poultry nor hogs. They fix great croſs-bows in the woods, to which they faſten a bridle, and bait, leaving the mouth open, and when an elk or other deer comes to ſeize on it, the bow unbends, and ſhoots them thro' and thro'. They dig alſo pits in the earth, which they cover with brambles and the like, into which theſe creatures fall as they run, and cannot get out again. *They live under the protection of the Czar.* Upon the whole, theſe *Tartars* live in villages, along the river of *Suſawaia*, quite to the caſtle of *Utka*, and under the protection of the Czar, to whom they pay a tribute, and live at eaſe. Their habitations extend above 800 *German* leagues, to the northward of *Syberia*, and even to the northward of the country of the *Samoëds*.

CHAP. XIX.

Arrival at the fortreſs of Utka, *and at* Neujanskoi; *at* Tumêen, *and at* Tobol, *or* Tobolska. *Deſcription of that city. How it became ſubject to the Czar, together with all* Syberia.

Arrival at the fortreſs of Utka. HAVING quitted the country of theſe heathens, Mr. *Isbrants* upon the *firſt* of *June* arrived at the fortreſs of *Utka*, upon the frontiers of the *Tartars* of *Baskir* and *Uſſimi*. While he was here there came there a *Tartar* gentleman of *Uſſimi*, a country in the Czar's dominions: this gentleman was in queſt of his wife, who had left him without any provocation, tho' they were but juſt married: but not finding her, he comforted himſelf with this ſaying, That ſhe had left ſix before him, and that by what he could judge ſhe was fond of variety.

Upon the *tenth* he left this town by land, and went by the caſtle of *Ajada*: he then croſſed the river of *Neuia*, and coaſted along that of *Reeſh* to the caſtle of *Arſamas*, and from thence went to the fortreſs of *Neujanskoi* upon the river of *Neuia*. *At* Neujanſkoi. A finer country is not to be ſeen than that between *Utka* and this place, being full of fine meadows, woods, lakes, well cultivated lands, abounding with every thing, and well peopled with *Ruſſians*. Upon the *twenty firſt* this miniſter went away by water, and found the banks of the river inhabited by *Ruſſian* Chriſtians, adorned with good villages and fine caſtles, quite to the *Tura*, which comes from the weſt, and falls into the *Tobol*.

At Tumêen. Upon the *twenty fifth*, he arrived at the town of *Tumêen*, which is alſo well peopled, full of *Ruſſians*, and pretty ſtrong by ſituation. Three fourths of the inhabitants are Chriſtians, the reſt are *Mohammedan Tartars*. They have a great trade with the *Calmuc Tartars*, the *Bugarian* and others, and thoſe of the country ſubſiſt by tillage and fiſhing; but they have few or no furs except bear ſkins, and red fox ſkins. But there is a wood, ſome leagues from thence, called *Heetkoj-Wollock*, which affords moſt admirable grey furs, *Admirable furs.* which never change colour in winter, and whoſe ſkins are very ſtrong. They are no where to be had but in *Muſcovy*, and it is, under ſevere penalties, forbidden to tranſport any to other parts: they are all ſet apart for the court. Theſe animals ſuffer none to be in their woods but thoſe of their own kind, and deſtroy all the reſt, which are leſs by the half.

The town of Tumêen *alarmed by the* Calmuc Tartars. When the envoy arrived at this place, he found the inhabitants and all the people of the neighbourhood, in a conſternation, on account of the *Coſſacs* and *Calmuc Tartars*, who had juſt then made an invaſion upon *Syberia*, where they plundered ſeveral villages, and killed the inhabitants, and now threatned this town from which they were not above 15 *German* leagues diſtant. But the governor ſent for troops from *Tobol*, and ſome other places, with which he purſued theſe *Tartars*, who loſt a number of their people. *The governor provides againſt them.*

He embarks upon the Tobol. For this reaſon, he choſe to make no ſtay here, but, on the *twenty ſixth* embarked on the *Tobol*, with a new gang of rowers, and a guard of ſoldiers. The borders of this river are low and ſubject to be overflowed in the ſpring, and yet they are inhabited, partly by *Mohammedan Tartars*, and partly by *Ruſſians*. This river produces every ſort of good fiſh.

His arrival at Tobolſka. Upon the *firſt* of *July*, he happily arrived at *Tobol* or *Tobolska*, a ſtrong place, with a great ſtone monaſtery, adorn-

1692. adorned so with high towers, that it might well be mistaken for a fortress. This city stands upon an hill at the conflux of the *Tobol*, and the *Irtis:* the foot of this hill and the shore of the *Irtis* are inhabited by *Tartars*, and *Mohammedan Bucharians*, who drive on a great trade with the *Calmucs* upon the river, and go even beyond, as far as *China*. When it happens to be safe to go through the country of the *Calmucs*, it is the shortest way to *China*, by the lake *Jamaschowa*.

Description of it. *Tobol* is the capital of *Syberia*, and its jurisdiction extends southward beyond *Barabu*; from *Wergotur* to the river *Oby* to the eastward of the *Samoëds*; to the northward, quite to the country of the *Ostiacs*; and westward as far as *Ussa*, and the river of *Susawaia*. The country about is well peopled, as well by *Russians* who follow tillage, as by several other people, *Tartars* and *Heathens*, who are tributary to the Czar. Grain is so plenty there, that they do not give above 16 *Cops* or pence for one hundred weight of barley flour. An ox is not worth above six or seven florins; a good hog 30 or 35 pence; and there is so much fish in the *Irtis* that a sturgeon of 40 or 50 pound weight is not worth above five pence or six pence; and they are so fat withal, that the surface of the water they are boiled in shall be above an inch thick of grease. This country, in like manner, produces a number of elks, stags, deer, and the like; hares, pheasants, partridges, swans, wild-geese, ducks, storks, and all sorts of game, which are cheaper than butchers meat. For the rest this city is provided with a good garrison of regular troops, and can send above 9000 men into the field, at the first order of his Czarian Majesty. Here are also some thousands of *Tartars* who are bound to serve his Majesty on horseback, when occasion requires.

Depredations of the Calmucs *upon the Czar's frontiers.* The hoards of the *Calmucs* and *Cossacs* that depend upon the *Testicham* or chief of the *Bugarian Tartars*, commit frequent depredations upon the Czar's frontiers, as well as those of *Ussimir* and *Baskir*, but the garrison of *Tobol* is presently at their heels. In this city there is a metropolitan, who is sent from *Moscow*, and has jurisdiction over all the clergy of *Sibêria* and *Dauria*. 1692.

It is now about an hundred years since this city and all *Siberia* became subject to his Czarian Majesty, and that, after the following manner. A certain pyrate, whose name was *Jeremak Timofeiewitz*, having greatly harassed and ruined certain lands belonging to the Czar *Ivan Wasilewitz*, to the great damage of his subjects, and understanding the troops of that Prince were advancing towards him, he hastened back again up the *Kama* with his companions, and then entered the *Susawaia*, which falls into this river, and retired to the jurisdiction of the Lord of *Stroginof*, a very great landed man, who was possessed of all the land of the river for 20 *German* leagues about. He implored the protection of the grandfather of this Lord, and upon that condition offered to subdue all *Siberia* to the power of the Czar, in recompence for the evils he had inflicted on his subjects. This Lord accordingly supply'd him with the vessels, arms and artificers, he might want for his expedition, and promised he would obtain his pardon. Fraught with this, he embarked with his companions, and went up the river *Serebrenkoi*, which comes from the north-east of the mountains of *Wergotur*, and falls into the *Susawaia*. He then caused his people to march by land to the river of *Tagin*, which went down quite to the *Tura*, possessed himself of the fortress of *Tumêen*, which stands upon that river, where he slew all he met, then he returned up the *Tobol* quite to the city of that name, where he found a *Tartar* Prince of twelve years old, and called *Altanas Kutzjumowitz*, whose grandson is at present at *Moscow*, and honoured with the title of *Czarowitz* of *Siberia*; he possessed himself of this place, which he fortified, and sent the young Prince prisoner to *Moscow*. *How* Siberia *was reduced to the obedience of the Czar.*

After




La Vill
Irtis fluv.
Tobol fluv.




Pag. 106
le Tobolska





1692. After this train of ſucceſſes, this *Corſair* went down the *Irtis*, and was attacked in the night by a party of *Tartars*, at no great diſtance from *Tobol*. In this ſkirmiſh he loſt the beſt part of his people, and endeavouring to jump out of one veſſel into another, he fell into the river and was drowned, and his body hurried away by the rapidity of the ſtream, was never afterwards found. The Lord of *Stroginof* had in the mean time ſent to court, and obtained a pardon for *Jeremak*; nor did they fail to ſend troops to the places he had taken, or to fortify them: thus was it that *Siberia* fell under the power of the *Muſcovite*, who continues ſtill to be maſter of the ſame.

Divine ſervice of the Tartars.

The *Tartars* in *Tobol*, and many leagues about are all *Mohammedans*. Mr. *Isbrants* was deſirous to ſee their ceremonies, and went with the Waywod into one of their Moſchs, for without him he could have had no admiſſion. They are ſurrounded with great windows which are left open, and the pavement is covered with a carpet without any other ornament. As they go in they leave their ſhoes at the door, and ſit in order and croſs-legged. The *Mufti* appears in a ſtuff of white cotton, and has a white turban on his head. He whiſpered to one that was preſent, who cry'd out aloud, upon which they were all on their knees. The Mufti then muttered ſome words, and cry'd, *Alla*, *Alla*, *Mohammed*, and the reſt did the ſame after him, bowing three times down to the ground. He then fixed his eyes upon his hands, as if to read ſomething, and cry'd out a ſecond time, *Alla*, *Alla*, *Mohammed*. This done he looked back over his right ſhoulder, and then over his left, without ſaying a word, and all that were preſent obſerving to do the ſame, the ſervice was at an end. 1692.

This Mufti was by birth an *Arab*, and in very high eſteem among them, inſomuch that they had a particular value for every body that underſtood or could read *Arabic* for his ſake. He invited the envoy to his houſe near the *Moſch*, and entertained him with tea. In theſe parts are great numbers of *Calmuc* ſlaves, and even ſome deſcendants of Princes who were formerly made priſoners.

CHAP. XX.

Departure from Tobol. *Deſcription of the* Irtis. *Sledges drawn by dogs, and how. Departure from* Samoroskoi-jam. *Arrival at* Surgut.

Departure from Tobol.

THIS Miniſter departed from *Tobol* upon the *twenty ſecond*, having provided himſelf with veſſels and every thing neceſſary, and particularly with a good guard: thus he fell down the *Irtis*, upon the ſhores of which are ſeveral villages inhabited by *Tartars* and *Oſtiacs*, and among the reſt *Demianskoi*, *Jamin*, and others, where the ſmall river of *Pennouka* falls into the *Irtis*. Upon the *twenty eighth*, he arrived at *Samoroskoi-jam*, where he changed his rowers, and raiſed maſts in the larger veſſels to be able to ſail up the *Oby*, when the wind ſhould be favourable, the *Irtis* falling into this river by ſeveral openings not far from *Samoroskoi-jam*.

Deſcription of the Irtis.

The water of the *Irtis* is white and light, and comes from the mountains in the country of the *Calmucs*. This river runs from the ſouth to the north-eaſt, and paſſes through the two lakes of *Kebak* and *Suzan*. To the ſouth-eaſt it is bordered by lofty mountains, which are crowned with cedars, and the land on the other

1692. ther side, to the north-west, is low and full of pasture grounds, where are great black bears, wolves, foxes, red and grey; and upon the banks of the river of *Kasimka*, which discharges itself into the *Oby*, not very far from *Samoroskoi-jam*, are the finest grey furs of all *Siberia*, excepting those in the woods of *Heetkoi-Wollok*, we have mentioned before. The inhabitants told him that, the autumn before, there came a great bear into a stable, which looked upon a meadow, whence he took a cow, holding her between his fore-paws, and walking upon his hind: that the people of the house and their neighbours, hearing the noise the cow made, ran to see what was the matter, and fell upon *Bruyn* who would not part with his hold, till they shot at him, and killed the cow.

Adventure of a bear.

Inhabitants of the banks of the Irtis.

Most of the inhabitants in this part are *Russians* in the pay of his Czarian Majesty, and who are obliged to furnish the waivodes sent thither, and all those that travel into *Siberia*, upon the Prince's business, with carriages and guides, as well to go by water in summer as upon the ice in winter, as far as the city of *Surgut* upon the *Oby*, at reasonable rates. It is remarkable of them, that they keep a great number of dogs to draw their sledges in the winter, seeing they cannot use horses on account of the depth of the snow, which is sometimes a fathom deep upon the *Oby*. 1692.

Sledges drawn by dogs.

They put two of those dogs to a very light sledge, upon which they may load two or three hundred weight, and neither the dogs nor the sledge make the least impression in the snow. The inhabitants pretend there are some of these dogs that have a fore-knowledge of when they are to be imploy'd, and that upon these occasions they meet in the night and keep a terrible howling, whence their masters conclude they are to have strangers among them; but this is not at all likely. When they travel, their guides have a gun upon their shoulder, and certain long shoes upon their feet fit to run with upon



the

3

1692. the ſnow. They ſometimes go with their dogs to hunt in the woods, where they ſometimes meet with fine black foxes, whoſe ſkins they keep, and give the fleſh to their dogs; ſo that they at once reap ſervice and profit by them. Theſe dogs are of middling ſize, with ſharp noſes, and pointed ears which prick up, and turn-up tails, like wolves or foxes; and indeed they may be eaſily miſtaken for ſuch in the woods, they are ſo much alike. It is certain that they often mix together, and that they appear in the neighbourhood of villages when preparations are making to hunt.

Deſcription of theſe dogs.

Departure from Samaroſkoi-jam.

Upon the *twenty ninth* of *July*, this miniſter departed from *Samaroſkoi-jam*, and with two veſſels went down the principal branch of the *Irtis* towards the *Oby*, where he arrived the next day. On the eaſt-ſide of this river there are mountains, and on the weſt meadow grounds which reach beyond the ſight, and in this place the river is a good half league in breadth.

Arrival at the town of Surgut.

Upon the *ſixth* of *Auguſt* he arrived at *Surgut*, which ſtands upon the eaſt-ſide of this river. In theſe parts, up the country to the eaſt-ward, and as you go up the *Oby* from *Surgut* quite to the city of *Narum* are very fine ſables, as well of a pale brown as a black; as alſo the fineſt ermins of all *Siberia*, and even of all *Ruſſia*, and black foxes of unſpeakable beauty; the fineſt of which are ſet apart for his Czarian Majeſty, and are ſometimes valued at 2 or 300 rubles a piece: Some of them, in this colour, exceed the fineſt ſables of *Dauria*. They take them with dogs, upon which take the following ſtory as it was related to our author by the inhabitants.

Adventure and cunning of a fox.

A black fox, of the fineſt ſort, appearing in the beginning of the year before, in full day time, near *Surgut*, was purſued by a peaſant who had dogs of the ſame colour. The fox finding he could not eſcape, turned ſuddenly towards the dogs with an air of courteſy, and laid himſelf upon his back, and began to lick their chops; after which he began to run and play with them, the dogs all the time offering him no violence: at length watching the opportunity, he ſlunk into the woods, where the country-man, who had no fire-arms, ſoon loſt ſight of him, as well as the hopes he had had of ſo rich a booty.

This fox, two days afterwards, returned to the ſame place, when the country-man ſeeing him again, went after him a ſecond time with the ſame dogs, and a white one that he had obſerved to exceed all the reſt in cunning: the black dogs having allured him once more among them, the white one who knew him better than the reſt, made ſlily towards him, and would then have jumped upon him, but the fox gave a ſpring on one ſide, and made his eſcape a ſecond time into the woods.

After this the country-man blackned his white dog that the fox might not know him again, and going back to the woods, this dog ſoon found him out; at length the fox taking him for one of his black companions, came to him to play with him, and thereby fell into the ſnare prepared to deceive him; for the dog ſeized on him to the great joy of his maſter, who ſold his ſkin for 100 rubles.

They have here alſo foxes that are but half black, and mixed with grey, but it is ſeldom they take any that are all black; as for the red ſort, they are here in abundance. This country abounds alſo in otters and beavers; the former living only upon prey are very dangerous creatures; they climb up trees, and there take their ſtand till they ſee an elk, a ſtag, a deer, a hare, going by, when ſpringing upon them, they never leave them till they have killed them, after which they devour them. A waiwode who had one of them alive, ſent him into the river, and two dogs after him; but finding himſelf purſued, he flew at the head of the firſt dog, and held him under water till he was drowned; and then made towards the other, who had met with the ſame fate, if they had not been at hand to ſave him.

Deſcription of otters.

1692. *Of beavers.* They tell very extraordinary stories, and such as seem to deserve no great credit concerning the beavers, that have their holes and burroughs along the banks of this river, in the less frequented places, and where there is the most fish, which is what they chiefly live upon. *Incredible things related of these creatures.* They pretend that these creatures meet together by pairs in the spring, and form themselves into a neighbourhood; that after this they take prisoners of their own kind, and drag them to their holes or houses to serve them as slaves; that they fell trees by gnawing them beneath, and remove them to their abodes, where they cut off branches of a certain length, which they use to secure the store they lay up in summer, when their females bring forth their young. They add, that after this, these creatures meet a second time, and that after having brought down a tree, of sometimes an ell in circumference, they reduce it to the length of two fathom, and then float it along to their habitations, before which they raise it up to the depth of an ell, without touching the bottom, and 1692. place it in so exact an equilibrium, that neither the strength of the winds nor the force of the waters may disturb it. Tho' this may appear supernatural, this minister assures us the thing was confirmed to him by all *Siberia*, and many others, concerning these creatures, which he has studiously suppressed, because to him they seemed incredible, and more bordering upon human reason, than the nature of brutes.

Indeed he adds, there are many people in the country who attribute the erection of this tree to the magic of the *Ostiacs*, and other *Heathens* in those parts; but that it is certain the country people know how to distinguish between these creatures, as whether they be masters or slaves, these being thinner, and their coats worn to the stumps with working.

The *Russians* and *Ostiacs* who hunt them, never destroy a whole set, and are always mindful to leave a male and a female behind them for procreation.

CHAP. XXI.

Arrival at Narum. *Description of the* Ostiacs; *their religion, and the like. The* Oby *abounds with fish; its shores uncultivated.*

HAVING been some time mounting the *Oby*, sometimes by the help of the sail, sometimes by the slow labour of the tow-line, Mr. *Isbrants*, upon the *thirteenth* of *August*, thwarted the mouth of the river of *Wagga*, which falls down from the mountains of *Trugan*, whence it has its source. It is a great river whose waters are of a brown black, and empties itself into the *Oby*, to the north-north-west, Narum. below *Narum*, a small city where he arrived upon the *twenty fourth*. It stands on the river side, in a fine country, and is defended by a citadel with a good garrison of *Cossacks*. This part swarms with foxes, black, grey, and red, beavers, ermins, sables, and the like.

The banks of the *Oby* are hitherto inhabited by a people called *Ostiacs*, who worship idols, tho' they at the same time acknowledge there is a God in heaven, to whom they notwithstanding pay no adoration. *Description of the* Ostiacs, *and an account of their religion.* They have idols of wood and idols of earth, in human form, which they fashion with their own hands, and which such of them as can afford

1692. ford it clothe in ſilk, in imitation of the *Ruſſian* habit. Theſe idols ſtand in their cabbins, which are of the bark of trees, ſew'd together with the guts of deer, and have on one ſide of them, bundles of hair, and a little bucket full of a ſort of broth, of which they give them every day with a ſpoon made on purpoſe, which conſtantly running down the corners of the mouth, has an effect very diſagreeable to the ſight. When they worſhip theſe idols, or pray to them, they ſtand upright, and make ſtrange motions with the head, without bowing the body at all, and keep a noiſe like thoſe who call dogs.

Strange machine. They call theſe idols *Saitan*, a name not very wide from *Satan*. It happen'd that ſome of theſe *Oſtiacs* being on board of Mr. *Isbrant*'s veſſel, he ſhewed them a bear contrived at *Nuremberg*, which by ſprings could beat a drum, and at the ſame time move both head and eyes. When they beheld this, and ſaw that it began to move, they fell to ſinging and dancing, and paid all the worſhip they uſually did to their *Saitan*, ſaying this was a true *Saitan*, very different from thoſe they made, and that if they had ſuch a one, they would clothe him in the fineſt ſables, and the ſkin of the black fox. They then aſked if it was to be ſold; but it was taken out of their ſight to put an end to their idolatrous behaviour.

Marriages of the Oſtiacs. Theſe *Oſtiacs* marry as many wives as they can maintain, and make no ſcruple to wed with their neareſt relations. When death ſnatches a friend from them, they lament about the body for ſome days without ceaſing, with their head covered up, and on their knees, without ſeeing any body, and then they carry it to the grave upon poles. *Their funerals.* They are very poor, and in ſummer live in miſerable huts; but they might eaſily better their condition, the country about the *Oby* affording plenty of furs, and the river itſelf ſtore of fiſh, *The* Oby *abounds with fiſh.* and eſpecially ſturgeon, a ſcore of the largeſt of which they will give for three penny-worth of tobacco. 1692. But they are too lazy to work, and ſeek after no more than what may ſerve them for a miſerable ſubſiſtence in the winter.

They eat hardly any thing but fiſh when they travel, and eſpecially when they are fiſhing. They are of middling ſtature, with hair either fair or red, and with broad flat faces and noſes. They are not at all given to war, and know nothing of the uſe of arms; tho' they have both bows and arrows for hunting, but they are not dextrous with them. They cover *The dreſs of the* Oſtiacs. themſelves with the ſkins of certain fiſh, and particularly with that of the ſturgeon, and have no manner of linnen. Their ſtockings and ſhoes are all of a piece, and over all they wear a ſhort kind of looſe waiſtcoat, to which they faſten a kind of cap, which they pull over their head when it rains. Their ſhoes which are alſo of fiſh ſkin, are not waterproof, ſo that they are always wet ſhod. Without any ſeeming pain they undergo all the rigors of a moſt frightful cold upon the water, clad no otherwiſe than has been deſcribed, except the winter prove a very hard one indeed, and in that caſe they put on two of the looſe waiſtcoats above. And when this happens, it is a kind of an æra with them, aſking each other, if they do not remember the winter when they wore two waiſtcoats? They wear but one when they hunt in winter, and never cover their breaſts, imagining they ſhall ſufficiently heat themſelves with running up and down on the ſnow with ſledge ſhoes. But when they happen to be over- *They periſh in the ſnow.* taken with an extraordinary froſt, which they are unable to withſtand, they ſtrip themſelves as faſt as they can, and bury themſelves deep in the ſnow, that they may dye the ſooner, and with the leſs pain.

Much



Much as the men dreſs, ſo dreſs the women, whoſe chief diverſion is hunting the bear. Upon this occaſion they go in companies, but armed no otherwiſe than with a kind of a ſharp knife made faſt to the end of a ſtaff about ſix foot long. When they have killed a bear, they cut off his head, and hanging it up to a tree, they run about it, and pay it great honours. The ſame they do about his body, aſking him, *Who was it killed thee? The Ruſſians*, ſay they themſelves, *Who was it cut off thy head? It was the ax of a Ruſſian. Who ript up thy belly? 'Twas the knife of a Ruſſian.* In a word, whatever they do to this creature, they throw upon the *Ruſſians*.

Oſtiacs *how they behave to a bear they have hunted down.*

Petty Princes.

They have petty Princes among them, one of which called *Knez Kurza Muganak* came on board to ſee Mr. *Isbrants.* This man was appointed over ſome hundreds of cabbins, and gathered the tribute theſe people are obliged to pay to his Czarian Majeſty's waiwodes. He came with all his train; brought him a preſent of freſh fiſh, and returned with an exchange of brandy and tobacco, with which he ſeemed to be highly pleaſed. He came a ſecond time to invite this miniſter to his palace; and Mr. *Isbrants* having the curioſity to accept of this invitation, he went and was received by the Knez himſelf, who in perſon did the honours of his houſe, into which he conducted him. It was made of the barks of trees, like the other cabbins, but not extremely well ſewed together. Mr. *Isbrants* here ſaw four of this Prince's wives, the youngeſt had on a red cloth petticoat, with a good deal of coral and glaſs about her neck and her waiſt, as alſo in the treſſes of her hair, which hung down on each ſide, and upon her

The author viſits one of them.

Deſcription of his cabbin and his women.

1692. her ſhoulders; ſhe had great rings or buckles in her ears, from whence hung ſtrings of coral beads. Theſe Ladies, each of them, offered him a little tub, made of bark, full of dry'd fiſh, and the youngeſt a tub of ſturgeon, yellow as gold itſelf; in return for which he regaled them with brandy and tobacco, which are great delicacies with them. This cabbin had no other furniture than ſome cradles, and trunks made of bark, in which were their beds, full of wood-duſt, as ſoft as down itſelf. The cradles were at the end of the cabbin, full of naked children, and the fire was in the midſt. There was no kitchen utenſils, ſave one copper kettle, and ſome others of bark, which they can never uſe, but when there is no flame.

The furniture.

Manner of ſmoaking.

When they ſmoak, to which they are much addicted, both men and women, they take a mouthful of water, and ſwallow the ſmoke of the tobacco with it. This affects them in ſuch ſort, that they fall down, and lye for ſome time on the ground inſenſible, with their eyes open, and foaming at the mouth like thoſe in the falling ſickneſs; ſome of them even dye in this condition; ſometimes they fall into the river, or into the fire, and there come to a miſerable end, and ſometimes they are quite ſuffocated to death with this ſmoke.

Their manners.

They fall into a great paſſion, if any mention be made of their relations, nor can they bear to hear them ſo much as named, tho' they may have been dead for a long time. They are abſolutely ignorant of every thing that has paſſed in the world before their time, and know not either how to read or to write. They in no degree apply themſelves to the culture of the earth, tho' they are remarkably fond of bread.

Their embarkations.

They have neither temples nor prieſts. Their boats are made of the bark of trees, and the timbers and frame-work within of very ſlight pieces of wood. They are two or three fathom in length, and not above an ell broad; and yet they make a ſhift to live it out in very bad weather. In winter theſe *Oſtiacs* live under ground, with an hole at the top of their caves for the ſmoke to go out at. When it ſnows, and they ſleep naked about the fire, as their cuſtom is, it often happens that they have one half of the body covered with ſnow, and when they awake, they turn themſelves on the other ſide towards the fire, and feel no inconvenience by it.

Their habitations in winter.

Their jealouſy.

When it happens that an *Oſtiac* is jealous of his wife, he cuts away ſome fur from the belly of a bear, and carries it to the perſon he ſuſpects to be great with his wife. When the party is innocent, he accepts it; but when he is guilty, he fairly owns it, and comes to an amicable agreement with the huſband for the price of his wife. Nor dare they act otherwiſe, perſuaded, that if any man ſhould preſume to accept of the hair, and at the ſame time be guilty, the bear from whom the hair is cut, would devour him before three days were at an end. Upon the ſame occaſions, they alſo preſent bows and arrows, hatchets and knives, not doubting but thoſe who accept them under the circumſtances of guilt, muſt come to an untimely end in a few days. This is what they unanimouſly affirm, and is confirmed by the *Ruſſians* who live in thoſe parts: but enough has been ſaid of the *Oſtiacs*. The banks of the *Oby*, inhabited by them, lye uncultivated from the ſea quite to the river of *Tun*, becauſe of the exceſſive cold, whence they produce neither corn nor honey, nor ought elſe of fruit but the cones of cedars.

The banks of the Oby uncultivated.

CHAP. XXII.

Arrival at Makofskoi *upon the* Keta. *Want of Provisions. Departure from* Makofskoi. *Description of the* Keta. *Journey continued by land. Arrival at* Jenizeskoi. *Description of that town.*

1692.

He leaves the Oby.

HAving for some weeks navigated the *Oby*, and spent some time among the *Ostiacs*, Mr. *Isbrants*, upon the *first* of *September*, arrived at the town of *Keetskoi* upon the *Keta*, which falls north-west into the *Oby*; upon the *twenty-eighth*, he came to the monastery of St. *Sergius*; and upon the *third* of *October* to the village of *Worozeikin*, where the same day died of a fever, *John George Weltsel*, of *Sleswic*, a painter, in the train of this minister.

Death of one of his servants.

Arrival at Makoffkoi *upon the* Keta.

Upon the *seventh* of *October*, he happily arrived at *Makofskoi*, where he buried the said *Weltsel* upon an eminence on the river side. He was more tired, and suffered more pain upon this river, than in all the rest of his journey; for he was five weeks in going up it, without setting eyes on a soul, except some *Ostiacs*, who immediately ran into the woods. These *Ostiacs* are different from those along the banks of the *Oby*, and speak another language, but are as much idolaters as they.

Inconveniency upon the Keta.

He suffered much in this passage for want of provisions, and especially meal; for he had had no supplies from the time he left *Tobol*, excepting now and then some fresh fish. Tho' it must be confessed, he would not at this time have been in want, had he been less liberal to the poor *Ostiacs* he had in his vessel, who sometimes towed her, tho' they would have deserted their work, if they had not been well looked after; for they were quite tired out, and accordingly deserted every day. And at last they were so thoroughly spent, that they must have sunk under it, if help had not come from the governor of *Jenizeskoi*, who upon application, immediately sent to this Minister's assistance, or he must have stopped 30 leagues short of *Makofskoi*, and have been exposed to the danger of perishing among the ice and snows; the banks of the *Keta* being so far destitute of inhabitants.

1692.

Departure from Makofskoi.

He had scarce got from this village, when this river, which is not navigable in winter, began to be taken by the frost. It runs through a country full of woods and thickets, and winds, so as frequently to astonish the traveller, when at night he perceives how near he is to the place he left at noon. This country abounds with heath-game, pheasants and partridges, and a pleasure it is to see them in flocks drinking morn and even, upon the banks of the river, where, as you pass by, you may kill what number you please, which proved a great help to them in the shortning of their provisions. The soil here produces goosberries, both red and black, as also strawberries and rasberries; but the river affords no great store of fish.

Teeth and bones of the Mammut.

Near this place, in the mountains to the north-east, they find the teeth and bones of a creature they call a *Mammut*, and especially upon the banks of the Rivers of *Jenisia*, of *Trugan*, of *Mongamsea*, and of *Lena*, near *Jabutskoi*, and quite to the icy ocean. And this chiefly happens when a great Thaw has flooded this last river, and the ice has torn away earth from the sides of the hills. Then in this earth frozen almost quite to the bottom, they find carcasses of this creature; and especially when the thaw is not extreamly great indeed. A person who attended on the envoy, and who had been several years imployed in this research, assured him he had found the head of

1692. of one of these *Mammuts* in such thawed grounds; that having split it and opened it, he found the flesh almost all putrified, with teeth sticking out like those of an elephant, and so fast set that he had much ado to pull them out. That afterwards meeting with a fore-quarter of this creature, he carried a bone of it to the city of *Trugan*, and that this bone was as thick as the middle of an ordinary man, and in a word, that he observed something that had the resemblance of blood about the neck of this creature.

Different opinions concerning the Mammut.

There are different opinions concerning this animal. The *Jakutes*, *Tunguses* and *Ostiacs* maintain he never comes forth from the bosom of the earth, and that he moves from place to place under ground. They even say they see the earth rise and sink in when he is in motion, so that he leaves a considerable trench behind him. They assure moreover, that he dies as soon as he sees the light, that he never appears above the surface but by accident, whence it is that he is found dead upon high banks, and that he is never seen alive.

The opinion of the Russians *concerning the same.*

But the *Russians*, who have been now a long time in *Siberia*, believe these *Mammuts* are creatures like elephants, except that their teeth are more hooked and closer. They say there was of them in this country before the flood, the climate in those early days being warmer than at present; and that their dead bodies being born away by the waters of the deluge, were buried deep in the earth, and that the frost which has so constantly and intensly frozen them up, has preserved them from utter decay, and in short, that it is owing to thaws they ever appear in sight, which bids fair enough to be the case. Nor indeed is it necessary to make this out, for us to suppose there has been any alteration in the climate of these parts, seeing that these bodies may have been brought hither by the waters which covered the whole face of the earth at that time. When the teeth of this creature have

4

been a whole summer exposed on 1692. the shore, they find them split and black, and then they are good for nothing, whereas those that are entire and clean, are as good as ivory. They carry them to all parts of *Muscovy*, where they make combs of them, and other pieces of work.

Prodigious teeth of a Mammut.

The same servant told him, that he had found two teeth, in one and the same head, which weighed about twelve hundred weight of *Russia*, or about four hundred weight *German*, so that these creatures must be of enormous dimensions. For the rest, Mr. *Isbrants*, says, he never met with any body that had ever seen one of these *Mammuts* alive, nor ever any one that could give him an exact description of their form.

He continues his journey by land.

When this Gentleman had reached the village of *Makofskoi*, he would no longer expose himself to perils on the water, and resolved to perform the rest of his journey by land. Having travelled sixteen leagues in this manner, he, upon the *twelfth* of *October* came to *Jenizeskoi*, where he staid some time to repose himself, and to wait for the settling of the winter season, that he might continue his journey in a sledge. In the mean time he made preparation of every thing he might want, and had time enough to examine into every thing remarkable in the city.

Arrival at Jenizeskoi.

Description of that city.

It borrows its name from the river of *Jenisha*, which arising from the south, crosses the *Kalmuc* mountains, and holds on almost in a strait line to the northward, till it disembogues itself into the icy sea of *Tartary*, but not after the manner of the *Oby*, which discharges itself into the bosom of its own waters, and runs from them into the sea. It is a full quarter of a league broad at this town. Its water is white and light, but produces no great quantity of fish. About seven years ago the inhabitants of this place fitted out a ship to go upon the whale-fishery; but she never returned, nor have they ever had any news of her since. But the inhabitants of *Fugunia*, a town farther down the river, send ships

1692. ſhips every year upon that expedition; however, they time it better than the others did, and conſider when the wind blows the ice off the ſhore, and ſo fiſh with ſafety. The city of *Jenizeskoi* is indifferently large, well fortified, and well peopled. Corn, butcher's meat, and poultry abound there. Its juriſdiction extends over a great number of the heathen *Tunguſes*, who inhabit along the *Jeniſia*, and the *Tunguska*, and the neighbourhood about. They pay their tribute to his Czarian Majeſty in all ſorts of furs. The cold is here ſo intenſe, that the fruit-trees here produce no fruit. They have nothing of the kind but red and black gooſeberries, and ſome ſtrawberries. 1692.

CHAP. XXIII.

Departure from Jenizeskoi. *Arrival at the iſle of* Ribnoi; *at* Ilinskoi; *and to the fall or cataract of* Shamanskoi, *or the* Magician. *Deſcription of the* Tunguſes.

1693. *Departure from* Jeniſkoi, *and arrival at the iſle of* Ribnoi. THE Envoy departed from *Jenizeskoi* in a ſledge, and upon the *twentieth* of *January*, 1693, arrived at the iſland of *Ribnoi* or *of Fiſh*. It ſtands in the middle of the river of *Tunguska*, and abounds in fiſh, eſpecially in ſturgeon and pike, of extraordinary ſize, and is almoſt wholly inhabited by *Ruſſians*. Upon the *twenty-fifth* he arrived at *Ilinskoi*, upon the river of *Ilni*, which riſes to the ſouth-ſouth-weſtward, and diſcharges itſelf into the *Tunguska*, north-north-weſt. To this place there are both *Ruſſians* and *Tunguſes* upon the banks of this river.

At Ilinſkoi.

Shamanſkoi or the torrent of the Magician. At ſome days journey from hence, you meet with the great fall, cataract, or torrent of water of *Shamanskoi*, or the *Magician*, ſo called from a famous *Shaman* or Magician who there takes up his abode. The fall of this torrent is half a league in extent, and the ſides are high hills of rock, and all the bottom is rock: Terrible it is to behold, as may be perceived by the plate annexed; and makes a moſt frightful noiſe as it falls among the rocks, ſome of which appear above, and ſome are concealed below. When the air is ſtill, it is heard at the diſtance of three *German* leagues around.

1593. The veſſels wherewith they navigate up this torrent, are often ſix or ſeven days in getting up, altho' they be quite light, and drawn up by capſtanes, windlaſſes, anchors and men. Sometimes it happens that they ſhall work a whole day, in places where the water is low, and the rocks are high, and not gain the length of the veſſel, which is all the time in great danger. *Dangers to which veſſels are expoſed upon this torrent.*

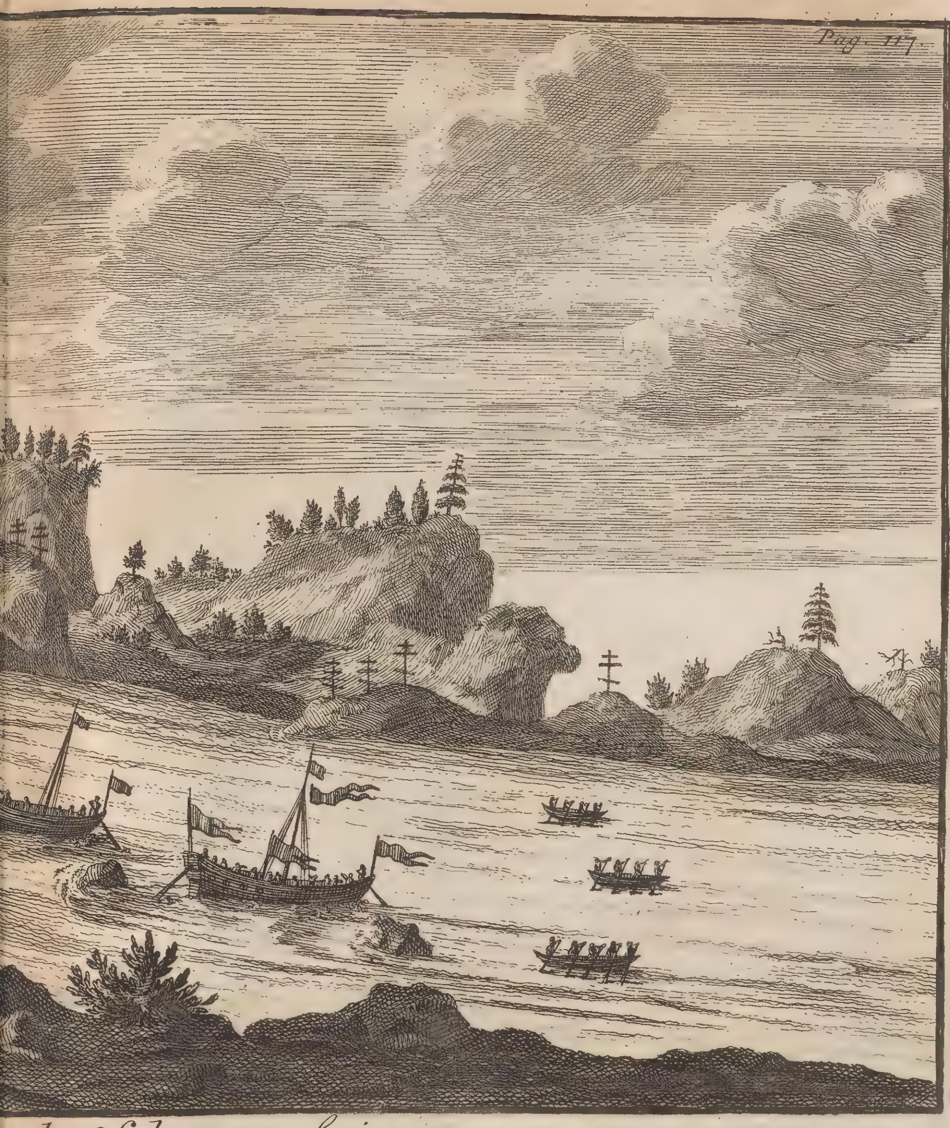
They unlade theſe veſſels to go down, as well as to go up this torrent, and carry the goods by land till there is no longer any danger; and the fall is ſo precipitate, that they are ſeldom above twelve minutes in going down. For the reſt, there are but few either of the *Ruſſians* or the *Tunguſes* that are quite dextrous at this piece of navigation, tho' they are provided with a rudder both fore and aft, and tho' they have oars ſhipped on each ſide. The ſteerſman directs the men at the oars with the motion of an handkerchief, the noiſe being ſo rude and boiſterous, as to drown the human voice; and beſides this, they take care to have their veſſel cloſe covered up to prevent their ſhipping the water that goes over them. However, there happens every year ſome ſad acci-





Chute ou Torrent





de Schamanskoi.

figures of all sorts of animals, birds, ravens, fishes, owls, griffins, hatchets, saws, sabres, knives, and the like, which made a strange sort of clinking and noise. His feet and his legs were covered with the same, and his hand with two great bears paws made of iron. His cap was also hung with pieces of iron like his gown, and upon his fore-head he had a large pair of horns of the rein-deer, made also of iron. When he exercises his diabolical art, he takes a drum in his left hand, and a flat sort of stick in his right, covered with the skin of the mountain mouse; then jumping first upon one foot, and then upon the other, the pieces of iron make a most frighful din; he beats upon his drum at the same time, and rolls his eyes, and imitates the noise of a bear. This fine prelude over, he demands his rewards before he stirs a step farther, towards the discovery of what the

How he exercises his art.

their middle which conceals their privities, and is somewhat like a fringe: The women wear their hair dressed up with coral, to which they hang little iron figures. Upon their left arm they carry a kind of pot full of a smoaking wood, which keeps the flies from biting them. These insects so swarm upon the river of *Tunguska*, that a man is obliged to cover over his face and his hands; but these pagans are so used to them, that they hardly feel them. They are fond of beauty, but have very odd notions about what it is; for to add thereto they quilt their forehead, their cheeks and their chin, with thread steeped in a black grease, which being afterwards withdrawn, leaves marks behind it, which are thought to be very great ornaments. And indeed, there are few of this people without them, but you will have a clearer idea of this matter by consulting the plate annexed.

Their ornaments.



1693. dent or other for want of ſkilful pilots, who run upon the rocks, in which caſe there is no reſource, and they are either ſwallowed up by the furious torrent, or inevitably daſhed to pieces againſt the rocks: nor is it eaſy to recover the dead bodies of thoſe ſo loſt; tho' on the ſhore are many croſſes erected at the places where ſuch wrecks have happened, and where the people have been buried. The water that flows hither from the northern ocean ſwells this torrent in winter to that degree, that it is difficult to diſcern any fall, ſo that it was formerly croſſed in ſledges, but in ſummer it is very low.

Many are loſt by the unskilfulneſs of pilots.

Tunguſes and their Shaman.

Some leagues from hence are numbers of *Tunguſes*, and their famous *Shaman* or Magician. The great reputation of this impoſtor excited the curioſity of the Envoy to go to the place of his abode. He ſays, he was a large made man, pretty far advanced in years, that he had twelve wives, and bluſhed not for his profeſſion. This *Shaman* ſhewed his magical habit, and every article elſe he uſed in acting the magician: Firſt a garment all hung about with irons, repreſenting the figures of all ſorts of animals, birds, ravens, fiſhes, owls, griffins, hatchets, ſaws, ſabres, knives, and the like, which made a ſtrange ſort of clinking and noiſe. His feet and his legs were covered with the ſame, and his hand with two great bears paws made of iron. His cap was alſo hung with pieces of iron like his gown, and upon his fore-head he had a large pair of horns of the rein-deer, made alſo of iron. When he exerciſes his diabolical art, he takes a drum in his left hand, and a flat ſort of ſtick in his right, covered with the ſkin of the mountain mouſe; then jumping firſt upon one foot, and then upon the other, the pieces of iron make a moſt frighful din; he beats upon his drum at the ſame time, and rolls his eyes, and imitates the noiſe of a bear. This fine prelude over, he demands his rewards before he ſtirs a ſtep farther, towards the diſcovery of what the *Tunguſes* want to know of him, 1693. whether it be to help them to any thing that has been ſtollen, or to tell them any thing elſe they want of him. This done, he begins to ſkip and to cry out again, till he perceives a blackbird perched upon his cabbin at the place where the ſmoke goes out; laſtly, he falls backward, as if deprived of his ſenſes, and the bird flies away again. In about a quarter of an hour's time he recovers himſelf, and declares what he was deſired to tell, and what he ſays never fails to happen. The dreſs of this magician is ſo heavy, that it is as much as a man can do to lift it up with one hand. This man was very rich in cattle, and thoſe who came to conſult him, gave him whatever he had a mind to aſk.

Deſcription of his perſon.

How he exerciſes his art.

Riches of this magician.

These *Tunguſes* of *Niſovier*, are heathens, robuſt, and well made of body. They wear their long black hair, knotted behind, and which falls down upon their back like a horſe's tail; their face is generally broad, but their noſe is not flat, and they have little eyes like the *Kalmucs*. Both men and women go naked in ſummer, excepting a leather about their middle which conceals their privities, and is ſomewhat like a fringe: The women wear their hair dreſſed up with coral, to which they hang little iron figures. Upon their left arm they carry a kind of pot full of a ſmoaking wood, which keeps the flies from biting them. Theſe inſects ſo ſwarm upon the river of *Tunguska*, that a man is obliged to cover over his face and his hands; but theſe pagans are ſo uſed to them, that they hardly feel them. They are fond of beauty, but have very odd notions about what it is; for to add thereto they quilt their forehead, their cheeks and their chin, with thread ſteeped in a black greaſe, which being afterwards withdrawn, leaves marks behind it, which are thought to be very great ornaments. And indeed, there are few of this people without them, but you will have a clearer idea of this matter by conſulting the plate annexed.

Deſcription of the Tunguſes.

Their dreſs in ſummer.

Their ornaments.



A. *Cabane avec l'Idole.* B. *Corps de leurs Amis Morts.* C. *Chiens pendus, d'ont ils se nourrissent.*

Their dress in winter. In winter they wear undressed skins of the rein-deer, adorning the fore-part with horse-hair, and the bottom with dogs-skin, they have no use either of linen or woollen; they make themselves a kind of ribbon and thread of fish-skin. Upon their heads also they wear the skin of rein-deer with the horns on, and particularly when they are about to hunt that creature, whom by that means they get near, gliding along upon the grass, till they are within reach, when they seldom fail to dispatch him with their arrows.

Diversion. When they would divert themselves, they form a ring, while one is in the midst of them with a stick in his hand, with which he endeavours to strike the legs of the rest as they run round him, and they avoid a blow so artfully, that it is but seldom any of them feel the cudgel; but if at any time it happen that one of them receives a blow, he is immediately ducked in the river.

They place the bodies of their dead stark naked under a tree, and there leave them to rot, after which they bury their bones in the ground.

They have no priests besides their *Shaman* or Magician; but they have all of them wooden idols in their cabbins. These idols are about half an ell in length, and in human shape, and these they pretend to feed with the best they have like the *Ostiacs*, and with as little cleanliness. *Magicians and idols.*

Their cabbins, which are made of the bark of birch, are, on the outside, adorned with tails and mains of horses, with their bows and arrows, and most of them with the dead bodies of puppies hung about them. They feed upon fish in summer, and have boats of the bark of trees sewn together, big enough to hold seven or eight persons; they are long, narrow, and without benches. *Description of their cabbins.*

1693. They row upon their knees with a double paddle or oar, which they hold by the middle, and handle very dextroufly, dipping all at once, as well upon great rivers as upon fmall. They fifh in fummer, and hunt in winter, during which they feed upon deer of feveral forts, and the like. 1693.

CHAP. XXIV.

Arrival at Buratskoi, *and at* Bulaganskoi. *Defcription of the* Burates, &c. *Arrival at* Jekutskoi; *a Defcription of it. A burning Cavern. Departure from* Jekutskoi. *Arrival at the Lake of* Baikal. *Defcription of that Lake*, &c.

Arrival at Buratskoi. UPON the *firft* of *February*, the Envoy arrived at the fortrefs of *Buratskoi*, upon the river *Angara*, which falls into the lake of *Baikal*, and is well inhabited by a people that are heathens, and called *Burates*.

Arrival at Bulaganfkoi. Upon the *eleventh*, he arrived at *Bulaganskoi*; where alfo the vales and low country are inhabited by thefe *Burates*, a people rich in cattle. Their beeves are very thick of hair, and their cabbins are low, made of wood, and covered with earth: They light their fire in the middle, and the fmoke goes out of a hole in the top of the building. They have no notion of agriculture, or of fruit grounds or gardens; and their villages are for the moft part on the fides of rivers, whence they are not ufed to remove like the *Tungufes*, and others of the heathen. On one fide of their doors, they have ftakes planted in the ground, upon which they impale goats or fheep, and faften thereto alfo the fkins of horfes.

Hunting of the Burates. In the fpring, they meet together in great numbers on horfeback, to hunt the ftag, the rein-deer, and other wild beafts which they call *Ablavo*. When they have fight of them at a diftance, they divide themfelves into troops and furround them; then they drive them together into a clofe body by degrees, and in this manner frequently hedge in fome hundreds of them, which they fhoot with their arrows, when they are within reach; fo that few of them efcape, every fportfman being provided with thirty arrows.

Accidents upon that occafion. When they have finifhed the chafe, during which it fometimes happens that they wound each other in the confufion of the attack, and fhoot their horfes, they look out, every one for his arrows, which they always mark, and then they flea their game, drying the flefh of it, which they divide from the bones, in the fun: And when this ftore is near upon exhaufted, they return again to their fport. This country fwarms with fallow-deer, and efpecially in wild fheep, which upon the mountains are met with by thoufands. But there are few or no creatures that afford furs for 5 or 6 leagues about, excepting fome bears and fome wolves.

When it happens that among this people you want oxen, or camels to travel with to *China*, you muft agree with them for goods in exchange; they have no notion of money in coin. They truck with you for pale fables, pewter or copper bafons, red cloths of *Hamburgh*, otter-fkins, filks of *Perfia* of all forts of colours, and gold and filver in ingots. In this manner you may buy an ox, which dreffed, would weigh from 800 to 1000 weight, for the value of four or five rubles; and a camel for the *Price of cattle.*

value

1693. value of ten or a dozen, the rubles being here eſtimated at five livers as in *Ruſſia*. The inhabitants of this country, as well men as women, are robuſt and large of ſtature; have a face handſome enough in their way, and ſomewhat reſembling the *Tartars* of *China*. In the winter-time, both the one and the other wear gowns of ſheep-ſkin, with a great girdle, and a cap called *Malachaven*, which comes over their ears; and in ſummer they wear gowns of an ugly ſort of a red cloth. For the reſt, as they never waſh but upon the day they come into the world, and never pare their nails at all, they, if the expreſſion may be allowed, look like a kind of Devils.

The ſtature and habit of the Burates.

The men wear a beard under their chin but pluck out all the reſt; the ſeams of their cloaths are adorned with furs; their caps are of fox-ſkin; their gowns of a blue-cotton ſtuff, pleated in the middle, and their boots are of ſkins with the hair outermoſt. The women wear coral, rings, and pieces of money in the treſſes of their hair; and the hair of the girls or maidens is in ſnakes, that they look like furies.

Their maids and women.

The women have their hair falling down on each ſide, and adorned with all ſorts of figures in pewter; and when they dye, they bury them with their beſt cloaths, and a bow and an arrow. Their only worſhip is to make certain motions of the head, at certain times of the year, to the goats and ſheep that are impaled at their doors. The ſame honour they pay to the ſun and moon, but upon their knees, with their hands joined together, tho' without ſaying a word, or uſing any ſort of verbal invocation. They have prieſts, which they put to death whenever they pleaſe, and then bury them with money and cloaths, that they may go before them, and pray for them.

The place where they ſwear by oath.

When they are under a neceſſity of taking an oath among themſelves, they repair to the lake of *Baikal*, upon a high mountain, which is ſacred with them, and which they may reach in two days journey: They are perſuaded they ſhould never 1693. come down again alive, if they took a falſe oath. This mountain has for a long ſeries of years paſt been in high veneration with them, and upon it they make frequent offerings of cattle.

Creatures that yield musk.

In theſe parts they have the muſc creature, like thoſe to be ſeen in the plate. It is not very unlike a deer without horns, but is darker, and with a head not very unlike the head of a wolf. His muſk is contained in a ſmall bladder at the navel, covered with a little ſort of down. The *Chineſe* call it *Yehiam* or the muſk-deer; but beſides that he has not the head of a deer, his teeth are like the tuſks of a wild boar, except that they are hooked.

It is met with in China.

Martini, in his *Chineſe* atlas, obſerves, that this creature, is in the country of *Xanxi* in the neighbourhood of the city of *Leao*; in that of *Xenxi*, and particularly in that of *Hanchungſu*; in the country of *Suchuen*; in that of *Paoningfa*, and in the neighbourhood of *Kiating*, and the fortreſs of *Tienciven*; in many parts of the territory of *Junan*, and other places to the weſtward. The deſcription he gives of it is curious enough: "The muſk creature, ſays he, is not very unlike a "young deer; but he is of a deeper "colour, and ſo lazy, that it is as "much as the hunters can do to "rouſe him, ſo that he ſuffers his "throat to be cut without the leaſt "ſtruggle or reſiſtance; they ſave "his blood, and are careful to keep "it. Under his navel, he has a "ſmall bladder full of blood, and a "certain coagulated and odoriferous "fluid; this they take from him, "then they ſkin him and cut him in "pieces.

Firſt ſort of musk.

"In order to make the beſt musk, "the *Chineſe* take the hind quarters "of this creature, from the kidneys, "which they bray with a little "blood in a ſtone mortar, 'till the "whole become a jelly, which they "dry, and with it fill little cods, "made of the skin of this ſame creature.

1693. *Second sort.* "If they would have it of an inferior degree, tho' at the same time "genuine and very good, they without distinction pound and bray all "the parts of this creature together, "and reducing them to the consistence before-mentioned, which they "mix with a little blood, they fill "cods with it as before.

Third sort. "Besides these two sorts, they "have a third, much esteemed also, "tho' not so pure and good as the "former. This is made of the fore-"quarters of this creature, that is, "from the head to the kidneys, "which together with the rest, serve "to make common musk, so that "no part is lost, and all is good." For the rest the Envoy pretends not to say, whether or no the *Burates*, and the other savages their neighbours, practise with this creature, as the *Chinese* do.

Arrival at Jekutskoi, *and a description of it.* Having made some stay among this people, he went to *Jekutskoi*, upon the river of *Angara*, which rises from the lake of *Baikal*, about 8 leagues off. This town, which has been but lately built, is flanked with good towers. Its suburbs are very large, and corn, salt, butchers-meat and fish, are there so cheap, that they do not give above seven pence for an hundred weight of barley, *German* weight. The country about is very fertile, and abounds in grain as far as *Wergolenskoi*, which is only some leagues distant. The *Russians* in these parts have some hundreds of villages, and are very careful to cultivate the land.

A burning cave. Opposite to this town, to the eastward, there is a burning cavern, which has belched forth flame with a degree of violence for some time past, but at present nothing appears from it but a little smoke. The fire came out by a large fissure, which continues to be hot, as may be experienced by thrusting a long stick into it. 1693.

There is also a fine monastery on one side of this town, in the place where the *Jakut*, whence it derives its name, falls into the *Angara*. In these parts they feel great earthquakes, during the autumn season, but they never do any damage.

Here the Envoy met with a *Taischa*, or a Lord of the *Mongales*, who had submitted himself to the protection of their Czarian Majesties, and had embraced the *Christian* faith after the *Greek* rite. *Taischa or Lord of the* Mongales.

This Lord had a sister who was a nun after the *Mongale* profession, who had also had some inclination to become a Christian. When she was talked to about it, she would say she was convinced that the God of the Christians must be a very mighty God, seeing he had driven theirs from out of paradise: That, however, a time would come, when he would return thither again, and that he would not be expelled a second time. When any of these religious or devoted women come into a room, they do not salute any body, contrary to the custom of the *Mongales*; their order not indulging them in that sort of complaisance. She had a string of beads in her hand, which she was continually counting with her fingers, and was attended by a *Lama*, or *Mongale* priest, who had a string of beads also in his hand, after the manner of the *Mongales* and *Kalmucs*, which he continually counted with her, and was continually moving his lips as a person that prayed to himself; and had so worn his thumb, his nail, and joints of his fingers, with turning and telling his beads, that he had lost all feeling in them. *His sister a nun of the* Mongale *profession.* *Her belief.* Lama *or* Mongale *priest.*



Departure from Jekutskoi.

The Envoy having rested himself some time at *Jekutskoi*, upon the *first* of *May* departed thence in a sledge, and crossed the country, to the lake of *Baikal*, where upon the *tenth* he arrived, and found it frozen over still.

Lake of Baikal *described.*

Having crossed it, he came into the country of *Katania*. This lake is about 6 *German* leagues in breadth, and 40 in length, and the ice upon it was 2 *Dutch* ells in thickness; tho' it be very dangerous, when it happens to snow, and the wind high at the same time. Care must particularly be taken that the horses be very well shod for the purpose, because the ice is very smooth and slippery, and because the snow is always driven off from it by the wind.

Accidents caused by the violence of winds.

There are in it also great holes, very dangerous for travellers, when the wind is high, and the horses are not properly shod, and into which they are frequently forced. The ice here also sometimes cracks with the violence of gusts, and with a noise like thunder; but is never long before it joins and knits together again.

How they cross this lake with camels and oxen.

The camels and oxen used in the journey to *China*, must cross this lake as they go from *Jekutskoi*, and that they may be able so to do, the former have boots put on them, which boots are shod for the ice, and very sharp irons are put upon the hoofs of the others, without which they would not be able to stand upon this smooth slippery surface. For the rest, the water of this lake is very sweet, tho' at a distance it appears to be as green and as clear as the ocean. In the breaks of the ice it has numbers of seals, which are black, whereas those in the white sea are of a mixed colour. This lake is full of fish, and particularly swarms with sturgeon and pike, some

1693. of which are of fuch fize, as to weigh two hundred of *German* weight. The only river that goes out of this lake is the *Angara,* which runs to the north-north-weft; but there are feveral that fall into it, the chief of which is the *Silinga,* which rifes to the fouthward in the country of the *Mongales*; befides fome brooks and rills that fall into it from the rocks, nor is it without fome iflands. Its borders, and the country round about, are inhabited by *Burates, Mongales,* and *Onkotes,* and produce very fine black fables; befides that they here fometimes take a creature called *Kaberdiner.*

Strange fuperftition about this lake. It is particularly obfervable, with regard to this lake, that when you are near it, on the fide of the monaftery of St. *Nicholas,* which ftands in the place where the *Angara* goes out of the lake, the inhabitants are very fcrupuloufly cautious in advifing all travellers that are to crofs the lake, by no means whatfoever to call it by the name of *Ofer* or *Still-Water,* but a lake; for fear they perifh by the violence of a ftorm, as many have before them, who have been fo indifcreet as to call it *Ofer*; a caution which appeared fo ridiculous to the Envoy, that he called it fo as he went over it, without any fear of what the inhabitants had fo predictively threatened him with; and it happened, that in the midft of very fine weather he came to the caftle of *Katania,* the firft fortrefs in the province of *Dauria,* heartily commiferating the wild fuperftition of thefe poor people, who fear the wrath of the elements, inftead of putting their truft in God, who is the Creator and the Lord of the whole world, and whom the winds and the elements obey. 1693. *Caftle of* Katania.

CHAP. XXV.

Departure from Katania. *Arrival at* Udinskoi. *Defcription of that town and its dependencies. Departure from* Udinskoi. *Arrival at the fortrefs of* Jarauna. *Defcription of the people of that country. Arrival at* Nerzinskoi. *Defcription of the town, and of the inhabitants round about. Arrival at* Argunskoi, *the laft fortrefs belonging to the Czar on the fide of* China. *Its fituation.*

Departure from Katania. THE next day, the Envoy departed from the caftle of *Katania,* and upon the *twelfth,* arrived at the great burg of *Ilinskoi,* or of *Bolfoi Saimka,* moft of whofe inhabitants are *Ruffians,* who in winter hunt for fables, the product of the earth affording them no more than a bare fubfiftence, becaufe the country is incumbered with barren hills.

Upon the *fourteenth* he arrived at the caftle of *Tanzinskoi,* where was a good garrifon of *Coffacks,* to make head againft the incurfions of the *Mongales* who inhabit upon the frontiers of that country. Upon the *nineteenth,* he arrived at *Udinskoi,* a town feated upon a high hill, at the foot of which moft of the inhabitants take up their abode, under the cannon of that fortrefs, along the river *Uda,* which falls into the *Silinga,* *At* Udinfkoi.

1693. *linga*, a quarter of a league below the town, in which there is alſo a good garriſon of *Ruſſian Coſſacks* to watch the motions of the *Mongales*.

This town, which is the key of the province of *Dauria*, is very much expoſed, even in the ſummer time, to the ravages of the *Mongales*, who often carry off horſes as they feed in the meadows. The land, which is there very mountainous, is fit for no ſort of tillage, tho' it abounds in cabbages, carrots, turnips, and ſuch like vegetable productions; but no trees have as yet been planted here to this day.

Deſcription of its ſoil.

An earthquake.

Here, about nine at night, the Envoy was ſurprized with a great earthquake, which in the ſpace of an hour, ſhook all the houſes three times, without doing any farther miſchief.

The river of *Uda* produces little or no fiſh, if you except pike and roach; but every day in the month of *July*, there are prodigious ſhoals of a certain ſort of fiſh which they call *Omuli*, and which ſwim up this river from the lake of *Baikal*. Theſe *Omuli* are of the ſize of an herring, and hardly ever appear beyond this town, at the foot of a crumbled hill, where they ſtay only for a few days, and then ſwim back again to the lake. They take great quantities of them, by only throwing of ſacks in the river, and theſe ſacks are frequently as full as they can hold. The Envoy was obliged to ſtay here till the *ſixth* of *April*, to provide himſelf with camels and horſes.

Upon the *twenty ſixth* he went by land to the river of *Ona*, which comes from the north-north-weſt, and falls into the *Uda*.

Upon the *twenty ſeventh*, he reached the river of *Kurba*, whoſe ſource is to the north-north-weſt, and in like manner diſcharges itſelf into the *Uda*. He ſkirted this river towards its ſpring, till he had got to the middle of it; he was frequently obliged to leave it at ſome diſtance, but never loſt ſight of it.

Jarauna.

Upon the *twenty ninth*, he arrived at the fortreſs of *Jarauna*, and was raviſhed to meet with towns again, after having croſſed a deſart country full of high rocks; an irkſome journey, during which he ſaw no ſoul from the time he left *Udinskoi*. This fortreſs is provided with a good garriſon of *Coſſacks*, and here alſo are many *Ruſſians*, who ſubſiſt by the ſale of ſables. The *Konni Tunguſi*, the heathens who inhabit along the rivers of *Tunguski* and *Angara*, ſpread all over this country, and ſpeak a language peculiar to themſelves. When they dye they are buried with their cloaths and their arrows, and ſtones are put over their grave. Then they plant a ſtake, to which the beſt horſe of the deceaſed is tied, and there ſacrificed. They live by the ſale of ſable furs, which are perfectly fine in this country, and of an admirable black. Here alſo are fine luxes, and a ſort of ſquirrels of a a black-grey, which the *Chineſe* were formerly wont to carry off with them. To the north of this fortreſs you ſee three ſmall lakes not far from each other, which, together, are 2 leagues in circumference, and abound with pike, carp, perch, and the like. From hence are two ways which lead to *Zitinskoi* or *Plabitſcha*. The Envoy ſent part of his ſervants by the one, and the caravan advanced to the ſouthward, ſkirting it along the lake of *Schakze Oſer*, and then croſſed the hills of *Jabluſnoi*, or of *Apples*; tho' none grow there, and they produce no other than a kind of red fruit, which has ſomething of the taſte of an apple. The other way he took himſelf, with a train of fourteen followers, notwithſtanding it was very mooriſh, and that he was to go over lofty rocks, from *Jarauna* to *Telimta*. There are numbers of *Ruſſians* in this fortreſs, who in the winter ſeaſon take ſables of a very fine black, well fed, and equal to the very fineſt in all *Siberia*, and the province of *Dauria*.

People of the country. 1693.

Telimta.

Here


BEUF VELU.

Pag. 120.







A Tungus *Prince.* Here he paſſed a night, and a *Knez* or Prince of the *Tunguſes*, called *Liliulka*, came to ſee him. This Lord had his hair done up with leather, and ſo very long, that it went three times round about his ſhoulders. The Envoy intimating a curioſity to ſee it looſe, and the *Knez* being far gone with brandy, obliged him with the favour, and his hair being meaſured, proved to be 4 *Dutch* ells in length. He had with him a ſon of no more than ſix years old, whoſe hair, which hung upon his ſhoulders, was an ell in length. Theſe *Tunguſes* live in great numbers upon the hills and mountains of this country, and are generally rich, which proceeds from their large dealings in ſables.

For two days together they went over ſtony mountains, very lofty, to the north-weſt and the ſouth-eaſt. The river of *Konela*, which afterwards aſſumes the name of *Wittim*, riſes there to the north-ward; runs away to the north-eaſt, and goes and falls into the *Lena*, and from thence into the icy or northern ſea. The *Zitta* commences from the other ſide of the mountains, half a league from thence, and falls into the *Ingodda*, or *Amur*, and from thence into the eaſtern ocean.

Upon the *fifteenth* of *May*, he arrived at *Plodbitſcha*, as the *Caravan* did the day before, having greatly ſuffered on the way from the *Tunguſes*, who had ſet fire to the dry graſs; ſo that the cattle being in want of forage, they had been obliged to go into the mountains for it, at the diſtance of a league off. Plodbitſcha.

The rivers of Ingodda *and* Schilka *very low.* The Envoy was obliged to make a ſtay of ſome days at *Plodbitſcha*, upon the *Zitta*, to reſt him a little, and to get ready ſome rafts, by which to fall down the rivers of *Ingodda* and

1693. *Schilka* to *Nerzinskoi*; for the waters were so low there was no such thing as going in boats, nor was it quite safe to go upon rafts in the rocky places, where two of them were broke: they were laden with part of the Envoy's equipage; but with some trouble it was all saved.

When every thing was ready, he sent his camels and other beasts of burden before him towards *Nerzinskoi*, by the way of the mountains, and upon the *eighteenth* he followed them in person. Upon the *nineteenth*, he reached the river of *Onon*, which rises from the fens of *Mongal*, and to the north-east throws itself into the *Ingodda*, where having united their streams, they go away together by the name of *Schilka*. Their waters are very white, and their borders are inhabited by several hoards of the *Mongales*, who commit frequent ravages on the other side of the *Schilka* quite to *Nerzinskoi*. But they are not always attended with the best of luck upon these occasions; they are not seldom repulsed, and when any of them happen to be taken, they are sure to be executed as common robbers. The *Russian Cossacks* also scour the country along the *Onon* to take vengeance on them; they spare no soul they meet with, and destroy all before them where-ever they come.

Nerzinskoi. Upon the *twentieth*, he happily arrived at *Nerzinskoi*, a town upon the *Nerza*, which comes from the north-north-east, and discharges itself into the *Schilka*, a quarter of a league from this fortress, whose works are not bad, and provided with a good number of brass artillery, as well as with a good garrison of *Daurian Cossacks*, who serve both on foot and on horseback. This place, tho' surrounded with high hills, does not want for grass grounds to feed its camels, its horses and its cattle. And here and there, at the distance of two leagues upon the hills, you may see patches of land fit for tillage, and for the production of such things as the inhabitants stand in need of.

Four or five leagues upon the 1693. *Schilka*, above this town, and ten leagues below it, you meet with several *Russian* gentlemen, and some *Cossacks* who subsist by tillage, grazing and fishing. The environs of this town and the hills produce all sorts of flowers and plants; bastard rhubarb or *rapontica*, of extraordinary size; fine white and yellow lilies; red and white pionies of a charming scent, and of several sorts; rosemary, thyme, sweet marjoram, lavender, besides many odoriferous plants unknown in our countries: but they have no sort of fruit here except gooseberries. The heathens, who have a long time been in this country, and who are under the dominion of the Czar of *Muscovy* are of two sorts; the *Konni Tungusi*, and the *Olenni Tungusi*. The first are obliged to appear on horseback at the first orders of the *Waiwode* of *Nerzinskoi*, or when the borders are infested by the *Tartars*; and the *Olenni* are obliged to serve on foot, and armed in the town, when occasion requires. The chief of the *Konni Tungusi* is a *Knez* called *Paul Petrowitz Gantimur*, or in their language *Catana Gantimur*. He is pretty far advanced in years, and of the country of *Nieuheu*, where he had been a *Taischa*, under the dominion of the King of *China*; but falling into disgrace with that Prince, who deposed him, he removed into *Dauria*, with his hoards or vassals, and embracing the christian faith of the *Greek* church, threw himself under the protection of the Czar. He can bring 3000 men into the field in twenty four hours time, all well mounted and good soldiers, provided with bow and arrow. It often happens that a score or two of this people shall drive three or four hundred of the *Mongale Tartars* before them. Those of them who live near the town, subsist by cattle; but those upon the *Schilka* and the *Amur* hunt for sables, which are here of exquisite beauty and very black.

Two sorts of the inhabitants that are heathens.

Chief of the Konni Tungusi.

1693.

Their habitations. They live in cabbins which they call *Jurtes*, the inside of which are poles joined or framed together, and which they can easily remove from place to place, as they are often obliged to do. When these poles are erected, they cover them over with skins, except where the smoke is to go out at top, and their fire places round which they sit upon turf, are in the middle of the cabbin. *Their worship.* Their worship is the same with that of the inhabitants of *Dauria*, from whom they pretend to be descended, and differs in no point from that of *Tartary*, quite to the frontiers of the *Mongales*. *Dress and arms of the women.* The women here are robust, with broad faces like the men, and when they are on horseback, are armed like them with bow and arrow, which they use with great dexterity, even when young maidens. Nor does their dress differ from that of the men, as appears by the plate annexed. Water is their common drink; but those who have wherewithal drink tea, which they call *Kara'tza*, or *black Tea*, because it tinctures the water with black instead of green. They boil it in mare's milk, and a little water, to which they add some grease or butter. *Water distilled from mares milk.* They have also a kind of distilled liquor which they call *Kunnen* or *Arak*, extracted from mare's milk, which they heat and put into a vessel, with a little sour milk, which they stir once every hour: having continued a night in this state, they put it into an earthen pot well covered up and luted with paste, and then distil it over a fire as with us. This is to be twice repeated before this liquor is fit to drink, and then it becomes as strong and as clear as a malt spirit, and fuddles as easily. *Why they use mare's milk.* It is to be observed of the cows of *Siberia*, *Dauria*, and generally speaking of all *Tartary*, that they will not suffer themselves to be milked while they have calves at the dug, and that they cease to give milk as soon as they are out of their sight. Hence it is, they are under a necessity of using mare's milk, which is much fatter and softer than that of the cow.

They hunt in spring time. These heathens hunt in the spring time, and lay in their store of venison after the manner of the *Burates*, drying it as they do in the sun. *Their bread.* Their bread they make of the dried roots of yellow lilies, which they call *Sarana*, and which they apply to several other uses. *Their fishing.* They are very adroit at shooting fish in the water with their arrows, tho' at the distance of fifteen or sixteen fathom. As their arrows are heavy, they are fit to kill nothing but pike and trout, which swim in clear water towards the banks, and upon the gravel, and these they split in two as if they had done it with a cleaver, the points of their arrows being three fingers broad.

An abominable custom among the Tungeses. Here follows an abominable custom, which is in practice among this people, when they are under a necessity to take an oath to disculpate themselves from any crime they have been accused of; they open the vein of a dog on the left side, from which the person that would thus clear himself, sucks the blood till the creature falls dead by the emptying of his blood vessels. The Envoy saw an example of this at *Nerzinskoi*, with regard to two *Tunguses*, who were there as hostages to answer for the fidelity and good behaviour of their people scattered up and down in *Siberia*, and who come and sue for his Czarian Majesty's protection: One of these *Tunguses* had accused the other of having bewitched some of his companions, who were dead of his practices upon them; but the party purged himself by the means above, and his accuser was punished in his stead.

This Minister staid some weeks at *Nerzinskoi*, to provide himself with camels, horses, and oxen, and every thing else necessary for the continuation of his journey, and departed from *Nerzinskoi* upon the *eighteenth* of *July*. *Arrival at* Arganskoi. Upon the *third* of *August*, he arrived at *Arganskoi*, the last fortress belonging to his Czarian Majesty on that side. It stands upon the river of *Argun*, which rising to the south-eastward, falls into the *Amur*, and serves for a common boundary between the dominions of this Prince, and those of the King of *China*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

Mr. Isbrants's *return through the dominions belonging to his Czarian Majesty in* Tartary.

MR. *Isbrants*'s journey beyond *Tartary*, and his embaſſy to *China*, bearing no affinity with the travels of Mr. *Le Bruyn* to the *Eaſt-Indies*, by the way of *Muſcovy* and *Perſia*, it has not been thought adviſable to follow that Miniſter beyond the bounds of the countries under his Czarian Majeſty. But as there are many curious and important particulars in his return from *Tartary*, and which are of a piece with our deſign, it has been thought the publick would not take it amiſs to ſee an account of them here.

1694. Upon the *nineteenth* of *February* 1694, he departed from *Pekin*, and upon the *twenty fifth*, arrived at *Galgan*, near the famous wall which divides the empire of *China* from *Tartary*. From thence he advanced towards the river of *Naun*, and came to the frontiers of *Tartary*, to the edge of the great deſart which has been already mentioned. There he ſtopped for ſome days, to provide things neceſſary for continuing of his journey, having had his expences hitherto defray'd by the King of *China*; but as that is to be ſo no longer, as ſoon as an Ambaſſador has got into the territories of *Argun*, the border of the dominions of his Czarian Majeſty; this Miniſter ſenſible of this, had taken care to furniſh himſelf with camels and mules at *Pekin*, where they are to be purchaſed cheap.

Arrival on the frontiers of Tartary.

This precaution had its good effects, for he would have come ſhort off, if he had reckoned upon the horſes and camels he had left at *Nuna*, moſt of which had dy'd in his abſence for want of forage.

Upon the *twenty ſecond* of *February*, he entertained the *Mandarin* who had waited on him ſo far, by the order of the King his maſter, and took leave of him, and of all his train. Upon the *twenty ſixth*, he entered the great and frightful deſart, and in two days arrived at *Targaſinia*, upon the little river of *Jalo*, where the ſeaſon was ſo backward, there was hardly any graſs in the country. There he reſted himſelf ſome time, and was adviſed to be upon his guard, as he went through the deſart, and came near the borders of the rivers of *Sadun* and of *Kallar*, for that 3000 *Mongales* lay in wait for him at the paſſage. He took all the neceſſary meaſures to prevent a ſurpriſal from them, and ordered ſixty men well armed, on horſeback, to patroll every night about the *Caravan*; nor was he attacked, and held on his way the next morning. When he had reached the mountains of *Jaliſch*, there was hardly any forage at all to be got, and the next day he went over them in the midſt of an exceſſive cold and plenty of ſnow, which happen'd very bad for his horſes and camels, which had nothing to feed upon but dry and withered graſs. In this place he conſulted with thoſe about him, whether he ſhould adhere to the ordinary rout, or take a ſweep about to avoid the *Tartars* that waited for him at the paſſage. The laſt was the reſolution taken, tho' extremely difficult to execute, and particularly on account of the cattle that were laden.

Great deſart of Tartary.

In taking this track they were to go over lofty mountains, and to croſs deep fens for a fortnight together. In the beginning he loſt twelve camels and fifteen horſes, and in proportion to them afterwards, which ſunk beneath the weight of their burdens, for want of food to ſuſtain them; for theſe deſarts afford nothing but a withered graſs, as has been obſerved before; and even this failed afterwards, the *Tartars* ſetting fire thereto,

Bad ways.

1694. to, so that he was obliged in that condition to undergo a double journey, to find a place where there was any to be had.

Most of the merchants who waited on him, having lost their horses, were constrained to go on foot; and as those that remained were quite exhausted and spent, they had been reduced to the necessity of leaving a good part of their goods in these desarts, if they had not had the precaution to provide themselves with a great number of camels which they led by the bridle.

In short, having undergone a thousand fatigues and hardships, he, with inexpressible difficulty, got to the river of *Sadun*, where he found the climate more temperate, and the grass growing. Here he staid two days to rest his horses and camels which were almost quite off their legs. Here a *Chinese* Envoy from the town of *Masgeen*, and whom the Emperor had sent to the *Waiwode* of *Nerzinskoi* fell in with him, and joined him with a train of one hundred persons, and thereby put him into a condition of withstanding the attacks he was threatned with from the *Mongales*, having then with him a body of six hundred men.

Arrival of a Chinese *Envoy.*

Upon the *fifteenth* of *March* he came to the river of *Kailan*, which he forded in a place where the water was very low, and went and encamped in a valley a league farther, where, however, there was scarce any forage. Here he staid that night, and at break of day perceived a great smoke which came from the north-west, and which gave him some pain, mistrusting, and with reason good, that the *Tartars* had set fire to the withered grass, to attack him by the favour of the wind and this smoke. And as, after God, his welfare depended upon the safety of his camels and horses, he sent them behind a hill to a place where there was grass, and where they might be out of danger of the flames; and at the same time ordered an hundred men to advance towards the smoke with felts, wherewith they were used to cover the camels, to endeavour to stifle the fire, and stop it before it reached the place where the *Caravan* was. But notwithstanding all these precautions, the fire hurried along by the fury of the wind, in an instant burnt up all the withered grass, which was half a foot high, and did not give him time enough to strike and remove off his tents, a dozen of which it reduced to ashes, and flew like a flash of lightning over the *Caravan*. The flames also destroy'd some goods, and caught hold on fourteen persons, tho' but one of them dy'd, who happen'd to be a *Persian*. The Envoy in the mean time had retired to the top of a hill, where there was no grass, and only attended by two servants, who covered him over with a felt.

A dreadful fire.

From hence, the flames in an instant flew away to the place where the *Chinese* Envoy was retired, at some distance on the hills; but as they were spent before they quite reached him, he was in no great fear about the matter.

To conclude, this fire spreading along in a moment to the river of *Kailan*, about a league from the *Caravan*, it there went out. This fire having thus destroy'd all the grass that was near the Envoy, he sent his guide in quest of some place where the *Caravan* might pass the night, but he returned not till the next day, and informed him, there was no forage to be had in two days journey from thence, the flames having destroy'd it all, and that even in the places where there was any left, there was not half enough to feed so large a number of camels and horses; a sad hearing for the whole *Caravan*.

Upon this he proposed to repass the river of *Kailan*, where the flames had stopped, and beyond which they might have a chance of meeting with grass; but there was no daring to do it, for fear of the *Tartars* who were on that side, and it was thought better to be exposed to a march of two days, tho' destitute of every thing, than to run the hazard of falling

Great trouble of the Caravan.

1694. ling into the hands of those *Barbarians.*

At break of day, the *Caravan* began to move, and, just as night came on, halted on the side of a great fen, having suffered great hardships, and lost eighteen camels and twenty horses in the bogs. And this was the harder upon them, as the cattle that was left, staggered under the weight of the loads and harnesses of those that had been thus lost, the merchants being unable to away with the thoughts of leaving them behind.

Danger it is in. The next day, they again crossed several marshy valleys and lofty hills, and at length appeared on the river of *Margeen,* where the grass had not suffered. Having forded it, they marched on with great trouble and difficulty, their camels which were quite tired out, decreasing in number as they went on, the fatigue of following the *Caravan* being too much for them to undergo; and what was still a heart breaking circumstance, their store of provisions visibly dwindled away, and consisted of nothing now but a certain number of rawbon'd cattle, which had much ado to keep pace with them, and were by no means a store for such a number of people; and the rather as it is not the custom, upon these occasions, to make any great provision of bread and the like; because the merchants want their cattle to carry their goods, and because it would be too great an expence to them to buy camels to carry provender for the rest.

All this being maturely weighed, and considering they had still a ten or twelve days journey to *Argum,* upon the frontiers, they began to think of shortning their allowance, and to survey their whole store in general, that they might be able to make an estimate of what each man might be allowed. 1694.

Upon the *eighteenth* of this month, after many dangers and almost insurmountable difficulties, they reached the river of *Gan* which they crossed, the waters being at that time very low, and on the other side they luckily met with good grass. The Envoy resolved to stop here for three days to recover himself a little, after what he had gone through; and here he had staid even much longer, if the merchants, the *Cossacs,* and the guides of the *Caravan,* who began to be in want of every thing, had not represented to him, the deplorable state they were miserably fallen into; that they were obliged to eat the blood of the cattle they killed, which they saved to make a kind of liver of it to serve them instead of bread, that some even fed upon the skins of the same, which they freed from the hair, and cutting them into pieces broiled them for their subsistence: In short that some there were that fed upon the entrails of the same, and that they must in the end be reduced to the frightful necessity of imitating the *Cafres* and the *Hottentots,* and eat raw flesh, excrements and all.

CHAP. XXVII.

Arrival at Nerzinskoi. *Departure from that city. Arrival at* Tobol, *and afterwards at* Moscow.

A lucky chase. THE Envoy understanding that the neighbourhood of the river of *Gan* abounded with stags and rein-deer, detached some persons of his train, who were expert at the bow, to go in quest of them. They had the good luck to return laden with fifty rein-deer, which this Minister

1694. nifter caufed to be diftributed among the *Caravan*, who were ready to devour them, and had fcarce patience enough to ftay till they were dreffed, to fuch a degree were they famifhed; and indeed there is nothing fo dreadful as hunger, nor any pleafure comparable to that of appeafing it, except it be that of quenching the thirft.

They go in queft of provifions. However, the Minifter fent a Gentleman, with eight *Coffacs*, to the Governor of *Argum* to acquaint him with their fad condition, and to defire that he would fend them the provifions they wanted. The Governor failed not to comply with this requeft, but it required time to do it, and time was precious, for every minute feemed a year to people, who were on the brink to perifh with famine.

An intolerable famine. In the midft of this, it was refolved to leave the banks of the *Gan*, and to advance as far as they could. But at the end of three days they fell into a deeper degree of famine than ever, the rein-deer abovementioned not proving fufficient to fubfift fuch a number for fo long a time, in a horrid defart where nothing was to be found. But they were now to make a virtue of neceffity, and to bear with patience an evil which could not be removed. At length, exhaufted by toil and hunger, they came to a fmall river which flowed from the mountains, and which abounded with trouts and pike, which in that country they fhoot with arrows. *A lucky fifhing.* The *Coffacs* and the *Tungufes*, in the Envoy's train, took a great quantity of them, which, together with fome rein-deer, which they caught in the evening, ferved to moderate the hunger which oppreffed the whole *Caravan*.

The abode of a Shaman *or magician.* Thofe they had fent to hunt in the mountains there, met with a *Shaman* or magician who was uncle to the Envoy's guide, a *Tungufe* by nation, who have many of thefe magicians among them. The Envoy was at midnight awaked out of his fleep by a loud cry, which made him come out of his tent, to afk the

2

watch whence it came? they told 1694. him it was his guide who was diverting himfelf with the *Shaman* his uncle; which raifed his curiofity to that pitch, he had a mind to go into his hutt, attended by one of the watch; and being at the door of it, he there difcovered the *Shaman* and his guide deep in magic; and tho' they had almoft finifhed their diabolical myftery when he arrived, he neverthelefs took notice that the *Shaman* held an arrow, with the blunt end upon the ground, and the point at the tip of his nofe. This magician got up a minute afterwards, and bauling out with a loud voice, and jumping feveral times round, he at length funk into a fleep. The next day, the *Coffacs*, the Envoy had fent out in queft of provifions, returned and told him this *Shaman* had met with his nephew, and had carried him off in their fight, a thing eafily enough to be done amidft the fhades of the night, and among mountains; without the help of magic. At the fame time he had the agreeable news, that in three days time, he was to receive the relief he had requefted from *Argum*, a piece of news which reftored life to the *Caravan*, who was now in extreme want of all neceffaries.

Accordingly this fuccour, by the *Arrival of the provifions.* affiftance of God, arrived upon the third day, and confifted of 25 oxen and cows, together with bread and oatmeal. But the futlers who brought this ftore, laid hold on the opportunity to fleece the *Caravan*, obliging the merchants to give them a crown for a loaf, and in proportion for other things. Nor did they think themfelves ill ferved, confidering the circumftances they were in.

At length, having refrefhed themfelves a little, they continued their journey, and came to the end of the defart where they had fuffered fo much, meeting with more and more pafture the farther they got from it.

Upon the *twenty feventh*, they, with inexpreffible joy, reached the banks of the *Argum*, which they croffed the next day, and upon the *thirty firft* of *March*, happily arrived

at

1694. at *Nerzinskoi*, where they returned thanks to God who had been pleased to deliver them out of their distresses.

Arrival at Nerzinskoi.

There they rested themselves, and upon the *fifth* of *August* departed thence by land, coasting it along the river, and upon the eighth came to *Udinskoi*, where they met with vessels on which they embarked, and fell down with a fair wind, and by break of day were on the frontiers of *Siberia*. Upon the *twelfth* they arrived at *Jakutskoi*, whence, upon the *seventeenth* they departed for *Jenizeskoi*, where they arrived after having escaped danger of being drowned in the floods, which had come down for several days.

At Jakutskoi. *At* Jenizeskoi.

Upon the *twenty sixth*, the Envoy continued his journey by land, and went through a wood which was almost 20 leagues in length, where there was plenty of game both of the fur and feather, which went off as soon as approached.

He afterwards came to the town of *Makofskoi*, where he met with as many vessels as he wanted to carry him down the *Keta*, together with all his train, and upon the *twenty eighth* of *September*, arrived at the castle of *Ketskoi* upon the *Oby*. He happily fell down that river, and upon the *sixteenth* of *October*, arrived at the town of *Samorofskoi-jam*, at the mouth of the *Irtis*. Here he staid some days, waiting till he could use sledges to proceed on his journey by land, and upon the *twenty ninth*, he reached *Tobol*, where he staid three weeks to refresh himself, and to provide himself with what was necessary for the remainder of his journey, which he heartily wished to see an end to. 1694.

At Tobol.

Upon the *twenty fourth* of *November*, he went through the city of *Wergotur*, without any accident by the way, and upon the *first* of *January* 1695, he happily arrived at *Moscow*, where he waited on the Czar, with an account of his negotiation, after a journey of near three years, during which he had undergone inexpressible hardships and difficulties. 1695.

At Moscow.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of Siberia *in general. Many sorts of* Samoeds. *Description of* Weygat*'s straits, illustrated by the Burgo-master* Witsen. *The mountain of* Pojas, *&c.*

Mr. Isbrants*'s declaration.*

MR. *Isbrants* who has added what follows to the account of his journey to *China*, declares that he wholly applied himself to the pursuit of truth; without the addition of any thing to give it an air of the marvellous, or to set it off with embellishments, as the custom is with most travellers, who often relate great events upon a bare hear-say, without weighing the circumstances, and without knowing whether they be true or false. For the rest, he acknowledges he has not always followed the order of things, and that he has omitted several that it might be well worthy to mention, and even to be dilated on; for which he asks pardon, and leave to retouch and insist on them with a little more exactness, and more at length.

He, as we have seen, crossed *Siberia* and *Dauria*, and has described the cities, towns, countries, and rivers from north to east, that is, from *Weygat*'s straits to the river of *Amur*, and from the west of the *Uffa* quite to the country of the *Mongales*, and afterwards from the west quite to the south.

Recapitulation of his journey.

1695. General description of Siberia. The frontiers of *Siberia*, ſays he, are every where provided with *Ruſſian* troops, who do not ſo much as dream of ſubduing the *Tartars* in the ſouthern parts of that country, or to make them ſubject to the Czar, becauſe that Prince could reap no manner of benefit by it. The kingdom of *Siberia*, and the country about, is of very great extent, as appears by the map at the beginning of theſe travels: concerning which, particular regard muſt be had to the degrees, nor muſt the peruſer be nice to a league more or leſs, in the diſtance of towns and rivers within the limits of this country; becauſe, ſays he, the geographers and hiſtorians that have ſpoken of this country, never croſſed it, and becauſe it has never been meaſured with any accuracy. Upon the whole, he aſſures us nothing has been wanting in him to attain this knowledge, and that, to this purpoſe, he made uſe of all the neceſſary inſtruments for the taking of obſervations, and that he afterwards ranged and fixed all the parts and places the moſt regularly he could: concluding, that he with pleaſure leaves it to others who may perform that journey after him, to reap the honour of more ample diſcoveries, thinking it enough for him that he has broke the ice, and that he was the firſt *German* that ever traverſed thoſe vaſt tracts quite to *China*, both going and coming.

He declares moreover, that he is obliged for his firſt inſtructions, towards forming a general map of this country, to Mr. *Witſen*, Burgo-maſter of *Amſterdam*, for whom he ſhall always retain, together with the whole body of the learned, a moſt extraordinary reſpect and veneration: that this Burgo-maſter was the firſt man that ever preſented *Europe* with a general map of *Siberia*, and of the countries of the *Kalmucs* and *Mogales*, and many other people, quite to the famous wall of *China*, and in ſhort, that this map was his guide when he travelled in thoſe parts, and as a foundation for the map you ſee at the head of this work.

He begins to the northward, that is, at the country of the *Samoëds* and *Wagules*, which are under the juriſdiction of *Siberia*, and under the *Waiwodes* of *Pelun* quite to the ſea. Of theſe *Samoëds* there are ſeveral ſorts, of different languages, as thoſe of *Bereſofsky* and *Puſtorſe*, who are reckoned as the ſame nation; thoſe that inhabit the ſea coaſt, to the eaſt of the *Oby*, quite to *Truchamskoy* or *Mangazeiskoy*, and thoſe who are in the neighbourhood of *Arckangel* upon the *Dwina*, one part of the year, and in the winter under hutts in the woods. Theſe laſt are the averſion of thoſe along the ſea coaſt, which they have forſaken to come into thoſe parts. 1695. Several ſorts of Samoeds.

As for the *Samoëds* upon the coaſt of the northern ſea, they have no more of mankind in them than the form, are almoſt quite void of underſtanding, and, upon the whole, look more like bears than men. Like wild beaſts they feed upon the carcaſſes of horſes, aſſes, dogs and cats; whales and ſeals that are driven on ſhore by the ice, and that, frequently without giving themſelves the trouble of dreſſing their carrion, ſo idle they are and lazy, tho' the country they inhabit abounds with game, fiſh and cattle.

They have, nevertheleſs, certain chiefs among them, to whom they pay certain dues, which theſe afterwards ſend to the governors of places under the dominion of his Czarian Majeſty. A perſon who had been ſome time at *Poſtoi-oſer*, informed this Miniſter of the manner how they make uſe of their ſledges drawn by rein-deer, which with an incredible pace traverſe the mountains covered with ſnow. Here beneath you have a repreſentation of a ſledge with the deer harneſſed thereto, as alſo of the *Samoëds* themſelves, who drive them, covered with the ſkins of rein-deer, the fur outwards, and the bow and quiver upon their ſhoulder. Their chiefs have the like drawn, ſome by ſix, and ſome by eight rein-deers, and have gowns of ſcarlet. The point of their arrows is made of the tooth of the narwhale, in the ſtead



Samojedian Hart sleds.

of iron or steel. With regard to their persons it may be truly said they are hideous, and that there is nothing more disgustful upon the face of the earth. Their stature is short and lumpish; their shoulders and face are broad, their nose is flat, they have blubber lips hanging down, and a wide mouth, and ugly eyes. They are much weather-beaten, and have a great deal of hair, which hangs down upon their shoulders, some red, some fair, and mostly black; but they have little or no beard, and a very thick skin: they are however very nimble and dextrous in running or driving. The rein-deer they harness to their sledges, are not very unlike stags, their horns or branches are like theirs, with the neck of a dromadary; but what is most extraordinary of them, is that they are white in winter and grey in summer. Their food, for the most part, is a moss which grows upon the ground in the woods.

For the rest, these *Samoëds* are truly heathens, and morning and night worship the sun and the moon by a small inclination of the body, after the manner of the *Persians*. They have also idols hung to trees, near their cabbins, some of wood, of human form, and others clothed with iron, to which they pay certain honours. Their hutts are covered with the bark of birch sewn together. When they remove them from one place to another, as they frequently do, in winter and summer, they fix the poles to one another, and then cover them with the bark of trees, leaving a hole at top for the smoke to go out at. Their fire place is in the midst of this hutt, and they lye naked about it in the night, both men

1695. and women, and put their children into boxes or cradles, made in like manner of the barks of trees, and full of the raſpings of wood, as ſoft as down, and cover them up with the ſkins of the rein-deer.

They marry without any regard to the proximity of blood, and buy their wives either in exchange for rein-deer, or for furs; and of wives they may have as many as they can maintain. When they divert themſelves in company, they place themſelves two and two, one before another, and making certain motions with their legs, they give themſelves great ſlaps with the hand upon the ſoles of the feet. They make a noiſe like bears, and neigh like horſes, inſtead of ſinging. They have alſo their magicians, who perform all ſorts of diabolical practices, or cheats rather: but we have ſaid enough of the *Samoëds*.

All the quadrupeds that are met with upon this coaſt, quite to *Weygats Straits* and to *Meſeem*, whether wolves, bears, foxes, rein-deer, and the like, are white as ſnow during the winter ſeaſon; and the ſame it is with ſome of the birds, as ducks, partridges, and ſome others. For the reſt, the cold is there ſo exceſſive, the crows and ſuch birds freeze as they fly, and fall down dead at your feet, a fact our author avers to have ſeen with his own eyes.

Weygat's Straits. As for *Weygat*'s *Straits*, of which the *Engliſh*, the *Danes* and the *Dutch* have given ſeveral accounts, after ſeveral efforts to go through the frozen channel of it, which they have never been able to do but once or twice, becauſe of the impediments of the ice in thoſe ſeas, no body has ſpoken ſo amply of it, and with ſo much knowledge, as Mr. *Witſen*, a Burgo-maſter of *Amſterdam*. And indeed he ſpared no pains to inform himſelf aright on this head, having to that purpoſe conſulted with ſeveral perſons who had been upon the Spot. This appears by the fine map he has given us of theſe ſtraits, and its ſhores quite to the *Oby*, by which it appears, that ſea is by no means navigable, from theſe *Straits* quite to the icy *Cape*, though even a ſecond *Chriſtopher Columbus* ſhould undertake the voyage, ſeeing it is impoſſible to penetrate the mountains of ice that bar up the paſſage, notwithſtanding the ſtars continue to point out the courſe you are to ſteer. The divine Author of nature has ſo invironed and fortified the coaſts of *Siberia* with ice, that there is no ſhip that can poſſibly reach the river of *Jeniſia*, far from being able to double the *Icy Cape* to go down to *Jedſo* or *Japan*.

Mr. *Isbrants* had been told by ſome *Ruſſians*, who had often been through the *Straits* of *Weygate*, as far as the mouth of the river *Oby*, in certain veſſels, to take *Seals* and the *Narwhale*, that when the wind comes from the offing, that whole coaſt is ſo crowded with ice, that thoſe who happen to be there are obliged to ſhelter themſelves in little gulfs, or ſmall rivers, to avoid the danger, and there to ride, till a wind from the ſhore blows the Ice off again to ſea, which it does ſo effectually, that not the leaſt of it is to be ſeen in thoſe *Straits* for the diſtance of ſeveral leagues. That then they put out to ſea again, with all poſſible diſpatch, but take care how they quit the coaſt, till another gale from the ſea reduces them to the neceſſity of running their Noſe again into ſome gulf or place of ſafety, that their veſſel may not be cruſhed or otherwiſe deſtroyed among the ice.

He ſays alſo, that about fifty years before, certain *Ruſſians*, who live in *Siberia*, obtained leave to provide themſelves, in places ſituated on the coaſt, with the proviſions they might want, as corn, flour, and the like, and in exchange for them to tranſport the productions of *Siberia*, by *Weygate*'s *Straits*, in full liberty, in the ſame places, upon paying ſuch duties as ſhould be impoſed by his *Czarian* Majeſty. But that theſe people having abuſed this privilege, by conveying of ſeveral ſorts goods by

1693. by other rivers in *Russia*, to the great damage of the revenues of his said Majesty, it was forbidden to trade any longer in those *Straits*, and ordered that the said goods and merchandise should come by *Beresova*, the *Kamenskoi*, or the rocks of *Pojas*. This however is very difficult, and very inconvenient, because in going from *Beresova* they are obliged to cut their little barks or canoes, for they are hollowed out of the trunk of a tree, into two, and to draw them thus over the mountains for several days; and when they have reached the very northernmost parts of the country, they join them together again, and proceed on their voyage to *Archangel*, or to other places of *Russia* situated upon the *Oby*.

Description of the Pojas.

The Envoy also went to the *Pojas*, which is a rock, or rather a chain of mountains of stone, which begins at *Petzerkai*, and extends without any discontinuation across the country of *Wergatur*, comprehending also that of *Wolok*; and from thence to the south on the side of the castle of *Utka*, quite to the country of the *Uffian Tartars*, from whence issues the river of the name of *Uffi*, and to the east of those of *Nitra* and of *Tuna*; the last of which falls into the *Kama* to the north-west. These mountains then stretch away southward towards the frontiers of the *Calmucs*, and the great river of *Jaika*, which abounds in fish, comes out of it to the westward, and goes and discharges itself into the *Caspian*: The *Tobol* also issues out of it to the northward. They go on afterwards to the eastward, along the country of the *Calmucs* and the frontiers of *Siberia*, on one side of the two lakes of *Saisan* and *Kalkulan*, from the first of which issues the *Oby*, and from the second the *Irtis*. From this great lake of *Kalculan*, the *Poja* stretches away again to the southward, from whence issues the *Jenisia*, whose mouth is in the icy sea of *Tartary*.

These mountains then form an elbow, and afterwards divide into north-east and south; to the northward along the river of *Jenisia*, and to the southward on one side of the lake of *Kosogol*, from whence issues the *Silinga*, which disembogues itself into that of *Baikal*. From thence this *Pojas* extends still farther to the sandy desart of the country of the *Mongales*, where having penetrated a great way, it again divides and stretches on to the southward, quite to the great wall of *China*, and then eastward quite to the Sea, as may be seen in the map of the travels of this Minister.

CHAP. XXIX.

Tartars *of* Uffi *and* Baskir. *Other hoards. The towns of* Tora *and of* Tomskoi, *the country round about*, &c. *The* Tunguses *and the* Burates, *&c. Description of* Dauria, *of the* Koreisi, *and of other nations*; *of the* Icy Cape; *of the town of* Jakutskoi, *and the like.*

THE inhabitants of the country which extends between *Pelin* and *Wergotur* along the river *Zusawaya*, quite to the country of *Uffi*, are almost all *Heathens*. The river of *Kungur*, in the neighbourhood of which are the *Tartars* of *Uffi*, has its source in the country of *Uffi*, between the *Susawaya* and *Uffa*, and goes on till it throws itself into the *Kama*, upon which is the town of *Kungur*, where his *Czarian*

The river of Kungur.

1695. *Czarian* Majesty has a garrison. These *Tartars* of *Uffi* and those of *Baskir*, are in the country about the town of *Offa*, scattered up and down in Hamlets and villages, built after the *Russian* manner, to the westward, quite to the *Kama*, and along the *Wolga*, and stretches almost quite to the cities of *Saratof* and *Sarapul*, upon the last of these rivers, where the *Czar* also keeps garrisons to bridle the *Tartars*, and receive his duties which are paid in furs and honey. The governors of these places, however, are obliged to be gentle with the inhabitants of these parts, for fear they should revolt and withdraw themselves from the obedience they owe that Prince.

Tartars *of* Uffi *and of* Baskir.

Other Tartars.

There are also other hoards of the same *Tartars* to the south-west, and in the kingdom of *Astracan*, who are free from subjection, and join with the *Calmucs* near them to scour the country of *Siberia*. They nevertheless till the ground, and sow barley, oats and other grain, which they carry home, after they have reaped and threshed it in the field. They have among them also the finest honey in the world, and in very great abundance. They commonly dress in a *Russian* cloth, of a light grey, after the manner of the peasants of *Muscovy*. Their women are commonly in their shifts from the girdle upwards, except it be very cold indeed, and their shifts are striped and worked with silk of all sorts of colours. As for the rest, they wear petticoats after the *German* fashion, and Slippers which cover only the end of the foot tied about the ankle. Their head-dress consists of a ribbon, four fingers broad, tied behind, and wrought like their shift with silk of various colours, and adorned with coral and glass beads, which hang about their eyes. Some of them wear them higher upon the forehead. When they go abroad they cover this dress of their head with a square handkerchief, wrought with silk, and done round with fringe.

Their dress.

These *Tartars* of *Uffi* and *Baskir*, 1695. are brave and good horsemen, and have no other arms than bows and arrows, which they use with great dexterity. They are robust; they are tall of stature, with broad shoulders and great beards, which they suffer to grow. Their eyebrows are so thick they cover their eyes, and almost all the forehead. They have a particular language of their own, and understand that of the *Tartars* of *Astracan*. As for their religion, they are almost all *Heathens*, but some of them are *Mahometans*, which is what they have had from the *Crim Tartars*, with whom they have a very good understanding. The *Calmucs* are between the springs of the *Tobol* and the *Oby*, quite to the lake of *Jamusowa*, which is all full of a rock salt. Hither from the town of *Tobol* come yearly twenty or twenty-five *Docheniques*, or *Russian* barks, up the *Irtis*, with a guard of 2500 men; and as this lake is at some distance from this river, they travel the rest of the way by land; they cut this salt as it were ice upon the borders of the lake, and then carry it off to their vessels, notwithstanding all the opposition of the *Calmucs*, with whom they, upon these occasions, have frequently very smart skirmishes.

They are good soldiers.

Lake full of salt.

As you go down the *Irtis*, beneath this lake, upon the little river *Tor*, you meet with the town of *Tora*, the last frontier place belonging to the *Czar*, bordering upon the dominions of a *Calmuc* Prince called *Bustu-chan*. The inhabitants of this country are called *Barabinsy*, and it extends from the city of *Tora*, to the eastward, quite to the *Oby*, over-against the river of *Tom*, and the city of *Tomskoi*. They cross the country of *Barnabu*, both winter and summer, and especially in winter, because in that season, the *Oby* is not navigable by *Surgut* and *Narum*, so that travellers are obliged to go by *Tomskoy* and *Jenuseskoi* to go into *Siberia*. These *Barabinsy*, who are a kind of *Calmucs*, pay a tribute to

Description of Tora *and the country about.*

 his

1695. his *Czarian* Majesty, and to the Prince *Bustu-chan*. They have three Chiefs or *Taishi*, who receive the duties imposed on them, and account with the Czar for the part that is due to him; the first at the town of *Tora*, the second at the castle of *Teluwa*, and the third at the castle of *Kulenba*, the whole in furs. They are a mischievous and warlike people, who live in cabbins in the woods, like the *Tartars* of *Siberia*. They make no use of stoves, but of chimneys or tubes, or pipes rather, by which they let out the smoke, and which they stop when the wood is burnt to a coal, to keep in the heat, and open them again when it is over.

Their habitations. They live in a kind of villages, under slight huts in summer, and in firm wooden cabbins in winter. They have tillage in use with them, and they sow barley, oats, *French* wheat, and the like, but they have no rye; though they do not refuse the bread made of it when offered to them; indeed they only chew it with seeming disgust, and as it were against the stomach, and throw it away, or spit it out for the most part. *Their bread.* Instead of bread, they take clean barley, which they parch in a hot iron pot, till it become as hard as a stone, and then eat it the same day. They make also flour of *Sarana* or roots of yellow lilies, of which they make a broth; *Their drink.* and they drink a distilled liquor made of mares milk, which they call *Kumis*; and *Karaza*, which is a black kind of tea, which the *Bolgares* bring them.

Their arms. They have no other arms than bows and arrows, no more than the rest of the *Tartars*. Their cattle consists of horses, camels, cows, and sheep, but they have no hogs. In this country also they have all sorts *Furs.* of furs, that is, sables, squirrel-skins, ermins, foxes, and the like. It extends from *Tora* quite to the *Oby*, and here you meet with no mountains; but it is full of cedars, birch, alders, and woods, divided by streams, whose water is clear as chrystal. These people, as well men as women, dress after the manner of the 1695. *Calmucs*, and they are allowed to have as many wives as they can afford to maintain. When they go out to hunt in the woods, they carry with them their *Saitan*, which is *Their idol.* a wooden image coarsely cut out with a knife only, and covered with stuff of various colours, after the fashion of the women of *Russia*. This *Saitan* is shut up in a box, which they carry upon a particular sledge, and offer to it the first fruits of their chase without distinction.

Present to their Saitan. When it happens that they have had good luck, they, upon their return, place this idol in the most conspicuous part of their cabbin, in its box, and cover it over with the finest furs, in acknowledgment of the good it has procured them, and there leave them to rot, being persuaded they should be guilty of a sacrilege in taking them away, or applying them to any other purpose.

Tomskoi. Beyond the *Oby*, you come to *Tomskoi*, a frontier place belonging to his Czarian Majesty: it is a fine and a large city, well fortified, and provided with a good garrison of *Russians* and *Cossacks*, to withstand the incursions and ravages of the *Siberian Tartars*. In the suburbs also, beyond the river, there are a great number of *Buchar Tartars* who pay homage and tribute to this Prince. This city stands upon the river of *Tom*, which rises in the country of the *Calmucs*. Here they drive a great *Trade with China.* trade with *China*, which is chiefly managed by the subjects of the Chan of *Busuchtu*, and by the *Buchars*, among which we may reckon some *Russian* merchants. They perform the journey to *China* in three months, and come back again in the same time, but with inexpressible difficulty, because in some places it is even necessary to load the camels with wood and water. You must traverse the country of the *Calmucs*, and go to *Kokoton*, a city belonging to *China* without the wall. But it is impossible for the *Russians* and other strange nations to perform this journey, because the country swarms with robbers,

1695. bers, who plunder all sorts of travellers, except they be well attended or guarded.

A desart country. As you go down the river from *Tomskoi*, the country is absolutely a desart, quite to the town of *Jeniseskoi*, flat and full of copses. The same it is between the two rivers of *Kia* and *Zulim*, quite to the towns of *Kusneskoi* and *Krasnajar*, where the country is only inhabited upon the borders, adjoining to those of *Country of the* Kirgises. the *Kirgises*, under the dominion of the Khan of *Busuchtu*. The city of *Krasnajar* is a fortress, with a good garrison of *Cossacks* subject to his Czarian Majesty, to withstand the ravages and incursions of the *Kirgises*. And accordingly in the great market-place, before the Governor's palace, there are always twenty troopers well armed, and whose horses are saddled day and night. For tho' the *Kirgises* be at peace with the *Siberians*, there is no great stress or dependance upon this pacification, because they frequently carry off by surprise, both the inhabitants and horses, in the neighbourhood of this town, and in the villages round about. But the *Cossacks* often make them pay with exorbitant interest for the damages they are guilty of in this fraudulent manner.

How far they extend. These *Kirgises* extend to the south-eastward quite to the country of the *Mongales*, a warlike and robust nation, tall of stature, broad of face, and very much like the *Calmucs*. *Their arms.* They are armed with bow and arrow, and never go out upon any expedition without fine coats of mail, and good launces, whose points they trail almost upon the ground when they are on horseback. They live for the most part in the mountains, where they are out of all danger of being *Their language.* taken at unawares. Their language differs but little from that of the *Calmucs*, and they speak that also of the *Tartars* of *Crim*, which the *Turks* understand.

Tungufes *and* Burates. From *Krasnajar*, as you go down the *Jenisia*, quite to *Jeniseskoi*, the country is inhabited by *Tunguses* and *Burates*. The castle of *Ilinskoi* is upon the frontiers of the *Mongales*, 1695. against the *Pojas*, formerly mentioned, between *Jeniseskoi* and the town of *Selinginskoi*. This place, thus upon the frontiers of the *Mongales*, is not large, but it is furnished with a good garrison, consisting almost all of horse, to defend the western part of the country of the *Mongales*, from the *Mirotty*, *Mily*, and *Burates*, *Tartars* who are dependant thereon. In the neighbourhood of this town, there grows a kind of sandal-wood, which is of an extraordinary degree of hardness. The *Burates* who are under the protection of his Czarian Majesty, lived formerly in the country about *Selinginskoi*, but ever since they have been guilty of joining with the *Mongales*, at the instigation of the *Chinese*, they have been transplanted into the country about the lake of *Baikal*, in the mountains, and there they pay their tribute to this Prince, which consists of furs.

There is a mountain which extends from this town to the northward, quite to the lake of *Baikal*, where are also fine sables and other furs. The country of the *Mongales* contains the whole extent between the lake of *Kologol* to the eastward, quite to the great desart; from thence, quite to the lake of *Mongale*, called *Dway*, and to the country of *Argum*, and afterwards to the north-westward quite to the rivers of *Onon* and *Sikoi*. They live under three chiefs, who are brethren, the first of which is called *Kuttugt*, and is *Chiefs of the* Mongales. also the high-priest of his nation: The second is called *Aziroi-Sain-Chan*, and has a perfect good understanding with the first; but the third, called *Elict*, whose frontiers butt upon the territories of the western *Tartars*, is guilty of continual depredations and ravages, robs and plunders quite to the great *Chinese* wall, without even sparing the presents which the Emperor of *China* yearly sends to the *Tartars* round about, to retain them in their fidelity towards him. The two others have thrown themselves under the protection of this Prince, because they stand in fear of the

1695. the *Calmucs*, and particularly of the Prince *Busuchtu-Chan*, who did them a deal of mischief in the years 1688 and 1689.

Castle of Argum. But we must now return to the frontiers belonging to his Czarian Majesty, and first to the castle of *Argum*, which stands to the west of the river of that name. It is defended by a *Russian* garrison, and the people round about are *Konni Tunguses*, and tributaries to his said Majesty. Tunguses *and their strength.* They are a warlike people, and in this place are able to bring four thousand men into the field, well mounted, and armed with bow and arrow. Nor dare the *Mongales* make any attempts upon them, but in the night and by stealth, to carry off their horses and cattle. *Their habit.* In the winter they dress themselves in skins, or rather in the fleeces of sheep, and wear boots after the manner of the *Chinese*. Their caps have a broad rim or border of fur, which they lift up and down according to the weather; they have a girdle armed with iron, four fingers in breadth, with an arrow that serves them for a flute. They go with the head bare and shaved in the summer, with only one lock behind as the custom is with the *Chinese*, and wear a dress of blue *Chinese* cloth, quilted with cotton, but no shirt. To conclude, they have naturally little or no beard, faces rather broad than not, and are not very unlike the *Calmucs*.

Their chase. When their store of provisions begins to grow short, they go in hoards to hunt the stag and the rein-deer, which they drive together and surround, and shoot a great number, which they divide among them, for it very seldom happens that they miss their aim. Their women dress much as the men do, and the only difference to be perceived is, that they have two tresses of hair which fall upon their breast on each side. Polygamy is lawful among them, provided they take no more wives than they can keep; and they buy them without troubling their heads whether they have been possessed by others or not. *Their religion.* They believe there is a God in Heaven, and yet they pay him no divine honours, nor address any prayers to him. When they want to consult their *Saitan* or Magician to know whether they shall have success in a hunting match, or in any intended depredation, they go to him in the night beating upon a drum: And when they would recreate themselves, *Their diversions.* they make a kind of arrack of mares milk, which they leave to turn, and then distil at two or three repetitions, between two earthen pots closely stopt up, with a little wooden-pipe, and this makes a good spirit, with which both men and women fuddle till they have lost their senses. *Their women and maids.* Their wives and their daughters mount a horse as well as the men, and like them appear armed with bow and arrow. *Their bread.* Instead of bread they eat the roots of yellow lilies dry'd, and make a kind of broth of them when reduced to a meal or flour; but they profess nothing of tillage or culture. There, as well as elsewhere, they value those who are wealthy, who carry on a considerable trade with the *Targasi* and the *Xixi*, who are under the dominion of *China*. This trade consists chiefly in an exchange of furs for blue cotton cloth, other sorts of cloths and tobacco. They pretend to be descended of these *Targasi* or the *Aorsi*, with whom they contract alliances, and live with as friends.

Half a day's journey from the castle of *Argum*, in the mountains, you meet with a silver mine fallen in, and still see several melting-places which the people of *Nieuchen* and *Dauria* have formerly made use of. From hence quite to *Nersinskoi* the capital of *Dauria*, it is a ten days journey by land upon camels. *Description of* Dauria. It is a fine country divided into parcels by small rivers, where you meet with the finest plants, and the most beautiful flowers in the world; in the mountains and on the hills, and in the vales, you have grass three foot high: But the country here lies uncultivated, being in the possession of *Tartars*, who are under the dominion of his Czarian Majesty.

 Having

1695. Having travelled through the country of *Argum*, and crossed the great river of *Amur*, towards that of *Gorbiſa*, which is reckoned the common boundary of the dominions of his Czarian Majeſty, and thoſe of the Emperor of *China*, whoſe juriſdiction extends eaſtward from that river quite to the ſea, and that of the Czar weſtward and northward, to the eaſtward of the *Gorbiſa* we met with the rivers of *Tugur* and *Uda*, which are to the northward of the *Amur*, and proceed till they diſcharge themſelves into the *Chineſe* ocean, or the ſea of *Amur*. They take a great many ſables between theſe two rivers, whoſe borders are inhabited by *Tunguſes*, *Alemuri*, and *Koreiſi*. It is likely theſe laſt are originally from *Coela*, which is not very far off, and whither it is poſſible to go in a few days with a fair wind. It is ſaid they came firſt and ſettled upon the banks of the *Amur*, and that in proceſs of time they extended their limits. Thoſe who live upon the ſea-coaſt, ſubſiſt by fiſhing, and thoſe who are farther up in the country, by hunting, with which they inrich themſelves, becauſe here they have the fineſt furs in the whole world. This country is under the governor of *Jakutskoi*, who takes care to keep a good guard in the woods, to prevent the *Chineſe* from ſharing the ſables that are there to be met with.

Frontiers of Siberia *and* China.

Deſcription of the Koreiſi.

The inhabitants of the neighbouring iſlands come every year to the banks of theſe two rivers. They are people of a good mein and aſpect, cloathed in rich furs, under which they wear a ſilk veſt after the *Perſian* mode; large of ſtature, and with majeſtic beards. They come to buy women and maidens of the *Siberian Tartars*; for they love the ſex, and in exchange for them, they give ſables and black fox-ſkins, which according to their account, abound in their iſlands. They even endeavour to perſuade the *Tunguſes* of *Siberia* to come and trade among them, and give out that the country of *Jakutskoi* was formerly theirs, and in truth their language in ſome degree makes good this their pretenſion.

Iſlanders of theſe parts.

Their origin.

1695. The river of *Ogota* is to the northward of theſe two rivers, and between them and the river of *Uda* are many whales upon the coaſt, and even quite to the frozen cape, where there is alſo narwhale and ſeals in abundance. The town of *Kamſatka*, and all the coaſt beyond, is inhabited by the *Xuxi* and *Koeliki*, whoſe language differs from that of the reſt. Thoſe who live upon the coaſt are cloathed in ſeal-ſkins, and live in holes under ground; but thoſe who live farther up in the country are rich, and feed upon veniſon and raw fiſh, and make uſe of their own water to waſh themſelves with. For the reſt, theſe are by no means a people to be truſted, and have no ſenſe either of law or honeſty. Their only arms are ſlings, which they uſe with ſurpriſing power and dexterity. They have ſnow upon the ground for ſeven months of the year, and yet it falls only at the beginning of winter, nor is it there very deep. There is a gulf near *Kamſatka*, where they take a prodigious quantity of the *narwhale* and other creatures of the ſea.

Other nations.

As for the frozen cape, the farther it advances into the ſea, the more it is cut and formed into iſlands, and divided. There is a paſſage a little above *Kamſatka*, where the *narwhale* fiſhers find their labour turn to a good account. One part of the inhabitants of *Anadieskoi*, and of *Sabatſia*, are *Xuxi* and *Koeliki*; and the river of *Salaſia* produces good herring, ſturgeon, *Sterbeth* and *Nebna*. As you advance up into the country, you meet with ſeveral houſes along the *Simaniko*, inhabited by *Coſſacks*, in ſubordination to his Czarian Majeſty, and who there collect the duties the *Tartars* of thoſe parts pay to that Prince: And as it is that part of all *Siberia* where they take the moſt ſables and *Luxes* along the rivers, ſo it is the moſt heavily laden with duties. The climate of the frozen cape, which the *Muſcovites* call *Sweetoinos* or *Holy Cape*, is exceſſive-

Deſcription of the frozen cape.

exceſſive cold.

1695. exceffively cold, and it there freezes with fuch violence, that the ifles of ice, driven by the winds, form high mountains there, which look like firm land. The wind however fhatters them fometimes, and makes them fall to pieces, which joining with others that are floating upon the fea, they form new mountains again. It fometimes happens, that for two or three years together, this fea is frozen over, a remarkable inftance of which was known from the year 1694, to the year 1697.

Mountains of ice.

The Lena *and the town of* Jakutſkoi.

The great river of *Lena* rifes to the fouthweftward near the lake of *Baikal*, where *Siberia* is parted from *Dauria*. Upon this river you have the town of *Jakutskoi*, from whence in fummer there are veffels which go for the fea-coaft and the openings of the cape of *Sabatfia*, to *Anadieskoi*, and to *Kamfatka*, to get the *narwhale*, and whale-oil. The *Tartars* of thofe parts do for this purpofe make ufe of fmall leathern barks with wonderful agility. The inhabitants in the neighbourhood of *Jakutskoi*, and the river of *Amur*, are called *Jakutes*, and drefs in a manner peculiar to themfelves. Their coats are almoft like thofe of the *German* fafhion, and of furs of all forts of colours fewed together, with a white border four fingers broad of hind-fkin, and are open behind, and at the fides, but they wear no fhirts. They wear long hair, and believe there is a God in heaven, who bleffes them with life, food, wives and children. Befides this, they once a year celebrate a great feftival, when they offer him *Kunis* and arack. They even abftain from drink during the time it lafts, and light up great fires, which they continually fprinkle on the eaft-fide with thefe liquors, in which confifts their whole offering or facrifice. When one of them happens to dye, they bury his neareft relation with him; a cuftom not unlike that of fome *Indians*, whofe wives attend their hufbands on the fatal pile, and burn with them, that they may not be feparated from them in the next world.

Leather barks.

Their belief.

Funerals.

Their language partakes of that 1695. fpoken by the *Mohammedan Tartars*, who live in the territories of *Tobol*, and are originally of the country of *Bolgar*. Polygamy is alfo lawful among them. They are chiefly drawn by ftags, which they even ride upon, and travel with them a great deal of ground in a little time. They are a brave people, not deftitute of genius, and fond of truth. And yet when it happens that the Governor of *Jakutskoi*, in whofe jurifdiction they are, does not keep a ftrict hand over them, they commit all forts of diforders, and are continually fcouring the country about; but when he keeps a heavy hand over them, they are obedient and peaceable, and are guilty of nothing amifs. On the contrary, they love him, and would be forry to lofe him. They pretend to be defcended of the *Mongales* and the *Kalmucs*, and to have been tranfplanted to the northward by the *Ruffians*. The fcurvy is a very common difeafe among them; but they eafily cure themfelves of it, by eating of raw fifh and *Deugti*, which is a kind of tar.

Their language.

Their temper.

The *Jukogates* are another fort of heathens who live in that country, and have a cuftom very peculiar with them, with regard to their relations when they dye; they take off all the flefh, and drying the bones of the fkeleton, they adorn it with coral and glafs beads of all forts of colours. They then carry it in proceffion about their cabbins, and pay it the very fame honours they pay to their idols. The banks of the *Lena* abound with teeth of the *Mammut*, and other bones of that creature, which come out of the mountains and frozen grounds along the fides of that river, which are often torn away by ice. Many fine rivers from the fouthward come and fall into this. The chief are the *Wittim*, the *Olekina*, and the *Maja*, in the neighbourhood of which they have fine black fables, and other furs in abundance, and efpecially the grey fort, which, in winter, they buy of the *Tartars*, after the rate of

Cuſtom of the Jukogates, *with regard to their dead.*

The Lena.

a

1695. a thousand for three or four rubles. The country watered by the *Maja* produces also all sorts of grain, as well as the country towards the source of the *Lena*, and particularly that of *Wergolenskolso* and of *Kirenga*, which are very fertile, and whence the country of *Jakutskoi* supplies itself with necessaries for its support: And indeed, they do not give here above ten pence or twelve pence for an hundred weight of rye: Cattle is as cheap in proportion, but then money is a great rarity there.

The sea coast between the *Lena* and the *Jenisia*, is unnavigable quite to the river of *Taraida*, because it is always full of ice; but the country between the *Taraida* and *Jenisia* is inhabited by the *Samoëds* and heathen *Tartar Tunguses*, concerning whose manner of living and religion, we have declared ourselves already. As

The Jenisia.

for the banks of the *Jenisia* which rises to the southward of *Tartary*, in the country of the *Kalmucs* and *Kirgises*, they are almost all occupied by *Russians*. Three fine rivers come here to discharge themselves, namely, the *Wergnaja Tunguska*, the *Podkamenna Tunguska*, and the *Nisnaja Tunguska*. The banks of these rivers are inhabited by a sort of wild *Tunguses*, not very different from the *Samoëds*, except that they are larger of stature, and more robust: They are a turbulent people, and love to be at war with their neighbours. When these *Tartars* 1695.

Hunting the elk.

go out to hunt the elk with bow and arrow in hand, the only weapons they make use of, and have shot one, they follow him by the track, sometimes eight or ten days together, with their wives and children; and as upon these occasions they never burthen themselves with any sort of provision, depending wholly upon their game, they wear a girth, or kind of bodice, which they take in an inch or two every day, according as they find themselves press'd by hunger. At length, when they have laid hold on the elk they had been pursuing, they cut his throat, and spreading a light tent, they never stir a step from the place till they have eaten him up to the bone. Upon these occasions it happens sometimes that they take furs, which they sell in places where there are *Russians*. This country abounds in white and brown foxes, and squirrels, but cannot boast of any great number of sables. The towns of *Tangviskoi* and *Mungaseja* are not far from the *Jenisia*. They there drive a great trade by land with all sorts of furs, *narwhale* and *mammuts* teeth. They even, from these two towns, send out several vessels to the mouth of the river, and upon the sea coasts to fish for *narwhale*, and seal, whence they reap considerable advantage.

Tangviskoi *and* Mungaseja.

CHAP. XXX.

A continuation of the travels of Mr. Le Bruyn. *His departure from* Astracan. *The course of the* Wolga *continued. Description of the* Caspian *sea. Situation of* Derbent. *Arrival in* Persia.

1703. UPON the *twelfth* of *July* we embarked at *Astracan* to continue our way, and went to dine at the distance of three wersts from the town, at a place where the *Armenian* merchants had prepared a dinner for us, and where we diverted ourselves for an hour, at the sound of several instruments; after which we took leave of our friends. As we went down, we saw a great number of *Tartar* tents, which stretched up 1703.

Departure from Astracan.

1703. a good way into the country. At night we went to lye on ſhore under the guard of two ſoldiers, who had been granted to me. I there ſlept without thinking of my net to ſcreen me from the flies, imagining I as yet ſtood in no need of it; but I was ſoon diſturbed out of my ſleep by the annoyance of theſe inſects, who would allow me no reſt. At day break we continued our courſe, the ſhore level and full of trees. About ſeven of the clock we ſaw the monaſtery of St. *John*, on our ſtarboard ſide, and a little farther, an iſland in the river, and ſome great birds.

A wear or fiſhery.

At eleven of the clock we paſſed by a wear, or place contrived to take fiſh, which looked very much like an iſland, oppoſite to which there was a *Corp de guard*, full of ſoldiers, who are there to keep an eye on the ſhipping that come up the river. This wear was farmed by certain inhabitants of *Nieſna*, who there ſalted the fiſh they caught, to ſend it home, and had a great veſſel ready there for that purpoſe. The river runs ſomewhat narrow in ſome places hereabouts, becauſe of the iſlands, around which it divides itſelf into ſeveral branches. A league from hence we came to another wear, ſurrounded about with reeds, and afterwards to another *Corp-de-guard*, upon an iſland where there are four ſmall hills, about 60 wreſts from *Aſtracan*. The river is here dammed or barricadoed up, with an opening like a ſluice to let ſhipping paſs and repaſs. About two of the clock we ſteered away to the ſouthward, having ſteered eaſtward hitherto. At ſix in the evening we were 4 werſts from the *Caſpian* ſea, which is 80 or 90 werſts, that is, 17 *German* leagues from *Aſtracan*. I there diſcharged my veſſel and my ſoldiers, to whom I delivered a letter from the Governor.

Troubleſome flies.

We that night, for the firſt time, lay in our ſhip, but I forgot not to cover my ſelf with my net, without which the flies would have prevented me from ſleeping a wink, as has already been obſerved. There have been even people that have died of the bite of theſe flies. A hound I 1703. had was ſo tormented by them, that he threw himſelf into the river, and we had much ado to get him again; after which I was obliged to take him under my net, where he ſlept quietly.

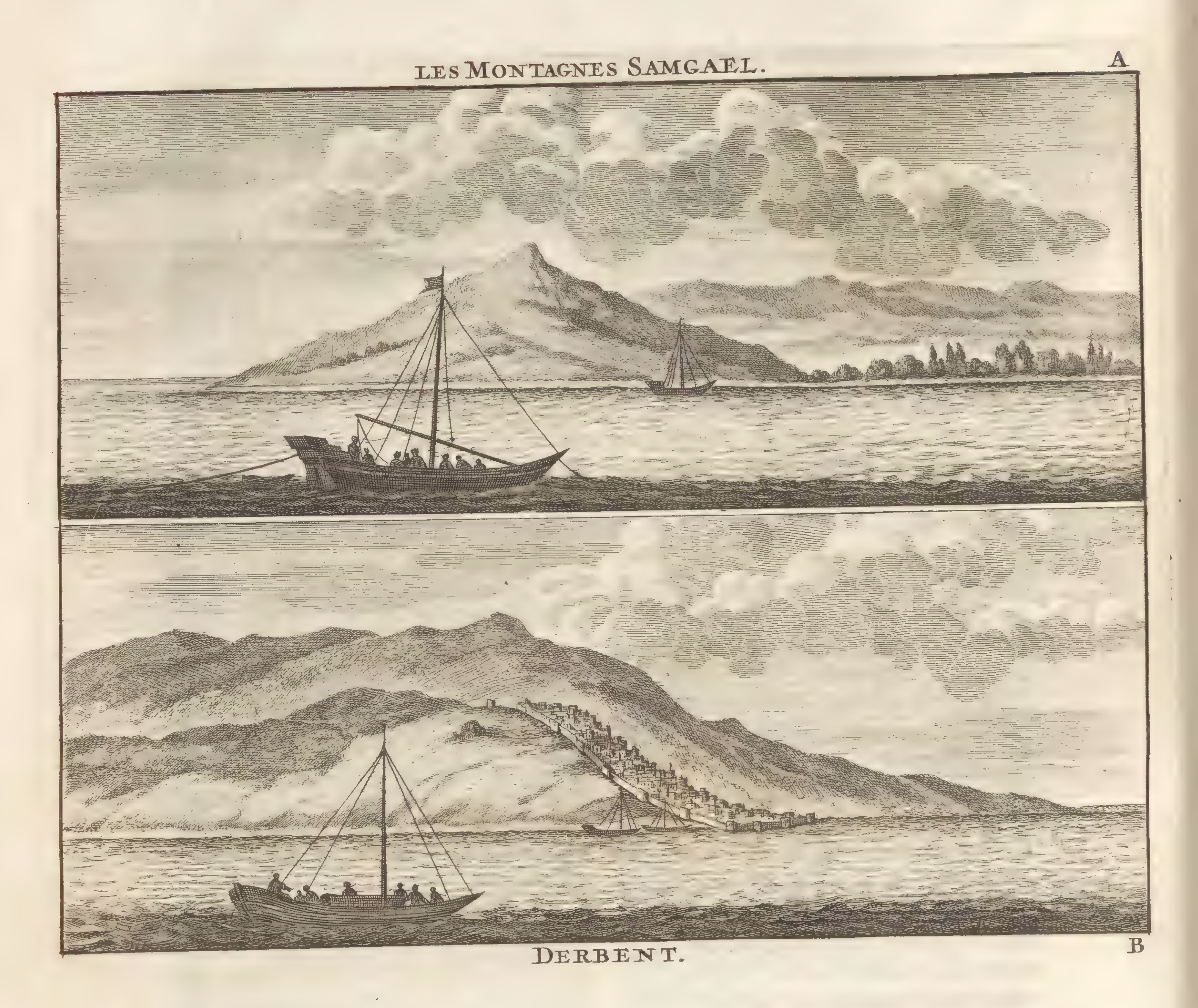
Upon the *fourteenth*, in the morning we held on our courſe by the help of our oars, the river being here narrow, and the ſides full of reeds. We met with our lighter at a werſt from the *Caſpian* ſea, where we ſtopped. The pilot, however, went on before us to ſound upon the banks, where he found no more than 5 palms of water; but as the wind was ſoutherly, and blew up the river, it was known the water would riſe very ſoon. He went to the ſame place again at five of the clock, and found it had accordingly riſen 2 palms, ſo that our veſſel drawing but little, we hoped we might be able to go over the ſands in two or three hours time. In expectation of this, we threw our nets into the water, and caught a quantity of perch and ſome lobſters. I went afterwards on ſhore with a view to meet with ſome game, in a walk towards the ſea, but I was ſoon obliged to return back to our veſſels, becauſe of the reeds which choaked up the way, beſides that it was marſhy. However, I there met with butterflies of extraordinary beauty, being red without, and white mottled within. At nine at night they landed the lighteſt of the baggage belonging to the paſſengers, and every body went on ſhore except two or three that ſtaid on board of the lighter. When we got to the mouth of the river, we found it very ſtrait and narrow, the land running into it on each ſide in ſeveral places; beſides that there are ſeveral banks of ſand at the entrance into the ſea, which are diſtinguiſhed by branches of trees, inſtead of other ſea-marks. At night we were obliged to come to, till the break of day on the *fifteenth*, when we got up our anchor to go over the ſands, upon which we ſtruck; but we ſoon got on float again by unlading ſome of our

4 bales

1703. bales into the lighter. We ſtruck upon them however a ſecond time, and were obliged to make uſe of our lighter or tender, to carry the goods and all the people on ſhore. As we had a very fair wind at north, we were ſoon at ſea, ſurrounded by land on all ſides, with certain mountains to the ſtarboard of us. Upon the *ſixteenth*, in the morning, the tender came up with our goods and our paſſengers; tho' we had a bank of ſand to go over, and a large iſland on the larboard-ſide, between us and the main ſea. Having coaſted along this iſland, we came up with this ſame ſand, upon which again we had the misfortune to ſtrike, but we ſoon got on float again. Having got into the depth of a fathom and half, we took out goods and paſſengers out of the tender, and ſent her back again to *Aſtracan*, with a letter I wrote to the governor.

Red mountains. About noon, we ſaw on one hand of us the four mountains which the *Ruſſians* call *Kraſna-ſattier-boegre*, or *the four red Mountains*, whoſe fartheſt point is 100 werſts from *Aſtracan*. We were ſoon out of ſight of this land, and the wind being ſhifted into the ſouthern board, we hauled away ſouth-weſt, with very fair weather; but we were ſoon after obliged to drop anchor in a fathom and half of water, becauſe the wind was come about eaſterly. Upon the *ſeventeenth*, in the morning, we got under way again with the wind at north, and ſtood away to the ſouthward. There fell ſome rain, after which, the ſun having diſpelled the clouds, there ſprung up a freſh gale which laſted till night, and raiſed a ſwell in the ſea: Our patron or pilot being tired out, and deſirous to repoſe himſelf a little, gave the helm to another, who would ſoon have carried us back again to *Aſtracan*, if it had not been for me, for I always carried my own compaſs about with me both by ſea and land. The wind ſhifted about in the night, and fell all at once, ſo that we were obliged to let go an anchor in 8 fathom. Upon the *eighteenth* in the morning we got under ſail again; 1703. it was rainy weather, and a calm came on, but a breeze ſpringing up ſoon afterwards to the north-weſt, we ſteered away a ſoutherly courſe. But coming on to be a briſk gale, every body was out of ſorts with it, even to the ſeamen, and the ſoldiers who are obliged to help to work the veſſel when occaſion requires. Of theſe laſt we had twenty one on board, and about fifty paſſengers, moſt of them *Armenians*. Our veſſel carried two ſmall braſs cannon, and might conveniently have been burthened with 250 bales, which I had reduced to 180, that we might have room enough, as has been ſaid; ſhe had three rudders, one aſtern, and one on each ſide, which they uſe upon certain occaſions. Theſe veſſels have nothing but a mainſail, which they double when the wind is fair, ſo that they are not at all proper to ply with to windward; beſides that, they are not contrived to row. That day, in the afternoon, the pilot went to the helm again, but bearing too cloſe upon the wind as the ſail was trimmed, it came all into the wind; ſo that the veſſel not feeling her helm, they were obliged to hand their ſail: After which they made uſe of another helm to bring her about; then the ſail was ſpread again, by which I perceived theſe people are not a whit better mariners than the *Greeks*. The wind continuing at north, we continued to ſteer the ſame courſe, and tho' we were now far advanced into the ſea, I found the water was ſtill ſweet and good to drink; but ſoon after it became ſalt, and greener, and the waves very ſhort.

Having ſteered this courſe all night by a clear moon-light, we, upon the *nineteenth*, in the morning, to the weſtward of us, perceived one of the mountains of *Perſia*, called *Samgael*, and coaſting it along ſoutherly, a good league from the ſhore, we about nine of the clock doubled our ſail, with mountains continually on the ſide of us, together with woods, Perſia. *Mountain of* Samgael.



woods, and a sandy beach. After a short calm, the wind sprung up at north-east, and we steered away south-east, continually coasting it along to double the outermost point of the peaked mountain distinguished by A, in the plate. This coast is a very dangerous one quite to *Derbent*, because of the *Samgaels* who inhabit these mountains, and who plunder on all sides, so that there is no landing among them. They are *Mohammedans*, and lay hands on all the goods of such ships as have the misfortune to strike upon their coast, and think themselves under no obligation to account for them, but to their natural Prince.

The dangerous coast of the Samgaels.

About three of the clock the wind came about at east, just as we were at the point of the hill, and in sight of, and but a league from *Derbent*. We there came to an anchor, and at that distance it was that I drew the prospect you have in the plate marked with the letter B.

The town of Derbent.

In the night we got again under sail, but the wind was but faint, and we made but little or no way, and at break of day, we were on the other side of the town. It stands upon the west on the sea-shore, and seemed to me to be about a league and an half in circumference. On the side of the sea, down hill, it is defended by a stone wall, and has three gates,

Its situation.

1703. two of which only are opened. The citadel joins the town, on the right hand of which you ſee a well, with a ſubterraneous ſpring which riſes up pretty high. This town is well provided with cannon, and as its ſituation is very lofty, it makes a conſiderable figure when beheld from the ſea. Moſt of the ſtones of the citadel are 7 palms and an half in length, and 5 and an half in breadth, and are well wrought after the antient manner; and indeed, the *Perſians* will have it, that this city is as old as the days of *Alexander*. Not far off there are forty tomb-ſtones, about 15 palms in length, and 2 and an half in breadth; but they are not erected; beſides ſeveral ciſterns, a great table and benches of the ſame. The hill of *Derbent* is all of rock, and full of ſprings of freſh water, as well as the town itſelf. Thoſe who have never been here before, are obliged to give the ſeamen ſomething to drink, and this by an antient cuſtom, which if not complied with, they threaten the party to duck him in the water, and ſometimes it ſo happens. This city is in the north-weſt of *Aſia*, and of the kingdom of *Perſia*, upon the frontiers of *Georgia* and of *Zuiria*, between the *Caſpian* ſea, and *Mount Caucaſus*, where the paſſage is very narrow.

The citadel.

Tombs.

Pirates. The pirates called *Koeraloek* are at a day's diſtance from *Derbent*, and the *Ruſſian Coſſacs* frequently leave their country, to cruiſe with them upon the *Caſpian*, where they plunder all they meet with.

Dageſtan. This country which borders upon *Dageſtan*, a ſmall province of *Georgia* and *Zuiria*, upon the *Caſpian* ſea, is about 40 leagues in extent. The inhabitants of it are *Tartars*, governed by their own Princes, between *Muſcovy* and *Perſia*, and their principal towns are *Tarku* and *Andres*. It is but ſeldom taken notice of in our maps, tho' it be well known there are three or four Princes, the chief of which is him of *Samgael*, the (2d,) the *Crim Samgael*; (3d,) him of *Beki*; the (4th,) *Caraboedagh* *Bek*, or the Prince of *Caraboedagh*. 1703. The town of *Tarku* is called alſo *Tirck* or *Tarki*, and by the *Perſians* *Targhoe*. It is open, and ſtands againſt a mountain upon the *Caſpian* ſea, to the eaſt of *Georgia*, under the dominion of his Czarian Majeſty, and about three days from *Niſawaey*.

Tarkû. *Its ſituation.*

About noon, the wind chopped about to the north-eaſt, and we ſoon loſt ſight of *Derbent*, ſteering away ſouth-eaſt. Upon this coaſt we ſaw ſeveral trees, and hills at a diſtance up in the land. But the wind coming about to the ſouth-eaſt, about an hour afterward, we were obliged to let go an anchor half a league from the land, in a place where the ſhore was full of trees. Upon the *twenty-firſt* in the morning, we ſteered our courſe again, coaſting it along with very fair weather. About eight we had ſight of the point of *Niſawaey*, and at noon came to an anchor, upon that coaſt, in 3 fathom and an half of water, and there met with ſix other veſſels that had left *Aſtracan* before us. At three in the afternoon I landed with all my cloaths, and this was the very firſt time I ever ſat foot on *Perſian* ground.

The author lands in Perſia.

The *Caſpian* ſea is about 100 leagues in length from *Aſtracan* to *Ferchabad* (a paſſage which is performed with oars, without the help of any wind in fourteen or fifteen days time) and about 90 in breadth from *Chowaraſm* to the coaſts of *Circaſſia* or *Shirwan*. It neither riſes nor falls, and when it happens to overflow its banks, it is owing to the wind only. They pretend that in and about the middle, and before the town of *Derbent*, it is bottomleſs; in other parts of it they ſtrike the bottom with about 30 or 40 fathom of line. The water of it is ſalt, as has already been ſaid, and the freſhneſs of that upon the coaſts is owing to the rivers that fall into it. For the reſt, it has no manner of communication with the other ſeas, being ſurrounded all about with lands and very high mountains. It is inconceivable to think what a number of

Situation of the Caſpian *ſea.*

Rivers.

1703. of rivers fall into this sea; they make it rise to no less than one hundred; the chief of which are the *Wolga*, the *Cirus* or *Kur*, and the *Araxes*; the two last of which unite before they reach this sea, and then fall in it together, having first brought away with them the waters of many others, as the *Bustrouw*, the *Ak-say*, the *Koi-su*, the *Kistlosein*, the *Laik*, the *Sems*, the *Nios*, the *Oxus*, the *Arxantes* or *Tanais*, and the rest. This sea was formerly called the sea of *Hyrcania*, and the sea of *Bachu*. The *Persians* call it the sea of *Kolsum*, and the sea of *Astracan*: The *Russians* call it the sea of *Gualenskoi*, or of *Gevalienske*: The *Georgians*, *Sgwa*, and the *Armenians* call it *Soof*. Those who chiefly navigate this sea are the *Russians* and *Turks*. Tho' the Czar of *Muscovy* has sent several vessels for that purpose to *Astracan*, under the convoy of one captain *Meyer*, who has been already mentioned, the merchants chuse rather to freight the ordinary *Russian* vessels, for the transportation of their goods from place to place, because they are not so subject to leak; for otherwise they would be much fitter for the purpose, and would perform the voyage twice as soon, if due care were taken. But they labour under another defect, which is, that they are not so flat-bottom'd as the common imbarkations upon that sea, and therefore cannot borrow so near upon the coasts of *Persia* and *Nisawaey*, where the others are sometimes obliged to winter.

Ships sent from Muscovy.

CHAP. XXXI.

Situation of the country of Nisawaey. *A great storm. terrible dust. Arrival at* Samashi.

Nisawaey.

THERE are neither villages nor houses to be met with upon the coast of *Nisawaey*, which is low; so that travellers are obliged to pitch tents there, or to go farther up into the country, just as they think most proper, and according to the stay they are to make in these parts. The *Arabs* repair hither with camels and horses, to meet travellers, and carry them to *Samashi*; and as there happened to be several ships in the port when we arrived, there was a great crowd of us. Upon the *twenty-second* in the morning, we threw our nets into a small river, which empties itself into the sea at half a league from thence by two openings; but we caught no great matter, tho' at certain times it be full of fish, This river is called the *Nisawaey*, and communicates its name to this country; its spring is in the mountains.

Upon the *twenty-third*, the wind being at south-east, there sailed five vessels for *Astracan*. On board of these vessels several *Armenian* merchants imbarked with their goods, and I failed not to take this opportunity of writing to my friends both there and at *Moscow*.

Those who are concerned in carrying away the goods and merchandise brought by shipping upon this coast, are either *Arabs* or *Turks*, who in summer live under tents, and in winter, in villages a good distance from the coast.

Upon the *twenty-fourth*, there went away several camels, laden with goods, with some *Russian* merchants who had travelled with us from *Moscow* to *Astracan*. The same day there

An Arab *robbed*.

1703. there came to us an *Arab*, who had been ſtripped of his horſe, and ſome rice he was bringing to ſell, by three robbers, who upon this notice given, were immediately purſued by ten or twelve perſons, but to no manner of purpoſe.

A ſtorm and a great duſt. About noon, there came on a great ſtorm, which raiſed ſo great a duſt between the beach and the downs, that there was no knowing where to go for ſhelter. Tho' we had a pretty large tent, ſupported by two good poles, and well ſtaked down to the ground, I withdrew from thence to the ſea ſide, where the duſt was not ſo great, becauſe the ſand there was wet; not to ſay I was afraid the wind would blow away our tent: And indeed the thing happened as I had dreaded, and we were glad to cover our goods and baggage with it, by tying and fixing it down the beſt we could; and as the air was all full of a thick cloud of ſand, every one of us endeavoured to get under ſhelter, ſome behind a ſhattered veſſel that had ſuffered ſhipwreck, and others within her, a ſad and doleful ſight! This ſtorm continued till night, when we got up our tent again, and with labour and pains recovered our bales which had been buried under the ſand.

Upon the *twenty-fifth*, certain merchants who had been twelve days upon this coaſt, departed hence for *Samaſhi*, attended by very fine weather; but we were obliged to wait for the officer of the cuſtoms, to whom we were to pay the ordinary duties before we ſtirred from thence. Theſe duties amount to forty-ſix pence *per* bale, every bale four hundred weight, the uſual load of an horſe. That day the ſtorm came on again with ſuch fury, that it was all we could do to keep our legs upon the ſhore, and this drove us to the ſide of the downs, three hundred paces from the ſea, where we paſſed our night: And here we fell in with the crew of a veſſel belonging to his Czarian Majeſty, who had retired under ſome huts. Among them were two *Germans* and a *Swediſh* prisoner, who made me a preſent of two birds which the *Muſcovites* call *Karawayeke*, and which are not very unlike to young herons, except that their plumage is black, or of a very deep blue. As theſe gentlemen came to ſee me every day, they alſo brought me a white Crane of extraordinary ſize and beauty.

Second ſtorm.

The ſtorm laſted all night, and the officer of the cuſtoms, who arrived upon the *twenty-ſixth*, permitted us to depart, as ſoon as he had ſearched what we had. The next day we went away with above one hundred camels, ten horſes, and three aſſes, ſkirting it along the ſea ſide, whoſe ſhores we found to be in the ſame ſhattered ſtate, as where we had ſuffered ſo much inconvenience. We croſſed the four ſmall rivers of *Samoetſia*, *Balballa*, *Buboelaetſha*, and *Mordwa*, proceeding on to the ſouthward. Upon this ſhore they have large creatures with ſmall heads, which they call ſea dogs or ſeals, ſome of which are as big as horſes, and whoſe ſkin make admirable covering for trunks. In the ſeaſon when theſe creatures ingender, there are thouſands of them to be ſeen on the ſhores of *Niſawaey*. Having travelled four leagues, we went to reſt ourſelves in a plain beyond the *Downs*, half a league from the village of *Mordow*, inhabited by *Arabians*, who are in poor mud cabbins, ſuch as we have formerly deſcribed thoſe of the *Tartars* to have been. *Mordow*, ſignifies a marſh, and indeed this village is very marſhy, becauſe of the waters which come down from the mountains; but it is owing to the ſame, that there is much rice here, and that it abounds with birds.

Upon the *twenty eighth*, we continued our journey along the ſea ſide, and travelled ſix leagues. Here we turned off from the ſea, having at a ſmall diſtance before us, the high mountains of *Perſia*. We there met with a ſpring of water, and ſome ſorry villages, conſiſting of a few mud houſes, inhabited, as they call them here, by *Moors* or *Turks*. The weather

1703. ther being very fine, these mountains and plains had a very charming effect. The *Caspian* sea affords little or no fish in these parts. There is, however, here a kind of carp, not very good indeed, and a kind of herring, not better worth.

Upon the *twenty ninth*, we went on, and in an hour's time entered the mountains, which are very lofty and very bare, full of rocks, without trees. There is even a great number of pebbles in the plains. Having travelled over the high and stony mountains of *Barma*, we halted at nine in the morning, upon a flat hill surrounded with others that are higher, and we met with a brook of good water in a deep valley. I there shot a large bird that was black, grey and white, a fathom in extent from the tip of one wing to the tip of the other. It was a bird of prey, which they there call *Tjallagan*, and not very unlike a faulcon. From his wings I drew good quills to write with.

A great bird.

The weather continuing fine, tho' the wind was rather of the highest, we proceeded on our journey to the southward, and passed by several cabbins inhabited by *Arabians*, at the foot, on the slope, and on the top of hills and mountains. Great numbers of them are in these parts to be met, with their wives, their children and their cattle. These parts are infested by robbers, which obliges travellers to be upon their guard, and to take care how they fall asleep. From time to time we fired off some pieces to let them know we were upon the watch, and ready prepared to defend ourselves; and yet one of these rogues was so bold as to come to reconnoitre us, but his temerity was rewarded with a sound cudgelling.

A dangerous road.

At midnight we moved on again, and in an hour's time we came among hills covered with trees. At break of day, we went through a narrow deep passage, where we were obliged to dismount and lead our horses by the bridle. When we had got down to the plain, we twice crossed the river of *Atatasiaei*, or the *paternal River*, which falls into the *Caspian* sea: Upon the top of a mountain, we found a great pond full of water, with a great number of birds, large and small, round about it; and afterwards a spring of admirable water, which comes out of a hill, and forms a small canal. This is a branch of the river we crossed twice the day before, which we crossed again a third time by fording it, there having been a great drought for two years before. About eight of the clock, we had on the left of us a great stone caravansera in ruins, and a place of burial near it, with many tombs of *Arabians* and *Turks*. We halted a little beyond this, by the side of a brook, in a plain, four leagues from a small place called *Rasarat*, where certain *Arabians* had pitched some tents. We were obliged to send for refreshments a league from thence. 1703.

River of Atatasiaei.

At two in the morning, we moved on again, continually mounting of hills and going down the same, and we crossed a river, which the *Turks* call *Orotsa*, or the *dry River*; and indeed it was dry then and full of pebbles, and so it is in winter as well as in summer. Towards the morning we heard pheasants upon the hills, where are also hares and many springs of water. Upon the *last day of the month*, we halted in a great stony plain surrounded with rocks, where we found ten tents of *Arabs* who supplied us with milk, fresh butter, eggs, and prety good water. We there killed a sheep we had brought from *Astracan*, and feasted upon it.

Dry river.

At two in the morning we continued our way, amidst rocky mountains, and at break of day we discovered ourselves to be near a spring called *Borbeelagh*, around which there were several *Arabs* under tents, in a place where every thing was burnt up by the heat of the sun, and the great droughts. This was upon the *first day of August*, and that day we went but three leagues, it being, in summer, impossible to travel with camels

1703. camels above five or six leagues in 24 hours; besides that it is necessary the *Caravans* should halt in places where there happens to be water. This is three leagues from *Samachi*, and as the mountains produce no wood, they are obliged to make use of camels dung for their firing, just as in *Egypt*.

River of Sahansha. At two in the morning, we moved on, and crossed the river of *Sabansha*, where we found nothing but pebbles instead of water. As we drew near to *Samachi*, we passed by some fruit gardens. They made us stop at the custom-house that they might count our camels, which was soon done, and we went into the town. This was upon the *second day of the month*, and we went to take up our lodging in the *Caravansera* of the *Armenians*, where we were entertained by a merchant of that nation. 1703.

CHAP. XXXII.

Rejoicings on account of a royal robe. Description of Samachi. *Ruins of a great fortress upon the mountain of* Kata-Kulustahan.

A robe sent to the Governor of Samachi. WHEN we arrived at *Samachi*, they told us the *Khan* or Governor of that city had just received a royal robe from the King his Master, whereupon he caused great publick rejoicings to be made for four days together.

Dearness of provisions. It was so excessively hot when we arrived at this place, and no rain having fallen for the space of two or three years before, there happen'd to be a great scarcity of every thing, and they now sold a loaf for tenpence, which had never cost above twopence for a century before. Other provisions were dear in proportion, and they now sold a fowl for fivepence or sixpence which before was used to fetch not above three-halfpence.

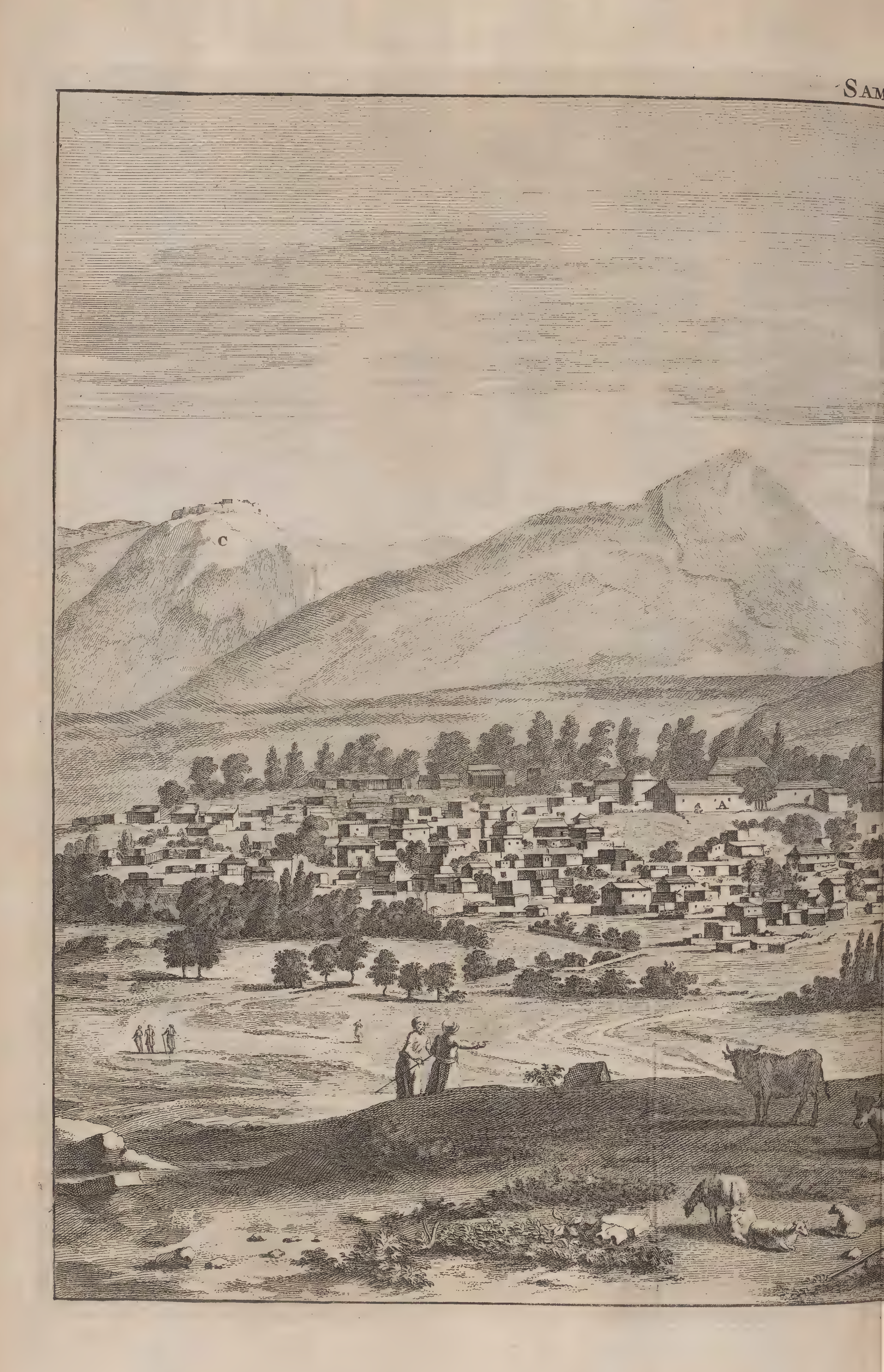
They are very strict in examining all the goods that go through this city, for which purpose the officers of the customs come to the *Caravansera*, where they have an apartment; but they demand nothing for this visit, you only give them fifty pence for every camel load, whereas they formerly paid no more than a florin, but this is only with regard to the goods carried into *Persia*, and as the carriage is commonly by horses, the bales must be diminished by the half, a horse load not exceeding four hundred weight, whereas that of a camel is eight or nine hundred.

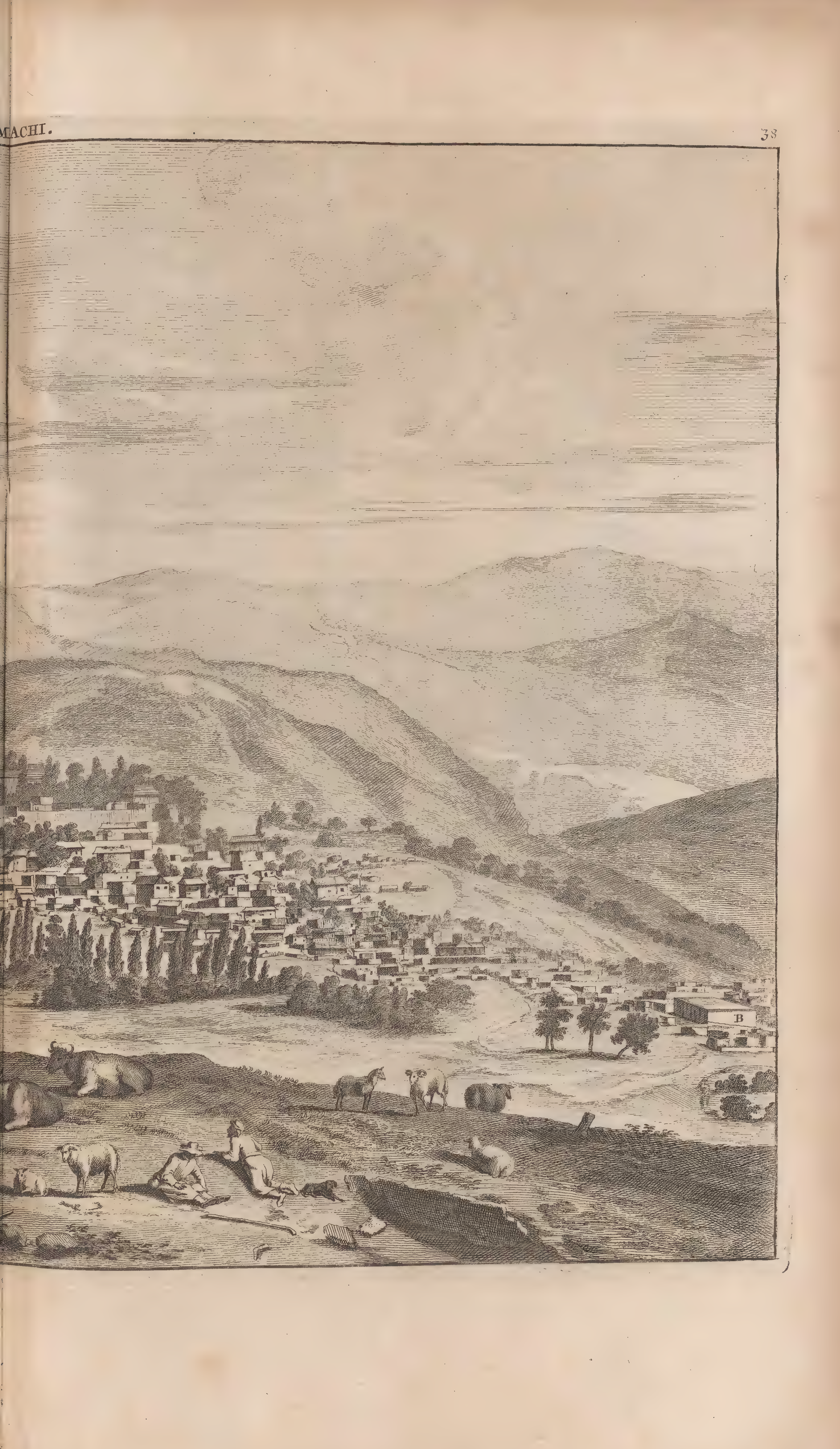
Upon the *fifth* of this month, at eight in the morning, the *Khan* repaired to a garden, a quarter of a league from the town, there to invest himself with the robe we just now mentioned. *A fine cavalcade of the* Khans. As great preparations had been made for this solemnity, I went with several others to have a sight of it. First there appeared a number of persons on horseback, succeeded by ten camels, adorned with two little red standards to the right and left. Upon six of these there were kettle-drums which the *Persians* call *Tambalpaes*, of which four were of extraordinary size, pointed at bottom, which a drummer upon one of the camels struck from time to time. Four trumpeters stopt at intervals on the way side to sound their *Karamas* or Trumpets, which are very long, wide at bottom, and according to my ear, make a very disagreeable noise. At some distance after these came four hautbois, which they call *Karana-nafier*. The camels

1703. mels were alſo followed by twenty muſqueteers differently habited, ſome in green, ſome in purple, and ſome in grey, and after theſe came ſix of the *Khan*'s or Governor's menial ſervants; after theſe appeared their maſter himſelf upon a fine cheſnut horſe moſt beautifully capariſoned. This Nobleman, who was in a ſhort kind of veſt, and with a large turban on his head, after the *Perſian* mode, was followed by four eunuchs, ſome tawny, others black, richly habited and well mounted. After theſe appeared the moſt conſiderable perſonages of the place, and a great number of others on horſeback; then nine led horſes of the *Khan*'s, ſumptuouſly capariſoned, with each a ſmall drum on the right ſide of the ſaddle. Moſt of the perſons of diſtinction had the like, which from time to time they ſtruck with their fingers. They were almoſt all of ſilver like thoſe of the *Khan*. Beſides all this a great number of ſoldiers were ranged along the garden, on the right hand towards the mountains, and each of theſe ſoldiers had a feather in his cap; and in ſhort, two horſes, upon which were two men covered from head to foot with a gown quilted and wrought with all ſorts of colours, repreſenting monkeys; and as they were well broke to the tricks and play of that creature, they drew the eyes of every body upon them, and kept at the diſtance of twenty paces from each other, with muſicians near them. When they had reached the garden, the *Khan* and the great men who had attended him, diſmounted from their horſes at the fore-gate, which was large and built of ſtone. He there robed himſelf with his royal veſtment, and in half an hour mounting his horſe again, he returned to the town in the ſame order he came out of it. This robe was pretty long, and of gold brocade, and upon his head he had a golden cap, in the nature of a crown. This cavalcade was attended by a great number of ſervants on horſeback, who rode and pranced about on the ſides of the proceſſion, with a *Kaljan*, or ſmoaking bottle in their right hand for the uſe of their maſters. Theſe bottles are of glaſs, adorned with gold or ſilver at top, and extremely neat. Other of theſe ſervants had a little pot full of fire at the pummel of their ſaddles, for their maſters to light their pipes by, but there was no tobacco ſmoked upon this occaſion. Many of theſe great men diverted themſelves on the way with darting the *Ayner*, which is a kind of cane. Every body had run out of the town to ſee this cavalcade, ſome on foot, and others on horſeback, a ſight agreeable enough to the eye, becauſe of the variety of objects: others came from the villages, of which the country about is full, from the tents of the *Arabs*, and from the gardens which are ſeen on all ſides. The *Khan* before he aſſumed his robe, covered himſelf with the gold cap juſt now mentioned, which was adorned with precious ſtones, cloſed at top, and carried at a ſmall diſtance before him on horſeback. They pretend that this cap repreſents the arms of the prophet *Ali*, who was wont to wear ſuch an one. The *Khan* took it off when he put on his robe, and it was carried before him in going back, as it had been in coming. This cavalcade took up two hours. *A rich cap.*

It rained in the evening, and it ſo continued to do till towards noon the next day. This made the ways ſo bad, that it was as much as the horſes could do to get forward; but it was very fine weather from the *ſeventh* to the *tenth* of this month. We had, however, an earthquake, which did no damage, except that it obliged a great many people to go out and lye in the fields, for fear their houſes ſhould fall upon their heads.

Upon the *eleventh*, I drew a proſpect of the town from a hill to the ſouthward, and from the place whence it makes the beſt figure, as it is to be ſeen in number 38. It is longer than it is broad, and as it is deſtitute of moſchs, towers, or conſiderable buildings, I have only diſtinguiſhed *Situation of Samachi.*


SAM
C
A


B



1703. ſtinguiſhed the *Khan*'s palace by the letter *A*; the *Caravanſera* of *Circaſſia*, which is on the eaſt ſide of the town by the letter *B*; and a hill where are the ruins of an ancient fortreſs, by the letter *C*. It is to the northweſt of the town, and we ſhall ſpeak more amply of it hereafter, as well as of another, higher, which is to be ſeen on one ſide of it. This town is upon the ſlope of an hill; is about a league in circumference, and all open, the walls having been thrown down by an earthquake about five and thirty years ago. Tho' there be here no remarkable building, there are, however, ſeveral moſchs; but they are all ſmall and low, ſo that they are not diſtinguiſhable from without the town. They call them *Mu-zejit*. There are two of them that have ſmall domes, into which they enter by a court, and without any other ornament than a place raiſed up in a round form, and full of ſeats. The houſes of this town are of the moſt ordinary ſort, of ſtone and of earth, flat at top, poor and mean to look at, and ſo low for the moſt part that you may reach the roofs of them with the hand. The chief of them are nevertheleſs neat enough within-ſide, and adorned with carpets, and ſuch like things: the walls of them are plaſtered, and very white with ſome ſtreaks of colour; ſome of theſe are even two ſtories high and raiſed at top.

The Khan'*s houſe.* That of the *Khan* himſelf is upon an eminence, and yet makes no great figure from without. Here are alſo to be ſeen the ruins of a tolerably large moſch, to which belong two or three ſorts of domes; which ſeem to have been formerly handſom. This building is of ſtone well compacted together, the moſt ancient and fineſt in all the town, where are ſeveral other ruins to be ſeen ſcattered up and down.

Market and ſhops. At the foot of the hill where the *Khan* keeps his court, there is a great market where they ſell every ſort of thing, and eſpecially fruits. This is the quarter or diſtrict of the braziers, where there are, however, other ſhops, and a great number of cooks who have all ſorts of victuals ready dreſſed. 1703.

Bazars. The bazars are at one of the ends of this market, and are alſo full of the ſhops of goldſmiths, ſhoemakers, ſadlers, and ſo on. Some of them are covered with ſtone, and ſome with wood, and contain ſeveral ſtreets. There you have coffee-houſes, and all the caravanſeras, which have no proſpect of the ſtreet, and where they go in by a great door. There is a ſcore of them, whereof thoſe belonging to the *Indians*, which are of ſtone and the fineſt of all, are twenty three or twenty four foot high. Ours had forty rooms on the floor beneath, and was ſquare. Theſe are the places where they ſell the principal ſorts of goods; nor indeed are there any great ſhops of any ſort in the bazars. This town is called by ſeveral names, ſome call it *Samachi*, others *Sumachia*, and the *Perſians* themſelves *Schamachi*. It is in about 40 degrees and 50 minutes of northern latitude, and is the capital of the province of *Shirwan* or *Servan*, part of the ancient *Media*, to the north-north-weſt of *Perſia*; to the weſtward of the province of *Gilan*, and to the northward of that of *Irak*, and extends quite to the frontiers of *Hyrcania*. They pretend this city was built by a certain King of *Perſia* called *Shirwan Shah*, twenty four leagues from the *Caſpian* ſea. The way over the mountains ſo turns and winds, that we were 24 hours in going over them, and ſix days in performing the whole journey with camels; tho', indeed, it may be done in three on horſeback. It is forty leagues from hence to *Derbent*, if you go over the mountains of *Lahati*.

Extent of the Khan'*s government.* The *Khan* governs here as a King, and has under him only a *Kalantaer* or burgo-maſter, who has no manner of authority, and has nothing to do but to prepare a liſt of the ſubſidies the country is to furniſh the *Khan*, who has a chancery, counſellors, and an arſenal in his palace, provided with ſome pieces of cannon; two of which are at the entrance, and are diſcharged upon publick rejoicings.

1703. joicings. He has a body of horſe conſiſting of two thouſand five hundred men, three hundred of which ſerve him alſo as a guard on foot, and attend him when he appears abroad or goes out to hunt. The *Khan*, who was in the ſixth year of his government, is a well made man, and of a comely preſence, tho' rather too thin, and wears long muſtaches. He is called *Allerwedikhan*, and bears the title of *Beglerbeg* or *Khan* of other *Khans*. He is a *Georgian* born, and a Chriſtian, and was formerly Gentleman of the chamber to the King of *Perſia*, to whom his father, a Gentleman of a good family, preſented him, while yet in his infancy, according to the cuſtom of *Georgia*. They ſay he is of the ancient family of the *Borgodions*, known before the birth of Jeſus Chriſt, and originally a Jew.

His picture.

The Government of *Samachi* is one of the moſt conſiderable in all the Empire of *Perſia*, and its governors grow rich the eaſieſt and ſooneſt of any, by reaſon of the great ſubſidies they levy upon the country round about, and eſpecially upon *Gilan*, which produce a deal of ſilk, cotton, and ſaffron. The ſoil is naturally very fertile, and affords good wines, both red and white, but the white is ſo ſtrong there is no drinking it,but tempered with water. It abounds with all ſorts of fruits,and particularly apples, pears, and cheſnuts of an exquiſite flavour, and eſpecially towards *Georgia*. In a word, there is nothing wanting but people to cultivate the ſoil. It produces alſo great numbers of horſes, cattle, poultry, and all ſorts of game, both of the fur and feather, which are to be bought at a very cheap rate, and eſpecially in winter. The bread there is moſt admirably good.

Soil of Samachi.

Abundance of proviſions.

A fine port.

The town of *Baku*, which has a very fine port, has been lately fortify'd by the *Perſians*, which was owing to the miſconduct of Captain *Meyer*, whom we have mentioned more than once before. He took it into his head to demand free entrance into this port,for the ſhips and veſſels of his Czarian Majeſty, which gave ſuch umbrage to the *Perſians*,and inſtilled them with ſuch a jealouſy, that they immediately reſolved to fortify this place. As the *Muſcovites* had, time out of mind, had free admiſſion into this port, he was adviſed not to take ſo falſe a ſtep, but the advice was thrown away upon him. Before this it had been an eaſy matter to have ſeized it with an handful of men, and with it to have ſeized on the whole county quite to the *Kur* and *Araxes*, and to have ſecured it by proper fortifications, as ſhall be obſerved in the ſequel; for the inhabitants were in no condition to have made a defence, and this had proved a moſt advantageous article to his Czarian Majeſty. 1703.

Baku.

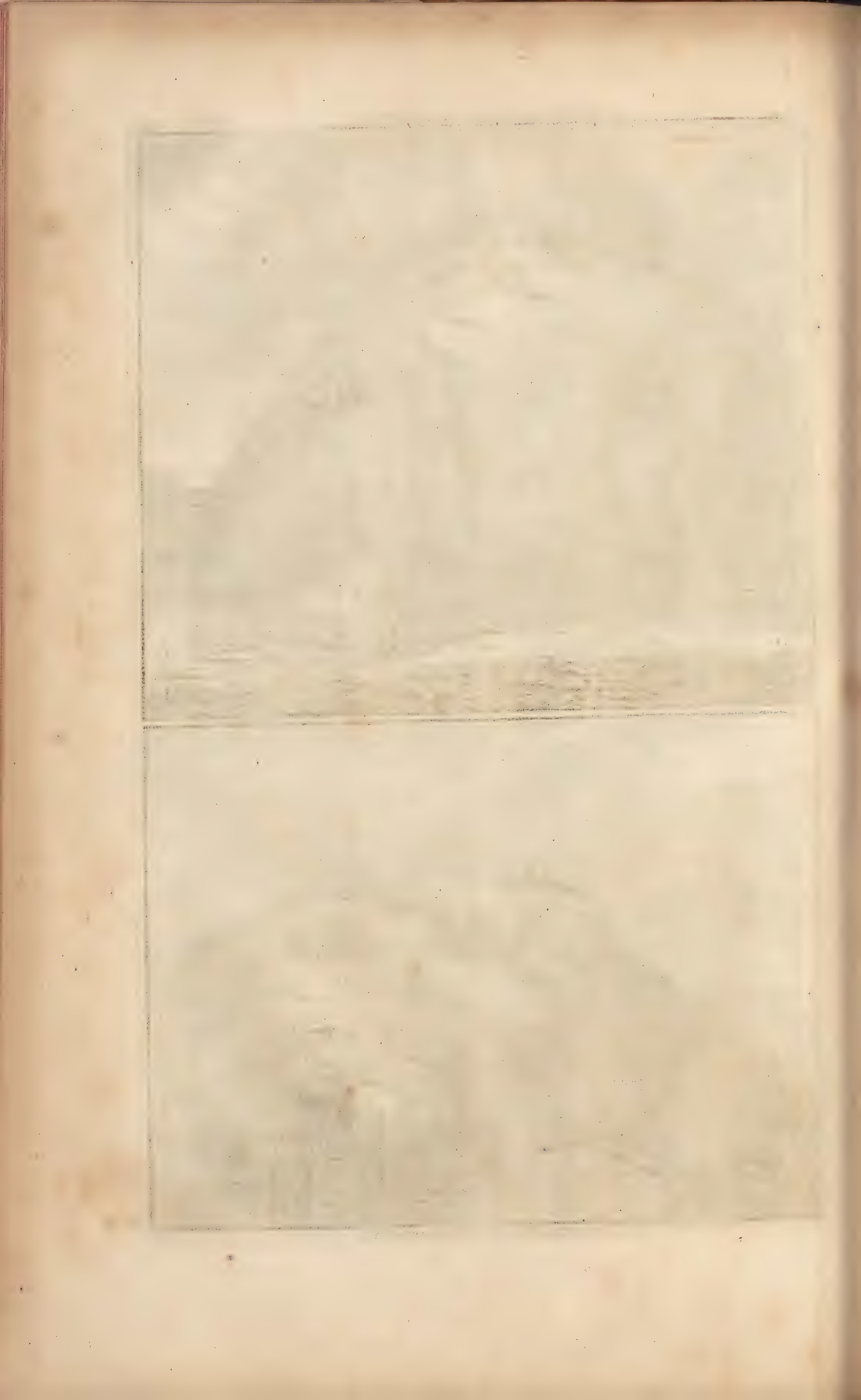
This town of *Baku* ſtands in the weſtern part of *Perſia*, in the country of *Shirwan*, upon the *Caſpian* ſea, and ſtill preſerves its ancient walls. This part produces the beſt nut oyl in the world, both brown and white, the firſt of which is carried into *Gilan*, and an hundred leagues beyond into *Perſia*, and the white they ſend to all parts. They aſſured me, that at the diſtance of two or three leagues from that town, the land burns continually, becauſe of the abundance of ſaltpeter it is impregnated with; and that 50 leagues from *Samachi*, there is a city called *Ganſie*, which is four times as big as the former, full of fine ſtone buildings, moſtly of two ſtories; handſom broad ſtreets, noble bazars, and great caravanſeras; that the Governor's palace there is great and ſpacious; that a fine river runs through the town; that there alſo are many gardens, good wines, fruits in abundance, ſena, cypreſſes and pines; ſo that this city might juſtly be eſteemed one of the moſt conſiderable in all the Empire of *Perſia*. All this was confirmed to me by a *French* eccleſiaſtic, who lives there, and by ſome *Georgians*, who aſſured me, that in *Georgia*, the *Gurgiſtan* of this day, there are ſeveral rivers we know nothing of, as the *Allaſan*, which croſſes the province of *Ghaget*; the *Legwie*

Town of Ganſie.

LE MONTAGNE, KALA-KULUSTAHAN. 39



LE MONTAGNE, KALA-KULUSTAHAN. 40





41 TOMBEAU À JEDIEKOMBET.



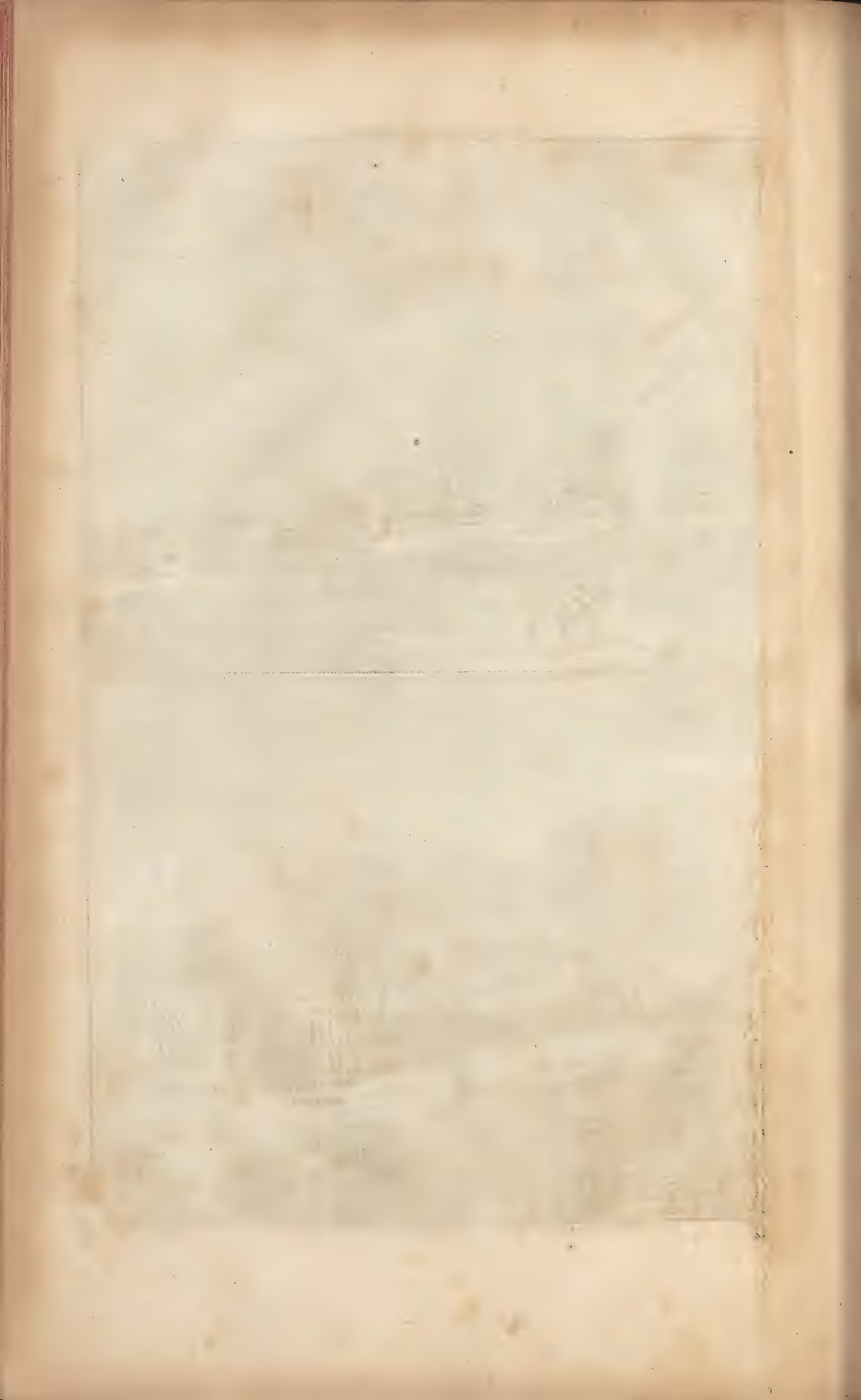


43 TOMBEAU SUR LE MONT PIEDRAKOES.

TOMBEAUX À JEDIEKOMBET. 44



TOMBEAU SUR LE MONT PIEDRAKOES. 44



1703. *wie* which runs on one side of the town of *Cori* or of *Gorri*; the *Kisanni*, which runs by a great mosch called *Schetta*; the *Simma* which rises in *Turcomania*, near the town of *Angheltska*, and the *Jorri*, which springs from the mountain of *Serikjes*, which all fall into the *Kur*; besides many others that are not known to be distinguished by any names.

Rivers unknown.

In short, desirous to satisfy my curiosity with regard to the antiquities of the ancient and famous *Media*, I, upon the *thirteenth* of *August*, repaired to the mountain of *Kala-kulustahan*, half a league to the north-west of this city. I stopped at the foot of this mountain to take a view of the remains of the wall and towers of an ancient fortress. There are some round ones still entire enough, and some foundations at a distance from the ruins of the wall, on the slope of the hill to the right hand between great stones, which appear above the ground as you go down. The same there were on the left hand towards the top, near the tower, and a greater than all the rest upon the very top of the hill. You have a representation of this in numb. 39. I then with a good deal of difficulty and danger, scrambled up this steep hill, and was obliged to forbear several times in so doing. Being arrived at the top of it, I found a subterraneous vault, where they descend seven or eight paces to the south, by a large arcade of great smooth and well-jointed stones, but it is sunk and full of rubbish. Opposite to this, towards the north-east, there is another arcade; this is entire, and the opening of it injects a horror when you look down it, because of its vast depth between the hills that surround it; nor is there any wall on that side, which is inaccessible. These two arcades by which you go into this vault are forty four paces distant from each other. When you are got down into this vault, you, on the right hand meet with a passage pretty short and narrow, with a kind of window, which looks upon the rock of the mountain. Opposite to this, there is another entrance or passage, but very short, because this place which is to the east is at the extremity of the mountain. You go to the left hand, to the other side, which is on the west, under an arcade, in the manner of a gate way, but so low you must bend your self to go into a small apartment, from which you go on to another like it, by a small alley, and from that to a third, all the three well vaulted. The wall from whence these vaults sprang, is five foot thick at the entrance, and eight farther on, and these apartments or these vaults are divided from each other by small passages. It was there so dark I dared not venture any farther, having but one person only with me, besides that the way to the last vault was full of stones and rubbish. I concluded, however, that most of these vaults must run through the mountain to the west and north-west, where it is of greatest extent. I observed also that the walls of the vaults of the passages, which are flat, were of the breadth of these passages, rested by the two ends upon the walls, and that all the stones there were well joined together and cemented, tho' not so neatly as those of the ancient buildings, and especially of the *Romans*, who excelled in that particular; and this is to be observed even in their publick ways, and remarkably so in what remains of that of *Naples*, called the *Via Appia*. *Egypt* also furnishes us with another example of the delicacy of the ancients in this respect, in the only one of the seven wonders of the world that subsists at this day, meaning the inner passage by which you go up to the famous pyramids of that country, of which I was the first that gave a description in the account of my first travels. These stones, which are of prodigious size, are so nicely joined together, that the joints are hardly discernible; besides they are polished like looking-glass, whereas those of the work I am speaking of, are far from being so.

Mountain of Kala-kulustahan.

Neatness of the Romans in their stone work.

When

1703. When I came from out of theſe ſubterraneous vaults, I meaſured the breadth of the hill at top, and found it was fifty paces in the place where it was narroweſt, and eighty to the north-weſt. Towards the middle of this mountain there is a great well, but I did not dare approach it near enough to look into it, for fear of falling in, for the brink of it was dangerous to all appearance: this is the only opening I found there. The towers wherewith the walls of the building, upon the hill, are flanked, are ſeventy or eighty paces diſtant from each other where they are neareſt. This wall ſtretches much lower down about the mountain to the eaſt, where I believe it is a good half league long. We went down much eaſier than we got up, becauſe as we came back, we hit upon the right way. In our way down we ſaw ſeveral ruins of great apartments between the wall below and the demoliſhed fortreſs upon the top of the hill, the ſtones of which did but juſt appear above the ſurface of the ground; but there is no judging of 1703. the ſize of the building, but by that of the *Arcades*. When in our return we had reached the firſt wall, I drew the proſpect you ſee in numb. 40, near a tower, which is ſtill pretty entire, near ſome other ruins. Some writers have obſerved that theſe ruins are a mixture of ſtone and wood, but I there met with no ſuch thing, and I am perſuaded the ſtones are joined together with nothing but cement. The tradition is that this fortreſs was demoliſhed by *Tamerlan*, tho' by the beſt information I could get, I would not vouch for the truth of the ſtory.

Dangerous well.

In my return to the town, I ſaw a *Turk* dancing upon the rope, in the open fields. He was ſurrounded by a great number of ſpectators, the neareſt of which gave what they thought fit to one of his companions who made the gathering, while he was doing his beſt to divert the company: but he was none of the moſt dextrous of his profeſſion.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Remarkable ancient Sepulchres at Jediekombet *upon the mountain of* Pjedrakoes, *and at* Pyrmaraes. *An horrible murder. Review of the* Perſian *cavalry.*

UPON the *fourteenth*, I went away on horſeback, from *Samachi*, attended by two perſons, and ſome runners, in order to go to *Jediekombet*, that is, the *ſeven Towers*, where there are ſeveral ancient tombs. We went through ſeveral villages, moſtly inhabited by *Armenians*, as we advanced weſtward towards the mountains, and at nine arrived at *Kirkins*, a village upon a fertile eminence, and covered with vineyards, which are for the ſupport of the inhabitants. They have there a chappel built of ſtone, with the tomb of a ſaint, called *Sahaeh Wartapeet*. They ſay he was born a *Turk* and *Mohammedan*, and that having afterwards embraced their faith, he apply'd himſelf ſo cloſe to ſtudy that he became one of their prieſts; that after this, he had the misfortune to fall into the hands of the *Mohammedan Turks*, who burnt him at *Samachi*, and that riſing again he came and rejoined them. There is another tomb upon the high road, half a league from this mountain or hill, with ſome characters, which I deſired they would interpret to me; but they told me they were nothing but ornaments.

Jediekcmbet.

Tomb of a Saint.

5 That

1703. That of the saint, who is buried upon the hill, is there held in great veneration; they there light up tapers upon their festival days, and eat beside him. As it was upon a *Sunday* I came there, I found a crowd of people, and they very obligingly invited me to dine there, but I excused myself, being desirous to go on farther. This village contains about two hundred families. There is a small altar in the middle of the chappel, where this tomb is, and it is surrounded by a small wall, on one side of which there is a walnut-tree, under whose shade they sit. In the same place there was formerly a small mosch, which about thirty five years ago, was thrown down by an earthquake, and instead of that they erected this chappel.

We left this village at half an hour after nine, and went over some fine hills to *Jediekombet*, where we got an hour afterwards. I there found the ancient tombs I have mentioned, which are substantially built of hard stone, and neatly enough joined together; they were still most of them entire, and terminated in pyramids. The first I examined was the loftiest, and nearest to the mountain. The wall of the tower is five palms in thickness; the entrance six high and three broad; it is round within, and twelve foot in diameter. This tower is surrounded with a fine wall, whose front gate is fourteen foot and an half broad, and ten deep to the wicket through which you go in, five palms thick, and sixteen paces from corner to corner, or sixty four paces in circumference. The wall is three palms thick, and the coping at top is in imitation of a camel's back, or an half oval. In this tower are five fine tombs, three on one side, and two on the other, which are adorned with foliages and other different things. These tombs are three palms high, two broad, and seven long, some more, others less. I left this, and went to the second tower. At the front gate in the enceint of the wall, I found an elevation of three palms, an arcade of eight and an half broad at bottom, of eleven feet and an half deep, and seven foot high. Here you have three fine tombs. The wall of this tower is forty four foot long, and thirty three broad, and is not higher than the former which it nearly resembles. The last of these buildings which is the lowest, and goes downward, is surrounded with a wall which is seventy one foot broad, sixty six foot long, and nine foot high. The front gate which is fourteen foot and an half without, is twenty two broad, the arcade is eleven foot high, and fourteen deep: there is a wicket in the middle, which is two foot and an half broad, and five foot and an half high. You there go down by three steps, and having measured twelve paces, you come to a building which is thirty eight foot broad, and eighteen foot long, at the end of which there is another on the left hand, which is six foot as well in length as in breadth, upon which there is a tower. You go into this building by a small door, which is four foot, and four inches high, and two foot and an half broad, and corresponds with that in the front. The thickness of the wall of it is three foot, and going down two steps, you come into a square apartment surrounded with stone benches one foot and an half high, and as much in breadth. This apartment or room is ten foot long and eleven foot broad, and the vault of it is twelve foot high. On the right hand you have a door made through the wall above the bench, through which, by going up a single step, you enter into a dark place, whose vault is lower than the former, tho' its other dimensions be larger, being thirteen foot long and ten broad. From hence through another door, opposite to the first, but smaller, you go up two steps, and come into a place, ten foot long and ten foot broad. Upon this it is, that the tower stands, which is hollow quite up to the point of the spire; and here you have on the right of you four small windows, 1703.

Tombs at Jediekombet.

Fine tower.

1703. two and two, one above the other, I there found tapers sticking against the wall, and stones tumbled down, but perceived nothing like a tomb. We dined in that place, and there refreshed our wine with water from a fine spring over against and at a small distance from this building: It is very ancient, the water of it is admirable, and its source is from the mountains. Without the enceint of these monuments, concerning which the ancients have said so much, there are a great number of other tombs round about, some like these, and others of great common stones, and all without any characters and inscriptions, and only with some small ornaments to which I can give no name, except that some of them might be thought to be like bases. And indeed I am quite of opinion, they are no other than ornaments, which is what I have observed in many other places, and even in the royal sepulchres which are to be seen without the walls of *Jerusalem*.

To give a more distinct and perfect idea of these tombs, I have drawn one of them in particular on one side of the building, I have just now mentioned, near which there is a great tree, and others smaller, which come out of the tower, notwithstanding that the stones are still firm and intire, and tho' there is no opening or fissure to be seen. I have traced out the front gate, some tombs, and the melon garden, in numb. 41; and you will find the whole with the mountain in perspective in numb. 42; where nine towers are to be seen, notwithstanding the word *Jediehombet* signifies but *seven*, as has already been observed. There is a great number of young fig-trees against the walls within, which cover the tombs so thick, it is no easy matter to get sight of them. They hold them here to be very ancient, and have a report that *Alexander* spared them, because of their great antiquity.

About four in the afternoon, having satisfied my curiosity, I returned from thence, and, to the northward of these tombs, was surprised to see 1703. great heaps of stones, upon a fertile hill, where the soil was not at all given to be stony; from whence I concluded there must have formerly been a town or some fortress in this place, tho' no other vestiges seemed to be left of it: And I was afterwards informed by some people, of whom I made the inquiry, and they told me there had been a small one in times past, near the tombs; a thing very likely, for otherwise it would be difficult enough to comprehend for what reason they were erected in these mountains. Not far from thence we found a fine spring, and a little farther, several other tombs; among which there was one of extraordinary dimensions, but very much disfigured by the injuries it had received from time. Half a league from thence, we went back again through the village of *Kirkins*, inhabited by *Armenians* and *Turks*, and we got to the town about an hour before sunset, in the midst of a high wind, and so great a dust, that we had much ado to see before us: But there fell an heavy soaking rain the next day, attended with thunder, which intirely dissipated it.

The mountain Pjedrakoes.

Tomb.

Upon the *eighteenth*, I went up to the mountain of *Pjedrakoes*, nearer the town than that of *Kala-kulustahan*, and higher. Upon the top of this mountain, there is an open tomb, surrounded with great stones, which is full eighteen foot and an half long, and sixteen foot broad; together with several other ordinary tombs, a walnut-tree, and another great tree with small leaves: At the distance of twenty seven paces from hence, there is another tomb, which consists of a small round chappel. It is thirty three foot in circumference without, and ten foot diameter within; the wall of it is two foot ten inches thick, and there are stones here of four foot four inches long, and two foot and two inches broad. The entrance into it is five foot four inches high, with a step. This small chappel is ten foot and an half high, exclusive of the needle or spire, and is surrounded

1703. rounded with ſeveral other tombs. The wall of it is thick ſet with nails, to which they have faſtned ſlips of various colours, and the like are to be ſeen in the former, being pieces torn from the garments of thoſe who come here to perform their devotions, and who make theſe ſmall offerings of acknowledgment to the ſaints who reſt here, in hopes thereby to procure relief from ſuch diſeaſes as they may labour under. An *Armenian* ſervant I had with me, aſſured me he had experienced the efficacy of this means, but I gave as much ear to this, as I did to the ſtory of the ſaint of theirs who aroſe from the dead. 1703.

Superſtition.

In numb. 43, you ſee a repreſentation of this ſmall chappel, which is very much damaged and decay'd on the eaſt-ſide, together with the hill of *Kala-kuluſtahan*; and in numb. 44, the other ſide decay'd, with the open tomb I juſt now mentioned, and the town and mountain at a diſtance. In this ſmall chappel, there is a great tomb adorned with foliages, ſuch as it appears in the plate beneath, and forty paces farther,

Deſcription of a ſmall emple.



two ſubterraneans. The entrance into the firſt is vaulted, and conſiſts of great ſtones which want nothing within. This place is ſix foot and an half long, and four foot and two inches broad: It is paved, and is five foot five inches high. The ſecond, which is but ſeventeen paces from it, is like a grot hewn out of the ſolid rock of the mountain, and the entrance into it is ſo ſmall, you muſt creep upon your belly to get in. Before this grotto there is a tree, upon the bark of which are the names of

 ſeveral

1703. ſeveral perſons cut out; and tombs round about, between which and the ſepulchre upon the mountain there is the wall of a demoliſh'd building. This hill or mountain is alſo ſurrounded with tombs, except to the ſouth-weſt where it is very ſteep. There are authors who affirm there is here a great ſubterraneous vault, into which you go down by ſeveral ſteps, and that therein are depoſited the aſhes of the daughter of a great King; but I made a fruitleſs ſearch after it, and am perſuaded it is no other than the little grot I have mentioned, and into which they had not the curioſity to go, to diſcover the truth of it; beſides that the entrance into it is ſo ſmall, I was obliged to undreſs myſelf in part to ſqueeze in. As to the reſt, I have reaſon to believe the chief of the monuments hereabouts, is that of the ſmall chappel which you ſee upon the hill. They moreover aſſured me, that moſt of the perſons here interr'd, have been ſuch as have left behind them the reputation of great ſanctity, whence it is, that from time to time they come to viſit theſe tombs. There is a ſmall village at the foot of the mountain, and beyond that, to the north-eaſt, a fine plain bordered with hills and mountains, and to the north-weſt the mountain of *Kala-kuluſtahan* with ſome villages. The town which you ſee at a diſtance, and the country round about, have a very fine effect upon the eye. You have alſo, as you approach the town, a fine ſtone fountain or ciſtern, whoſe water is admirable, and a little beyond that, a ſpring which runs away thro' a ſubterraneous canal towards the mountains, and by another canal goes and diſcharges itſelf into the very town.

Miſtake of ſome authors.

Upon the *nineteenth*, I prepared what I had, to ſend by the *Caravan*, which we followed ſome days afterwards. The next day I went to the village of *Pyrmaraes*, where there are two very famous tombs. In my way thither, I paſſed by a very fine ſpring, and croſſed ſeveral brooks upon little ſtone bridges. Two leagues from the town, I ſaw one that ſeemed to be ancient, conſiſting of three ruined arches built of great blocks of ſtone, under which there ran a very clear ſtream. I ſaw ſeveral others under which there ran no water at all. 1703.

Pyrmaraes.

The town of *Samachi* makes a conſiderable figure, when beheld from the hills, upon which there are ſeveral burying-grounds, and ſome pretty large tombs. About noon I got to *Pyrmaraes*, which is a large village built of ſtone and earth: it is about four leagues to the eaſtward of the town, in a great plain, as you go towards the mountains on the left hand. You there ſee the tomb of *Seid Ibrahim*, a certain ſaint, in great reputation over all this country. The place where he is depoſited has a good deal the look of a fortreſs, and is encompaſſed with a wretched ſort of a wall. Within ſide we found a ſtable where we put up our horſes. Immediately there came a ſervant to invite me to his maſter's apartment, who had the care and charge of this place. He received me very obligingly, and aſked me from whence I came, and what had brought me thither? Having anſwered him that I was moved thereto by curioſity, he very politely offered to wait on me himſelf, and ſhew me all the places that were worth the ſeeing.

Tomb of Ibrahim.

There is a pretty large ſquare before this building, to the right hand of which, as you go in, this officer has a ſpacious apartment, the floor of which was covered with carpets: from thence you go, on the left hand, into the court of this building, which is ſpacious and well executed, and afterwards into a ſecond where are ſeveral tombs, upon which are *Turkiſh* characters and ornaments. You then come to the ſepulchre of the ſaint himſelf, which is ſhut up with a wooden door, thro' which you go into a ſmall vault, where there is a coffin, and from thence into a pretty apartment which receives light from three ſides above, and is

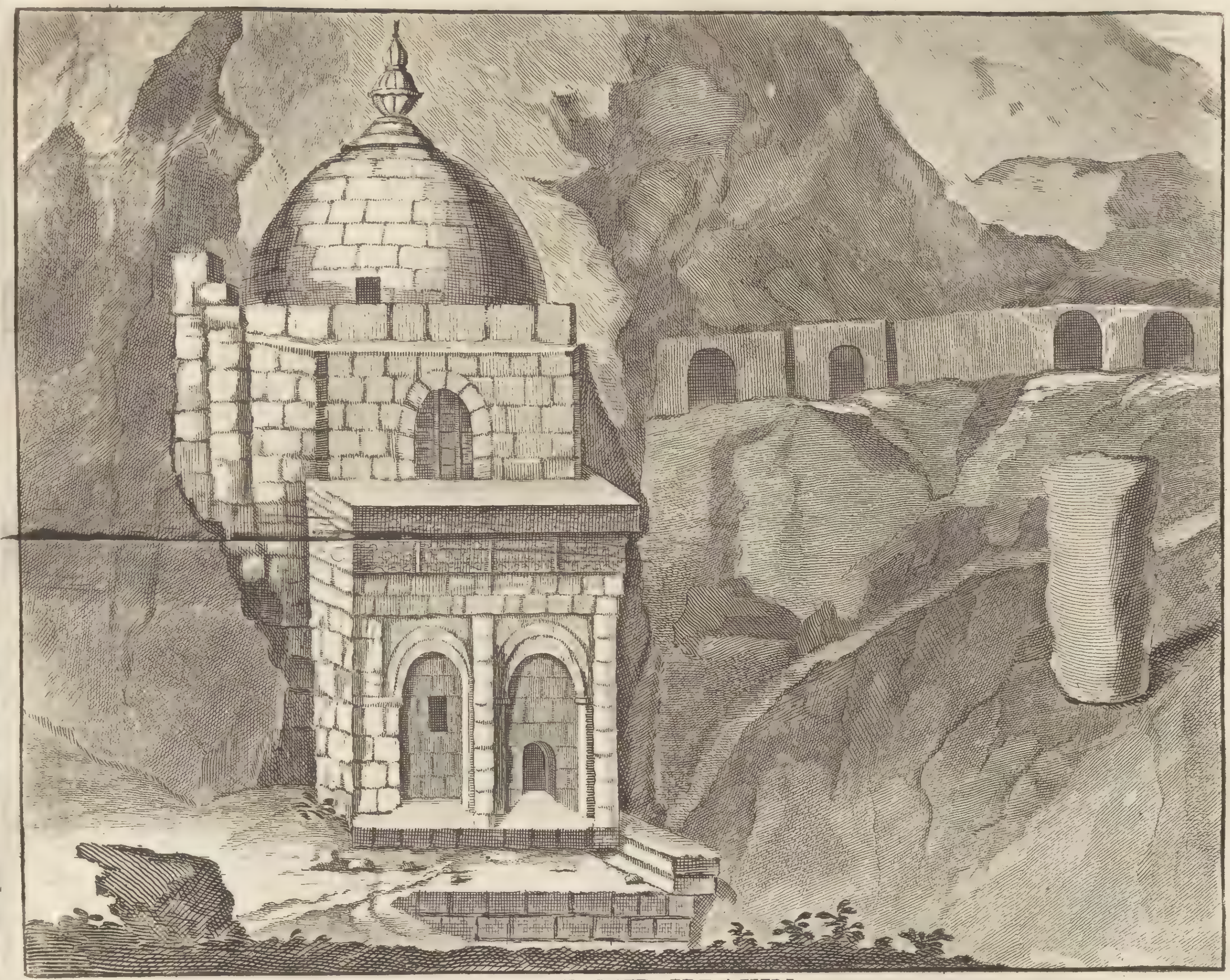
1703. covered with carpets, ſtriped ſtuffs and mats; here you muſt pull off your ſhoes, that you may not ſpoil this furniture. You then go thro' a ſmall door, on the right hand of the firſt vault, into three apartments, in the firſt of which there are three coffins, five in the ſecond, which is on the right, and in the middle of the third, which is on the left, that of the ſaint himſelf, covered with a great green cloth or pall. The portals of this building are about thirty ſix foot high, and ſome fathoms in depth; and you go up by twelve ſteps, each of one ſtone. The top is not vaulted, and the wall, in its upper part, looks like a fortreſs, having at each angle a kind of guerite. This building is forty paces long to the right, and thirty one in breadth. Over the tomb there is a ſmall opening covered with a ſtone, and over the gate there are many *Arabian* characters, hewn out in the ſtone, and others traced out in black upon the walls which are white. At the diſtance of twenty paces from this building, you go down fifteen vaulted ſteps, and afterwards, down ten others contiguous thereto, and the laſt of which are not vaulted, from whence you go into a ſubterranean, which is thirty three paces in length, and nine in breadth, and which is vaulted from one end to the other, and is full thirty ſix foot in height. The ſtones of this vault are fine, large, and well compacted or joined, but the plaſter they were formerly covered with is almoſt all fallen down by the length of time. I fancy this ſubterranean was formerly deſigned to keep water in; and water comes in ſtill, whenever it rains hard, by a ſubterraneous canal which comes from the mountains in the neighbourhood, and runs through an hole made in the ſecond ſtep. This ſubterranean has two vents at top thro' which it receives light. At the entrance into this building there is a ſtone wall, and ten paces from thence there are twenty ſtone troughs which ſerve for watering of cattle. They are put together, and each of them conſiſts of one ſtone, three foot and half long, and two and an half broad. You have here alſo ſeveral open wells, as well as in the village and the country round about, many of which are ſtopped up at the mouth. It is likely enough that they formerly ſerved for aqueducts, and this ſeems to have been more probably the caſe, ſeveral of them conveying water under ground into theſe ſubterraneous vaults, there to be kept. This is what was common enough among the ancients, and I have ſeen the ſame myſelf at *Alexandria*, and in the neighbourhood of *Naples*. It was after this manner the ancient *Medes* preſerved their water. The *Perſians* were mightily pleaſed to ſee how exactly I ſurvey'd every thing; I then thanked the Gentleman who had charge of this monument, and deſired him to give me ſomebody to carry me to the other, which he accordingly did in the moſt obliging manner in the world. In our way thither, we rode over a mountain; but we were obliged to alight from our horſes to the eaſtward, where it was ſo very ſteep we were often under a neceſſity of laying hold on the rock to prevent our falling. It is upon the declivity of this rock that the tomb of *Tiribbaba* ſtands. You there go down three ſteps into a ſquare as broad as the building, which is twenty eight foot in front, and looks upon the ſteepeſt part of the mountain. The frontiſpiece of it is of great beauty, and conſiſts of large ſmoothed ſtones. There are two windows which penetrate three palms into the wall: That on the left is glazed in the middle, and has a ſtone lattice, which ſeems to be all of one piece; to this they have faſtned ſeveral ſlips of various colours. The window on the right is of great ſtones, which are four palms and an half broad, and eight high; and you go up three ſteps to get to the portal, which is ſhut with a wooden gate. From thence you go into a ſmall ſquare apartment, with pretty nitches on all ſides, and a ſmall dome;

Tomb of Tiribbaba.

1703. dome; it is not above five foot in extent from one side to the other below. The wall on the right hand, as you go in, joins to the rock. On the left hand you go up by three steps, one of which is higher than the other two; by these you go up into an apartment which is fourteen foot long, and ten foot broad, with a vaulted roof about thirty six foot high. Opposite to the door there is a flight of fifteen steps, the first of which is high, the second broad, and the rest most of them of one stone only, and about thirteen inches thick. This flight of steps is two foot and an half broad, and leads up to an apartment adorned with eight nitches, with a great window in front, and a wooden lattice, and a dome over head. This room is covered with mats, and has three doors. There are also two openings on the right hand, one of which is a great nitch, shut in by a kind of window of wrought stone; and that on the left of this shuts with a well wrought folding door, which, however is but four foot high and two foot broad; so that you must bend yourself to go thro' it. You have also here a small grotto hewn out of the rock, against which this monument is built, and in the corner against the same rock, a small stone balustrade in a semi-circular form, of which the other half naturally comes out. This is the place where the saint is at rest upon his knees after their manner: this is what they say themselves, to which they add, that he is covered with a white veil, dressed in grey, and in the posture which he was the most naturally used to in his life-time, without being altered in the least. This is a favour obtained of heaven for him by St. *Ibrahim* who was his disciple. This apartment is fourteen foot square from side to side, and is very much adorned, having two small columns on one side of each nitch to the right and left, with a step raised two foot. This which is before the window in the front is about three foot deep, and that where rests the Saint is still more: 1703.
the height of the vault is about twenty one foot. From thence you go up a flight of twelve steps into a small apartment on the left hand, and on the right hand of you, you have four or five broken steps, and a little door thro' which you must creep upon your belly to get to the top of the building, which is crowned with a lofty dome, around which you may go by three places among the rocks. The passage of the first is two foot and an half, of the second two foot, and one before, where there was an opening to the front. We then went down the mountain by a path more convenient than the first, and we went up another eminence over against the first, there to see the other tomb; but we there only found a bare wall without the least traces of any monuments, from whence that place borrows its name. It is surrounded with a poor square wall, from whence you see the fine tomb we have been describing, and of which you have the representation in the following plate. In the side I came by, I observed several grottos hewn out of the rock.

About four in the afternoon, I went from *Pyrmaraes*, and it was about eight before I arrived at *Samachi*. The next day the *Armenians* entertained me in one of their gardens without the town, where they dressed their victuals among the trees, of which there were several sorts, and among the rest, willows of an extraordinary size, quince-trees, mulberry-trees, and others unknown with us, and which I shall dilate on hereafter.

As we were returning, the *Armenians* began to sing and play by the way, after the manner of their country, and even to drink to the sound of a drum; after which they went to visit some of their friends in the *Caravansera*, so that it was late before they returned home. Now it happ'ned that four *Armenians*, who had been all this time left to take care of the houses, were murdered in their sleep by



TOMBEAU DE SEID IBRAHIM.

Murder of four Armenians. some *Persians*: Whereupon two of the *Armenians* in our *Caravansera* went to complain of it to a *Persian* Lord, who promised the villains should be punished according to their demerits, in case they were discovered.

Review of the horse. Upon the *twenty sixth*, there was a review of some *Persian* horse in the great court of the *Khan*'s palace. This review had been partly made the evening before, and the rest was put off to the next day. It was performed by three hundred troopers at a time, armed compleatly as for the field. Some had lances, bows and arrows, others had fire-arms, and some had bows and arrows only; indeed these last had canes with a button at the end, which they use with great dexterity. Under their vests they had coats of mail and brassets, and little morions in form of caps upon their heads, with visors; and were perfectly well dressed after the *Persian* manner, and especially the officers, who had vests of gold and silver brocade. There were some of these Gentlemen who had six or seven led horses; and private men that had one, besides another the servant that led him rode upon, and another servant on foot. The *Khan* was seated at the end of the court upon a place raised up above the rest, and the horse was in small divisions at the other end, expecting

1703. ing to be called each by his name; upon which they advanced upon the gallop, by two and two, sometimes three and three, and sometimes four, up to the place where the *Khan* was seated, and having been inrolled, they filed off another way. The review being over, the trumpets sounded a retreat, and this was done in two hours time, and sure it was a sight well worth the seeing. They went thro' some motions or parts of exercise with a very peculiar grace; tho' indeed there were some who were not so exact and adroit as the rest, either from want of experience in themselves, or use in their horses. As to the rest, those who acquitted themselves the best, were rewarded with a certain prize, in presence of the chief Lords of the country who waited upon the *Khan*, together with a great 1703. crowd of spectators. The pay of *Pay of the troops.* these troops is very considerable, and particularly the pay of the officers. Every private trooper has yearly five or six hundred florins each, and they augment their pay in proportion, as they deserve it by extraordinary services in times of action; besides that it is no unusual thing to make them presents. The sons of these cavaliers are paid also as such; tho' indeed they are obliged to furnish a man at their own expence, in times of war, when they happen to be under age. At this review there were children on horseback that were not above eight or ten years old, with a servant at the side of them.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Departure from Samachi. *Course of the* Kur *and the* Araxes. *Manner of winding off silk. Arrival at* Ardevil.

I Took my leave that day to go and join the *Caravan*, which was upon the very point of setting forward. My companion *Jacob, John de David* took another road, that he might go through some trading towns where he had business, and the two other *Armenians* promised to follow me in a day or two. I met with some fertile grounds in the mountains to the southward of the town, some springs and houses, and at sunset I came up with the *Caravan* beyond the village of *Nogdi*. The next day I went to take an airing upon the top of a mountain, from whence I descended to a beautiful plain we were to cross, and at the foot of the mountain I took notice of some fine running springs of admirable water. One of the guides of the *Caravan* came to us in the evening to let us know that it would move very early the next morning. As we went over the mountains, I for the first time saw pomegranate trees in the village of *Langebus*, as well as other fruit trees, and a vine loaded with grapes; its stem was short and thick, and not above an ell higher than the ground, a thing I had never before seen in my life. I there also saw a plant in blossom, from the roots of which there came out filaments a fathom long, and stretching along the surface; its fruit was as yet green, and looked like little cucumbers. When it is ripe, it is of a purple without, and a fine red within; many of them grow upon one plant. I drew one of them with its fruit, which the *Turks* call *Tje-beer*, and others *Kourack*; it is distinguished in the following plate by the letter *A*. In this same place I found another sort, whose fruit is red, and has small cods or blad-



bladders: It grows like the other, many upon a plant, which is higher by a foot and an half or two foot. This fruit is called *Doofsjandernage*, and is of the ſize of thoſe diſtinguiſhed by the letter *B*. After we had travelled over the mountains of *Derbent*, we came down into the fine plain, as mentioned juſt now, and extends beyond the reach of the ſight; but it was all parched up by the heat of the ſun, and the great droughts. The inhabitants of the country call it *Kraegh*. When you are at the end of the mountains, you have an imperfect ſight of the *Kur*. About ten in the morning, when we had travelled two leagues and an half, we halted in this plain; and there we ſtaid that day, and the next, and had very fair weather. We there had *Turks* and *Arabians* in cabbins, or hutts built of ſtraw, who furniſhed us with milk, melons, and the like; but as there was no ſuch thing as wood here, we were obliged to make fires of the camels dung wherewith to dreſs our victuals. They always ſtop in ſuch places where there is the beſt paſture for the camels and horſes. But the moſt inconvenient circumſtance there is that the water is all foul, ſo that it muſt be left to ſettle ſome time, an hour or two, or ſo, to fine, which is quite terrible, when in the midſt of theſe great heats, a man is ready to choak with thirſt; nor is it poſſible to take with one a ſufficient ſtock of wine, becauſe of the

1703. the great number of bales a *Caravan* is incumbered with; so that in this case a man is obliged to make a virtue of necessity, and to take up with curdled milk, which they there call *Touvert*, and which they put into a cloth bag, through which the whey runs off. They then, to quench thirst, mix these curds with water, a practice very common with the *Turks*; so that you have both meat and drink at once. It is easily kept, and serves instead of cream, when mixed with sugar. We did not leave this plain till the *thirtieth* in the evening, and travelled away to the southward across this plain. We there met with another *Caravan*, and some *Turks* under tents. At break of day, we got to the village of *Sgawad*, to the westward of the *Kur*, upon an eminence, on the banks of which we halted. This village is of great extent, and contains a great number of gardens full of white mulberry-trees and melons. The next day I went half a league to the conflux of the *Cyrus* and *Araxes*, famous rivers, now called the *Kur* and *Aras*. I observed in this place that the *Aras* came from the south, whence it derives its source in the mountains of *Algeron*, and the *Kur* from the north of *Tilvies*, where it runs by the town of that name. Having united their waters together, they go away towards the north-east, beyond *Sgawad*, from thence they continue their course east, and go winding away till they are lost in the *Caspian*. For the rest, it would be no easy task to trace out their intricate meanders. I drew as well as I could the place where these two rivers meet, as you may see in numb. 45, where they divide the country of *Mogan* from *Media* or *Shirwan*. The *Araxes* is distinguished by *A*, the *Kur* by *B*, and their united streams by *C*.

The Kur *and* Aras.

We sent our bales over to the other side in several boats to the village, where we had halted, and our horses and camels swam over, which amounted to a two days work. As the waters were very low at that time, the bottom of the river was to be seen in several places, and a great bank of sand in the middle, on the side of which, however, it was very deep, and where the camels were obliged to swim over. When the waters are low here, they commonly make a bridge of boats, made fast together by a large iron chain, which they cast off when the river swells and widens; but it was not yet ready. On the other side there are two or three small houses made of reed, where they wind off silk. I had the curiosity to go into them, and found that at this work they require no more than the assistance of one person at a time. There was, on the right hand going in, a stove which they heated from without, and in which there was a great caldron of almost boiling water, in which were the cods of the worms. The person that wound off the silk sat upon this stove, on one side of the caldron, and with a small stick frequently removed the cods; in this small cottage I also observed a large wheel of eight or nine palms in diameter, and which was fixed between two posts, which he turned with his foot as he sat upon the stove, just as we turn a spinning wheel; and before the stove there were two sticks, upon which there was a reed, round which turned two small pullies which guide the silk from the cods to this wheel. They assured me that this manner and method of winding off silk is the common one all over *Persia*; and confessed it must be that they this way do it with surprising ease and dispatch. The cods, however, were not very large.

Manner of winding off silk.

Most of the trees I observed hereabouts were young, and were very short stemmed, that they may always have leaves upon young branches, the worms not caring for the leaves of old wood. These gardens are surrounded with willows and alders, and are divided from each other by partitions of reed, as well as the houses, tho' there are some





LES RIVIERES

LES RIVIERES KUR, ET ARAS. 46



KUR, ET ARAS. 47

1703. ſome of them ſurrounded with earth: there was a row of them after this manner along the river ſide. You have the repreſentation of this river and of the manner of carrying the goods over it in numb. 46. Proviſions were there extremely cheap; a fowl was to be had for two-pence, a melon for a penny, and the reſt in proportion.

Upon the *ſecond* of *September*, there arrived a *Caravan* from *Ardevil*; it had been ten days upon the road; and in the evening before another from *Tebries*, which had been a fortnight on its way hither. The two *Armenian* merchants I have mentioned, and a *German* I had, came and joined me here: this laſt, who was out of order, had fallen from his horſe in the night, and had been left behind fainting in the plain for ſeveral hours. I ſent ſome people in queſt of him, but they returned without any tidings of the poor man, ſo that I was obliged to ſend back a ſecond time after him when it was day; and theſe had the good luck to find him, and brought him on with them; and as the horſe he rode ſtood by him all the time he was down, he had the good luck, into the bargain, to loſe nothing; but his fall had ſo weakned him, that it was as much as ever he could do to keep pace with the *Caravan.*

This part of the country, which is low, is full of a paſture, which is a foot or two high, and which the *Armenians* call *Poes*, and the *Turks* *Ooſſiaen*, which is moſt admirable for camels, who want nothing elſe when they can have that: Cows feed on it alſo, but horſes will not touch it. Upon the *third*, the reſt of our goods croſſed the river, together with the beaſts of burden, and we loſt two camels upon this occaſion. The horſes ſwam over, thoſe in the boats holding them faſt by ropes. We ourſelves croſſed it in the afternoon, and being now in the country of *Mogan*, I there a ſecond time drew the courſe of the river, and the country of *Shirwan*, as you have it numb. 47. The village we have been ſpeaking of, is ſo covered over with trees, that there is hardly any diſtinguiſhing the houſes. The two other guides of the *Caravan* joined us the next day. In the mean time, I went to take a view of the two rivers on this ſide, and was above an hour before I could get to the *Aras*, the banks were ſo thick of brambles, reeds, and other lofty vegetables; beſides that being attended by no body but my ſervant, I had not the good luck to find a beaten path, nor to meet with any body that could put us into one: At laſt, however, we got to a ſight of the river, and to ſome old empty houſes, where we met with no ſoul. On the contrary, we were obſtructed by a deep ditch, which obliged us to look out for another way to bring us nearer to the river, which after all we could not compaſs becauſe of the height and ſteepneſs of the banks. From where we were, however, we had a diſtinct view of the two rivers, and I took notice that the *Aras* came a little higher from the South-weſt, and that it was much narrower in that place than the *Kur*, not being, at the utmoſt, as well as I could judge, above forty or forty-five paces broad, whereas when joined together, they are above one hundred, and particularly near the village of *Sgawad*, which is in thirty nine degrees, fifty four minutes of northern latitude. I thought I ſhould have met with a good deal of game here, but I ſaw none at all; there grows a good deal of liquorice here. I came in again with the caravan at ſun-ſet, and at break of day we began to move after the camels, which were gone before. We travelled to the ſouth weſtward, and left the *Aras* on our right hand, and we halted in a plain three leagues from thence, where we ſaw a ſmall lake, which, in part, goes round a little hill, and ſtretches farther up into the country. This place is called *Celſan*, and is but half a league from the place where the *Aras* turns off to the right hand. 1703.

Paſture for camels.

1703. hand. In this lake when the water which comes from the *Aras*, is high, they take prodigious quantities of fish and tortoises, some of which we took were a foot in diameter, and some upon the shore. After the sun was set we held on our way, and had six hundred camels in our caravan, and three hundred horses. In the night we crossed a very level country, full of a bitter and very lofty herb or plant, called *Jassian*, of so venomous a quality, that if cattle but lay their mouth to it they die immediately, but great care is taken to prevent them from touching it: But the very worst of all is, that there is no water to be met with here for a stretch of twelve hours. We were all night in crossing this place, and at break of day we stopped by the side of a brook which comes out of the *Aras* to the west, and loses itself in the country a little farther. It was but three years that the *Khan* or governor of that country, who takes up his abode in these plains some months in summer, and in the winter resides at *Ardevil*, had caused it to be dug. The *Aras* is but two leagues distant from it, and this brook is but five or six foot broad; the water of it is pretty good to drink, though somewhat foul by reason of the sand, but it fines when left to settle, and tastes well enough. On one side of this brook there are some houses, and some cabbins made of rush, which have been here about three years. This place is called *Anhaer*, and is the only village in all these parts. I here met with a longish kind of water-melon, white and very sweet within, and different from all I had ever seen elsewhere: the seed of it is not black, like that of the rest, and is very small, and of a chesnut colour. I here took notice also of a fruit they call *Chamama*, or *Breast of a Woman*, because it is in that shape; it is very wholesome, and of a very pleasant scent. It is not very unlike the white melons, but it is firmer, and nearly of the colour of the *China* orange; some of them are also of the same size, and the *Armenians* told me, they grow also at *Ispahan*, where they are in great request, and where they carry them in the hand by way of nosegay. Some of them are of the size of a small melon, and spotted with red, yellow and green; the seed of these is small and white; there are others which are all red. It is a grateful refreshment which abounds in this country, and which comes so cheap, that it does not cost you above an halfpenny or a penny. Other melons are there also very cheap, but they are not exquisite in their taste.

Great tortoises.

Venomous herb.

New brook.

Agreeable water-melons.

Pleasant fruit.

An hour before the setting of the sun, we proceeded upon our journey, travelling to the south eastward, and half a league from thence crossed a small river, five foot broad and eighteen inches deep. A horse laden with silk fell down here, the rest got safe over without any accident. In the night also we went over the plain or heath of *Mokar*, and upon the *seventh*, at two in the morning, we entered into mountains whose sands are as hard as gravel. An hour after sun rise we halted in a plain surrounded with hills and mountains, upon the banks of a river of clear water, called *Bascharu'tshei*, or *Balaru*, whose spring is in the country of *Talis*, and whence it runs till it empties itself into the *Caspian* sea; but it does not abound much with water at present, being supplied but by two springs which come from the mountains: The country round about bears the name of this river. For a considerable time before there had been no caravans this way, because of the numbers of robbers, which infested these parts; but about three years ago the *Khan*'s son offered the King to clear this country of robbers, upon pain of death, provided he would confer on him his father's government; the Prince hearkned to this, the new *Khan* repaired to his government, and acquitted himself perfectly well of his

Robbers rooted out.

1703. his promise; for he cut them all off, neither sparing women or children, so that you now travel there without any danger.

Upon the *eighth*, an hour before break of day, we proceeded on our journey, and at three were got into a plain, beyond the mountains, and near a village called *Sigomoerat*, consisting of ten or twelve rush cabbins, where we halted to wait for two camels which had strayed. In the morning we met with several *Persian* peasants, together with their wives, their children, and their cattle: These people are in the mountains during the winter, and during summer in the plains; they had the evening before brought us down forage from the mountains, which seem to be green; they are rather sandy than rocky. In the night there fell a deal of wet, and the rain was attended with violent claps of thunder. Three hours before day, two *Armenians* and myself went on, but the night was so dark, we could hardly see before us, and upon observing, that the caravan did not follow us, we went back again to it, therewith to wait the appearance of day. As soon as ever it appeared, we moved on to the village of *Barsan*, on one side of which we halted in a plain incompassed round with high lands, and watered by the river we just now mentioned. As we were very wet, we would have dried ourselves in the village, but the cabbins were so thoroughly poor and wretched, that we were glad to go back again to our tents; though the village is tolerably large, and under the shelter of many trees. It rained so much all night, that our bales, which stood upon the ground, floated upon the water. The weather preventing us from moving forward, we returned a second time to the village, where we were obliged to change our quarters twice, not finding shelter from the rain, because of the opening these cabbins have at top, to let in the light. In short, we were obliged to dry our things by a fire made of cows and camels dung. Upon the *eleventh* of the month the weather changed for fair, and we sent our camels before us in the evening, and followed them three hours before day, with the weather tolerably clear and light, though we saw neither moon nor star. Half an hour afterwards we crossed the small river of *Barsand*, and the same we were forced to do fourteen or fifteen times together in the space of an hour. After this we went over some very high mountains, covered with snow, where we found it extremely cold, tho' at the same time there fell a sort of a drizzling rain. The next day we got into the plains, near the village of *Noeraloe*, consisting of some cabbins and tents of *Tartars*. We there bought good fowls for three-pence a piece, and eggs for a penny a dozen; besides that, we had there good milk and good butter. When we had travelled half a league farther, we halted between the mountains, in a fine level, upon the banks of the little river of *Siloof*, whose waters are both clear and good. The hills and mountains there also are very pleasant, and full of villages. The weather grew better about noon; the sun dispersed the clouds, and we moved on again at midnight, by a fine moon-light, over hill and dale. The next day we halted upon a sort of an eminence, five leagues from the place where we had passed the night, and two leagues from *Ardevil*, where we had sight of lofty mountains covered with snow. About nine at night we pushed on by a fine moon-light, which lasted not long, but was succeeded by a thick fog, which continued till morning, and made us straggle out of our way. Early in the morning however we got to the village of *Adsgarneloe*; we went over a bridge of six arches, under one of which runs the river of *Goeroetsjou*, or the *Dry River*. About ten in the morning, the caravan halted in the village, and we went on to the city, where we dismounted at the *Armenian Caravansera*. The fog continued

1695. tinued till the *fifteenth* in the morning, and then it dispersed, and because we were to make some stay at *Ardevil*, I sent for my baggage from the village. 1703.

CHAP. XXXV.

Sumptuous Mezar, *or Mausoleum*, *of* Sefi, *King of* Persia. *Description of* Ardevil. *Fine tomb near* Kelgeran. *Departure from* Ardevil. *Arrival at* Samgal.

As I was extremely impatient to have a sight of the magnificent Mausoleum of *Sefi* and some other Kings of *Persia*, who are buried here, I shall speak of that before I begin to say any thing of the city itself. *Sumptuous tomb.* These tombs then are near the *Meydoen*, a square of pretty large extent; the entrance into them is spacious, and of a fine sort of architecture, vaulted over head, and the stones painted of various colours. You go in by a wooden gate, and enter into a fine long gallery, upon the top of the walls of which are several niches curiously painted with blue, green, yellow, and white, and at the end of this gallery you come to a door plated over with silver, which admits you into a magnificent apartment, on the right hand of which there is a great hall crowned with a dome, without any pillars to support it, like that of the *Rotunda* at *Rome*, but not so large. This hall, which is opposite to the library and a chappel, is covered with carpets; and on the left hand, opposite to the entrance of the dome, there is another lofty apartment, with great glass windows. From thence you go through another door plated over with silver, into a court which is nearly a square, and whose wall is about eighteen foot high, with three niches on each side, painted with blue and various other colours, and adorned with flowers and foliages in carved work. On the right hand *Tombs.* of you, you have several tombs, with raised coffins, some of which are greatly ornamented, and others, on the left hand, divided by a small wall, where they say are the ashes of many Princes descended from the royal families of the country, against the wall of that of *Sefi.* To the right and left of this court there is an apartment raised three foot from the ground, and vaulted over head in the manner of domes. They are partitioned in the front by a wooden balustrade towards the court, and in one of the corners of this court, on the left hand, is a great folding door, with a balustrade covered over with silver, and with a chain of massy silver. Here you must pull off your shoes to go in, nor presume to touch the sill, which is of white marble: The like there are to all the other apartments whose entrance is covered with mats. Here we found several *Persians* sitting to the right and left upon stone benches, and to these is committed the care of this sepulchre, and to these must you give a present of money before you go any farther. When it happens that the present you offer to them is not thought enough, they fail not to be so free as to tell you so, and sometimes demand five or six times as much; but when they find that the curious visitant is not in the humour to give them what they would have, and is about to put on his shoes to go back again, they begin to grow civil, and rather than take nothing, they accept of what you think fit to give them.

1703. them. When you are got through this door, you come into a ſmall vaulted place in the manner of an half dome; from thence you, on the right hand, go through a door adorned with a baluſtrade of gold, or elſe of ſilver richly gilt, and come into a magnificent room full of candles or of lamps of gold and ſilver, ſome of which are an ell in circumference, and ſo many in number, that there is no counting them. The floor here was covered with carpets, and on each hand full of ſmall reading deſks, with large books upon them. This room is fifty two foot long, but thirty four broad: The Mauſoleum of *Sefi* is at the end of this place, raiſed upon three ſteps, and the lamp which hangs over it is of fine maſſy gold, and of the largeſt ſize. Beyond this you ſee a baluſtrade which is alſo of maſſy gold, raiſed upon a ſtep, round, and of the thickneſs of an inch, which is ſix foot and nine inches long, excluſive of the fronton of the door, and nine foot ten inches high. This door has two folds, through which you go into a ſmall round Chappel, in the middle of which you ſee the tomb of *Sefi*, made of marble and covered with a magnificent pall of gold brocade, and crowned at each corner with a great golden vaſe; and this chappel is full of ſilver lamps, intermixed with others of gold. This tomb is nine foot long, four foot broad, and three foot high. There were two before it, one of which was that of a child, and two behind, five in all, which are thoſe of *Sefi* himſelf, of King *Fedredin*, a ſon of *Sefi*'s; of King *Tzenid*, and of a ſon of *Fedredin*'s, called *Soltan Aider*, who was flead by the *Turks*, another of a ſon of '*Tzenid*'s, and that of King *Aider*. Every night they light up the lamps about theſe tombs, and two great tapers, which they put into candleſticks of maſſy gold. Over this tomb there is a ſmall dome covered over with gold, and another on one ſide of it, incruſted with blue and green glazed ſtones. Some authors affirm, it is unlawful

Tomb of Sefi.

Other tombs.

for any layman, not excepting even the King himſelf, to go in at the golden door to get at the tomb of *Sefi*, but I experienced the contrary; indeed I did but juſt ſtep in, without preſuming to go any farther, well aware of the veneration they have for this place. For the reſt you muſt have money ready at every ſtep, though you have ſufficiently paid upon your firſt admiſſion, you muſt have your hand in your purſe at the door of every room. But to do them juſtice, they anſwer very civilly to the queſtions you aſk them, and never hurry you; on the contrary, I thought it did not pleaſe them a little, to obſerve with what accuracy I ſurveyed what they ſhowed me. 1703.

At the entrance into this ſumptuous apartment, you have, on the left of you, ſeveral ſmall chambers which are ſhut up, in which they aſſured me there were other tombs of Kings and Queens, among others, thoſe of King *Iſhmaël*, the ſon of *Aider*; of King *Tamar*, the ſon of *Iſhmaël*; of King *Iſhmaël* II. the ſon of *Tamar*; of King *Mohammed Khodabend*, the ſon of *Iſhmaël*; of *Iſhmaël Mirſa*; of *Hemſa Miſſa*, and of the brothers of King *Abbas*, the ſon of *Khodabend*. Theſe tombs are deſtitute of ornaments.

Tombs of ſeveral kings.

As you go out of the fine hall of this building, you turn on the right hand into a place which leads to the kitchen, the door of which alſo is plated over with ſilver; yet this ſame kitchen, which is ſpacious enough, does by no means correſpond with the magnificence of the door. In the midſt of it there are two great wells, and in the wall, which is of a good height, there are ſeveral holes filled with pots and kettles, and beneath ſome large ſtoves. Here they dreſs victuals for thoſe who have the care and guard of the ſepulchre, beſides that they every night diſtribute *Peloe* to ſome hundreds of poor people.

Charity to the poor.

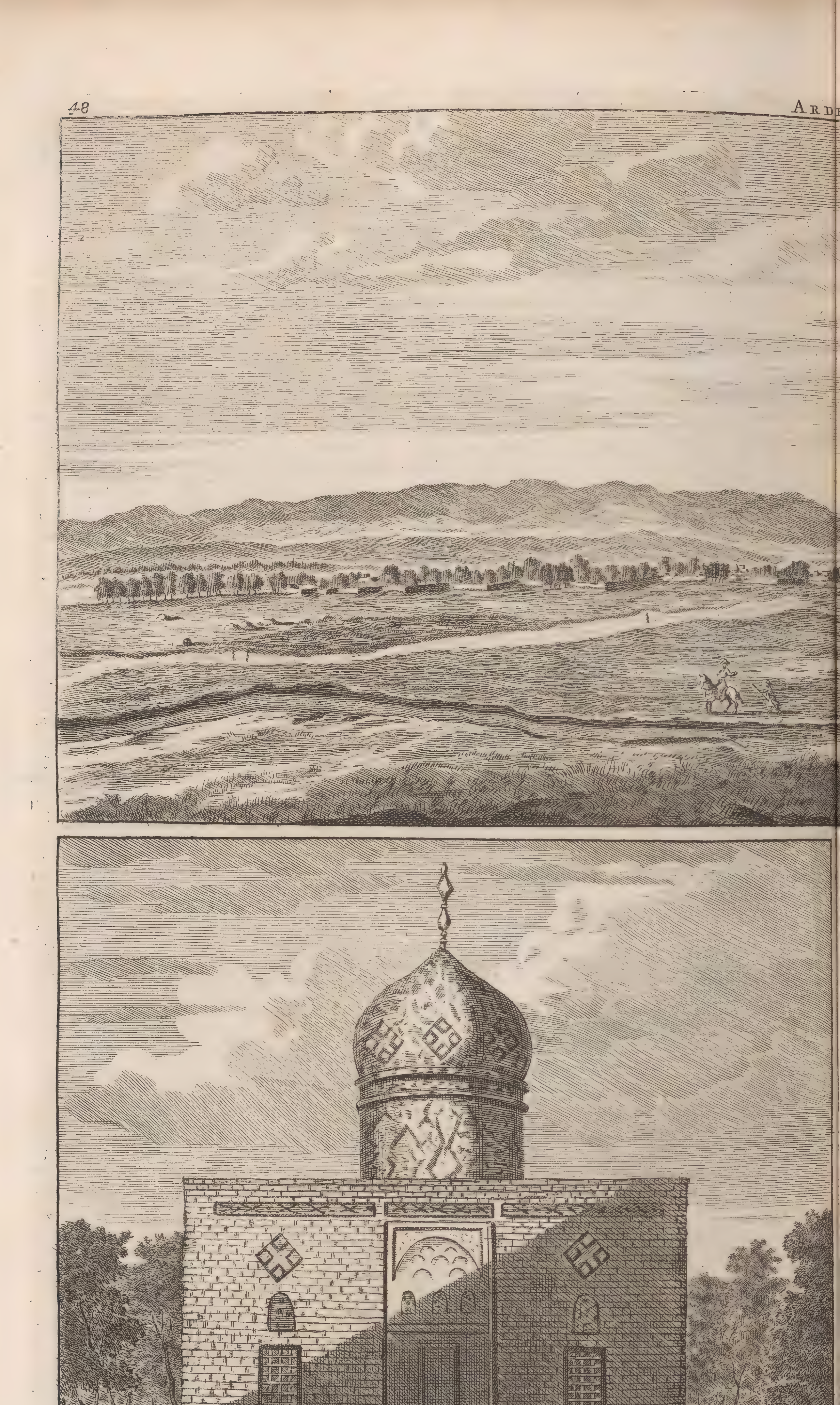
Having thus ſatisfied my curioſity, I returned to the *Meydoen*, to ſee the King's gardens, which are divided

1703. vided from each other by a wall on one side of the tombs. King *Sefi* there formerly took up his abode, in a stone building which is now falling into ruins. There are here still to be seen two apartments provided with chimnies, in which, they will have it, this Prince formerly resided; there are several others besides, and a small bath, but without any ornaments. The first garden, which is tolerably large, is ill kept and irregular, tho' well stored with fruits; but there are here neither flowers nor plants worth the notice; it is, in several places, watered by springs which cross it up and down. The second garden has no building in it, nor is it so large as the first, though the trees there are higher than in the former. Upon the whole, no body would ever have taken it for a royal garden.

Leaving this garden, I went to divert my self with fishing, in a small river which comes down from the mountains. I there met with *Conduit.* a conduit or aqueduct for the conveyance of water; it was made of earth, and raised some feet above the ground, and on the top of it there was a gutter for the water to run in, and beneath, thro' a house, built on purpose to convey it to the town, where it serves to water the gardens. It falls like a torrent, beyond this house, into this small river which runs through the country. We caught only three or four small fish, which I preserved in spirits. The next day I rode out on horseback half a league to the southward of the town, to draw a prospect of it on that side; it was upon a hill I took my stand, the only place from whence I could have a view of it, because of the trees which every where else shade it; and indeed it is seen imperfectly enough even from thence. Mean time a shower of rain falling down upon me, I was obliged to return before I had been able to do any thing towards the completion of my design: Upon the way I saw an house where there is a water-mill for grinding of corn; the water that drives it falls from 1703. the top of the highest hills to the westward of the town: these hills are always covered with snow, and the water runs through a canal raised of earth for that purpose; this water falls with great violence beneath the house, and spreads itself over the flat country to the south-east, where the other conduit is, which I mentioned just now. These houses have a mill beneath, and two great milstones which continually turn upon a piece of hollow wood, where the corn goes through a wooden pipe under the milstone, and the flower comes out at the sides. The river runs near this house under a great and lofty bridge, of five arches, the lower part of which is paved with large stones.

Let us now proceed to speak of *Situation of* Ardevil. the situation of the city, which they indifferently call *Ardevil* or *Ardebil*; and is in the north of *Persia*, and east of the province of *Sherwan* in the ancient *Media*; to the south of the *Caspian* sea, and to the east of the town of *Tauris*. The buildings here are finer than those at *Samachi*, though of the very same sort of materials. The *Bazars* here are also finer, and better covered; but they deal here very little in gold stuffs, or jewels, as they are pretended to have done formerly, and as they do in other places. They have here a great number of *Moschs* adorned with domes, the most considerable of which is that of *Mu-zyd*, *Mu-zhit*, or *Mazjit Adine*, or that of *Sunday*; it is on *Chief* Mosch. the east side of the town, and within the wall of it, and being on a small eminence, is conspicuous at a distance off. It is divided into several parts where they perform their service; the chief of them is tolerably large and round, under a dome, which is raised upon a round wall somewhat low, which rises from the body of the building in the nature of a steeple. Before this *Mosch* there is a reservoir or bason, supplied with water from the hills, whence it comes in pipes laid under ground;





50.





1703. ground; and this water serves to refresh those who in great numbers come here to perform their devotions: The rest are by no means so considerable as this. There are also many *hamans*, or *bagnio's* in this town. For the rest, there are here but three or four large streets, where the chief shops are, the rest are not worth speaking of; the houses are flat at top, and nasty to look at. There are not here so many caravanseras as at *Samachi:* The *Indians* have three, tho' they are in no great numbers here; as for the *Chinese*, they have none at all, and indeed trade flags here very much. This town in many parts of it abounds with lofty alders and lindens, and the river runs on one side of it. The high-ways are there also planted with rows of young trees, which in time cannot fail to have a very pleasant effect. The finest place in and about this town is the *Meydoen*, or square, where stands the Mausoleum of *Sefi*; to the right and left you have little houses inhabited by poor artificers. Most of the houses in this city, which are not in the *Bazars*, have the pleasure and convenience of gardens full of fruit trees; and there are some large spots in the out parts of the town, where the houses are at a distance from each other, which are full of trees. And hence it is that it is of a large extent, with a number of saliant angles; so that it is much larger than *Samachi*, though it does not contain such a number of houses. It stands in the midst of a great plain, which is three good leagues in extent from one end to the other, and surrounded by lofty mountains, the highest of which, and upon which the snow continually lies, is called *Sevalan*, or *Sebelahu*, it is to the west, north-west of the town. That of *Chilan* is to the east, or south-east. There is one the same at *Dervies*, called *Sahand*, and a fourth not far from *Hamadan*, which they call *Alvand*, and which is the loftiest of them all: They are called the *Brothers*, because they have a resemblance of each other. In the mountains in the neighbourhood of this town there are several hot baths, very much esteemed among them; one of them is but two leagues from thence, a second three, and others farther off. When I first came to this place, I had much ado to go along the streets for the crowds of those who, tempted by the novelty of my *Dutch* habit, ran about to see me; and this is what happened to me when I went to visit the sepulchre of *Sefi*, where they thought the cudgel was absolutely necessary to keep the curious multitude from about me; for they wanted to go in with me. And this was an inconvenience I could not be free from when I was in the caravansera where I lodged, and where a *Persian* offered money to have a sight of me. 1703.

Mountains called the Brothers.

Hot baths.

In the midst of all this, I drew a prospect of the town, from a small eminence, near the bridge I have before mentioned, which is on one side, to the south-west; you have it represented, in number 48, such as it is to be seen from without. The domes of the sepulchre of *Sefi* are distinguished by the letter A: There are but three of them to be seen; for the fourth, which is covered with gold, is not to be beheld from that place, because it is smaller and lower than the rest. The letter B distinguishes the great mosch of *Adine*, and C, a bridge of eight arches, upon the river which crosses the plain. No more is to be seen, because of the height of the trees the town is surrounded with. You have a representation of the bridge of five arches in number 49.

Upon the *sixth of October*, I went to the village of *Kelgeran*, which is a good half league to the northward of the town: You pass by the sepulchre of *Sefi* to go thither, from whence the way is full of alders and lindens on each side of a small river. This is the habitation of most of the *Armenians*, who have here two small and very dark churches. As

1703. As you go out of the town you have a great road planted with trees on each side, which leads to a garden of the King's, inclosed with a mud wall, tolerably large, tho' as ill kept as those we have mentioned already. There are here, however, pretty good fruits, and especially apples, pears, and small plumbs; but the flowers are quite of the ordinary sorts. There is another over-against this with a ruined building, full of various apartments. As you go into the village you see the tomb of *Seid Tzeibrail*, the father of *Sefi*, where are also deposited the ashes of *Seid Sala*, the father of *Tzeibrail*, and those of *Seid Kudbeddin*, his grandfather. This tomb is in a garden surrounded with a mud wall with two great gates: That behind comes out to the road, and that in the front is in the village. Again, this tomb is square, indifferently lofty, and cased with small stones. At top there is a round tower, somewhat low, which supports a green dome, inlaid with gold and blue ornaments, surmounted with gold balls. There are six windows on each side of the walls, the highest of which are of exquisite workmanship, and painted and ornamented like the dome, and those beneath have an iron grate and shutters within. Beneath the cornish there are three small cavities adorned with variety of colours, and in the middle of the building behind, a wooden gate, with a step to ascend by. There is also above this door an ornament in form of an half vault, with three small windows. I found this door shut, and a fine portal to that in the front. As I could see no body about this sepulchre, I drew a representation thro' the crevices of the gate, such as you see it in number 50. Near the front of this building, in the village, you see a bason on the level of the ground, which is sixteen feet broad, and fourteen feet long. You go up to the door of this building, by six steps, and you must pull off your shoes to go over the sill of it, as the ceremony is at the sepulchre of *Sefi*, and most of those who pay a visit to this tomb kiss it. When you are come into the first apartment, which has a fine glass window aloft, and whose floor is covered with carpets, you see thro' a second door, opposite to the first, this tomb raised six foot high, and in the midst of a fine apartment; it is made of wood, and the inchasings are of gold, as they tell the story; the pall over it is of brocade, and above and before the door there are some lamps of gold and silver. They would not suffer me to stir beyond the door of the place where the tomb stands, though I took care to make particular observations upon all I saw there.

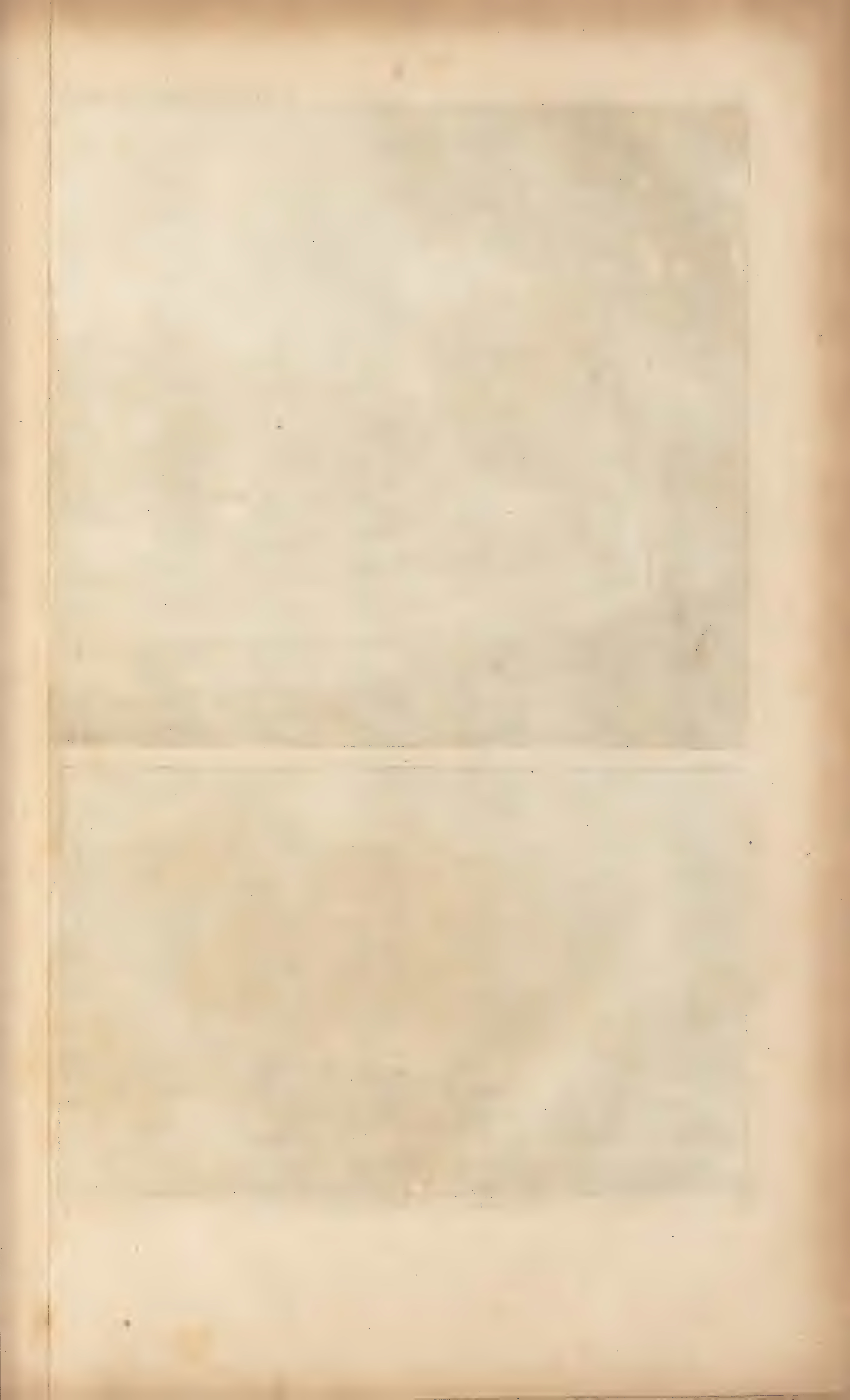
King's garden.

Royal tomb.

An ugly accident.

While I was busy in taking this view, my *Armenian* guide fell into a quarrel with the people of the place, who from words came to blows with him. I was sadly troubled at this, and did all I could to reconcile them, and prevent the ill consequences of such a disorder, well knowing the inhabitants of this place were proud and vindictive, and that the Governor of the province had been forty years in reducing them to a due sense of themselves, which he had not been able to effect, but by sending a part of them to *Ispahan*. They had formerly carried their brutality to that pitch, as even to force women from their husbands, whenever they pleased, not in the least caring who they murdered, if they offered to make head against their fury. At that time, not even the merchants were safe in their caravanseras from the insults of this rude untractable mob: but the Khan who governs them at present, has found out a way to repress their insolence, tho' he has but a guard of three hundred horse, without any foot.

Upon the *second* they carried the merchants goods to the village of *Adsgaerneloe*, where the guide of the caravan lived, who contrived matters so well, that he made us lose the very finest part of the season. Upon the *ninth*, he resolved to depart,



CARAVANE PROCHE AU VI



PONT SUR LA RIVIER KIESILOSAN.

ILLAGE CORAMING. 51



VILLAGE 'T SARGABRAND. 53



1703. part, but there fell ſuch a quantity of rain, that they were obliged to put off the journey till the *twelfth*. Some *Armenian* prieſts came to me here, and begged of me to contribute ſomething towards the building of a church, dedicated to Saint *John*, which they were at work upon in a village not far from the town. I made them a ſmall preſent, and wiſhed them all manner of ſucceſs in their undertaking.

Upon the *eleventh*, I prepared for my departure, after we had been a month at *Ardevil*, and ſent my baggage to the caravan. Riſing early in the morning of the next day, I met with a great number of *Perſians*, who were going through the town, ſinging and rejoicing for their happy return from *Mecca*, where they had been on pilgrimage to the tomb of their prophet *Mohammed*.

It was *three* in the afternoon when the caravan began to move, facing to the ſouthward, and having croſſed the plain, we came into mountains, from whence you have an advantageous proſpect of the town and the villages about, which have a very pleaſing effect; but we were there a little too far off to ſee objects diſtinctly. The caravan halted at the village of *Sardale*, three leagues from the town; but we were taken with ſo thick a fog, upon entering the mountains, that it was as much as we could do to ſee them: The ſoil about this village, which is of tolerable extent, is very fertile, and abounds in corn, which was heaped up on all ſides. We departed from hence at *three* in the morning, and compleated our journey over the mountains; and when you are beyond them, the higheſt ſeem to have their tops hid in the clouds. The ſoil there alſo is pretty fertile, and full of peaſants who were tilling the ground with oxen and buffaloes. Having paſſed through ſeveral villages, we, at *nine*, came to that of *Koraming*, which is tolerably large, and ſurrounded about with heaps of corn.

4

We there halted in the plain, by the ſide of a ſmall river which runs through it, and ſaw a number of ſnipes and thruſhes, of which I killed a good number, together with two young wild ducks. The grounds about theſe villages are full of willows, alders, and fruit-trees. We here waited for the reſt of our companions that were left behind, and in the mean time I drew the proſpect you have in number 51. 1703. *Shooting of birds.*

Towards evening, the fog came upon us again, and continued till midnight, when we came among the higheſt mountains, with a fine moonlight, and upon the *fifteenth* in the morning, came to the village of *Fattaba*. At break of day the next morn we moved on again among the mountains. The two *Armenians*, my friends, who ſtaid behind us, came and joined us this night; and upon the *ſeventeenth*, having travelled over many rocks, we halted among the mountains. That day we came up with our camels, which had gone before us, and half a league from thence we ſaw the famous mount *Taurus*, called by the inhabitants, *Caſeluſan*. It ſtretches far away up into the country, and aſſumes different names, according to the places it croſſes; but it retains its true name in the ſouthern parts of *Aſia Minor*. There are authors who confound it with mount *Caucaſus*. At three in the morning we began to aſcend it, found it very ſteep and full of rocks, with vaſt fiſſures, and frightful precipices, and as the roads and paths of it are very narrow, and very dangerous withal, we were obliged to alight from our horſes and go on foot. It moſt commonly requires but an hour to go over it; but we took up two, becauſe our caravan was more than uſually numerous. As you go down, you ſee precipices which ſtrike the traveller with horror in the night. When you are clear of this mountain, you come into a plain of pretty large extent, which you croſs to the left, and come to another mountain, or another *Mount Taurus.* *Frightful precipices.*

1703. ther branch of mount *Taurus*, which here divides itself into two, between which runs the river of *Kisilosan*, which they also call *Kurp*: It is very rapid in its course, and has several falls among the rocks, where it tumbles down with great violence; it springs up in the west, and runs into the *Caspian* sea. Over this river King *Tamar* built a stone bridge, which is ten paces broad, and one hundred and fifty paces long; it is tolerably lofty, and has six arches, three of which are very wide. Between four of these arches, there are three openings, and between the rest a kind of an half round tower. The river at present only runs under one or two of these arches, unless the waters be very high indeed. Having got over this bridge, we halted to wait for the caravan; in the mean time the *Armenians* betook them to their coffee, and I to take upon paper the prospect you have in number 52. We then ascended the second mountain, or branch of the *Taurus*, which is higher, vaster, and more steep than the former; but as we were much fatigued with having travelled over the first on foot, we were obliged to stop several times to take breath. At length coming to a better way, we mounted our horses again, and at break of day gained the top. The rest of the caravan did the same two hours after us, and half a league farther on we came into a fine and well-cultivated country. At nine in the morning we got to the village of *Kasiebeggidarassi*; where, for the first time, they brought us grapes, at the rate of four-pence a pound; and the ways are very good beyond mount *Taurus*, as well as the soil. From thence you have sight of another mountain, higher than the former, and continually capped with snow; but we halted a day to rest ourselves. Upon the *twentieth*, at *three* in the morning we proceeded on our journey, amid very fine weather, and by *seven*, we reached the neighbourhood of a brook not far from *Jamkoela*. Here they have extraordinary birds called *Baeker-Kara*. We then went through several villages, whence you see mount *Taurus* at a distance, in the manner it is represented in number 53. Upon the *twenty second*, we crossed a great plain, bordered by hills and mountains on the left hand, where they brought us grapes of a most exquisite flavour. Upon the *twenty third*, we arrived at the town of *Samgael*, beyond which we halted, and there met with very fine pomegranates of a beautiful colour and middling size, grapes and other fruits.

River of Kisilosan. *A remarkable bridge.* *Fine perspective.* *Mountain of* Sawalan.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Description of Samgael, *and of the places on the road thither. Arrival at* Com.

WE were obliged to stay here the next day to wait for the officers of the customs, who live without the town. *Samgael* has the look of a village, though there are there some lofty and well built houses, considering the country, some of earth only, and others of earth and stone together. They have here a fine bazar, which is covered and vaulted, and where they keep the principal shops, and particularly those of the drapers, where they sell all sorts of cotton stuffs and cloths. There are, however, other covered shops in other parts of the town, and a number of moschs adorned with domes, the chief of

Situation of Samgael.

54 SAMGAEL.



56



VÜE AUPRES SAMGAEL. 55



57.

VILLAGE GIHARA.



1703. which is painted a fine green, and glazed blue on the outſide. There is one running to ruin, which is pretty lofty with a dome, and which the *Turks* made uſe of, when they became maſters of this place; but though it is not very large, it ſtands pleaſantly in a plain, with high mountains to the weſt. Half a league from thence there runs a ſtream of fine clear water, where our caravan halted, in a place full of trees and walled gardens. I drew a proſpect of this town to the north-eaſt, as you ſee it in number 54. The letter A diſtinguiſhes the ruinous moſch of the *Turks*: the letter B points out the principal moſch, and C a great demoliſh'd building. And this is all that is remarkable at this place, which is deſtitute of all traces whereby to gueſs at its antiquity, tho' very ancient it is, and tho' it was a very flouriſhing place in the days of *Tamerlane*; but it was afterwards deſtroyed by the *Turks*. There is but one caravanſera here; it is indifferently large, built of earth and clay, and the ſmall river of *Saganſhaey* runs to the eaſt of it, and thence goes and throws itſelf among the mountains, where I drew the proſpect you have in number 55. This town is governed by a *Daroega* or Bailif, and there for every horſe-load of ſilk and cloth you pay the ſum of thirty pence, and but fifteen for commodities of leſs value. In the evening it began to rain, which it continued to do till about two hours before ſun-riſe. Upon the *twenty fifth* we purſued our journey, with a fine road, the officers of the cuſtoms having agreed to meet us at the place where we were to bait that day, there to receive their dues. We paſſed in ſight of ſeveral villages, and ſtopped at *Kurkjandy*, three leagues to the ſouth-eaſt of the town. In this place there is a branch of the *Taurus*, which ſtretches away from north to ſouth, towards *Curdeſtân*, inhabited by the *Curds*, who live in villages: they ſay they have nevertheleſs a ſmall fortreſs in the mountains, called *Keyder Peyamber*. Upon the *twenty ſixth*, we had much rain, and croſſed the plain in the midſt of it, travelling on towards the mountains, and at break of day we ſaw *Sultania* on our right, two leagues from the place, where we had paſſed a part of the night. This town ſtands in a plain, near mountains which almoſt incompaſs it round, with that of *Keyder* on the right hand; but as the guides of our caravan had no manner of buſineſs there, and as there is no going into it without paying certain duties, we, to my very great regret, paſſed by it. They had, however, flattered me they ſhould ſtop at a place not far off, but they not doing as they had ſaid, I rode back towards the town, and ſtopped upon an eminence near the eaſt ſide of it, where I drew the proſpect you have in number 56. It has four great moſchs, the three chief of which have large domes, and in one of them is the tomb of *Soltan Mohammed Khodabend*, who, as they ſay, laid the foundations of it about four hundred years ago: they aſſured me this tomb is magnificent and well built, and that the chapel of it is adorned with gold and ſilver. It looks moſt charmingly from without. 1703.

Town of Sultania.

Deſcription of it.

This town has neither gates nor walls, and all the houſes of it are built of earth, lime and clay. It has eight or ten caravanſeras, and ſome bazars, but not conſiderable, nor, indeed, can it be reckoned a trading place; tho' formerly, before it was deſtroyed by *Tamerlane*, it was one of the firſt towns in *Perſia*. The royal palace, once its moſt ſumptuous building, is now no more. Half a league from the town, there are the ruins of an old ſtone tower and gate, which it is likely belonged to the old city, which is in 36 degrees, 30 minutes of northern latitude.

I was two hours before I could overtake the caravan, which had held on its way, and about noon we halted at the village of *Thalis*, the neighbourhood of which abounds

1703. with *baeker-kaeraes*, birds not very different from our partridges, except that they are larger, and have whitish bellies and wings: they fly in flocks, pretty high, and delight in tilled grounds: I killed one of them; it was very heavy, well fed, and of a delicious taste.

Remarkable birds.

Two hours before day, we pursued our journey, and after a stretch of five hours, we arrived at *Gromdora*,, a town of large extent, full of trees and gardens, and by the side of a fine stream. Its houses are indifferently good, and some of them are even pretty lofty. We departed hence at the same hour as the day before, and travelled over the same plain, the mountains that incompass it being at the distance of about a league from each other. The grounds were sown, and the country thick set with villages. The country people there make little mounds of earth to keep in the water, and by the road side there are conduits of water to water the land. We then went through two villages, whose moschs had a kind of steeples, a sight rare to be seen in this country: they are very broad at bottom, and terminate in a point or spire: they told me they were the tombs of saints to which they had added moschs. About noon we went down a hollow way almost quite surrounded by a conduit or canal of water, which was five or six foot broad, whose water ran over violently in two places, and spread over the lands from north-west to south-east. In this place we found two villages called *Parsaheim* and *Touoeksy*, the last of which, which is the smallest of the two, is inclosed with a mud wall like a garden, which you go into by a large gate. The first is very large, full of trees and gardens, and the country about is very pleasant. The two villages with steeples, which we just now mentioned, are of the same name and in the same district, tho' at a good distance from each other. In this place the mountains seem to terminate. That day we travelled a journey of five leagues, and at *three* in the morning we proceeded 1703. farther through a road full of hills and villages to the right and left, whence at the break of day we descried some mountains covered with snow. We afterwards crossed a small river three or four times; we had very fine and mild weather quite to *Gibara*, where every one sheltered himself under the ruins of a low wall, a thing common enough in these parts. This town contains above five hundred houses, most of them low and upon an eminence; so that from a distance a man might mistake it for a fortress. It is full of trees and gardens, and about it are a great number of uninhabited houses. You have a representation of it in number 57.

Provisions abound in this place, where we had excellent mutton, good fowls and melons, the seed of which I preserved. I there shot an *Angoert*, a bird so called, which is somewhat like a duck, but it flies higher, and struts with the head up like a cock, and delights in water The body of it is red and the neck of a yellow russet quite to the eyes, about which it is white to the bill, which is black: its wings are white, red, and black; my dog brought it to me alive. You have the representation of a small village in number 58; and of the bird in number 59.

Angoert *a bird so called.*

This part of the country also abounds in cotton-trees, a branch of which I drew as as you see it in number 60. It has three or four pods, in the condition they are in when the fruit is not perfectly ripe; as you may observe by one of the four which is burst open and full of cotton. They either gather them, or they fall of themselves, when the pod is open, and begins to wither. The outward colour of it is purple, and has a delightful effect with the white within, when it bursts and opens.

Cotton.

Upon the *thirtieth*, we continued in this same place, to give our horses some rest. About noon there passed by a *Polish* Ambassador from *Ispahan*,

58

VILLAGE AUPRES GIHARA.

ANGOERT OISEAU.

59

BRANCHE COTTON.





61 VILLAGE SAKSAWA.

RUINES DE LA VILLE COHM.

63

ROCHERS SINGULIERS.

RUINES DES MURAILLES DE LA VILLE.

1703. *Ispahan*, on his way to his own country. I was alone at my sport when I met him, and some of his train observing me to be dressed in the fashion of *Holland*, called out to me, but I not minding them, as thinking they were *Persians*, two or three of them rode up to me, and told me, in *Italian*, that they were *Europeans*. While I was talking with them, the Ambassador himself went by: They asked me what news from *Europe*, but I told them it was six months since I came from *Moscow*, and that, consequently, I could give them no manner of information about the matter. They had passed the night in the village next to where we were, and desired me to recommend them to their friends at *Ispahan*, and promised to do the same for me at *Moscow*, and thereupon they pursued their journey. They were about thirty persons on horseback, and had three or four banneroles or small standards with them, and were followed by twenty three camels, laden with their baggage.

At three in the morning we resumed our road, and having travelled four leagues, we came to *Saksawa*, a great village, like the former, full of trees. On the right hand there are ruins of a large building, and on the left those of a large caravansera, represented in number 61. We were here obliged to stay, to pay the ordinary duties, and I in the mean time diverted myself with shooting at pigeons.

As we travelled on, we passed by a place full of sena; this tree is a very pleasant one to look at, and, as I had never seen of them before, I was charmed with it, and shall give a description of it in the sequel. In the village of *Arasangh*, we found store of pomgranates, a very refreshing sort of fruit, and very cheap. Leaving this we went over a hill, leaving the plain on the left hand, to get into the road that goes to *Com*. There is another on the right hand of this village that goes to *Sawa*, whither we should have gone to pay certain duties; but as it is going a day's journey out of the way to *Com*, and as they are thereby liable to the payment of three different imposts, whereas they are liable to but one by going diectly to *Com*, the caravan commonly chooses this last. 1703.

After a journey of five hours we rested ourselves in a plain, between some hills, near the village of *Hangeran*, where there is very good bread, and from thence we went on to *Saranda*. There we, for the first time, drank wine of *Ardevil*, which is white and pleasant enough to the palate, but it is not allowed to be sold. This village is surrounded with wells, supplied with water by a subterraneous canal in the village. Upon the *fourth of November* we departed, and after a stage of seven leagues, we, at one in the afternoon, reached *Angelawa*, two hours before the rest of the caravan: this village is but seven leagues from *Com*. This part is also full of wells, or springs, four or five paces from each other, and the water of them is also conveyed under ground to the village. *Persia* is all over full of such springs and subterraneous conveyances. Here there are ravens of extraordinary size: but the land here being strongly impregnated with salt-peter the water is brackish. Our camels went on before us in the night, but the custom-house officers of *Sawa* having seized upon one of them, laden with two bales of cloth, because we had not passed by that place, and because this is under one and the same territory or jurisdiction, we were obliged to turn back again, and stay in this place till the *sixth of November*, whence we departed before day. Coming upon a small ditch or trench which we did not perceive, several of our horses fell in, and amongst the rest mine, but by good chance they were got out again. At nine in the morning we came upon the banks of the river *Sawasiaey*, which comes from *Sawa:* it is very broad in some places, and runs away to the southward,

1703. ward, in a plain between high grounds. It happened that we had unwarily got into a ſandy plain, between ſome downs of moving ſand, where it is impoſſible to travel without danger. Behind theſe downs there are lofty mountains, between which is the road to *Sawa* and to *Com*. As we had been informed that thoſe who had ſeized on our camels, intended us a ſecond viſit, we put ourſelves ſo vigorouſly upon our guard that they did not dare repeat the attempt. About *eleven* we reached a ſtony mountain, whoſe rocks repreſent all ſorts of objects, a ſurprizing thing to behold: I drew them at diſtance, together with the mountain on the right hand of the town: you have a repreſentation of this in number 62; the firſt is like the head and neck of an animal, and the reſt are to the full as remarkable. In our way thither we went through a town full of houſes; but they were all empty; it is likely the inhabitants were all in tents abroad, tending their cattle. There is a great ſtone bridge at the entrance into the town, by the ſide of which we ſaw a great number of tents pitched, and in them people of all ſorts of condition, with horſes by them, tyed to each other. They told us theſe people, among whom there were more women than men, were upon a pilgrimage, to viſit the tombs of ſeveral Saints. We were half an hour in going through the town, to the end of the old walls, where we got up our tents in a place where there are many ancient ruins. The reſt of the caravan did not arrive till two hours after us, having been under a neceſſity to croſs ſeveral narrow bridges, which had delayed them. We ſtaid here the next day, and had very charming weather.

Remarkable rocks.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Deſcription of Com *and of* Cachan *or* Caſhan. *Arrival at* Iſpahan.

Situation of Com.

DUring the time I ſtaid here I viſited the inſide of the town, after I had ſatisfied my curioſity with a view of its antiquities and ruins, concerning which I ſhall be more diffuſe in the ſequel. In the great moſch of *Muzyd* or *Ma-zyt-matſama* there is the tomb of *Fatma-ſora*, the ſiſter of *Mohammed* and wife of *Ali*; and near that another moſch where they preſerve the aſhes of *Abbas* King of *Perſia*, of ſome other Kings, and among the reſt of *Shah Suliman*, the father of *Shah Hoſein*, the King that reigns at preſent. Theſe two moſchs are of a fine ſort of architecture, and have domes glazed with green. As you go into the town, you ſee four columns of about thirty ſix foot high, the two firſt of which are joined together, and belonged to ſome public edifice or ſome moſch. They ſtand upon a ſquare wall raiſed above the ground, nearly of the height of theſe ſame columns, and the portal of this wall is a great vaulted arcade: the two others are at a diſtance from each other and more damaged. Upon the top of the two firſt there is a kind of capital of no order, and three different faſcia's about them. They ſeem to be pretty equal to the ſight, and yet they are more taper at top than at bottom, and above the capital they have a moulding of green and gold, ſomewhat disfigured. They are at ſome diſtance from the *Bazar*, which is of the moſt ordinary ſort, as well as the reſt of the town; nor was I ſurprized at it, for it is by

Tombs in the great moſch &c.



65

KOH





66

KASJ



HM.





SJAN.



1703. by no means a trading place. There is a great building near the bridge over which you go into the town, with a fine and ſpacious court, in the midſt of which there is a baſon. It is a kind of moſch or chapel, where they pretend to have the remains of the ſiſter of *Imam Riſa*, and *Imam Anu hammed* who flouriſhed ſeven hundred and fifty years ago. This tomb is held in great veneration, becauſe this Lady, as they will have it, was of the poſterity of *Mohammed*, and accordingly there are always ſome perſons of diſtinction there.

Bridge of Com.

The bridge, we juſt now mentioned, is one hundred paces in length and eight in breadth, with a ſmall brick parapet two foot high. This bridge, which is built of ſmall ſtones, has ten arches, under ſome of which runs the river of *Comſhay*, when it is low, but eſpecially when it is high. They relate that there was a great inundation in this town in the year 1591, and that it ſwept away about twelve hundred houſes; which being reported to King *Abbas*, he ordered a dyke of two leagues in length to prevent the like diſaſter for the time to come.

River of Comſhay.

This town is divided into twenty four quarters or diſtricts, and contains two thouſand one hundred houſes, in each of which there is a well, not to ſpeak of three hundred *abenbaars* or ciſterns. It has four gates, four Bazars, and a * *meydoen*, ſeveral bagnio's and a great number of moſchs and chapels. There are no antiquities to be ſeen on this ſide, but there are on the other, where the caravan ſtopped, within the enceint of the old town, formerly called *Chonana* ſtanding in *Media*, which as is ſuppoſed extended to *Cachan*, and to a mountain which was as a boundary to it; a tract of country, which the inhabitants call *Arak*.

* *A public ſquare.*

Pyramid.

In this place, at ſome diſtance from the wall, there is a round pyramid, which is ſeventy eight paces in circumference and forty eight in height, provided with four ſhelving walls without ſteps; its entrance is ſtopped up with rubbiſh. The walls are a fathom thick, and the deſcent, taken obliquely, a fathom and an half; then they fetch a great ſlope and go as deep into the ground as they are above the ſurface, where this pyramid is ſmooth and round. You may look into it by certain holes, but into it there is no going, and what is more extraordinary it ſeems to have been done deſignedly. Upon the whole, it is moſt likely to have been a monument: you have it repreſented in number 63. There are other ruins on the right hand of this pyramid, and among others, the remains of a ſmall chapel. The decayed wall of the town reaches a good way beyond theſe ruins, but it is difficult to diſtinguiſh any thing of it in particular. However, two or three hundred paces from the pyramid, as you return to the town, there is a part of this wall tolerably entire and flanked with round towers, which are very much gone to ruin: they are to the number of ten, are about forty foot high, and very thick and ſubſtantial at bottom; you ſee them repreſented in number 64, with the ruins of a gate which was five paces deep, as much in breadth, and the wall was of the ſame thickneſs. All the reſt of the buildings are of earth, clay, and ſmall ſtones dried in the ſun. For my part, I own, I never ſaw any ancient building of this kind; but I am nevertheleſs perfectly perſuaded theſe are ruins of the old town, and the rather as the ancients make mention of the like buildings of earth dried in the ſun, and a kind of lime made of clay. The ſacred hiſtorians likewiſe take notice that the builders of the tower of *Babel* made uſe of the like kind of earth inſtead of ſtone, and of clay inſtead of lime. And this is the more natural to conclude with regard to this country, as the ſun is here very powerful, and conſequently ſoon able to dry up earth to the nature of ſtone. It ſeems to

1703. me alſo that they have mixed chopped ſtraw with this earth, to make it bind the better. In the ſame manner they continue to build to this day, and all over *Perſia* you ſee of this earth dried in the ſun, and clay, of which they make lime. And, to ſay the truth of the matter, their houſes are mean enough, and laſt but a little while, nor do they ever think of repairing them.

From thence I went to the north-weſt of the town, where there are no eminences, and from thence drew the view you have in number 65. The letter A diſtinguiſhes the great moſch called *Matſama:* B that of the Kings: C the bridge: D the moſch of the great building: E the two principal columns of the edifice we have mentioned. In the ſame plate you may alſo obſerve how the other columns are divided from each other.

Upon the *eighteenth of November.* we left *Com* an hour before day, and paſſing by the old wall, we came into a plain full of villages. A league farther we ſaw two great ruined towers. We paſſed the day in a village where there is a fine ſtream of clear water, three leagues to the ſouthward of the town; and a league beyond we ſaw the remains of an ancient ſquare building with very ſubſtantial walls: they ſay it was formerly a fortreſs. There is another on the ſide of this, with ſeveral apartments. A league and an half from thence, we ſaw a large garden, ſurrounded with a high ſquare wall. About *eight*, we got into a rough ſtony plain, with lofty mountains on the right hand, and villages on all ſides. Upon the *ninth*, we reſted ourſelves at the village of *Sinſin*, ſeven leagues from the place where we had paſſed the night: this village is tolerably large, and in it are ſeveral ruined buildings and caravanſeras. We left it at two in the morning, and at break of day met with ſeveral travellers in a place full of trees, and well cultivated. At break of day we perceived *Cachan* [*Caſhan*] where we arrived at ſeven in the morning. One part of the caravan went to lodge in the town, and the other in the caravanſera in the ſuburbs. The houſes of it are fair and regular, and larger than thoſe of the city, which is reckoned one of the chief in *Perſia*; nor indeed had I ever ſeen any till then to compare with it. As it is at no very great diſtance from *Iſpahan*, we there found the inhabitants more civil and polite, than in the other cities we had paſſed through. It is in 35 degrees 51 minutes of northern latitude, and is called *Kaſſian*, *Kaſſan*, *Kaſſiaan* and *Caſhan*, and ſtands at the end of a great plain, near the foot of a lofty mountain. I drew it from the north-eaſt, in this plain, whence it makes the moſt conſiderable figure. On the left of this town you ſee a pyramid like that of the ruined building at *Com:* the whole is to be ſeen in number 66. 1703.

Arrival at Caſhan.

Deſcription of it.

The Governor or Commander in chief here is called a Viſier, who is inferior in dignity to a Khan as a Khan is inferior to a Beglerbeg, whom they muſt both of them obey; he even frequently ſends them into other places.

Governor.

The walls of this town are about thirty ſix foot high, and it has ſeven gates without reckoning that of *Danlet.* To the north-weſt there is a fine *meydoen*, with a kind of tilt-yard, above which are two ſmall columns; upon that without there is a ſtaff on which they hoiſt a flag when there is a tournament. This *meydoen* or tilt-yard is ſeven hundred and ſeventy paces long, and one hundred broad. As you go out of the gate, on the right hand, you have the royal garden, incloſed with a wall thirty foot high. It is large and traverſed by a well kept canal, and full of fine trees, well diſpoſed, among the reſt pines and pomegranate trees; and thereto belongs a pleaſure-houſe built by *Abbas the Great.* This wall has four great gates, and two ſmall ones; from the firſt of them which is near that of the town, you go into a fine caravanſera

Royal garden.

67 VILLAGE GHOR.



68 CARAVANSERA SARDAHAN.



1703. ravansera inhabited by *Indians*: it is spacious and of surprizing beauty, being thirty six paces deep, and seven broad: the vault of it is crowned with a dome, upon which there is a lanthorn after the *Italian* manner; and it has two arcades on the side, whence you see the apartments. Having crossed it you come into a court one hundred paces long, by eighty broad, surrounded by a building two stories high, which has fifteen arcades on each side in length, and ten in breadth, under which there are rooms one upon another; besides which there are small projecting rooms or closets which have a charming effect; so that this caravansera surpasses all I ever saw. A little beyond this gate you come to a second with a fine arcade; and upon finding it open, I went into the garden which is full of great and small trees well kept: the third gate is that of a great and very lofty building, above the wall of the garden. From the fourth you go to a wide court, and all round it is shelter for horses: the two small gates admit into the garden only. On the other side there is another, but neither so fine nor so large as the first, tho', as well as that, it be surrounded with walls. Over-against this caravansera there is an ascent of fifty stone steps, and beneath, a place which apparently must be a tank or reservoir for water, the walls and vault of which are of small stones, very neatly put together. The gate of the town is vaulted also, and eighty paces deep, with a dome like that of the caransera. From thence you go into a fine bazar, well vaulted and plastered, and stored with the shops of confectioners, druggists, pastry-cooks, goldsmiths, farriers, brasiers and cooks, where you have all sorts of victuals ready drest, roasted and boiled; bakers, fruiterers and the like; every shop takes up a vault, and the whole is very regular and charmingly neat. This bazar, in the midst of which there is the mint, runs cross the town from one gate to the other. There are several others near this, and particularly one which has gates and is shut up, where they sell cloths and all sorts of silks and the like. Another there is belonging to the silk-dyers, where you see delightful colours. These bazars are so well covered that you are always sheltered from the rain, and the coffee-houses are there always full of people smoaking. The caravanseras are on one side of these bazars, and you go into them by a great vaulted gate; some of them are fine and two stories high, with five or six steps before the apartments, and the number of them is very considerable in this town, where they make most of the silk and gold and silver stuffs in such quantity that they every day use seven bales of silk, which weigh one thousand five hundred and twelve pounds. The * *meydoens* here are small, and in many parts of the town there are wells like that in the royal garden we have mentioned. The moschs here have pretty lofty towers, but few large domes, and those there are, are not coloured. This city has seven gates, as has been said, two of which are always kept shut, and several *meydoens*.

Bazar. *Coffee-houses.* *Caravanseras.* * *Public squares.* *Moschs.*

They have here fruits and flowers at all seasons of the year, and the fruits are here sooner ripe than elsewhere; so that in the spring-time they here sell melons, grapes, apricots, mulberries, pomegranates, cucumbers, and especially most charming water-melons. They say there are seventy aqueducts, which convey water to this town; and they there also reckon one hundred and twenty bagnio's and a great number of tanks to which they go down by several steps. The number of mills here amounts to one hundred and twenty, and that of the houses to three thousand, divided into three wards or districts, one thousand in each. Besides all which there are sixty villages under the jurisdiction of this town.

Mills, houses, villages.

At *Fien*, there is a royal house, where

Remarkable fountain.

1703. where there is a fountain or baſon made, as they ſay, in the reign of *Suliman*, the water of which comes from a high mountain called *Rochi 't Sahil*, and is conducted to *Cachan* by the means of 27 mills built in the reign of *Abbas*. That which comes from the mountain of *Demawend* runs away towards *Kei* and *Thaharaan*: they call it the river of *Dzadzjeraan*, and it goes and empties the reſt of its water in the *Caſpian* ſea. You have a ſight of this mountain when you are between *Com* and *Cachan*.

Upon the *thirteenth*, we left this town two hours before day, and croſſed a ſandy plain, and for ſome leagues had ſmall raiſed downs on our left hand. That day we travelled ſix leagues, and having reſted ourſelves a while, we proceeded on our journey at two in the morning, continuing ſtill in the ſame plain, bordered by mountains covered with ſnow on our right hand. At break of day we came to the foot of the higheſt of them, and croſſed a river among the reſt, and afterwards a plain, at the end of which we perceived a village, together with ſeveral others between the mountains and hills. After a ſtage of ſeven leagues we got to the village of *Ghor*, a league from the ſmall town of *Nathans*. This village is a charming place, and you have it repreſented in number 67. Being upon an eminence, it looks like a fortreſs at a diſtance, on the left hand of which you ſee a ſmall moſch, and a country which extends beyond the reach of the ſight.

We departed from hence two hours before day, and about *ſeven* came to a large plain, where there were five or ſix villages by the ſide of each other, and two fine gardens, the laſt of which was ſurrounded by a good wall, half a league in circumference, and has a remarkable dove-houſe concerning which we ſhall ſpeak in the ſequel. On one ſide of this garden is a large houſe which belongs to the King, and a ſmall village called *Padſhabath*. *Royal garden.* Having croſſed this plain we 1703. came among hills and mountains, ſome of which were capped with ſnow, and after a ſtretch of ſeven leagues, we came to the caravanſera of *Sardahan*, where certain duties are paid. We there went over a kind of torrent, which falls and tumbles among the rocks, and whoſe water, conſiſting of melted ſnow from the mountains, is admirable. You have this caravanſera repreſented, and another near it in number 68. The firſt is a ſpacious ſtone building with a vaulted entrance, twenty foot deep and with a ſtep of three foot. There is a ſpring of water near the ſecond, which is but ſmall.

An hour after midnight we travelled on with a fine moon-light, and having got over the mountains we came into a great ſandy plain bordered with mountains. In the night we paſſed by two other caravanſeras, the firſt of which was perfectly fine, and after a ſtage of ſeven leagues we came to the village of *Riek*, where we ſtaid till *three* in the morning. We then rode over ſome plowed lands, and at break of day arrived at *Iſpahan*. *Arrival at Iſpahan.* When I had reſted and refreſhed myſelf a little at the caravanſera, I went to wait upon Mr. *Kaſtelein* the director of the affairs of our *Eaſt-India* company. He received me in the kindeſt manner imaginable, and aſſured me I might command all that was in his power. He kept me ſome time with him, and gave me one of his ſervants to conduct me to Mr. *Owen*, the agent for the *Engliſh Eaſt-India* company, who received me with the ſame kindneſs and complaiſance. From thence I went to the caravanſera of *Jedde*, in the *meydoen*, or great ſquare of the palace. This caravanſera, which belongs to the Queen mother of the King, is the place where all the *Armenians* have their ware-houſes and keep their ſhops; and as it is the chief of all in the city, and the beſt ſituated of all, I went there to lodge, by the recom-

1703. mendation of Mr. *Kaſtekin*, for whom they had a great regard, and there I continued all the time I ſtaid in this city. The King happened to be at that time in the country with his concubines. After I had rode about the town, and in the *Armenian* diſtrict of it called *Julfa*, I went to viſit ſome *Europeans*, Eccleſiaſtics and others, moſtly of the *French* nation, who returned my viſit. The next day Mr. *Kaſtelein* invited me to dine with him, and afterwards carried me out of town. 1703.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Sea-lizard, and other remarkable things. Tomb with moving columns. The King returns to Iſpahan. *Abundance of people. Salutation of the* New-years-day. *Great* Perſian *Faſt.*

As the weather was perfectly fine, we went to ſee what was moſt curious in and about the city, as the *Chiaerbaeg* or fine alley or walk of *Iſpahan*, and the place of burial for the *Armenians* and *Europeans*, which ſhall be deſcribed hereafter. We went out of the town in great form, according to the cuſtom of the country. Mr. *Kaſtelein* himſelf appeared firſt, with twelve runners, and preceded by two interpreters. After him came his ſecond, whom I followed, and all the reſt two and two, each according to his rank. We were twelve on horſeback, and twenty ſix perſons in all, and yet the Director uſed to be more numerouſly attended in the life-time of his wife, who had been dead five or ſix months before we arrived at *Iſpahan*, and had been magnificently depoſited under a fine ſtone vault, open on the four ſides. Her name was *Sarah Jacoba Six, de Chandelier*, of a family originally *French*, and was a Lady of great ſenſe and worth. *The elogy of our Director's wife.*

Returning back in the evening we met with two runners in the *Chiaerbaeg* with lights, or ſort of flambeaus made of balls of cloth ſteeped in oil, and fixed in an iron contrivance, faſtened to the end of a ſtaff with a round tinned copper plate in form of a ſawcer to catch the droppings of the oil. It was light enough of all conſcience, but this is a ceremony in uſe among people of diſtinction. In this manner we rode through the town, and I ſtaid to ſup with Mr. *Kaſtelein*, perfectly well ſatisfied with my little journey.

The next day he ſent me a ſea-lizzard, dry and whole, of the ſize and form of an ordinary lizard. It is a creature they take in the *Perſian* gulf, and the *Perſians*, who call it *Seck-amkaer*, make great account of it. They give it out to be hot in the third degree, and having dried it they levigate it to a powder, and mix it up with pearl, amber, ſaffron and opium. They ſay this cordial invigorates and reſtores a weakened conſtitution: they make this mixture up into pills which they ſwallow, and are hardly ever expoſed to ſale, ſeeing there is ſcarce any but Merchants, and thoſe who have buſineſs at court, who buy them to preſent to ſuch as they ſollicit. *Sea-lizard.* They have here alſo a certain fiſh called *Sjir-ma-jie* [*Shirmaſhi*] or *Milk-Fiſh*, of moſt beautiful colours. His belly moſtly yellow, his fins red, and the reſt of the body of a blueiſh green. The fleſh of him is firm, white and delicious, and he is repreſented in number 69. *Milk-fiſh.*

1703. Mr. *Kastelein* also made me a present of four feet of small birds or other animals, which had been found at *Ispahan* in a lump of ambergrease, which weighed about thirty three or thirty four pounds, and which the King had purchased to melt it into a ball, which he inchased in gold, and inriched with precious stones, to send it as a present to *Mohammed*'s tomb. Hence it might be concluded that ambergrease is a gum, produced in the sea, which hardens in the air, when it happens to be torn and tost up by the violence of the waves. This precious gum is chiefly found in the east, and in several parts of the *Indies*.

Remarkable bird. They brought me also a bird called *Paes-jelek* not very unlike a duck, except that it had the head, bill and feather of a crow; its feet were broad at bottom, and divided into three parts; its body was long, and it tasted very bad. It is represented in number 70.

Upon the *twenty third* of this month, we went, again, in form to the village of *Kaladoen*, a good league from the city, there to see

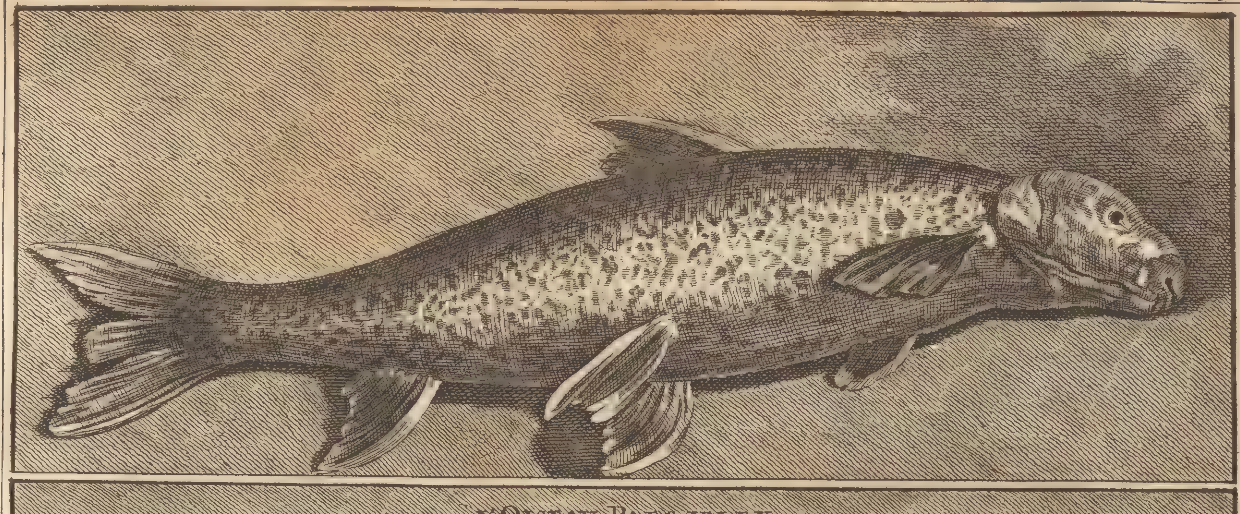
Tomb of Abdulla. the tomb of *Abdulla*. They say this saint had formerly the inspection of the waters of *Emoen Osseyn*, and that he was one of the twelve disciples, or, as they pretend, one of the Apostles of their Prophet. This tomb, which stands between four walls, faced with small stones, is of a grey marble, adorned with *Arabian* characters, and surrounded with lamps of tinned copper. You go up to it by fifteen steps, a foot high, and there are fifteen others a little higher which go up to a square platform of thirty two foot every way, and upon the front of which there are two columns of small stones, some of which are blue. The base of them is five foot in diameter, and they have a small door with a winding stair-case which also consists of fifteen steps. They have suffered much by the common injuries of time, and it seems as if they had been once higher than they are at present. The stair-case within is so narrow that a man of middling size must undress himself to go up, as I did, and appeared half above the column; but what is most extraordinary, when you shake one of these columns by any motion of the body, the other feels the same and shakes too; this is what I experienced, tho' I am unable to comprehend how it should be, nor have I ever been able to learn the cause of it. While I was busy about drawing this building which you have in number 71, a boy of twelve or thirteen years, crooked before, climbed up on the outside of the wall, and went quite up to the top of one of the columns, which he went round and came down again, without holding by any thing whatsoever but the small stones of the building where the mortar was dropt out; nor did he do it with any other design than to divert us. *Boldness of a child.*

We returned to the city a little before sun-set, and it began to freeze so hard that the water in my room became ice, and yet it was hot in the day-time. There even fell a little snow upon this occasion.

Upon the *twenty eighth*, there arrived an *Arab* from *Aleppo*, with a letter, as he pretended, from the Basha of *Aleppo* to the Director of our company: but all he said was so confused, and he looked so wild with his eyes, that I concluded his brain must be touched. He had the look of an ecclesiastic, and perhaps he had left *Turky* on account of the troubles there; for they had had news at *Ispahan*, some days before our arrival, that the Grand-Signior had been deposed, and that *Soltan Achmed*, his brother, had been raised to the throne in his place. This *Arab* was very neatly dressed, and yet he had brought but a poor present, consisting of a pair of yellow boots, two or three common handkerchiefs, an handful of dates, and two sticks of wax. Mr. *Kastelein* did not care to open his letter, which was sealed but undirected, nor receive his presents, being quite at a loss to know the meaning of the matter.

Poisson Sjir-ma-jie, ou Poisson de Lait.





70



L'Oiseau Paes-jelek.

four of which stopped in the *chiaer-baeg*, and the rest went on. The King himself came half an hour before sun-set, followed by the principal Lords of his court, and a prodigious crowd of people. He was at the head of them, and rode upon a fine chesnut horse, and went by us near a small river, where we had drawn ourselves up on horseback to wait for him. We saluted him in the most respectful manner, and he fixed his eyes upon us. As the bridge he was to go over was but narrow, most that attended him forded the river; for many who had been eager to get upon the bridge fell off; to avoid the danger of which we turned off towards *Julfa* and came home with the night. It is hard to conceive what a multitude of people attend the King upon such occasions; a man would think it

the water; the fourth sort consisted of one only small fish, which had not grown at all in two years it had been taken notice of; I kept it with several others in spirits of wine. They are all admirably well tasted, and especially from the *frying-pan*.

Upon the first day of the year 1704, we went to pay the usual compliments, after the manner of the country, to Mr. *Kastelein*, who kept us to dine and sup with him to the number of thirty, and entertained us splendidly, not to say that they served up sweet-meats and refreshments between the meals. The *English* Agent was some how or other out of order, so he could not be there, but his second came with the chief officer of his house, as well as father *Antonio Destiro*, the *Portuguese* Resident, a man of merit, and who had seen the world, and knew

1704. *New-year's day.*

Resident of Portugal.

tion of the waters of *Emoen Offeyn*, and that he was one of the twelve difciples, or, as they pretend, one of the Apoftles of their Prophet. This tomb, which ftands between four walls, faced with fmall ftones, is of a grey marble, adorned with *Arabian* characters, and furrounded with lamps of tinned copper. You go up to it by fifteen fteps, a foot high, and there are fifteen others a little higher which go up to a fquare platform of thirty two foot every way, and upon the front of which there are two columns of fmall ftones, fome of which are blue. The bafe of them is five foot in diameter, and they have a fmall door with a winding ftair-cafe which alfo confifts of fifteen fteps. They have fuffered much by the common injuries of time, and it feems as if they had been once higher than they are at prefent. The ftair-cafe with-

letter, as he pretended, from the Bafha of *Aleppo* to the Director of our company: but all he faid was fo confufed, and he looked fo wild with his eyes, that I concluded his brain muft be touched. He had the look of an ecclefiaftic, and perhaps he had left *Turky* on account of the troubles there; for they had had news at *Ifpahan*, fome days before our arrival, that the Grand-Signior had been depofed, and that *Soltan Achmed*, his brother, had been raifed to the throne in his place. This *Arab* was very neatly dreffed, and yet he had brought but a poor prefent, confifting of a pair of yellow boots, two or three common handkerchiefs, an handful of dates, and two fticks of wax. Mr. *Kaftelein* did not care to open his letter, which was fealed but undirected, nor receive his prefents, being quite at a lofs to know the meaning of the matter.

1703. matter. Upon the *thirtieth*, we went out of town again, and I looked out for a proper place from whence to draw a view of the city, at the time of the year it then was; for in ſummer it is impoſſible to do it, becauſe of the numbers of trees that hide it. We went up an eminence to look at a building againſt a rock, which we ſhall reſume hereafter, in our deſcription of this city. I there found canals and ſprings frozen notwithſtanding they were running waters.

Mean time the King's ſervants and baggage arrived, and ſo filled the *chiaer-baeg* with duſt that they were obliged to water it. Mr. *Kaſtelein* being informed of this, ſent me with all his family to the place I had pitched on for drawing a view of the city, to ſee the King who was to paſs by there. We went thither dreſſed in the neateſt manner we could, and our horſes were well capariſoned, in which the *Perſians* are excellent. We waited a full hour at the Chriſtian burial-ground, and preſently ſaw a great number of horſemen appear, and his Majeſty's equipages or baggage carried by mules. They had ſent out ſix elephants to meet this Prince, four of which ſtopped in the *chiaer-baeg*, and the reſt went on. The King himſelf came half an hour before ſun-ſet, followed by the principal Lords of his court, and a prodigious crowd of people. He was at the head of them, and rode upon a fine cheſnut horſe, and went by us near a ſmall river, where we had drawn ourſelves up on horſeback to wait for him. We ſaluted him in the moſt reſpectful manner, and he fixed his eyes upon us. As the bridge he was to go over was but narrow, moſt that attended him forded the river; for many who had been eager to get upon the bridge fell off; to avoid the danger of which we turned off towards *Julfa* and came home with the night. It is hard to conceive what a multitude of people attend the King upon ſuch occaſions; a man would think it was an army. The number of his 1703.
camels is not leſs ſurprizing, nor indeed had I ever ſeen ſo many together in all my life. Beſides all this there was a monſtrous crowd of ſpectators both on foot and on horſeback in the *chiaer-baeg*: the King went thro' one of his gardens to go to his palace, preceded by two leopards which he uſes in hunting, and ſome falcons. His women came to town the ſame night.

Upon the *fourteenth of December*, we celebrated the feſtival of *Chriſtmas* with Mr. *Kaſtelein*, and the next day went to viſit the monks of the three convents without the city. At the company's houſe, two days afterwards, we ſaw a white crow, which had been ſeen there ſeveral times before, but they could never ſhoot it, and was at laſt taken in his Majeſty's nets. At the ſame time they cleaned a ſmall pond, in which they found four ſorts of fiſh unknown in our parts, namely the *ghaermaji*, or *aſs-fiſh*, marked as if *Remarkable fiſhes.*
he had been covered with a net; the *ſjir-ma-ji* or *milk-fiſh*, with ſmall ſpotted ſcales; the *ſaraep*, a fiſh green upon the back and white under the belly, and which commonly ſwims upon the ſurface of the water; the fourth ſort conſiſted of one only ſmall fiſh, which had not grown at all in two years it had been taken notice of; I kept it with ſeveral others in ſpirits of wine. They are all admirably well taſted, and eſpecially from the *frying-pan*.

Upon the firſt day of the year 1704.
1704, we went to pay the uſual compliments, after the manner of *New-year's day.*
the country, to Mr. *Kaſtelein*, who kept us to dine and ſup with him to the number of thirty, and entertained us ſplendidly, not to ſay that they ſerved up ſweet-meats and refreſhments between the meals. The *Engliſh* Agent was ſome how or other out of order, ſo he could not be there, but his ſecond came with the chief officer of his houſe, as well as father *Antonio Deſtiro*, the *Portugueſe* Reſident, a man of merit, *Reſident of* Portugal.
and who had ſeen the world, and

1704. knew very well how to live in it: there were alſo ſeveral *Armenian* merchants. This entertainment, however, was not ſo grand as it had uſually been, becauſe of the death of the miſtreſs of the houſe; and there was but one diſcharge of four field-pieces in the morning, to give notice there was to be a feaſt, inſtead of ſeveral which are commonly fired upon theſe occaſions: this ſignal brought a number of people from *Julfa*. As I had my eye upon the watch, I took notice of a lighted taper, five or ſix foot long, and thick in proportion, different from all I had ever ſeen before, and adorned from top to bottom in a very particular manner; it ſtood upon a great diſh to ſave the carpet from the wax that dropped from it, and gave an amazing light. It rained very hard that night and next day, ſo that the ways became impaſſable, which is extraordinary enough at that ſeaſon; but upon the ſixth, which was twelfth-day, we had fair weather again. We were ſome days afterwards entertained by the *Engliſh* Agent, in the manner we had been by our own upon the firſt day of the year, with this addition that the cannon went off at every health: there was alſo muſic after the manner of the country. About the evening there came a *Georgian* dancer, who wanted to ſhew his agility, but he did no great feats. They brought a man ſwaddled up in a white cloth, ſo that you could only ſee his arms done up in imitation of two children, the one repreſenting a boy, the other a girl. He was ſtretched out like a dead man, and yet he made ſeveral comical motions to the ſound of inſtruments; he had his hands done up in the heads of the two pretended children, who firſt careſſed each other, and afterwards concluded with blows.

An extraordinary taper.

Entertainment given by the Engliſh *Agent.*

Mr. *Kaſtelein*, to whom I am infinitely obliged, ſent me, after this, fourteen large bottles of an excellent white wine, which he took care to furniſh me with during all the time I ſtaid in this city, beſides that he conſtantly entertained me at dinner and ſupper; but when I roſe from table I never failed to retire into my apartment, and there apply my ſelf to the things I had had in view when I ſet out upon ſo long and dangerous a journey. The wine I ſpeak of is the beſt in all *Perſia*, for they take no care to fine the wines at *Iſpahan*; all you drink there is foul and unpleaſant to the palate: they fine none but the wines of *Zjieraes* [*Shirâs*] which are the beſt of all, and which we ſhall mention in the ſequel. Moſt of the *Europeans* that have lived here ſome time fall into the taſte of the *Perſians*, and care but little whether the wine be fine or foul ſo it be but ſtrong. The wine he gave me was as clear as chryſtal, nearly of the taſte of *Rheniſh*, nor yielding to any *French* wine I ever drank in my life: there is alſo a red ſort very much like *Florence*. They fine down theſe wines in large earthen pots or jars, inſtead of caſks, as in the iſle of *Cyprus*, and after they have been well fermented, they put them into great glaſs bottles, which hold ſixteen of the common ſize. To make theſe wines, they pick out the very beſt of the grapes, and are careful in throwing aſide all ſuch as are rotten or bruiſed; and hence it is that the flavour of it ſurpaſſes that of all others: they uſe alſo ſulphur and cardamums, to preſerve them, and give them a good ſcent. For the reſt they never drink them before they are a year old, nor are they amiſs for uſe at the end of two. 1704.

Excellent wine.

During the time I ſtaid in this city, we, by letters, dated the *eighth* of *November*, from *Aleppo*, received news from our country, by runners employed for that purpoſe, by the companies of *Holland* and *England*. They in like manner go to *Gomron* and other places.

That day was the firſt of the *Beyram* or great faſt of the *Perſians*, which laſts twenty nine or thirty days, that is, till the return of the

Faſt of the Perſians.

1704. the new moon, as it is obſerved among the *Turks*. During this ſpace of time they are forbidden to eat or to drink in the day-time, or even to ſmoke, which is their moſt favourite amuſement: but then they turn the night into day; as ſoon as the ſun is down they begin to pray, and ſmoke about half an hour afterwards; they then eat and drink as much as they pleaſe till day-light. But all this is done in form and with regard to certain circumſtances, for after they have ſmoked, they eat nothing but fruits, ſweet-meats and the like, and have no regular meal till after mid-night. Nor are they allowed to blow the trumpet or ſound any of their other inſtruments at mid-night, as uſual; they muſt wait till four or five in the morning; and indeed then they make the greater noiſe with them, to rouſe up the artiſans, and admoniſh them it is time to riſe to their work. This ſign is alſo of uſe to thoſe without, giving them to underſtand they may bring in their goods, their fruits, herbs and the like, which, at other times, is done at mid-night. Theſe trumpets are alſo heard half an hour before the ſun goes down to give notice to the King's guards to repair to their ſeveral poſts. The ſhops muſt alſo be ſhut up between eight and nine at night, and every one muſt withdraw to his home; and two hours before it is day the *mollas*, churchmen whoſe buſineſs it is to give notice of the ſtated times of prayer, from the top of the moſchs, begin 1704. to call the people together: they begin again at noon, and after the ſun is down. The *Perſians* alſo begin to reckon their hours from the riſing and ſetting of the ſun; without minding how far the day or the night is ſpent, or whether the day be longer or ſhorter than the night, they go all by gueſs.

The following days, the river was full of ice; but nevertheleſs a ſervant of Mr. *Kaſtelein*'s caught out of town a fiſh of extraordinary ſize in this country; it was a kind of carp, three quarters of an ell in length, and admirably well taſted. This fiſh they call *Shirmaſhi*, as hath already been ſaid.

Feſtival of the water.

Upon the *ſixteenth*, after I had written to my friends in *Holland*, by the way of *Aleppo*, I went with Mr. *Kaſtelein*'s family to *Julfa*, to ſee the feſtival of the conſecration of water, which the *Armenians* were to celebrate the next morning before break of day. This feſtival is called *Goeroortnig*, or the *Baptiſm of the Croſs*, and is celebrated as with the *Ruſſians* upon the *ſixth* of January. In the evening we got into *Julfa*, and went to lodge with Mr. *Sahid*, our interpreter, who entertained us with a good ſupper. About *three* in the morning, which is the hour when they open this ceremony, we went to the church of *Anna-baet*, which is the epiſcopal church of the *Armenians*.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Baptiſm of the Croſs. Antipathy between mules and bears. Feſtival of Gaddernabie. *Feſtival of the* Solar year. *Magnificent feaſts. Shoots of rhubarb. Feſtival of the ſacrifice of* Abraham.

Baptiſm of the croſs.

THEY opened this ſolemnity with a leſſon, with hymns and with maſſes, quite to the break of day: at that time the Prieſts, who appeared in black, all but the Biſhop who officiated, put on their rich

1704. vestments of gold brocade; and the Bishop covered himself with his mitre, adorned with pearls and precious stones. In his right hand he held a cross of middling size, and embellished with jewels, but covered with a white embroidered handkerchief; and another in his left hand not so magnificent as the former. The number of ecclesiastics together upon this occasion were twenty four or twenty five, who came out of the church with all their ornaments to go to a covered place over-against the church, somewhat lofty and very much adorned, and above which there are two bells. They here had a great copper cistern full of water, by which they read and sung for above an hour; after which the Bishop dipped the cross three times into the water of the cistern, and then they gave him a large cup of oil, which he threw into the water, and so put an end to the ceremony. The Priests that assisted, hastily ran their hands into the water, and washed their faces with it, as did all the *Armenians* that could get at it; and some of them filled small canes with this *holy water*. This solemnity was observed in several other churches, and even in a small river which runs by *Julfa*. But this you must take along with you, they cannot practise this religious custom without leave from the King, which the *Kalantaer*, or Burgomaster of the *Armenians* never fails to ask some days beforehand. Upon which this Prince sends to demand the tribute of two hundred ducats, which they pay him yearly upon this account, and sends them a guard to prevent disorders; a precaution absolutely necessary because of the crowd of *Turks* and *Persians* who came to see this ceremony out of curiosity. There was so great a throng of them this day, that the Bishop himself could not have got to any thing, if the guards had not cleared the way for him by laying on on all sides unmercifully with their staves. The seven Bishops who were here present, reside in the episcopal monastery of the church of *Annabaet*, together with some Priests. This monastery which goes round the church, consists of small cells, where nothing is to be seen but two or three small niches, fit for nothing but to hold books, together with a desk, before which they sit upon the ground. The walls are white and well kept, and the light comes in on one side by two or three small glazed windows. The refectory may be called long, and is provided with a pulpit, in which they read some chapters during the time of dinner: the chapel is painted from top to bottom, with representations of sacred stories, but without any art. It is not lawful for their Bishops to marry, but their Priests may. They have two Patriarchs, one of which resides here, and the other at *Eetsinasin*, or the *Three Churches*, near mount *Ararat*, and at the distance of three leagues from *Erivan*. 1704.

Antipathy between bears and mules.

Upon this occasion we happened to see a strange combat, between two mules and a black hog, which they had certainly torn to pieces if help had not come in. Mr. *Kastelein* informed us of the reason of this antipathy between these creatures and the black hog, saying it proceeded from a natural aversion they have to bears, which the black hog nearly enough resembles. He told us that one day letting loose one of his mules upon a large bear, the former tore the latter into pieces. Whence it is that the guides of the caravans when they understand there are bears about them, which frequently destroy horses, set the mules at their heels, who never give them quarter. It happened even at that same time that a bear-ward, shewing away with one of those creatures near the *chiaer-baeg*, a *Persian* came riding by upon a mule; the mule no sooner scented the bear than he fell furiously upon him, and obliged his rider to cry out for help, tho' not a soul dared to go near him. The mule still pursued the bear, and threw his rider, who was a long

time

1704. time ſick of the fall, but the bear got through a hole where the mule could not follow him. This ſeemed the more ſurprizing to us, as we had never once heard of this antipathy; nor do I remember to have any where read that the *Romans* made uſe of theſe creatures in their public ſhews; whence I conclude the mules of this country muſt be in this reſpect different from the mules any where elſe.

Anniverſary of the death of the Prophet Ali. Upon the *twenty ninth*, all the ſhops of *Iſpahan* were ſhut cloſe up, on account of the anniverſary of the death of their great prophet *Ali*. The heat was ſo very powerful in the month of *February*, that ſeveral plants began to ſhoot up.

At that time the *Engliſh* Agent, accompanied by father *Antonio Deſtiro*, and ſeveral others, came to pay a viſit to our Director, who gave them a ſplendid entertainment both at dinner and ſupper, ſo that the night was far ſpent when the company broke up. And this was what happened often enough; for this Agent and Mr. *Kaſtelein* were very intimate friends; and as they were always well attended, it was always done in a pompous manner.

The end of the Perſian *faſt.* Upon the *ſixth* of *February*, the *Perſians* had ſight of the new moon, and immediately concluded their faſt, and rejoiced all night to the ſound of all their inſtruments. Upon the *ſeventh*, they celebrated the feſtival of it according to cuſtom, with the ſame clamour, and the King entertained the court and the foreign miniſters. The next day being the feſtival of *Gaddernabie*, *Feſtival of* Gaddernabie. which is celebrated by none but the King himſelf, he, according to cuſtom, gave audience to all the counſellors of ſtate. Their wives and their daughters repaired alſo to the palace, where the King kept ſuch as he liked beſt for ſome days, an honour they value at a very high rate. There were great rejoicings, and fire-works at the palace.

Preſents made to the King. The *tenth* of this month is a day when they always make preſents to the King: they conſiſt of wax done up in the form of houſes, gardens, 1704. and the like. That day there aroſe a very high wind at north-weſt, *A ſtorm.* where it every year prevails, for ſome days, at this ſeaſon of the year: they call it *Baad-Biedmusk*, or *Bed-muſwint*, from a flower which blows at this time. This flower *Remarkable flower.* grows upon a kind of willow, from a bud of the ſize of a ſmall nut; tho' it is but little and very odoriferous. From this ſame flower they diſtil a very pleaſant liquor, ſomething like ſherbet and lemonade, *Pleaſant liquor.* when ſweetened with ſugar, but it is more wholeſome and ſtronger. They keep it all the year round in bottles, and they alſo dry the flower itſelf, and put it among linen to ſcent it: the country people bring it in abundance to market. As I never obſerved the like with regard to the willows of our country, I have drawn the repreſentation you ſee in number 72; together with that of the leaves which do not appear till the month of *April*. The wind which blows theſe flowers commonly laſts till the end of the month, during which they have fine weather with conſiderable heats. Upon the *firſt day* of *March* there fell ſome rain, and preſently after it a ſtrong wind came on; it was cold; the weather was variable; and ſo it continued to be to the end of the month.

Upon *Friday*, the *twentieth* of *Feſtival of the* Solar year. this month, they celebrated the feſtival of the *Solar year*. Upon this occaſion the Bazars have a charming effect by candle-light, all the ſhops in them are very much adorned, and eſpecially thoſe of the confectioners and fruiterers, which have a pleaſing effect upon the eye. The cooks ſhops are full of all ſorts of victuals, which they ſend all about the town, a practice in no other country: but they are all ſoon ſtript by the concourſe of ſtrangers who come to *Iſpahan* to keep this feſtival.

Early in the morning I went to *Royal feaſt.* the palace with our maſter of the horſe, who was a *Perſian* and very well

1704. well known, where the King was to entertain the principal Lords of his court. They sat down to table at ten of the clock, and the feast lasted but half an hour: the victuals were served up in gold and silver dishes, in which consists the great magnificence of the King of *Persia*; these dishes were all covered, to the number of two hundred, and they serve up as many again when there happens to be more company. Most of the Lords, invited upon this occasion, wear a sort of turban adorned with pearls and precious stones; they call it *Tha-eits-timaer*, and they are sometimes adorned with herons feathers of great beauty. They take them off when they are out of the hall where the feast is, and put on those they commonly have upon their heads: a servant carries it before them. During the time of this festival, these Lords appear with extraordinary magnificence, and especially upon this day, when every one is seen in new cloaths. Not far from the place where the King gave this feast there were twelve of his led-horses richly caparisoned; their housings and saddles were set with pearls and precious stones, and their bridles were of massy gold. They were tied to silken halters which hung upon the ground, but care was to be taken how you trod upon them. Seven of these horses were white, but had a part of their body, the tail, and the feet stained of a red or an orange colour. I could not get near to look at them till I had given something to those who had the care of them. They had a great carpet spread by them, upon which sat a gentleman who had the immediate care of them; and by him was a great golden hammer wherewith they were shod, and a trough of the same metal. But I could not, even for money, get into the hall where the feast was, and was obliged to take up with a place where I saw every thing pass by. During this festival there are great presents made to the King, and particularly by the Grandees of the court, the bassas and governors of places; their presents consist of rich goods, purses of gold, horses, camels, and mules; which are carried and conducted separately by citizens who are employed for that purpose by the King's express order. Around the great square of the palace they, at the same time, carry ten or a dozen vessels full of straw, hanging by the end of certain poles, in token of a victory they formerly obtained over the *Aesbeck Tartars*; thus they give out, and then they lead a certain number of horses, covered with silk, but without saddles, into the court of the palace. However I thought nothing so extraordinary as to see such a number of the grandees cross the court in their return from the feast, amidst a vast croud of spectators. During the course of this festival also, which lasts for several days, they present each other with eggs: The *Maer-sejeldaer* is even obliged to wait on the King with some adorned with gold and silver neatly painted, a present in very high esteem among them.

Magnificence of the Persians.

Trophies.

Eggs presented.

Easter.

Upon the *twenty third*, we celebrated the feast of Easter at our Director's, and the next day the *English* Agent, with a numerous train, came to congratulate him thereupon. He was received after the usual manner, and it was late before they parted. We received several other visits the next day, which insensibly brought us on to the end of the month.

Shoots of rhubarb.

In the beginning of the month of *April*, Mr. *Kastelein* had a present of young asparagus. It was even sold in the market the next day, but then you had not above sixty or seventy for a score of florins. This asparagus is always dear at the beginning of the season, and there are few that buy them, but to make presents to such people of distinction as they sollicit. They sent us also some stalks and suckers of rhubarb, preserved in the gravy of lamb. They are very refreshing and laxative, of a delicious taste, and very much esteemed at this time of year.

BIDMUSK FLEUR & FENILLES. 72.

A

B

FEUILLES &c DE RHUBARBE ET FOCKIE - FOCKIESE. 73.



1704. The leaves of them are curled, green, yellow, and reddiſh, with a white ſtalk, inclining to the yellow: ſome of them are alſo of a fine red, and two or three inches in circumference: theſe ſtalks are for the moſt part a foot and a foot and half long, and they eat only the tender part of the beſt: when they begin to ſhoot up, they cover them with earth, like aſparagus, and that makes them grow big. They are cultivated for the King's table, in the neighbourhood of the town of *Laer*, whoſe governor is obliged annually to make him a preſent of ſome. The leaf of this is two or three fathom in circumference, and the root as well as itſelf, is like that of the common rhubarb, but it has no ſtrength like what grows in the country of *Usbek*, between *China* and *Muſcovy*. The *Perſians* eat the tender parts of theſe young ſtalks raw with ſalt and pepper, as the *Italians* eat the ſuckers of artichokes; the taſte of them is hot and biting, and very pleaſant: of the ſame they alſo make a ſyrup which is very refreſhing. I had the curioſity to draw this plant with its leaves and root, and I have met with leaves of a foot and an half long, and even ſome larger. The root of this had four ſlips, grey and mottled: they ſent it me from *Julfa*, where it had been nineteen years in the ground. On one ſide of this plant I have alſo drawn a certain fruit when the ſeaſon is farther advanced, which the *Perſians* call *Badensjoen*, and the *Europeans*, *Foekjefockieſe*. It is of a purple and ſometimes white, commonly of the ſize of a cucumber, but ſometimes as big again. It is excellent in broth, fryed in butter, and ſeveral other ways. They tranſplant the ſhrub that bears it, when very young, and the fruit is the better for it: the bloſſom of it is white, purple and yellow, and it uſually ſhoots a foot and an half out of the ground, with ſeveral ſmall branches, the weight of whoſe fruit bend them down to the earth: you have one of theſe in number 73, together with the preceding plant. The letter A diſtinguiſhes the leaves of rhubarb; B the root; and C the *Foekjefockieſe*. 1704.

Upon the *ſeventh* of this month, at *Julfa*, there fell an heavy rain, with hail which covered all the country, tho' at the ſame time they hardly felt any thing of the kind in the city; an accident which had not happened for many years before. All the reſt of the month we had wind, rain, and very uncertain weather.

Upon the *fifteenth*, they celebrated the feſtival of *Bairam-korbat* or *the Sacrifice of Abraham*. Mr. *Kaſtelein*, who knew my curioſity, ordered his maſter of the horſe and two others of his ſervants to wait on me on horſeback to the place deſigned for this purpoſe. The King's muſic had been heard the evening before, as the ſun went down, and continued till the ſame hour of the next day, the muſicians, who are in great number, relieving each other by turns. At ſeven in the morning I went to the *Chiaer-baeg*, where the King was to paſs as he croſſed the gardens, and he appeared in half an hour's time at the head of a train of Lords, above two hundred of them with the rich turbans we formerly mentioned. I had placed my ſelf in the middle of the way, where this Prince was to paſs, and having ſeen him, and his train, I galloped away to *Babaroek*, a *Perſian* burial ground, the place where the ceremony was to be performed, a good half league out of the city. It conſiſts of no more than the bare ſacrifice of a male camel, without any defect; if any it had it would be accounted impure. The *Daroega* or Bailif of the city, and ſometimes the King himſelf, gives him the firſt blow with a great launce, after which they diſpatch him with ſabres and knives. After this they cut him up into pieces, and divide him among the officers of the ſeveral diſtricts of the city; and as every one is eager to have his ſhare, diſorders ariſe, and ſome-

Feaſt of the Sacrifice of Abraham.

1704. fometimes many remain dead on the fpot, as it happened that day; for every one goes armed either with fabres or clubs, and there is fuch a throng of horfemen it is impoffible to move. For my part, I got away one of the firft, and returned to the *Chiaer-baeg* to fee this multitude go back again to the city. At length when every one had got what fhare he could of the facrifice, they returned in triumph, the officers at the head of thofe in their diftrict, jumping and dancing fword in hand, and with their clubs aloft, bawling out, and ftriking upon bafons and fmall drums. The firft piece that is cut off from this camel is for the King, and they carry it to the palace upon the point of a fpear. For the reft, the return was very orderly, and with great tokens of joy. Firft there appeared the King's guards, and then the Prince himfelf on horfeback, under a great parafol, to fhelter him from the fun beams, and followed by the Lords of the court, and they by twelve of his Majefty's led-horfes and four elephants. There were in all above one hundred thoufand perfons on foot and on horfeback, befides thofe that were on the tops of houfes. I was the only *European* that appeared dreffed after our mode. As foon as the King drew near they cleared the way for him by laying it thick on with the cudgel, fo that many fell into the water with their horfes; others were quite overpowered with blows, and I went home very much fatigued: and yet all was over before eleven in the morning, notwithftanding they had croffed the town in form and order in their return. For ten days before this facrifice they had led this camel up and down the town covered with thorns or the like, and preceded by a launce, an ax, and many inftruments,

Abundance of fheep killed.

That day they kill and eat above fifty thoufand fheep at *Ifpahan*, and thofe who have the very good fortune to get a piece of the camel, are fure to drefs it with their mutton; tho' others make a relick of it, and keep it all the year round. 1704. For the reft, it is very certain, that they every day in this city confume ten or twelve thoufand fheep and goats, and that every body is obliged to eat mutton upon this day. I met fuch prodigious flocks of them fome days before that I had much ado to get clear of them. They here alfo eat an inconceivable number of lambs, from twenty to twenty five or thirty days old. This begins in the month of *November*, and lafts till the months of *April* and *May*, and particularly among people of rank. The price of thefe lambs is commonly feven, eight, or nine *moroedjes*, feven of which go to a crown of our money; and they weigh from fix to twelve pounds. They are one of the greateft dainties of *Perfia*, and efpecially among the better fort, who never eat beef, but leave it to the meaner and poor people, as well as the buffaloe which is alfo publickly fold.

The King goes into the country with his miftreffes.

Some days after this feftival the King went into the country with his miftreffes, and diverted himfelf with feeing fome elephants fwim crofs a river which had been fwoln in an extraordinary manner by the rains that had lately fallen.

Feftival of Aidikadier.

Upon the *twenty third* they held the feftival of *Aidikadier*, a day upon which the *Perfians* will have it that *Mohammed* declared to the people, That *Ali* was to be his fucceffor, and injoined them to acknowledge him as fuch. They fay this was tranfacted in *Arabia the Happy*, near the village of *Shomkadier*, whence they derive the name of this feftival, which is obferved by the *Perfians* only, the other *Mohammedans* not bearing the mention of it.

At this time the trees began to fhoot, and the month concluded with heavy rains, which damaged fome houfes and wafhed away others, which is not at all to be wondered at; for the mafons work of this country is like a fpunge, and the houfes are flat at top, fo that it is impoffible to keep them dry when it rains.

With

1704. With *May* the weather began to recover itself; and I went into the country with Mr. *Kastelein* designing to follow the course of the river, but it had so drowned its banks because of the rains which had fallen some time before, that we were obliged to strike cross the country, by a road which in two hour's time carried us to a pleasure-house called *Goes-jeron*, to the eastward of the city, upon the river of *Zenderoe*. It has a large garden full of sena and fruit-trees; and here several that have been sent by the *East-India* company have stopped upon their arrival at, and departure from *Ispahan*. This house has several apartments, some of which begin to run to ruin, and the neighbourhood about it is very pleasant. In this garden there are four great sena-trees, at a small distance from each other, which cover a pavilion which you go up to by some steps. These trees are short, with a thick trunk, and two of them are sixteen foot in circumference. They hold them to be very antient, and tell you that *Tamerlane* once reposed himself under the shade of their branches.

An old pleasure-house.

We thought here to have met with some game, but it suddenly coming on to rain we were glad to go back to *Julfa* where we staid till it was night. The following day the weather was very inconstant, and I was taken with an intermitting fever; I had only some few fits of it, but they weakned me to that degree, that I was sensible of the ill effects of them quite to the end of the month.

CHAP. XL.

Description of Ispahan, *and of what is most remarkable in that city, and the neighbourhood about it.*

Prospect of the city from without.

ISpahan is a city of very great extent, and especially if you take in the suburbs; and yet it does not make any great figure from without, whether with regard to moschs, towers, or large buildings, because it is generally shaded by trees in the summer. For this reason I staid till it was winter to draw a view of it, and even then I could do it but imperfectly because of the number of palm-trees, pines, sena's and cypresses which are ever green, and so high and so thick of leaves as to charm the eye. All the buildings of this city are grey, with platforms or terrasses at top. There is no distinguishing the wall which divides the city from the suburbs, because the houses are so close together there is no perceiving any division. All this makes it a difficult task to draw a view of this city, and the rather as it stands upon a level or plain, so that I was obliged to pitch upon an eminence a league from the town, from whence I saw *Julfa*, which is on the other side of the town, the city and all its dependences, besides the villages and gardens that surround it, and which take up a very great extent of country, the whole encompassed with mountains. That which is the nearest of all is a league and an half to the southward, and called *Koe-soffa*. Upon the side of this mountain you see a house built by King *Suliman*, the father of the present King, and therein are many fine apartments, whence you have a prospect of the city and country about it, a plantation of all sorts of trees, and a fall of water which comes down from the mountains. This building is called *Tagte Sullemoen*, or the throne of

Mountain of Koe-Soffa.

A royal pleasure-house.

TRONE DE ZULEMOEN.



of *Suliman*, and they were repairing it when I was in theſe parts. You have a repreſentation of it above, ſuch as it appears from the foot of the hill. The other mountains are much farther diſtant from the city, which ſtands in a plain of about twenty five leagues from eaſt to weſt. One would even ſay it was boundleſs to the eaſtward in particular, as well as the road to *Shiras*, upon which you meet with many fine villages, and pleaſant gardens; I travelled ſix leagues to the eaſtward and could perceive no bounds. It is alſo full ſix leagues broad.

Gates of Iſpahan. This city has ten gates, which are all open and without any guard. In order to go round it, I went to the gate of *Haſſan-abaet*, ſo called from a certain perſon of great fame, who was one of the firſt who began to build on that ſide: from thence you go to that of *Derwas-cykaroen*, or the *Gate of the Deaf*, this part having been formerly inhabited by deaf people. You leave it on the left hand to go through the bazars, which are a quarter of a league from the former. The gate of *Seydach-moedjoen* is at a like diſtance, and on the eaſt-ſide of the town, where there is a double wall, the outermoſt of which is very low, and beyond which there is nothing but tombs and no houſes. From this you go on to the gate *Shoebarn*, to the weſtward, from whence, at the ſame diſtance, you ſee that of *Togt-ſhie*. The canal which goes round a part of the city to the weſtward, quite to the gate of *Karoen*, which we have mentioned, riſes or has its ſpring from this place. A quarter of a league from thence you have the gate of *Darideſt*, and at an

1704. equal distance from *Darwasynow*, or the *New-gate*. Then the gate of *Darwarsy Lamboen*, and then that of *Doulet*, or *Prosperity*, which is that of the *Chiaer-baeg*. The tenth is that of *Hadshie* near the gate of the kitchen of the royal palace. When I had got round again to the gate of *Hassan-abaet*, whence I set out, I looked at my watch, and found I had been two hours and an half in going from gate to gate. They are all built of earth and without any works for defence, and the folds of the gates themselves are very clumsey and secured by iron plates.

Wards of the city. This city is divided within the walls into twenty two principal parts or wards, seventeen of which bear the name of *Mamerh-olla-sie* or of *Namet-holladers*, and the five others that of *Heiderrie*: they are like the *Nicoloti* and the *Castellani* at *Venice*. These seventeen parts or wards of the first division have each of them a particular name; the first is called *Bagaet*, or the *Ward of Gardens*; because in the reign of *Abbas* the first it contained nothing but gardens: the second *Kerron*, or the *Ward of the Deaf*: the third *Daehbettin*, or of the *Fruit-house of Melons*: the fourth *Sey-id Agmed-joen*, so called from one of their Doctors: the fifth *Letver*, the etymology of which is unknown: the sixth *Basaer-Agaes*, or the *Duck-market*: the seventh *Shaer-soi Kotba*, or the *Cross-way of Kotba*: the eighth *Seltoen-senshierie*, from a Prince of that name: the ninth *Namo-asig*, or the *three incompatibles*: the tenth *Shoebare*, the derivation of which I cannot tell: the eleventh *Derre-Babba-Kasim*, or the *District of the Father Kasim*: the twelfth *Goude Mazsoetbeek*: the thirteenth *Golbaer*, or *rich in flowers*: the fourteenth *Meydoenmier*, or the *District or ward of the square of Mier*, from one of their Doctors: the fifteenth *Niema-wort*; the meaning of which I know not: the sixteenth *Derre-koek*, or *Place of Pleasure*. I am ignorant of the name of the seventeenth. The four following are of the division of the *Heyderries*; the first of them is called *Maleynouw*, or the *New Part*: the *Derredest*, or the *Forsaken*: the third *Hoescyn-ja*, or the *District of the Churchmen*: and the fourth *Togt-shie*, or of the *Keeper of the Poultry*. 1704.

The chief parts of the same general divisions without the walls are to the number of four; the first is called *Abbas Abaet*, founded by *Abbas the Great*. This is the most considerable of the out-parts, and here live none but people of distinction; nor indeed is there any difference made between this and those within the walls: it is to the westward: the second is *Siems-Abaet*, so called from its founder: the third *Bied-Abaet*, and the fourth *Thie-roen*. There are two besides these which belong to the division of *Namet-olla-hie*, the first of which is called *Sheigh-joessus-sibenna*, or the *Mason of old Joseph*, otherwise called the District of *Sheig-Sebbennaes*, and *Telwaeskon*. Under these parts are comprehended several smaller subdivisions, which are all distinguished by particular names. These *Subdivisions.* two great divisions always oppose each other in every thing, and this is chiefly remarkable upon days when they have processions, upon great festivals, and in public places: and as they never submit to each other upon these occasions, they never fail to commit disorders, and some of them are often left dead upon the spot; this we shall take notice of hereafter. It is said that the origin of this emulation, or enmity rather, is derived from two ancient villages, that formerly joined to each other, and that one of them belonged to the *Heiderries*, and the other to the *Namet-olla-hie*, names since assumed by the two parties. This city was at first called *Hispahan*, *Ispahan*, or *Aspahan*, and was no more than any ordinary town till the reign of *Abbas the Great*, and after he had conquered *Laer* and *Ormus*, when he forsook *Casbin* and

1704. and *Sultania* to reside at *Ispahan*. The chief cause of this change was the advantageous situation of this city, which is now become the capital of the Kingdom, and seat of the Monarchs of *Persia*. It is in the province of *Irak*, part of the ancient *Parthia*, and in the latitude of 32 degrees 45 minutes of the northern hemisphere.

Persia. This country in general goes by the name of *Persia*, a great and famous Kingdom of *Asia* surrounded by the *Caspian* sea, *Zagathay*, *Tartary*, the empire of the *Mogol*, the sea of *India*, the gulf of *Persia*, *Arabia the Desart* and *Turkey*.

King's palace. The King's palace is three quarters of a league in circumference, and has six gates, the chief of which is called *Ali Kapie*, or the *Gate of Ali:* the second *Haram Kapesie*, or the *Gate of the Seraglio*; both of them come into the *Meydoen* or great square, which is to the northward: the third is called *Moerbag-Kapesie*, or the *Gate of the Kitchen*, because all the victuals that are served up at the King's table go through that: the fourth *Ghandag-Kapesie*, thro' which you go into the gardens of the palace; tho' that is what nobody is allowed to do but the King himself, and the *Kapaters* or eunuchs that have the guard of his women; this gate leads into the *Chiaer-baeg:* the fifth *Ghajat-ganna Kapesie*, or the *Gate of Taylors*, because those in his Majesty's service have their abode there: the sixth *Ghanna Kapesie*, or the *Secretary's Gate:* these two last come into the town to the northward. Most of the Grandees of the kingdom go into the palace through those gates when the King gives them audience, and particularly through the two first.

The cittadel. The cittadel, which they call *Tabaroek*, is about half a league in circumference, and extends in length, eastward, quite into the city, and to the southward meets the wall of the same. It has a lofty mud wall, flanked with ugly towers, upon which there are some pieces of cannon mounted; but they dare not 1704. discharge them, for fear of throwing down the wall, which is in so wretched a condition that you may see through it in several places. They do not suffer strangers to go into it, but I am persuaded the reason is because it is in a more ruinous condition within than it is without; there is however a good deal of room and convenience within it. As for what remains to be said of the rest of the city, we shall declare ourselves concerning it when we have gone through the description of it, to the end that what we have to add may be the better understood. Now here follows the description of it, such as it is represented in number 74, and as it appears from the southward. The figure [1] distinguishes a mountain; [2] the new royal garden, which I saw begun; it is of great extent; [3] the river of *Zenderoe*; [4] the house of one of the chief *Armenian* merchants of *Julfa*; [5] the *Dominicans* church of the same place; [6] the church of St. *John* belonging to the *Armenians*; [7] the episcopal church of the same, with a small tower; [8] the market church; [9] the church of St. *Mary*, all this in *Julfa*; [10] the bridge of *Allawerdi-Khan*; [11] *Muzyt* or the royal mosch; [12] that of *Torfolla*, one of their Doctors; [13] *Menare-Kambrinsie*, which is a lofty stone tower; [14] *Kella Menaer*, or the pillar of beasts heads; [15] *Tabaroek* or the cittadel; [16] *Hazaarsherip* or the great royal garden; [17 and 18] the chief tombs belonging to the *Persians*, and their burial place called *Babaroek*; [19] the *Christian* place of burial; [20] the royal river; [21] the mountains of *Choroe*, in part covered with snow; [22] that of *Talissia*, a village of that name.

The *Meydoen*, which is one of the chief ornaments of this city, is a great square or market-place which is seven hundred and ten paces long, from east to west; and two hundred and ten broad from north to south. *The great square.*

It




22
1
2
20


SPA
3
21
3
4
5
20
19


AHAN.
20
16
17
18
13
14
12
11





1704. It is to the ſouthward of the royal palace, and to the northward of the *Nachroe-chone*, a building for the King's muſick. It conſiſts of two lofty galleries diſtinct from each other, and between them you ſee the imperial gate, of a fine architecture, lofty, and built of fine ſtones, thro' which you go into the *Bazars*. Upon this gate you ſee a repreſentation of the battle between King *Abbas* and the *Usbeck-Tartars*; it is in painting, by an artiſt of the country. Above it there is a ſtriking clock, the only one in all *Perſia*, and on the ſame ſide you have the pavilion of the machines or of the clock, which moves ſome wooden puppets in a wheel, not worthy to be ſeen by an *European*. A little further to the eaſtward you come to the moſch of *Shig-lotf-olla*, ſo called from one of their doctors, whom they reckon in the number of their ſaints. It is one of the chief in all the city, and is adorned with a fine dome, covered on the out-ſide with green and blue ſtones incruſtated with gold, and with a pyramid, upon which there are three balls of the ſame metal. The front door comes into the great ſquare, and you aſcend to it by ſeveral ſteps; it is round, and forty paces in diameter, as I was aſſured by one I had deſired to meaſure it; for it is unlawful for Chriſtians to go into it.

Royal moſch

The royal moſch called *Shah-mazyt*, is on the weſt-ſide of this ſquare, and is the moſt conſiderable in all *Iſpahan*. It has a dome like the former, and two doors in front, on each ſide of which there is a pillar; they are more lofty than the moſch itſelf, the whole of green and blue, with an incruſtation of gold, very charming to the ſight. About it you ſee ſeveral *Perſian* characters in white, and the dome has two columns. This moſch is round like the former, and is eighty-five paces in diameter. There is a fine fountain or baſon in the court oppoſite to the entrance, and to ſay the truth of the matter, theſe two moſchs are the greateſt ornaments of the meydoen or great ſquare. The gate of *Ali-kapie* is but two hundred and ſixty ſix paces from this laſt moſch, and the whole ſquare is ſurrounded with lofty buildings, and with porticoes full of ſhops and artificers. Thoſe in the ſervice of his Majeſty are on the ſide of the court; and beſides all this, the greateſt part of this ſquare is full of tents, where they expoſe all ſorts of things to ſale; but they pack up their goods at night and leave a watch behind, which go the rounds in the night with dogs. Moſt of the buildings there are ſhaded with elms, and you there continually ſee a prodigious concourſe of people, and among the reſt, a great number of perſons of quality going and coming from court. You have alſo here numbers of buffoons and mountebanks, but they ſell no medicines, and do no more than divert the people with idle ſtories, which they are paid for by their hearers and ſpectators. Some of them have apes and monkies, which play a thouſand tricks to draw the people about them; for there is no nation under the ſun ſo fond of the bagatelle as the *Perſians*, and their coffee-houſes, bazars, and the like, are accordingly full of theſe buffoons.

Tournament.

In the middle of this ſquare or market-place there is a large and lofty pillar for publick ſports, and upon which they commonly fix the prize which uſually conſiſts of a golden cup or ſome ſuch thing; the parties that contend for it, ride by it on full ſpeed, and turning the body, at once ſend away their dart or arrow, and ſtop at once; but none are allowed this but perſons of diſtinction and men of the ſword; and he that wins the prize lays hold on it, and puts it upon his head in token of victory; the King alſo makes him a preſent, more or leſs, according to the value he has for him; but it is commonly a golden quiver full of arrows. But theſe ſports have been but little in vogue ſince the acceſſion of the preſent King, whoſe inclinations carry him another way, and

1704. are very different from thofe of his predeceffors, under whom this pillar was erected. In former days they never failed to have a tournament upon the feftival of *Nowroes* or of the new folar year, a folemnity ftrictly obferved by the ancient Kings of *Perfia*, and, according to the annals of this country, even in the days of *Darius*. Upon thefe occafions they always ftruck and moved off the tents that ufually ftand here, and ploughed the ground with oxen twenty days before hand. The King was feated upon a kind of gallery or theatre, called *Talael*, over the gate of *Ali-kapie*, which is very lofty, and of a fine architecture. The races being over, there came on wreftlers and rope-dancers, and then they had fights of bulls and rams. Upon thefe occafions they had alfo jugglers, which the King at this day will no longer admit of, the directors of his confcience having informed him the toleration of them is finful and immoral; nor do they any longer allow of dancing women and courtezans, who formerly abounded on all fides.

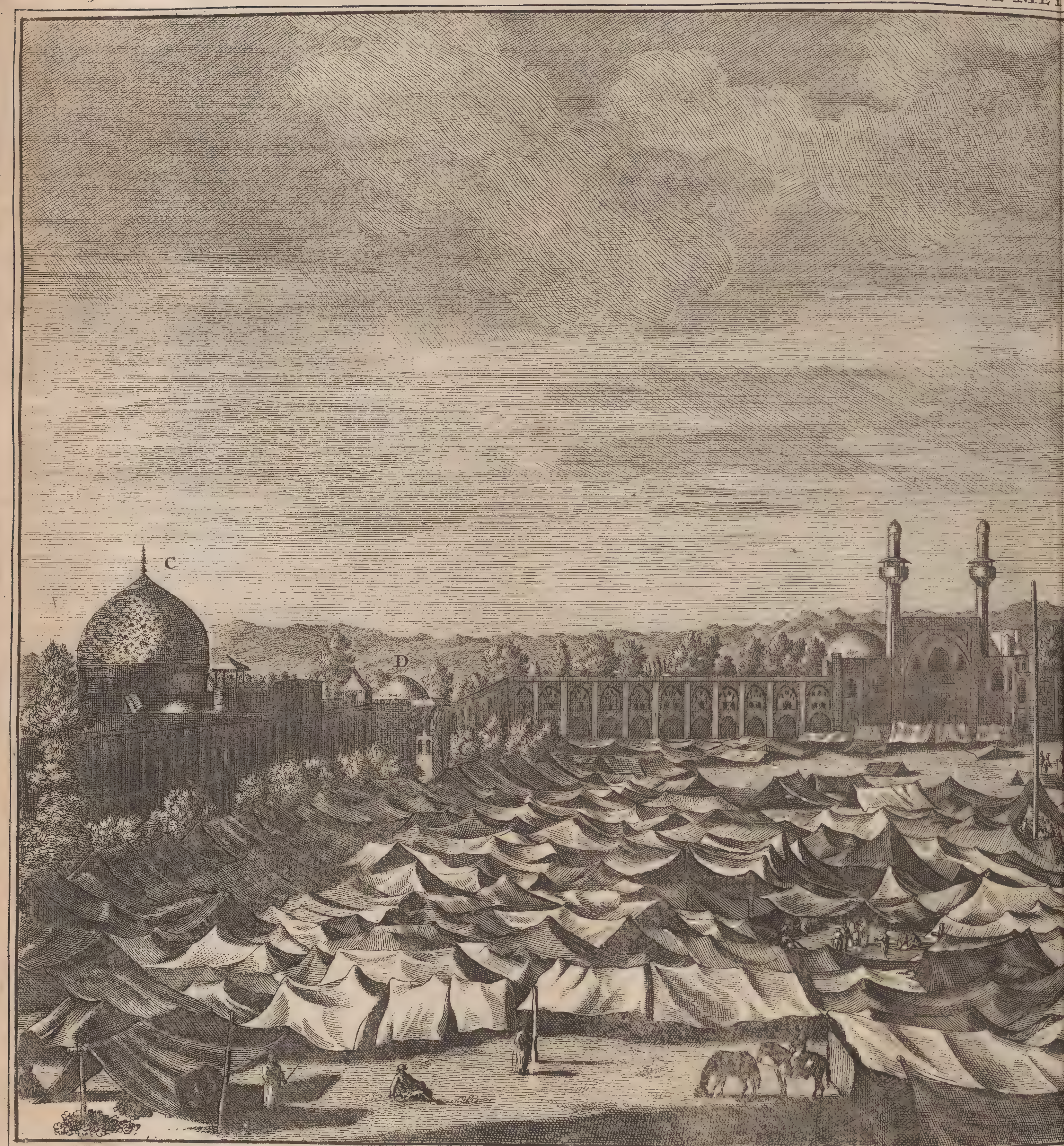
Defcription of the Meydoen.

You have a reprefentation of the *Meydoen* or the great market-place in number 75. This firft view was taken from the fide of the houfe for the King's mufick. The letter *A* diftinguifhes the talael or the theatre, over the gate of *Ali-kapie*: *B*, the royal mofch: *C*, that of *Shig-lotf-alla*: *D*, the *Wagtis-fai-aet*, or the pavilion of machines. The tents are there alfo reprefented, and the pillar for races. The fecond view reprefented in number 76, was taken from the eaft near the royal mofch. The Letter *A*, diftinguifhes the *Talael*, *Ali-kapie*: *B*, the mofch of *Shig-lotf-olla*: *C*, the pavilion of machines: *D*, the houfe of mufical inftruments: *E*, the *Derre-harram*, or the gate of the Seraglio, of which you do not fee much. The pillar is there in the middle of the fquare. Along the portico of the palace there runs a baluftrade of painted wood, on each fide: this baluftrade contains one hundred and nineteen pieces of fmall cannon 1704. whofe carriages are much out of repair, and efpecially the wheels. There is a canal by thefe cannon, which were brought from *Ormus*, in the reign of *Abbas*, who made himfelf mafter of the place by the affiftance of the *Englifh*.

You go into the palace by the gate of *Ali-kapie*, which is finely built, and ten paces broad; it is more in depth, with a lofty vault or arcade, with pretty niches on the fides of the wall. When you are got thro' it, you fee lofty ftone walls between which you get to the buildings and garden; the gate of the *Haram* is nearly like this; it was built while I was here, and gilt in the front. The firft time I was at court, in the abfence of the King and his women, I went through a gallery between thefe walls, and thought the entrance of it quite royal. From thence I went to the new Seraglio of the women, which is full of fmall magnificent apartments, with walls white without and painted with flowers. At the end of this building on the right-hand, there is a great apartment of the neateft fort, furrounded with rooms, which were then not finifhed, and upon which they were then at work. From thence you go into the hall of *Tiel-fetton*, or of the forty pillars, where the King ufually gives audience to foreign minifters; twenty of thefe columns are of wood painted and gilt. This hall is very fpacious, and the walls of it are blue adorned with flowers and foliages. You here fee alfo fome figures of *Europeans*, dreffed after the *Spanifh* manner, and otherwife, and eight other pillars in the back part of this building, four of a fide, and four other in an apartment which was fhut up. Before this apartment there is a great court full of fena's, and over-againft it another fmaller, behind which is the Seraglio, and between both a fine bafon or fifhpond lined with great ftones, with which alfo the court itfelf is paved. This bafon is one hundred and

Magnificent building.




C
D

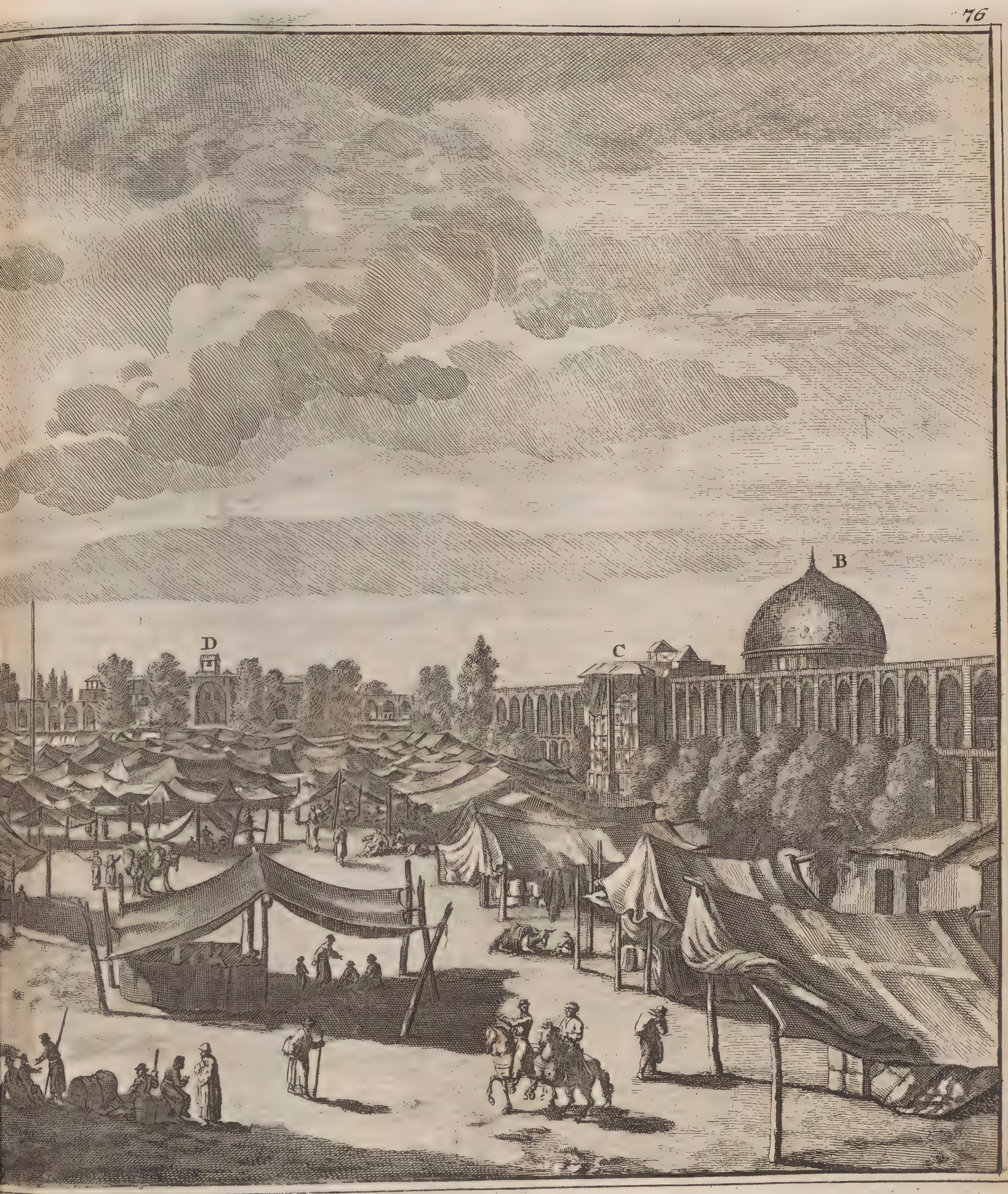

B
A







LE MEY-



-DOEN.



1704. eighty paces long by twenty four broad. From thence they carried me into another court, and then into a great building, where there was an hall of extraordinary dimensions, very lofty and very light, with great curtains which fell from the ceiling down to the floor. I had the curiosity to lift up one of them, and found this hall full of looking-glasses, and adorned with fine columns of wood, painted and gilt; it is the very finest part of the palace, and here also the King gives audience to foreign ministers. There are fine fountains or basons before it, and a canal to water the trees of the garden; this palace is divided into several parts, and has several gardens divided from each other. You have here also fine stone galleries, covered, and adorned with niches on the sides, and stone benches three foot high, and several other apartments exclusive of the new seraglio, for which the King pays yearly the sum of three hundred *Tomans*, every *Toman* about forty florins of our money; all the shops about the *Mey-doen* and *Chiaer-baag* are obliged to contribute to it; and the clergy have all the revenue of the gardens belonging to it, by a grant from *Abbas* the first.

The King loves musick. The King delights much in musick, and keeps a great number of hands for that purpose at the *Nachroechone*. *Their instruments.* Their chief instruments are the *Karama*, which is somewhat in the nature of the trumpet; there are some of them five inches in circumference at the mouth end, and four foot at the other, and seven foot six inches long, so that there is no making use of them without a rest; they give a very extraordinary sound; they have also the *Koes*, a great drum, five foot two Inches deep, and nine foot nine inches round; but it is never used except in war, and those that beat it ride upon camels; the *Hool*, which is a drum like ours; the *Nagora*, a small kettle-drum, and the trumpet or the *Nasier*. They have harpsichords also; but the chief instrument in use with them is the *Kamon-she*, a kind of violin. They have also the *Soorna* or hautbois; several sorts of flutes; the harp or the *Morgnie*, a kind of a flat copper bason, upon which they strike and make a great noise. Besides all these they have several other instruments we know nothing of in our parts.

Chief exercises of the Persians. The chief exercises of this nation are riding and darting the *Ainer* or cane; shooting with the bow, and fowling; and their usual pastimes are tobacco and conversation. They are moreover great lovers of chess, and play at it perfectly well.

Having thus said all we have to observe concerning the *Mey-doen* or great market-place; let us go to the *Chiaer-baag*, or the fine alley or walk of *Ispahan*, which signifies also the *four gardens*, and is one of the principal ornaments of this capital. *The Chiaer baag.* You go to it by the gate of *Daerwasey-doulet* or of *Prosperity*, built by *Abbas* the great, to the south. This Prince ordered some of his counsellors of state, to build some houses at their own expence, at the entrance into these gardens along this fine walk. One of these Lords, called *Gemshe Ali Khan*, accordingly erected a building in form of a tower, against one of the walks that runs along the river; the rest followed this example, and strove to out-do each other in adorning it with fine stone buildings, and among the rest with a pavilion at the entrance, whence the King as he came out of the gardens might see all these edifices.

At the distance of two hundred and fifty paces from the gate of the city, as you go along by these gardens, you see two buildings opposite to each other, with great gates that go into the gardens, and in the middle of this alley is a large octogon bason; two other buildings like these at three hundred and thirty eight paces from thence, with a square bason, and one hundred and seventy paces farther you come to a cross way, extending to the walls of the gardens. This cross-way is full of benches

1704. benches, wooden-chairs, and tables, and here in the evening you always see a great number of *Persians*, smoaking and drinking coffee; the ground here has a slope, where there are trees which afford the finest shade in the world; and accordingly it is almost always thronged with people on foot, and on horseback, who there divert themselves with racing and several other exercises. As you go still farther you come to a great stone-gate, belonging to one of these gardens, and a little farther is two other buildings, where they retire to smoke, and a little farther another cross-way; then two buildings like the former, and between them a square bason. Here they smoke also and drink coffee, and here you have a great number of bucklers, and bows and arrows, belonging to the *Mametholladers* and the *Heyderries* we have mentioned before: At some distance from hence there is another octogon bason, which butts upon a way which is crossed by a fine river planted on each side with sena's. The great road extends above two hundred paces beyond this along the palace and the royal garden, where there is a kind of menagerie.

Famous bridge. The bridge of *Alla-werdi Khan*, the name of its founder, is but eighty paces from hence. The road near it is one thousand seven hundred and fifty one paces long, and sixty eight broad, adorned on each side with sena's planted in the reign of *Abbas* the great, above one hundred years ago. The part where these trees are planted is five paces broad, and is raised one foot and an half above the way or road itself, which is full of sand. This raised way which runs between the wall of the garden and these trees is paved with large brick, wherewith also the canal that crosses the *Chiaer-baag* is lined. On the sides of these trees which are regularly planted at the distance of ten foot from each other, is a conveyance to water them.

The bridge of *Alla-werdie-Khan* is upon the river of *Zenderoet*, five hundred and forty paces long and seventeen broad, and built of large stones. 1704. It has thirty three arches, some of which stand upon sand, which is very hard in this place, and under them the water runs when it is high. There are ninety three niches upon this bridge, some of which are stopt up and some of them open, and the two ends are flanked by four towers. There are parapet walls of brick, with holes throughout the whole length from the one end to the other, so that you have here the finest sight in the world, together with pretty summer houses upon it at the two ends. Four hundred and sixteen paces from this bridge, there is a water-fall received by a bason sixty paces long and forty paces broad, and near this fall there are eleven large stone steps in a ruinous state, and not far off a great road, trees, and a slope-way, which afterwards becomes level. At some distance from hence you see two other houses of pleasure, and afterwards twelve others, two and two, at nearly an equal distance from each other, quite to the end of this fine alley or way, which is every where of the same breadth, and bounded by the King's great garden, which extends from the water-fall quite hither. There are on each hand one hundred and forty five sena's, and some mulberry-trees between them, and from the end of the bridge to that of the alley is two thousand and forty five paces, to which if you add the length of the bridge itself, which is five hundred and forty, and the way on this side which is one thousand seven hundred and sixty one, you will have in all four thousand three hundred and thirty six paces. This magnificent alley butts, as we have already observed, upon the King's great garden, where there is a fine building painted without like the rest, and adorned with festoons of flowers and foliages. The entrance into the garden is delightful; the middle walk is adorned with a fine canal, with a sloping fall and several

2 jets




1
2

PONT ALLA-WERDIE-CHAN.

78

PONT D' ALLAWERDIE-CHAM.

80

LE CHYAER-BAEG.

LE CHYAER-BAEG. 79

LE CHYAER-BAEG. 81





Pont Has




2



1704. jets of water. This garden is extremely spacious, is full of fine walks and fruit-trees which have a very charming effect; tho' it would be easy to heigthen it with other ornaments. It is two thousand two hundred and eighty paces in length from north to south, and one thousand six hundred and forty five paces in breadth from east to west; they call it *Hasaen-sheriep* or the *garden of a thousand paces.* You have here several lofty towers of earth, which serve for dove-houses, with the dung of which they manure their melon grounds.

Fine garden.

Representation of the Chiaer-baeg.

In number 77, you have the first representation of *Chiaer-baeg*, taken from the west; it was drawn by the side of the river of *Zenderot* or *Zajandaroet*, which rises from four great springs or wells, called *Chert'zesme Æ*, or the *source of springs.* This place is in mountains, five days to the westward of *Ispahan.* There are people who give it two places to spring from, the first of which is but three days from this capital, in the village of *Dambina*, and the second where we have already said it to be; for the rest it loses itself three days to the eastward of *Ispahan* in a marshy plain called *Gou-honie.* In this representation every thing that is to be seen is distinguished by figures; for example, number [1] points out the gardens which run along the fine alley or walk of the *Chiaer-baeg*, with the way that leads to the bridge; [2] the bridge of *Allawerdie-Khan*; [3] a building erected in the reign of King *Sefi*, to be an abode for a *Dervis* who had been sent for from *India*, and who refus'd to come; [4] a house where they wash the bodies of the dead; [5] the buildings of the *Chiaer-baeg*; [6] that of *Gem-shil alli-Khan*; [7] a dove-house; [8] the river of *Zenderoet.*

Second representation.

The second prospect taken is the *Chiaer-baeg* it self, near the bridge in number 78. The letter *A*, distinguishes the King's garden; *B*, the bridge; *C*, the house where they wash the bodies of the dead; *D*, the river; *E*, the mountains of *Koe-soffa.* The other buildings are represented to the right and left as they are in the *Chiaer-baeg.* 1704.

Third representation.

The third representation was taken from the bridge, on the side where the garden gate is; where you see a tower to gather the wind to refresh the lodgings in summer, by means of certain pipes which come out of the roof and convey the air into the chambers: The fountains and the walks which go towards the building on the side of the city-gate on the left hand, and to the right of the wall of the gardens of the royal palace. This prospect is in number 79.

Fourth representation.

The fourth, represented in number 80, was taken from the other end of the bridge, and shews the way beyond it, with the buildings to the right and left; the water-fall and the bason, and the way which goes to the end of the building of the King's great garden.

Fifth representation.

The fifth is from the other end, and in number 81, shews the front of the building of this garden, and the canal which runs by the front gate.

Bridge of Shiras.

The bridge of *Shiras* is also a fine building, a quarter of a league from the gate of *Hassen-abaet* whose name it bears. It is on the east side of the city, and one hundred and eighty eight paces long by sixteen broad; it is built with free-stone, and has on each side forty two niches some of which are open, and some not. It has twenty arches under which the river runs when it is high, and eight others on the sides, five to the right and to the left. The building on the middle of this bridge is open on each side, and you go through it to go to the bridge above. To the eastward which is the most proper situation for drawing of this bridge before its arches, you see a fine smooth way, which is eighteen foot broad. From hence, twelve steps, you go down to the river, when it happens to be low, which almost always is in summer, so that horses ford it with very great ease;

1704. eaſe; this is the more ſurprizing as this river is ſometimes ſo full and rapid, that it throws down and ſweeps away whole houſes, as happened in the month of *April* of the year 1699. Theſe ſteps we have been ſpeaking of are divided into nineteen parts, ſeparated from each other by a paſſage or canal through which the river runs; but it happens that ſome of theſe diviſions have but ſeven or eight ſteps, and there is a fine building upon this bridge, under which they walk, and croſs it. That which appears at the foot of the bridge, ſerves for the front gate of the King's garden on the city ſide; there is on the other ſide another like it, concerning which we ſhall ſpeak hereafter. This bridge is repreſented in number 82. The figure [1] diſtinguiſhes the bridge in general; [2] the garden of *Bagenaſer*; [3] that of *Sadet-abad*; [4] the river of *Zenderoet*. There is nothing more pleaſing to the ſight than the view to the eaſtward from upon this bridge; and in the evening you ſee an infinite number of perſons of both ſexes, taking the air by the river ſide, near the water-fall, and in the fine way that runs along the arches of the bridge, ſome on horſeback, ſome on foot, ſmoaking and drinking coffee, which they there find ready prepared for them. The garden of *Sadet-abad* is to the ſouth-eaſt of the city, and extends quite to the weſtward of this bridge, ſo that it contains a vaſt quantity of ground; it has a fine *Haram* or ſeraglio built of ſtone, by the river ſide, where there is alſo another bridge with a rail or baluſtrade inſtead of a parapet; it ſtands oppoſite to a garden, which you go into by croſſing it. This bridge has ſeventeen arches. There was a loftier build- 1704.

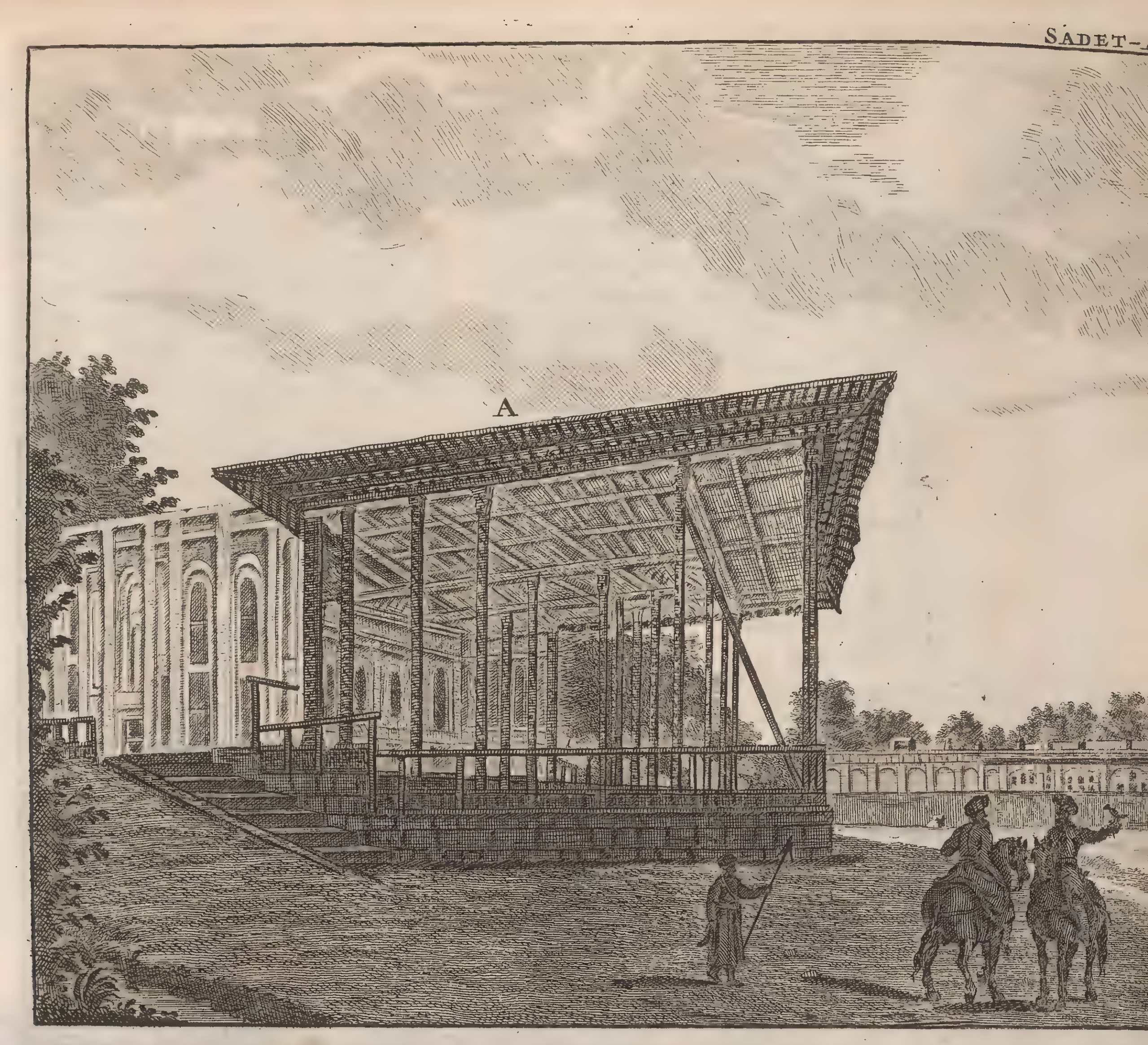
Fine proſpect.



PROSPECT PROCHE LE PONT HASSAN ABAET.

ing





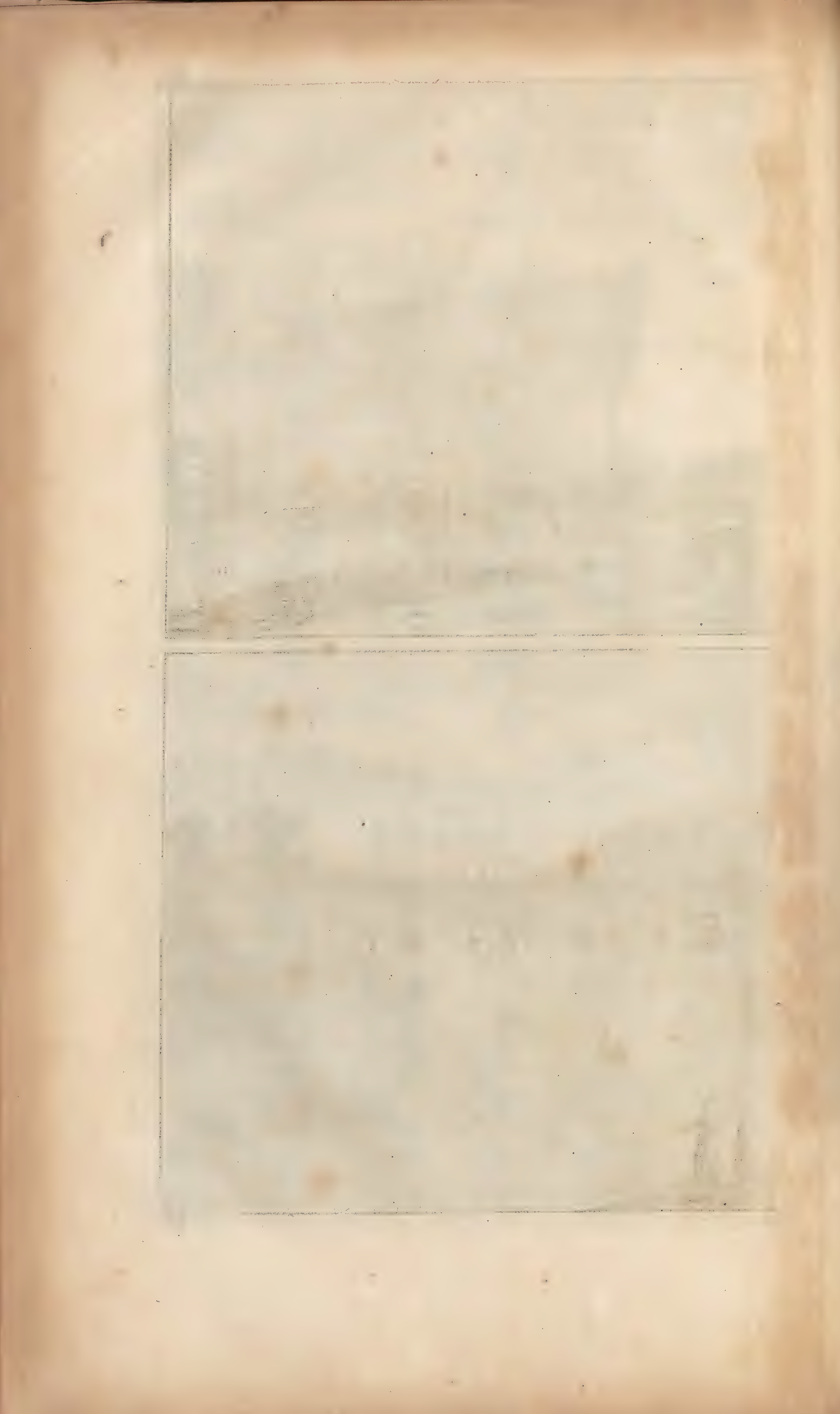


SADET

-ABAD. 83



T-ABAD. 84



1704. ing above this ſeraglio, which was burnt this ſummer while the King was there. On one ſide of this building you ſee a fine * *Talael*, where his Majeſty gives audience to foreign miniſters, behind which there is a magnificent building forty paces long, by thirty three broad, and the *Talael* itſelf is thirty-ſix by forty-two, with two ſteps in front, each a foot and a half high; in the middle there is a marble baſon which is eight paces by ſix. Going ſtill farther, you come to a place raiſed three foot without ſteps, and another like it a little farther, on the ſide of the walls of the building from whence you go into the apartments, and here you have a baſon of four paces by ſix. Upon the walls are ſix pictures in niches, as big as the life; they are of men and women, and four of them are repreſented in the *Spaniſh* habit, with each a glaſs of wine in the hand. You have here alſo two women painted on the two walls, beſide each other, one after the *Spaniſh* manner, and one dreſſed after the ancient manner; but they are very indifferently done. The reſt is all gilt from top to bottom, and adorned with flowers, foliages, and animals, and with twenty columns painted after the ſame manner, and ſtriped with blue and red, which has an effect pretty enough. You have the whole in number 83, where the *Talael* is diſtinguiſhed by the letter *A*, the *Haram* or ſeraglio by *B*, the bridge by *C*, and the river by *D*. When the King is there he ſtops the courſe

* *A ſort of gallery or amphitheatre, open on three ſides.*


Pont Zjareston.



 of

1704. of the river by wooden dykes in the canals or openings of the bridge of *Haſſan-Abaet*, to bring the water to run by the *Talael*, near which there are two or three poor veſſels in which he diverts himſelf with rowing with his concubines.

Fine proſpect. I drew another proſpect from a lofty ſummer-houſe in the garden, from whence you have a proſpect of the bridge of the *Chiaer-baeg*, you have it in number 84; the letter *A*, diſtinguiſhes the ſeraglio; *B*, the bridge which anſwers to the garden, on the other ſide; *C*, that of the *Chiaer-baeg*; *D*, the river, and another bridge at a greater diſtance from the city; it is called *Shareſton* and has ten arches. and a large building on one ſide thro' which you go to croſs it. The proſpect here, on all ſides is delightful and the river full of large rocks around which it ſweeps. Here I would add that at the diſtance of five days to the ſouth-weſt of *Iſpahan*, upon a lofty flat hill you meet with the ſource of the *Aeb-chieran*, whoſe water is moſt excellent, and produces good fiſh eſpecially trouts. It falls into the *Euphrates*. *River of* Aeb-Chieran. 1704.

CHAP. XLI.

Of the Kings of Perſia, *of their Affairs of State, and of the great Officers of the Crown.*

Monarchy of the Perſians. THE monarchy of this great kingdom is one of the moſt deſpotic, and moſt abſolute in the world; the King knows no rule for his conduct but his will, except with regard to religious matters, which they ſay he dares not alter; he ſovereignly diſpoſes of the lives and goods of his ſubjects, of what quality or condition ſoever. *Education of the Kings of* Perſia. He is born in the ſeraglio, which is guarded by black eunuchs within, and by white without, and there is brought up between four walls without education, and without the leaſt knowledge of what is ſtirring in the world, like a plant that languiſhes upon the face of the earth, when deprived of the vivifying heat of the ſun. When he has attained a certain age, they give him a black eunuch, who is to be his pedagogue, and teaches him to read and to write; he inſtructs him alſo in the Mohammedan faith and law, and how to purify himſelf, to waſh, to pray, and to faſt. Nor does he fail at the ſame time to fill his head with the great actions and miracles of their prophet and the twelve *Imams*, and to inſpire him with an implacable hatred of the Mohammedan *Turks*, and the Mogul, whom the *Perſians* contemn and curſe, thinking thereby they do a meritorious action, and render an acceptable ſervice unto God; but they take no manner of care to inſtruct him in hiſtory and politicks, nor to fire him with a love of virtue; on the contrary, to take him off from all ſorts of uſeful reflection, they abandon him to women, and indulge him in every kind of ſenſuality from his moſt tender years. Not ſatisfied with thus debauching and perverting his mind, they make him chew opium, and drink *Koekenar* or *Poppy-water*, into which they put amber and other ingredients which excite to luſt, and charm for a time with raviſhing ideas or viſions, but at length ſink him into an abſolute inſenſibility. Thus it is that he paſſes his days till the death of his father, when they take him from out of the Seraglio or *Haram*, to ſeat him upon the throne, which of right belongs to him by ſucceſſion or by will. Then come all the court and throwing themſelves at his feet, give

1704. give him ſigns of ſubmiſſion. At firſt ſurpriſed at all he ſees, he beholds the ſcene as a dream, not able to conceive what can be the meaning of ſo great a change; but by degrees he becomes accuſtom'd to it. At laſt, he begins to have ſome idea of himſelf, and every one ſtrives to pleaſe him and to obtain a ſhare of his favour; but no one thinks of giving him any good advice or in the leaſt to open his eyes; on the contrary their endeavor is to keep him locked up in ſuch ignorance as may beſt turn to account; and when the *Attemaed-doulet*, who is his firſt miniſter, has any favour to ask of him, which he never fails to palliate under the ſpecious appearance of public good, he takes his time when the King is in a good humour, and with the pipe in his mouth, and always obtains whatever he wants, either for himſelf or his friends, by ſtiling himſelf his Majeſty's *Corbaen* or *victim*. But when he talks to him of affairs of ſtate and ſuch buſineſs as may require a particular attention, he is deaf, will lend no ear to him, and turns his thoughts upon ſuch things as are pleaſing and ſuitable to his humour and inclination: Nor does this miniſter ever perceive any thing of this kind in his maſter, but he changes the diſcourſe and calls for delicious meats, and ſends for the muſicians and dancing women, that are kept on purpoſe at court; then he exhibits to him combats of bulls and rams, and diverts him by all the means he can contrive. He ſees the combats and the other exerciſes from the *Talael* over the gate of *Ali-kapie*, which looks upon the great ſquare of the palace, and all this is much more pleaſing to a young and unexperienced Prince, than the puzzling his brain with the affairs of his Empire. At laſt when he is weary of theſe amuſements he withdraws into the Seraglio in queſt of others, and whatever buſineſs has been propoſed to his conſideration is put off to another time. So that this firſt miniſter is obliged to repair twice a day to the door of his Majeſty's apartment, to watch a favourable opportunity to open matters to him, or rather artfully to draw the Prince into a conſideration of the ſame, and as it were by accident, but he takes care that he is in a good humour; for if he did otherwiſe, and abruptly accoſted him with his buſineſs he might incur his heavy indignation, even tho' the welfare of the whole empire depended upon what he had to ſay. Hence he ſeldom fails to wait on this Monarch when he goes abroad, when he ſometimes has the good luck to find him in a diſpoſition to lend him an ear. For the reſt his pleaſures know no interruption, and they pick out the fineſt maidens of *Georgia* and *Armenia* to put them into the Seraglio. And even when the King goes out on his ſports, he for ſeveral leagues around, turns the men out of their houſes, to have the pleaſure of hunting or fiſhing, or otherwiſe diverting himſelf with their wives. The King that reigns at preſent has alſo given himſelf up to wine ſince he has been upon the throne, and drinks ſometimes for whole days and nights together. And thus is it that theſe Princes dream away the firſt years of their reign, without any the leaſt concern for the welfare of the ſtate, or their own glory; and the grandees of the court eagerly lay hold on the opportunity thereby to enrich themſelves and procure imployment for their relations and friends. The governors of the provinces follow the example, and make up a purſe by every ſort of rapine and extortion, not ſparing even the revenue of the crown itſelf; and they do it with impunity by communicating part of their plunder with the grandees, who are in favour and poſſeſſion of the King's ear. And theſe diſorders prevail till the Prince has made choice of an able miniſter to ſtop the torrent of irregularity, and repreſs this licence. Then he begins to open his eyes, according to the gift nature has bleſſed him with, but he frequently

Inſatiable deſire of riches.

3 relapſes

1704. relapses again into debauchery, and gives a scope to his vicious inclinations. At length when he comes to be thirty-five or forty years old, he seems to retrieve himself from his former state of insensibility; he begins to reflect upon things, and to turn his thoughts upon the business of his empire, and to comprehend it, in proportion to the degree of his natural sense. He in consequence of this applies himself to the regulation of what he discovers to have been amiss in the youthful years of his reign, and to provide for the necessities of his great Kingdom; but it commonly happens that he begins too late, death steps in between him and his good designs, and the state sinks again into its former misery.

First minister. The first minister of this potent Empire, as we have already observed, is called the *Attemaed-doulet*, or the *support* or *director of the Empire*, who is also called *Visier-azem*, or *the great porter of the Empire*; as he almost sustains the whole weight of the Empire. This minister who is overwhelmed with business, is exposed to a thousand ugly accidents, besides that he must be continually upon the watch, for fear he should either be supplanted or fall under his master's ill opinion. Accordingly his chief study is to please him, to secure to himself the ascendant over his mind, and to avoid whatever might give him uneasiness or umbrage; with this view he never fails to flatter him, to lift him up above all the Princes upon earth, and to throw a thick veil over every thing that might help to open his eyes, or discover to him the weakness of the state. He even takes very particular care to keep him in utter ignorance, to hide from him or at least to soften all disadvantageous news, and above all immoderately to exalt every the least advantage he obtains over his enemies. By this sort of policy it is, that the minister is able to aggrandize his family, and to raise his friends to the first posts of his Empire. Nor does he ever want a pretence for ruining some and advancing others, and this is the easier for him to do, because all in imployment are guilty of malversation. He has also a thousand opportunities of serving those in his interest, and who give him a share of their plunder; and to send them royal robes by the officers of his house, who are greatly rewarded for the same, and which serves them instead of wages. The governors of provinces and cities endeavour for these presents of honour by underhand practices, nor spare for money to procure them, that they may be the more feared by those they govern, who must not dare to complain of their misdemeanors, when they see them so much in favour at court as to obtain these robes. After this manner it is that the *Attemaed-doulet* is in perpetual agitation, to support himself, to raise some and destroy others, according as he is actuated either by love or hatred. And yet with all his arts and precautions he can never be quiet in his mind, as we have already observed; for he cannot assure himself of the fidelity of any one person, those he has been kindest to, being often the first to hasten his destruction, when they find that fortune has given him a shock. Infidelity and ingratitude have taken such deep root over all this country, that children make no scruple to cut off the ears, the nose, and to cut even the throats of their parents, whenever the King commands it; and this with the base and mercenary view of possessing their posts in the government; a cruelty sufficiently pregnant of examples. In a word, as the fortune of this first minister depends wholly upon the whim of a capricious master, who blindly obeys the impulse of his passions, without any manner of regard to right or reason, he is frequently ignorant of the calamity that is to befall him the very next day. Moreover, tho' he is first minister and the greatest man in the Empire, he is at the same time the most abject of all

Infidelity of the Persians.

1704. all slaves; never enjoying a moment's peace within, and ever fearing to lose the good graces of his lord and master; he cannot please every body, and must answer for all the evils that happen to the state.

Chief of the Curds. The next officer of rank is the *Koertsie-bashé* or general of the *Curds*, a body of troops they select from among the *Turcomans* or original *Tartars*, an old race of hardy soldiers, who live by themselves under tents in the country, and lead a pastoral life with their cattle; they are scattered over all *Persia*, and mix not with the rest; they serve on horseback, and their arms are bows and arrows.

Chief of the slaves. The next to him in rank is the *Coular-Agasie*, or the general of the *Georgians* and other white slaves, who are armed like the former with bow and arrow, and are an order of soldiery erected by *Abbas* the great, the rest are as follow.

The *Tusingtchi-agasi*, or general of the body of Musqueteers, which are picked out of the country from among the most laborious and most robust of the people. They serve on horseback in the field, and fight on foot; these also were established by *Abbas* the great.

Chief of the Musqueteers. These three generals were formerly under the command of a *Sephasalaer* or fixed chief; but they are now under a *Seraer* only, a chief appointed for any particular expedition, after which he is discharged and rewarded for this extraordinary service.

Great master of the houshold. The *Nazir* or great master of the King's houshold, and chief of those who have care of the King's guests.

Great huntsman. Master of the horse. After him the *Mierschichaer-bashé* or great huntsman, and the *Mirachor-bashé* or great master of the horse.

Chief of the council of justice. Among the principal officers of state we must reckon also the *Divan-beggi* or chief of the council of justice, who judges ultimately in all causes civil and criminal, except of such contests as are of small consequence, which are referred to the *Deroga* of the place where they happen.

1704. *Master of the accounts.* The *Muslaushe-elmenalik* or master of the accounts and finances, where there is an office to register the *Persian* troops, as well as certain officers, and the governments which the *Beglerbegs*, the *Khans*, and *Sultans* possess for the maintenance of their houshold and dignity; but in return for these concessions they are obliged to keep a certain number of troops on foot, and every year to pay a sum of money imposed upon them; besides that the Prince reserves a part of these royalties to himself.

Chief of the chambers of accounts. The *Muslosie* or chief of the chambers of accounts of the lordships which particularly belong to his Majesty, and the revenues which are appropriated for the support of the court.

The *Vacka-nuviez* or the register of events, who keeps a journal of all that passes in the kingdom, and in the neighbouring provinces.

Physicians. The *Numeshum-bashes* or chiefs of the King's physicians, who are in great credit with this Prince, and who formerly, in many respects had the regulation of his conduct, but their authority is no more what it was formerly. All these officers have a right to sit in the royal palace. The chief of those who do not claim that privilege is the *Shik-agasi-bashé*, chief of the porters or great master of the court, who has the inspection of the palace, and the regulation of rank. This great officer has commonly in his hand a great golden staff adorned with diamonds, and has his eyes continually fixed upon the King, that he may know his will and pleasure. He himself executes his orders in the places where he happens to be in person, or has them executed by his *Yasools* or *Ushers*, when any thing is to be transacted at a distance. It is this officer also that conducts foreign ministers into the presence of the King, holding them under the arm, and afterwards conducts them to the place where they are to sit, when they are allowed so to do.

Chief of the porters.

1704.

Chamberlain. The *Megter* or chamberlain, he no more than the former is allowed to sit at court. This officer wears a purse at his side, in which are handkerchiefs, a watch, antidotes, and soporiferous herbs for the use of the King. He also has the charge of the cloaths the King commonly wears. He is almost always an eunuch, because he often goes with the King into the Seraglio, or *Haram*, which reflects great honour and authority upon him.

Beglerbegs. We must not forget the *Beglerbegs*, which in *Turkish* signifies the *lords of lords*, who are governors of the great provinces or *countries of the state*. These have commonly *Khans* and *Soltans* under them, and consume the bulk of the revenue of their provinces, sending only a small part of it to the King in presents; but we have already said, they are burthen'd with the charge of maintaining a certain number of troops. For the rest they are as petty Kings in their provinces, allowing for the allegiance they owe to his Majesty. There are fifteen or sixteen of these *Beglerbegs* in this Empire, and this post is so considerable that those in the injoyment of it are invested with a rank in the royal palace immediately after the *Toesentkji-agasi* on the one hand, and the *Nazir* on the other, before the *Mieri-shikar-bashi*, or the great huntsman.

Khans and Soltans. The *Khans* and *Soltans*, who are also governors of provinces, differ but little from the *Beglerbegs*, and the *Khan* has barely rank above the *Soltan*. They enjoy also the revenues of the land in their department or district, and are obliged to keep up a certain number of troops, and make presents to the King, besides that some of them depend upon the *Beglerbegs*.

Dervasies. The *Dervasies* are the governors of the countries called the *King's domain*, which are appropriated for the subsistence of the court, and certain troops, and these have the inspection of the revenues annually produced by these countries. These have salaries out of the revenues of the countries under their jurisdiction, and make presents to the King like the rest.

Deroga's Besides these great officers of provinces, the fortresses and cities have their particular governors, which they call *Deroga's*. Those in great cities, as *Ispahan*, and the like, answer to what the *French* call *Lieutenans civil et criminel*. When they execute their office they have no respect to persons, and indifferently punish all delinquents, and keep the fines for their own use.

Calantaars. The *Calantaars* or chief of the common people, are the principal magistrates in villages and towns, but their authority extends over none but the common people in great cities, and particularly at *Ispahan*. They are properly speaking their protectors and plead their causes before the tribunals. These are the officers that fix the ordinary and extraordinary taxations, in which they have regard to the means and ability of the several inhabitants, and send the money they raise to the proper offices for the reception of it.

Ked-chodaes. These have under them certain officers called *Ked-chodaes* or masters of parishes or the inferior districts, who execute their orders, and much after the same manner with their chiefs protect those under their care, and gather what they are taxed at.

Chiefs of small villages. The chiefs or magistrates of small villages, exercise the same authority as the *Calantaars* in the great ones, and in towns. They call them *Ragies* or regent.

Shabanders. The office of *Shabander* or receiver of the duties upon all merchandise in the sea-ports is more considerable. He keeps an exact account of what he thus receives, and sends it to the *Mustofy-cassa*, who specifies the sums in his register, they being appropriated for the subsistence of the court. These collectors or custom-house-officers have fixed salaries, and have no part of the duties they collect; their office was formerly annual; but the duties are now farmed out for a term of seven or eight years, and

I even

1704. even more, and hence they yearly levy twenty-four thousand *Tomans* which are at least a million of *Livers*, and sometimes twenty eight or about twelve hundred thousand.

Prince of the merchants. There is another considerable office which is that of the *Meliktuziziaer* or *Prince of the merchants*, so called because it is he that judges and decides in all cases between merchant and merchant. He has also intire inspection of the weavers and taylors of the court under the *Nazir*, and the charge of providing the cloathing and things of that nature for his Majesty's use. Besides all this, he is the inspector of those who are imployed to dispose of the merchandise silks and other effects belonging to his Majesty in foreign parts.

Surveyors of the roads. The *Raachdaers* or *surveyors of the roads*, who have the care of the highways, come next after this *prince of the merchants*. These farm a certain extent of the roads, and in vertue of that receive certain duties laid upon goods that travel within their limits; these duties are called *Raagdarie*, and they keep an account of them. This office obliges them to make good the roads, and to secure the highways, and binds them to reinstate such as have been robbed or deprived of their effects within their district, according to the value of the same, if they cannot be recovered. But when it happens that they do recover them, they take the third part for their own use, and deliver the rest to the owner. And for this reason they are bound at their own expence to keep a certain number of people armed, who are to patroll in the night, in times of danger, to prevent robberies and to detect them as much as possible. This is a most admirable regulation, but it were to be wished it was better executed than it is, that the traveller might perform his journey with more safety than he does at present.

Governors of castles. They have governors, called *Koetewael*, in great castles, and in all the fortresses of the Kingdom, as at *Ormus*, *Candelaer* and so on. 1704. Their power is commonly limited and they depend upon the governor of the province. This word of *Koetewael*, signifies also the chief of the watch, and with his officers every night he patrolls in the streets, to prevent disorders and thefts, by seizing on robbers: At *Ispahan* and other cities of *Persia* this officer is called *Aghdaas*.

Inspector of the markets. Nor must we forget the *Muktesib*, or inspector of the markets, who regulates the price of provisions and whatever else is brought to market for sale. He examines also the weights and measures, and punishes those who are defective therein. Having settled the price of provisions and goods, which he does every day, he carries a list of them sealed up to the palace gate, and they regulate the ordinary accounts according to this valuation.

It is now time to speak of the *Mehemander-bashi*, or *the chief of those to whom are committed the King's guests*. His office is to go out of town to receive ambassadors, envoys, and strangers of quality or distinction; to take care they want for nothing, and to order them the usual supply of necessaries. For the rest they leave it to the choice of foreign ministers, whether Christian or Mohammedan, who are treated upon an equal foot at the court of *Persia*, to send for what they want to the King's stores, or to receive every day or once a week, as they like best, the value of the same in ready money. The business of this officer is also to carry their messages to the King and the ministers, and to conduct them to audiences when they are to be admitted. He also visits them from time to time, and talks with them, and endeavours to get out of them the reason of their coming, and why they reside at court, to give an account of all to the ministers. But when there comes an ambassador from the *Porte* or the King of *Indostan*, or other *Mohammedan* powers of the higher rank, they moreover send one of the grandees of the Kingdom,

1704. Kingdom, to wait on them as *Maitre d'hotel* and *guest-keeper*, and he acquits himself of all the functions of the *Mehemander-bashi* with regard to other ministers.

Surveyor of the buildings. Besides all these officers there is a *Mammar-bashi* or surveyor of the King's buildings; he sets a price upon most of the houses that are sold, in order to prevent the disputes which sometimes arise upon the sales, or upon the pretence of a right to annul the contract, as if the party had been taken at a disadvantage in the bargain, and that the sale was not according to form, a practice allowed by the *Mohammedan* law when the price has not been ascertained by this intendant or surveyor.

Ecclesiastick offices. As for the ecclesiastical employs the first is that of *Zedder*, or great pontif, who is the chief also of all the wealth and emoluments consecrated to the publick worship. This office was formerly exercised by one man only, but the late King *Suliman* divided it, and appointed two *Zedders*, the one with the care and charge of the legacies bequeathed to the churchmen by the Kings of *Persia*, whom they call *Zedder Chus*; the other with the disposal of what has been bequeathed by private persons, and he is called *Zedder Memalick*. These two pontifs have each of them a court a-part, where they judge in civil causes according to the directions of the canon-law. They dispose also of most of the church benefices and particularly of the offices of the *Siech-el-islaan*, and of the *Kashe-mutewelli* or inspector of the moschs and consecrated burying-grounds and the like. These offices are so very considerable, that when it happens that those possessed of them are present at royal assemblies, they take place of the *Attemaed-doulet*. The *Siech-el-islaan* and the *Kazi* differ but little from each other, with regard to the trust they have of monies; but the former is nevertheless the most considerable. For the rest, their functions are pretty nearly equal, and they are mutually a check upon each other. All contracts between private parties must pass through their courts, and they 1704. must authorise all mandates and other writings of consequence.

The Legist. The *Muzifehid* or *Legist* is above all ecclesiastics not only on account of his learning, but because by vertue of his office he is accounted sacred. It is he that settles and explains all points of faith, the meaning of the *Alcoran*, and the *Hadges* of their prophets, and the *Imams*. The veneration they have for him runs to that length, that their learned men make no scruple to give out, that the government of the *Mohammedans* belongs of right to him, and that the King is only the executor of his orders, in vertue of which he has the wielding of the sword, wherewith he is obliged to chastise those who are obstinate or disobedient, tho' he has the power of doing nothing by his own bare authority. The reason they give for this point of doctrine is, that all true believers are directed by the will of God, which is revealed to the *Muzifehid* in the absence of an *Imam*; that it is impossible for God to declare such his will to temporal princes, who are lost in the pleasures of this world, and think of nothing but the gratification of their passions, regardless of the salvation of their souls; who far from knowing God are quite unacquainted with themselves, and neglect to seek after the path which leads to eternal life.

Hyprocrisy of the clergy. The opinion the people have imbibed of the wisdom and sanctity of the clergy is the reason they almost all of them affect a profound dissimulation, with the double view of keeping them in error, and themselves in the reverence they profess for them. So that altho' they are actuated by the most boundless ambition they discipline themselves in the presence of the people; they humble themselves that they may be exalted, and would seem to despise what they most eagerly grasp at; in short by their exterior one would imagine they aspired at nothing but the joys of Paradise. They, when at home, gather about them a number of young people to instruct them in

 the

1704. the way that leads to heaven, and to affect them strongly with the seeming zeal that fires them, they use these stupid youths with a most extraordinary tenderness and forbearance; they are never in a passion; their words are few, and they have such an air of wisdom and sanctity as is quite rapturous. *Their habit* Their cloathing is white and of camels or goats hair; and thy wear large turbants which make them look meager and low. When they appear in publick they affect a great simplicity, and are attended by one servant only who carries a book after them; they go gently along, and keep their eyes fixed upon the ground. They are great frequenters of the moschs, where they pour forth long prayers with an affected zeal, and often withdraw into a corner, where they instruct young children, and sometimes they preach sermons to the people. By these artifices it is that they win the hearts of men, and inject a terror into the King himself, who would not dare to be guilty of the least innovation in the practice of their religion for fear of the heavy wrath of these holy ones. Many examples there are of this, nor can a stronger proof be given of the reverence they have for them than the privilege they have of sitting at a small distance from men of the sword at royal assemblies.

The manner how the nobility live at court is very different from theirs; the courtiers affect a very extraordinary civility, and an engaging freedom, but then the tongue and the heart never travel together. *Their dissimulation.* They entirely give themselves up to sensuality and pleasures; their habits, their equipages are magnificent, and they are so excessively fond of money, that there is nothing to be obtained of them but by bribes and presents. For the rest they are very affable and seem to be very good natured; but their behaviour is quite low and mean to those of whom they expect any favour, and they mortally hate those that cross them in what they solicit, or sue for what they want; and 1704. these they use with a degree of barbarity quite inhuman, when it happens they have an advantage over them; they slip no opportunity of hurting them, and have the art of giving a bad turn to the qualities for which they are most valuable; in a word, they can never rest till they have destroyed them. On the other hand they are the most abject flatterers of those who are in the good graces of fortune, and in great employs, and attribute to them all the perfections they can possibly think of; but these even are no sooner fallen into disgrace, then they insult over their misfortunes, and most shamefully abuse those, who in the days of their prosperity, they were wont to lift up to the skies; and to these thus fallen it often happens that those who stand deepest in debt to them for favours, are the very first to tear them to pieces.

And much after same manner it is that their men of letters, or of the pen, as they call them in this country, behave in general. *Men of letters.* They are proud and self sufficient, envious and jealous of the merit of others, caressing and cajoling those they abominate most when they meet them; but no sooner is their back turned than they most unmercifully abuse them. Dissimulation is their favourite vice, *Their dissimulation.* and their vanity is such as to prompt them to applaud themselves upon every occasion, and without scruple to throw out panegyricks upon their own great merit. And yet, to all appearance, they are religious and devout, and affect to seem greatly disgusted with all worldly vanities; they have the joys of Paradise eternally in their mouths, tho' at the same time in private, they wallow in the most enormous and most unnatural sensualities. For the rest they have an utter aversion for the Christians of *Europe*, and for all that differ from them in matters of faith; nor would there be any safety for them in this country did not the laws of nations keep these infidels in awe.

1704. Usury prevails here more than in any other country whatsoever, tho' it must be confessed there are good men here, as well as elsewhere; but in general we may say the *Persians* are ungrateful and void of all shame and modesty.

Persia consists of three orders like the states in *Europe:* The first consists of the nobility and men of the sword; the second of men of the robe, and the third of merchants and artificers, 1704.

CHAP. XLII.

Funeral of the Kings of Persia, *qualities of the present King, his Picture, habit of the* Persians.

THEY never publish the King of *Persia*'s death till his successor has been seated upon the throne; and yet King *Suliman*, the father of his present Majesty, had no sooner given up the ghost, than the news of it flew over all parts by the indiscretion of his first physician. This Prince died upon the *twenty-ninth* of *July* 1694, in the *forty-eighth* year of his age, after he had reigned twenty-nine years. The officers of the crown and chief men of the Kingdom, immediately seized on the palace, and took care that every thing was quiet on all sides. The inhabitants shut up their houses and shops, and no people of rank appeared in the streets. Upon the *first* day of *August* his Majesty's body was placed upon a wheel carriage, covered with a most magnificent pall of gold cloth, and conveyed to a chapel a league from *Ispahan,* from whence it was carried to *Com,* there to be interr'd in the sepulchre of the Kings his fathers. All the grandees of the Kingdom followed him on foot, excepting one of the officers of the crown, called *Miersa-taher*, and an ecclesiastick of distinction, who, on account of their great age, were allowed to go on horseback. These lords were followed by the men of the robe and pen, lamenting and singing, and these were succeeded by a great body of soldiers, who attended the corpse to the chapel, with flambeaux smoking but not lighted. When they had reached the chapel, all that and attended tore their garments, had returned to the city, leaving some of their friends or relations to follow the body in the night. They double the guards of the palace to prevent the disorders which are be to feared upon these occasions, in a town so populous and crowded with strangers. In the mean time the officers of the crown ordered the astrologers, according to custom, to acquaint them with a favourable or auspicious time when they might inaugurate the new King, persuaded that in that case the King would attempt nothing to their prejudice, and especially in the beginning of his reign. 'Till the astrologers had thus declared themselves, there was no noise of drums or trumpets to be heard, nor any other sound that might interrupt the solemnity of the mourning, and this consultation, which continued to the *sixth* of *August*, when the astrologers unanimously declared they had found the auspicious moment. They laid hold on it for the coronation of the deceased's eldest son, who had been taken out of the Seraglio immediately upon the death of this prince, and locked up in another apartment, where he remained till he was conducted to the throne, where all the grandees of the

Death of the King.

His funeral.

Coronation of the new King.





LE ROY HOSSEN.

1704. the court came to throw themſelves at his feet. Then they opened all the houſes and ſhops, which had been ſhut up till now, and had bonfires and illuminations on all ſides. The next day after the coronation, the new King called *Soltan-hoſſein*, ſent royal robes to all the Lords and Chiefs of the court, who till then wore their cloaths they had rent and torn, and there was an end of the mourning. After this the drums and trumpets were heard on all ſides, and theſe rejoicings laſted forty days, according to cuſtom.

The King was about four and twenty years old, not large, but well made, and handſome of face. I looked attentively upon him ſeveral times, when I was at *Iſpahan*, to imprint a full idea of him in my mind, that I might draw his picture, in which I ſucceeded tolerably well.

His picture He was in a ſummer dreſs, but I choſe to repreſent him in a winter ſuit, which is much more magnificent. He is eaſily diſtinguiſhed by a jewel he wears in his turbant, with three black herons feathers; you ſee him in numb. 85.

He loves building. This Prince takes ſo great a pleaſure in building, that they reckon he has that way expended four or five millions in the ten years he has been upon the throne, tho' the Gardens and the houſes of pleaſure coſt him nothing. When he has a mind to build any where, proclamation of ſuch his intention is made by ſound of trumpet, that thoſe who love him may come and work for him. Upon this the artificers repair to him from all parts, without claiming the leaſt reward; nor do the grandees of the Kingdom fail to ſend others at their own expence. The *Armenians* are bound to contribute in the ſame manner, and I know it for certain that a large garden which was made in my time coſt them three hundred *Tomans*, which amount to one hundred and twenty thouſand livres.

This Prince is ſo given to women that he knows no bounds of his lewd practices, and is quite careleſs of the welfare of the ſtate, and his evil example is the cauſe that juſtice is ill adminiſtred in his great Empire, where licence reigns, and vice is unpuniſhed. And hence it is that the high roads which were once ſo well ſecured, are now ſo full of robbers. 1703.

Eunuchs in favour. And hence alſo it is that the clergy have a very great aſcendant over this Prince as well as the eunuchs, the outcaſts of human nature, and quite unworthy of high poſts and honours, ſeeing they are no better than the guard of the Seraglio, a place devoted to the beſtial pleaſures of the King; beſides that their air and mein has ſomething ſhocking in it. But notwithſtanding all this, they are the firſt in favour, inſomuch that the counſellors of ſtate are obliged to pay court to them, and flatter them, a very mortifying circumſtance for perſons of birth and conſideration, who could not poſſibly aſſure themſelves of the King's good graces, or of the poſſeſſion of their employs, without ſubmitting themſelves to ſuch a lowneſs of behaviour.

Diſgrace of a Georgian nobleman. There are ſome, however, who have a heart too big for ſuch an unbecoming ſubmiſſion, and who know not how to diſguiſe their thoughts. Some years ago there was a *Georgian* Nobleman, called *Ruſtan-khan*, a man of merit, and in poſſeſſion of one of the firſt employs of the ſtate, being Captain General of the King's Armies and Governor of *Tauris*, the ancient *Ecbatan*, the capital of *Media*, who had the boldneſs to tell the King, at a great feaſt, and in preſence of the firſt Grandees of the court, *That he was an ignorant Prince, and that he never would know any thing*; and that in ſhort he could not prevail on himſelf to ſerve him any longer. Upon this, he was the next day depoſed, and received orders not to ſtir out of his houſe, which he obeyed. Mean time, his friends ſollicited ſo ſtrongly for him, that they promiſed to reſtore him; but he was ſo far from thanking them for this officiouſneſs, that he was angry with them for concerning themſelves with his affairs, and declared that he abſolutely

1703. solutely would not serve such a Prince, and persisted in this his resolution to the day of his death.

Disgrace of another nobleman. A certain grandee called *Moessa-beek*, an *Armenian* originally, but whose grand-father had embraced *Mohammedism*, drew a more severe censure upon himself in the year 1704, while I was at *Ispahan*, for speaking his thoughts too freely. This nobleman, who had been raised to the first posts, and to the government of the same city of *Tauris*, after he had been general of his Majesty's *Georgian* and *Circassian* slaves, came to *Ispahan*, where the King asked him his business, and commanded him, without presuming to make any answer, to return to his government, and repair from thence to *Esterabad*, a town of *Mazanderan*, and there put himself at the head of his army and therewith to march against the *Turcomans*, who infested that country, and carried off the inhabitants and the cattle. He answered the King, He was very sorry he could not obey his Majesty's commands, because he had been well informed that at court they did not act as became them, and that he had been given to understand they only wanted to send him away to destroy him; that if it was necessary he should be sacrificed to the malice of his enemies, he had rather submit to his fate that instant, than have it fall upon him after his departure. This he said in a dry careless manner, and adding some reasons and arguments upon what he had said, he so exasperated the King against him, that they went to his house upon the sixth of *September* to seize him, and having bound him, carried him publickly to prison upon a mule, and clapt a seal upon all that belonged to him; but notwithstanding all this outrage, they released him a few days afterwards, upon condition he should confine himself to his house.

Contempt they have of the King. Many other examples might be exhibited of the violence and weakness of this Prince, who thereby so exposes himself to the contempt of all his subjects that they publickly say, They have nothing of a King but the name. And indeed it may with reason good be said, *Unhappy is the country which is ruled by a child.* They say his younger brother, who is kept in the palace, and who has both sense and merit, when he hears of the conduct of the King his brother, often cries out, *I cannot imagine what he does with the Crown.* This Prince one day sending him a bottle of wine, the other sent it back to him, disdainfully saying, *He did not want it.* These things so different from the manner of other countries, must appear strange and incredible to those who know nothing of the customs and maxims of this. For the rest, the weakness of this Prince is such that when he loses a trifle at play, he begs of the party that won it of him, to say nothing of it to the *Nazir*, who is to pay him. 1704.

Habit of the Persians. It remains that we speak of the manner of dress among the *Persians*, whereupon we have to observe that their dress is shorter than that of the *Turks*, and different according to the rank and quality of the Person that wears it. The dress of the men of the sword, for example, is quite different from what is worn by the men of the robe, and the same it is with regard to their wives. There is also a wide difference between the dress of the married and the unmarried women; of women advanced in years and young women. The habit of the most considerable of the men of the robe is represented in number 86. The *Mandiel* or turbant they wear upon the head varies also; they are of all sorts of colours, some striped, some wrought with gold and silver, and some white; The churchmen wear them much larger than any others, but extremely neat, and very nicely folded up; in a word their dress is very magnificent, and their garments mostly flowered, which in my mind however, does not so well become the men as the women; and to say the truth, the habits of the *Turks* are more modest, are better understood, and have a more masculine air with them.

1704. them. For the rest, the *Persians* never alter their fashions, and have preserved that air of grandeur which prevailed among them in the days of *Alexander*. Persons of condition never go on foot, but on horseback, with runners on one side of them: Those of less consideration imitate them, and are obliged to incur debts to support them in this extravagance, but what they thus incur they never think of paying. The grandees and such as are rich adorn 1704. the bridles of their horses with massy gold, and others follow them in proportion. They have always their *Callion*, or pipe carried after them, which is properly speaking, and chiefly, a bottle of water, through which they draw the smoke of their tobacco. This *Callion* is adorned with gold, and is extremely neat; those of inferior rank adorn them with silver, and have them carried

FEMME PERSIENNE.



1704. after them in the ſame manner. Our director had a golden bridle and his *Callion* adorned with the ſame, and ſo had his ſecond, as well as all that appear at court, where they are only conſidered in proportion to the grandeur of their appearance.

The dreſs of the women ſeems to me to be ſtill more agreeable; the wives of the men of the robe wear a forehead-band adorned all over with pearls and precious ſtones; it is four fingers broad, and goes but half way round the head; but the wives of the counſellors of ſtate, wear it all round the head, in the nature of a crown, and call it *Borſhiboroe*; and upon it they have ſeveral plumes of black herons feathers, aigrettes, and bunches of flowers with golden leaves. To this band or diadem they have a jewel which falls upon the forehead, and they faſten it on with a rope of pearl which comes under the chin, and their hair falls down in ſeveral treſſes. They wear alſo a white veil, embroidered with gold which falls over their ſhoulders, necklaces of precious ſtones and pearls, and golden chains which fall down to their girdle with a box of perfume. Their upper garment is of brocade of gold or ſilver, it is alſo ſometimes quite plain, and under it they wear a veſt which falls down beneath the girdle; their ſhifts are of taffaty, or ſome other fine ſilk embroidered with gold. They wear alſo drawers and under petticoats made in the loom; buskins which come up four fingers above the ankle, which are of embroidery, velvet or ſome richer ſtuff. Their ſlippers are of green or red ſhagreen, pointed, and with a heel raiſed of the ſame colour, lined, and adorned with little flowers. Their girdle, which is two or three inches broad, 1704. is adorned with pearls and precious ſtones, and upon the breaſt they wear certain ribbons which fall down to the girdle. One of theſe ladies is repreſented as going abroad in number 87. Over all this, in winter, they wear a gown lined with a cotton-cloth, which falls down a foot below the girdle, and when it is very cold indeed, they wear a gown of gold or ſilver brocade, lined with ſables or ſome other fur. When they go abroad they are from the head to the foot covered with a white veil, which ſhews nothing but their eyes, as may be obſerved in the figure above; this veil is commonly all of one piece; they wear alſo bracelets of precious ſtones, and have their fingers loaded with rings. The women of a middling rank, dreſs themſelves in proportion to their means, and the wives of the nobility and men of the ſword wear over their clothes a ſilk net, or ſomething of the kind, which has a very pretty effect.

Dreſs of the porters of the court. To this I ſhall alſo ſubjoin the habit of the *Yaſools* or royal porters, who ſerve alſo in the quality of uſhers. Theſe wear a loftier turbant than the reſt, with feathers, and great muſtaches, like the nobility, and a beard upon their chin, which reaches to the ears. Some of them alſo wear beards after the *Turkiſh* manner. This *Yaſool* is repreſented in number 88.

Slaves repreſented. In number 89, you have the repreſentation of a male black ſlave belonging to our director, with a great poniard of a particular make, in his girdle, and in number 90 you have a female of the ſame complexion, with a tea-board in her hand.

CHAP.











PORTIER DU ROY.





ESCLAVE NOIR

ESCLAVE NOIRE.





1704. 1704.

CHAP. XLIII.

Funeral pomp instituted in honour of Hussein. *The manner how the* Armenians *at* Julfa *receive their Friends. Arrival of an Ambassador from* Turkey.

Days of mourning. UPON the *sixth* of *May*, the *Persians* began the mourning ordained for the commemoration of the death of their great saint *Hussein*, the son of *Ali* and *Fatma*, the only daughter of *Mohammed*, and this they enter upon as soon as they perceive the new moon. All the city puts on mourning, and great lamentations are made on the sad subject of his death, which happened, as they say, in the year 1027, when *Mohammed*, according to their computation, was obliged one thousand one hundred and eighteen years ago to fly from *Mecca* to *Medina*, to save himself from the persecuting fury of his enemies. *History of* Hussein, *of the mourning of the* Persians *for him.* It was in *Arabia* the desart that this saint lost his life, as he was flying with seventy two of his companions, near a place called *Kierbila*, where there is his tomb, and whither the *Persians*, who account him their true *Imam* or chief, resort from all parts with very extraordinary devotion. And, indeed, King *Abbas* the great boasted it as the most glorious circumstance of his life that he was descended from him, tho' that is an honour the *Turks* will not allow him. *Manner of this mourning.* This mourning continues for ten days together; they appear in the streets in small companies of ten or twelve persons half naked, who blacken their faces, and are not very unlike our chimney-sweepers; a frightful sight! they affect a mortified air, and sing out lamentations to the sound of certain castagnets, we have formerly mentioned. The murder of this saint is represented by persons in arms, and by his image which is very large and hollow, and put into motion by a person inclosed within it, and whose legs are plainly to be seen. Those concerned in this mummery and who carry this image about, receive a reward from the spectators, who give them certain small pieces of silver of very little value; tho' indeed there are some who are more generous to them. For the rest, during this time, they preach publickly in the streets morning and evening, and especially in the cross-ways, and the other more frequented parts, which they inclose with tapestry and spread with carpets. They adorn also the walls with bucklars, and other pieces of armour and arms, and the pulpits for the preachers are raised up five or six steps; they hold some written papers in their hands, upon which they often cast their eyes, pronouncing the elogy, and reciting the actions and wonders of the saint. A second preacher some steps below the first, pours out, in his turn, the praises of *Hussein*, singing out with a loud voice. The places where they have these sermons are full of seats and benches; and as I had the curiosity to go to one of them with some friends, they no sooner saw us than they ordered us seats, for the respect they bore to our director, who was in great esteem at *Ispahan*. I staid there a good half hour, and observed that all the auditors were so affected by the eloquence of their doctors, that they were dissolved into tears. At the corner of the wall of the place where we were, they had placed a great figure indifferently well counterfeited, and stuffed with straw, to represent the murderer of *Hussein*, called *Omar*, whom they burnt at night in several parts of the city. These sermons or discourses are delivered also in the night in many great places, upon theatres erected for that purpose, with laths, upon which they place above a thousand lamps, but so aukwardly

1704. wardly and carelesfly that the wind blows out the greateft part of them. For the reft, the number of fpectators is inexpreffible.

Dance of young lads. Upon the *Sunday* following we celebrated the feaft of *Whitfuntide* at our director's, and thither came two bands of young lads, nearly of the fame heigth, and very neatly dreffed, to dance according to cuftom. They had certain fmall fticks in their hands, which they ftruck againft each other as they danced, and they were attended by two or three men of their diftrict who fung. Thefe dancers were continually throwing their arms over their heads with wonderful celerity, and affumed fuch attitudes and motions as were quite charming. Thefe were to have been followed by a larger band, but upon the way they met with a band belonging to another diftrict, which attacked them and retarded them, fo that they could not come; befides that they were to go to court that night.

But to return to our fubject, the chief folemnity of this mourning or funeral pomp, was a great proceffion which was exhibited the next day. I ftood to fee it in a fhop in the *Bazar*, by which it was to pafs.

Great proceffion. This proceffion opened with fome of the *Deroga*'s officers on horfeback, who were followed by fome fingers with each a taper in his hand, and in vefts either of purple or black, agreeable to the nature of the folemnity and the lamentations that were made; fome of them were alfo half naked, and others carried a great black ftandard furled up. After thefe, there appeared three camels, upon the firft of which there appeared two boys almoft naked, three upon the fecond, one behind another, and upon the third, the image of a woman covered up, with a little boy. Then five other camels, upon each of which there were feven or eight little boys, who were alfo almoft naked, in cages of lath, and two enfigns followed them. Then a chariot with an open coffin containing a dead body, followed by another covered with white and fome fingers. After this there appeared a chariot laden with incenfe 1704. with two perfons, and four little boys, with each a book in his hand, and with a table before them. This chariot was furrounded with what looked like tinned lamps, and was followed by a great ftandard furled up, and by twelve armed foldiers, with each an helmet on his head; and thefe by two little boys comically dreffed up, with feathers and bells. Then came a young prifoner on horfeback, followed by fixteen others chained one after another, and five others pinioned. After thefe appeared a chariot covered with fand, out of which appeared fix bloody heads, but the bodies were not to be feen, fo that one would have faid they had been cut off: There were two perfons dreffed in this chariot, which was followed by that which carried the body of *Huffein*, reprefented by a man in armour, with a fabre in his hand. He was all over covered with blood, to ftir up the people to grief and lamentation, and indeed their fighs, and groans, and outcries are not to be expreffed; and it muft be confeffed there can be nothing more moving than this fight, which we had it not in our power to laugh at, though we were very fenfible of the ridicule and idle fuperftition of the whole. This chariot was followed by a number of young perfons, fome of them pinioned, and fome with their arms free, attended by a guard armed with ftaves, with which they, from time to time, threatened them, upon which they would ftoop and bend down their heads the moft naturally in the world, Thefe were followed by a great chariot, drawn by men, like the reft, covered alfo with bloody fand, upon which were two dead bodies, and four others, of which there appeared nothing but the head; fix young turtle doves went backwards and forwards in this chariot, after which there appeared another, from which came out legs and arms, and in which there were two lighted tapers; then a third with fix heads and two perfons dreffed, followed by another with

1704. with a dead body in armour, and a person as it were sick. Then two ensigns, and an horse with the saddle on one side, attended by two drums and some singers, and then another chariot upon which there were two coffins, and two little boys, with each a book in his hand, who, from time to time, embraced them, and acted their part wonderfully well. This went before another of extraordinary size, containing ten or twelve dead bodies, of which nothing was to be seen but their bloody legs and arms, with five or six prisoners, followed by a young man on horse-back, wounded with arrows; he was all over blood, seemed to be a stranger, and seemingly so faint he was ready to fall. After him appeared a coffin covered with a black cloth, attended by singers and dancers who seemed to conduct it in triumph, and after them were carried three lances adorned with precious stones. Then came an horse laden with bows and arrows, a turbant, and great standard; then five other horses, laden with bucklers, bows, and arrows; and three javelins upon the points of which appeared an hand. At last, this procession was closed by an horse richly caparison'd, upon which there were three pair of pigeons; but this horse was not in his place.

Explication of this procession.

After I had seen all this sight, an ecclesiastick was so good as to explain the whole mystery of it to me: He told me, the turtle-doves I had seen upon one of the chariots, represented those which appeared upon the body of *Hussein* when he was killed, and that these same turtle doves, daubed with his blood, flew away to *Medina*, where lived this saint's sister, who upon sight of them knew of his death, as she had foretold it beforehand. That the chariot with the two coffins, attended by two little boys with each a book in his hand, represented the two sons of *Hussein*, *Ali-Asker* and *Ali-Echbar*, whom they give out to have been slain with arrows. That the young man wounded with arrows was designed also to represent *Ali-Echber*; that 1704. the coffin covered with black was that of *Hussein*; and that the chariot with six heads, by which there were two persons dressed, represented his children. That the steel or iron hand fixed at the point of the javelins, was the signal of war which the leaders or partisans of the *Persian Mohammedans* wore formerly upon their standards, and that the five fingers of that hand represented *Mohammed Ali Fatma*, the daughter of *Mohammed* and the wife *Ali*, *Hassan* and *Hussein*: So that every part of this procession refers to some circumstance or other of the death of *Hussein* and his seventy two friends slain with him, and canonized for martyrs by the *Persians*.

It is to the last degree surprising that the persons whose heads, legs, and arms appear in the chariots, should be able to contain themselves without the least motion, for the whole day together that this procession lasted. Most of the heads had even long beards, and their necks were so squeezed, that the head seemed separated from the body, besides that their eyes moved hardly at all. But I was told upon this occasion they make them swallow down a kind of drink which deprived them of their senses, and of all motion during the time. For the rest, there is no being imposed on with regard to this, for I presently distinguished the only head of wax which was among the rest; and indeed it must be acknowledged the *Persians* are very artful in these sorts of representations.

On the morrow, by break of day, we went to the same place, to see the sequel of this solemnity; but the King did not come till two hours afterwards.

Parade of the two divisions of the city.

It was a kind of parade of the two divisions of the city, who in procession carried several ornaments prepared for the purpose. First, as the day before, there appeared some of the *Deroga*'s officers on horseback, followed by some young people armed with staves, and crying

1704. out *Hussein*, *Hussein*, skipping and dancing. After these came some that plaid upon instruments, and some drums, followed by the citizens of several districts; the first company of them was armed with drawn sabres and shields, and the others with staves perfectly well painted. They were all very neatly dressed, with velvet vests, and fine sashes, and extraordinary turbants, and marched in good order, differing in nothing from each other, but as they were more or less magnificent. A party of these citizens, of nearly the same degree or fortune had prepared a pretty machine or resting place, not very unlike a coach, and embellished with looking-glass, hung with sabres and poniards and other arms mounted with gold or silver, a sight very agreeable to see. There were others loftier without tops or coverings, open within and more adorned with looking-glass. The greatest and most considerable of these companies goes on before. There were five machines or resting-places of the kind we have been speaking of, and a sixth at the *Chiaer-baeg* between two buildings. This was all garnished with or composed of looking glass, in form of an altar, with two doors, which when they opened shewed all the ornaments. It was very lofty, and a preacher mounted it as soon as the King appeared at the building of his second garden, which has a long gallery. This structure or stand stood there three or four days. It consisted of pieces which fitted each other, and which were put together on the spot, for it had been impossible to have moved it whole through the gates of the city.

Another procession. This fine procession was succeeded by another, which opened with some standards, and a great number of horses, some of which had their heads adorned with great plumes of white feathers, and others were richly dressed out, and laden with fine vestments, sabres, bucklers, bows and arrows, and other arms. Some of them had even turbants, larger plumes, and other ornaments; they 1704. were followed by some singers, musicians and dancers, waving certain flags over their heads as they danced; others carried pikes adorned with ribbons and tufts. The procession appeared afterwards as the day before, those it consisted of halted from time to time, and as they sung threw chopped straw over their heads crying out, *Hussein*, *Hussein*. Some of them had a drawn sabre in one hand and a shield in the other; the rest had staves nicely painted and gilt, and ten foot long, and seemed to breath nothing but war; but the *Deroga* who was present with above a thousand horsemen, takes a very particular care to prevent their coming to blows, posting his people in the van, the center and the rear of this procession. He posts others also upon the way they are to pass, and suffers not the districts to advance but the one after the other. In a word he omits nothing to prevent disorders, and the quarrels which might arise with regard to rank in a march, where there are narrow passes, and where for that reason they, at certain distances, post soldiers provided with fire arms. These precautions are so much the more necessary, as the *Persians* have a notion, that those who perish upon this occasion go directly to Paradise. *Strange prejudice.* And accordingly they make no enquiry after murders committed at that time, which those who bear malice against others, fail not to take advantage of, much as the practice is in *Italy* in the time of the carnival. Hence it is that prudent people who are not obliged to be abroad upon this procession, keep for the most part close at home for the last days of the festival, and especially the *Turkish Mohammedans*, who are known; for they are enemies to *Hussein*, and friends to *Omar*, whom the *Persians* most mortally hate. Their hatred is not near so great for other nations, no not for the *Indians*, who are heathens, to whom they say nothing; there is however an unspeakable concourse of people upon this

1704. this occasion, as well strangers as inhabitants of the city. It happened that every thing was transacted this time without any disorder, which is somewhat extraordinary, considering the great animosity of the adverse parties, who never spare each other whenever they chance to meet.

A new garden of the King's. Upon the *nineteenth*, I went to see the Christian place of burial, where we staid till break of day, and from thence went to the King's new garden, which is of great extent, and surrounded with a wall of earth. We there saw the fish-ponds far advanced, and a fine plantation of young trees, roses, and parterres full of flowers, but of the common sorts. We then went to *Julfa* to Mr. *Sahid*'s country house; this gentleman was our company's interpreter, and we have made mention of him before. He received us and entertained us perfectly well, tho' we were above forty in number. The walks of his garden, which were full of candles, appeared most delightfully beautiful. The next day we went to pay visits to our director's friends; for he was to go away the next month and to return no more to *Julfa*. He there took leave of the principal *Armenian* merchants, of the patriarch, and most of the *Europeans*. We had above forty of these visits to make and they took us up three whole days, for you are treated every where with conserves and all manner of sweatmeats, which are presented to you in painted wooden boxes, of great beauty, and adorned with all sorts of flowers, of which the *Persians* have at times all been great lovers. Then they bring you incense and rose-water, wherewith they perfume the company. Nor do they fail to present you a *Callion* to smoke with, coffee, *Bedmus*, and other pleasant hot liquors; and after dinner, fruits and other dainties of the season. The Christians also give you brandy and other liquors in the morning, and wine in the afternoon: So that each visit could not possibly take up less than an hour.

Reception after the manner of Persia.

Having acquitted ourselves of this duty we returned to the city, where they told us a minister from the grand visier of the *Ottoman-port* had arrived the day before, with but six or seven persons in his train; that it was thought he was come to demand a passage of the King, for the march of some *Turkish* forces, which the Grand Signior wanted to send into *Georgia*, where the inhabitants had for some years refused to pay the subsidies which the people of that country are obliged to remit to the *Port*. The *Turk* has frequently sent forces upon this account, but they have been interrupted by the straits and passes which the *Georgians* knew how to make the most of. The *Turks* call them *Bassa-'tjoeg* or *Bare-heads*, because they wear only a small cap open at the crown, thro' which they have some tresses of their hair to keep it tight on. The same they call the country they inhabit, which is between *Turkey* and *Gurgistan*.

Turkish *minister.*

Georgians.

CHAP.

1704.

CHAP. XLIV.

Persian *paintings. Their customs at births, marriages, deaths, and burials. Coins current in* Persia. *Great consumption of sugar at* Ispahan.

I Ought here to have treated of the *Persian* religion, but as several travellers have done it amply before me, I imagined it might be unnecessary, and even troublesom to repeat what is so well known. I shall then only observe that it bears a very near relation to the religion of the *Turks*, except with regard to the aversion these last have for painting, seeing the greatest part of the *Persians* have pictures in their houses, and especially representations of horses, hunting-matches, and of all sorts of animals, birds and flowers, wherewith their walls are also filled, as hath already been said. They have even professed painters among them, the two best of which, in my time, were in the service of the King. I had the curiosity to pay a visit to one of them, and I found his works far above the idea I had conceived of the matter; they consisted only of birds in distemper, but extremely neat. Indeed I cannot say he knew any thing of lights and shades, and in this all the country are ignorant, whence it is that their paintings are very imperfect. This painter was busy, for the King, in copying a printed book of flowers which came from our country, and in the colouring of which an *European* ecclesiastic had instructed him the best he could; and for this purpose they have most admirable colours; and I there met with lake which came from our parts. They themselves make ultramarine which is the finest blue in the world, for they have the stone in their own country, or else they buy it of the *Armenian* painters. There are also painters among them, who paint canes with a certain gum which has a very pretty effect, and standishes in the form of boxes, upon which, with the utmost neatness they represent figures, animals, flowers, and all sorts of ornaments.

Persian *painters.*

Fine colours in Persia.

Persons of condition there have also their books very well bound, and adorned with all sorts of figures, dressed in their manner, as also with their representations of hunting matches, companies, birds and beasts in miniature, and in charming colours. These books are also sometimes full of figures in immodest postures, which they are very fond of. I met with a book of this kind at a certain grandee's, but the painting was heavy, flat, and void of art, tho' it was at the same time imbellished with pretty ornaments in gold and silver, and was most admirably coloured. Tho' they take great pleasure in things of this sort, they would not at all care to be at any expence for them, but their hands are ever open when they are to receive a present of them. There came a *German* painter to *Ispahan* a little before my time; this man had been a long time in *Italy*, where he had an opportunity of studying the works of the greatest masters, and painted an history piece for the King. They received it very kindly, and put it up in the palace, but never once thought of rewarding the painter, who never received a farthing for his pains; nor indeed could a man deceive himself more to the purpose, than to imagine a fortune is to be raised by the arts and sciences in that country. They are there unknown, and not at all regarded, if we except a Prince or two that has really had a taste for them. In a word, generosity is an utter stranger in *Persia*.

Books.

Avarice of the Persians.

Adventure of a German *painter.*

1704. We had a glaring example of this in the year 1652, with regard to Mr. *Cuneus*, counſellor in ordinary, in the ſervice of the *Dutch Eaſt-India* company, who ſent him to this court to negotiate ſome buſineſs. Among other preſents they ſent by him to the King, there was a fine picture of warriors on horſeback, which they thought would be very acceptable to the *Perſians*, who are great lovers of horſes; but inſtead of receiving as expected, they coldly asked what the price of that picture was. The miniſter thinking it improper to value it at any high rate, appraiſed it very moderately, upon which they were ſo good as to reſolve to keep the picture, and to give him the price he had valued it at. To theſe we might add many other examples of the kind, which we ſhall reſerve to another opportunity, and ſhall now ſpeak of their births, marriages, and burials.

Adventure of an agent from the India *company.*

Cuſtoms at births.

Three or four days after the birth of a child, they ſend for a churchman, to whom they declare the name they intend to impoſe on the child, which he blows into its ear three times, and then performs certain ceremonies, after which the Parents ſpend the reſt of the day in mirth and jollity with their friends.

Of circumciſion.

It is not the cuſtom with them to circumciſe till a child is ſeven or eight years old, and even ſometimes later according to the whim of the parents, and never upon the eighth day, as the cuſtom is with the *Jews*. Then they entertain the company, and endeavour to exert the greateſt viſible joy upon the happy occaſion of having initiated a child into the number of *Moſlems* or *True believers*, according to the law of *Mohammed*, as it is revealed in the *Koran* or *Alcoran*.

Of their their marriages.

As for marriages, when a man has a mind to take a wife he does not addreſs himſelf to the party he would have, but to her parents or relations; and when they have agreed upon terms, they ſend for an eccleſiaſtic, who asks the man, If he will have the woman to be his wife? 1704. to which anſwering in the *Affirmative*, he then propoſes the ſame queſtion to her, who anſwering in the ſame manner, this done, the ſame churchman draws up the marriage articles, for they have no notaries in *Perſia*, by which the married man aſſigns a certain ſum of money to his wife, who, by vertue of this contract, ſigned by the husband, is for ever poſſeſſed of this dower, even tho' her husband ſhould part with her, a cuſtom allowed of in this country; and when he dies, his heirs are obliged to pay her this ſum, together with the eighth part of the moveables he left behind him. Moreover if the woman dies firſt, and leaves children behind her, the husband, in caſe he marries again, and has children by a ſecond venter, is obliged to give the firſt wife's children their mother's dower, and an equal proportion of his own fortune, which they are to divide with the reſt.

When a Chriſtian, or any other perſon who is not of the *Perſian* religion, embraces their faith, he inherits all his father's fortune, and the fortune of all his relations, excluſive of all others who have not apoſtatiſed like himſelf. And in caſe two Chriſtians enter into the *Perſian* infidelity at the ſame time, the next heir of the two of courſe enjoys alone all the fortune of his Chriſtian relations that die.

Concubines.

It is lawful for the *Perſians* to take as many concubines as they pleaſe, or as many as they can keep; and when it happens that they put away one of theſe, it is not lawful for her to have commerce with a man, till forty days are paſt and over, for fear ſhe ſhould be with child. For the reſt, all the children of theſe concubines are reputed legitimate, and have their ſhare of the father's fortune like the reſt.

Dower of maidens.

When parents give a daughter in marriage, they give with her ſuch a portion as they think fit, and ſhe engages herſelf, by a proper writing for that purpoſe, to claim nothing thereafter of what they ſhall

1704. ſhall leave behind them, of which ſhe has already received her part, and ſo diſclaims all right to ſhare with her brothers and ſiſters in what they are to divide in the ſequel.

When they deliver this portion to the husband, they put all her cloaths and moveables upon horſes, and the reſt is carried by ſeveral perſons, who are laden alſo with conſerves and other dainties. This ceremony may be called a proceſſion, which is more or leſs ſplendid according to the quality of the perſons, and it is always tranſacted with the ſound of inſtruments. This is performed ſome days after the conſummation of the marriage, and upon this occaſion they prepare, as it is always in the night, a well illuminated apartment in the husband's houſe. The men go in firſt, and the women follow them in great form.

The Grandees have alſo a wife who is commonly ſerved by the husband's concubines, and honoured with the title of *Khana*, which correſponds with that of *Khan*, aſſumed by their huſbands. They eat alone, and are attended at table, as the cuſtom is with others, by ſome of the concubines. The children of both are equally legitimate, and equally partake of the father's fortune; and when it happens that one of theſe concubines produces a child, it is remarkable that the lawful wife rejoices mightily upon this occaſion, in conſideration of the honour that thereby accrues to her husband; who, when he has a mind to be with one of them, firſt ſends one of his eunuchs to her apartment, for they have each of them one apart, and he orders her to bathe and purify herſelf; ſhe immediately obeys and decks herſelf out to receive her Lord. Theſe concubines eat together without any other company.

The King takes to him as many wives as he pleaſes, and chuſes them from amongſt the fineſt *Georgian*, *Armenian*, and other Chriſtian maidens he can poſſibly find; there is a perfect equality between them, and the firſt ſon that is born of them, is heir to the Crown, without any regard had to the mother he is born of; nor does this give her any pre-eminence over the reſt. When this Prince turns one of them out of the Seraglio; if ſhe has had no children, he marries her to whom he pleaſes, and often to a perſon of very inferior rank. 1704.

Funerals. What follows is what I obſerved with regard to their deaths and burials. Two or three hours after the deceaſe of a perſon, they ſend for a *Mola* or eccleſiaſtic, who goes through certain prayers and ceremonies. Then they put the body into a coffin, which they carry to the waſhing-place, without the houſe, in a place appointed for that purpoſe, there to waſh and purify it. It is carried by common porters, and preceded by ſingers and other perſons, with ſtaves in their hands, and ſwitches and ſtreamers; the relations follow the body, rending their cloaths, tearing their hair, beating their breaſts, and performing other acts of deſpair. The bodies of perſons of higher rank are ſurrounded by churchmen and other perſons who bawl out mournful dirges. The friends that attend them make woful lamentations, but perhaps more out of cuſtom, than for any grief that affects them to that extravagance. Neither the relations nor friends differ in dreſs from what they commonly wear, except thoſe that go before the corpſe, and ſome that let down one end of the folds of their turbans. For the reſt, they do not go two and two, but promiſcuouſly, and without any order.

When they have been at the waſhing-place, and have waſhed the body, they take cotton and therewith ſtop all the apertures, as the mouth, the noſtrils and the reſt. The whole difference in what is practiſed with regard to the dead bodies of men, and thoſe of women is, that men waſh the men, and women thoſe of their own ſex; and follow them to the grave; for they carry them directly from the waſhing place to the tomb, where they again perform a ſervice of prayers and ceremonies.

Then

1704. Then they wrap up the body in a winding ſheet, and commit it to the earth, obſerving that it reſts upon the left ſide, with the head to the eaſt and the feet to the weſt, and with the face turned toward the tomb of their prophet *Mohammed*. Then they raiſe a vault of earth or clay over the body, and fill up the grave, upon which they place a ſtone, or erect a tomb, and frequently a dome, when the perſon is of diſtinction. The King even ſometimes honours them with a royal ſepulchre, which is accounted ſacred, and for which they have a very extraordinary veneration. Some of theſe tombs are alſo in form of a temple, crowned with fine blue glazed domes, which have a moſt admirable effect upon the eye.

Coin of Perſia.

As for their money, the greateſt part of their ſilver coin is the *Haſſaendenarie*, or a piece of ten *Mamoedjes*, which are worth about eight-pence of our money. They have *Daezajie* or pieces of five *Mamoedjes*; *Paenzajie*, of two and an half; pieces of two *Mamoedjes*, called *Abbaſtries*, and others of one *Mamoedje*, of which there are two ſorts, coined by the predeceſſors of his preſent Majeſty, They call them *Mamoedjes-haviese*; the country abounds with this coin, becauſe the merchants do not find it worth their while to carry or ſend it into foreign parts. It is current all over this Kingdom as well for foreign goods as for their own, nor do they uſe any other. They have alſo Zaejies or half *Mamoedjes*. The King coins but few or none of the two firſt ſorts we have mentioned, and them only for the poor, and at certain times of the year. They are alſo ſo ſcarce, that they are hardly any where to be ſeen but in the hands of the curious, becauſe they differ a little in value and weight from the *Mamoedjes*, and the *Zaejies* which they coin at preſent. The reaſon of which is, that theſe three laſt coins were reduced to a juſt ſtandard in the years 1684, and 1685, but the officers of the mint have nevertheleſs diminiſhed the value of them, out of their inſatiable deſire to enrich themſelves, to which the negligence of the government itſelf did not a little contribute. Nor had the grievance at all been remedied, if the people, who murmured at it, had not made their complaint to the miniſters, who, to ſatisfie them, broke a part of theſe officers, and appointed others in their ſtead, who reformed what had been amiſs in their predeceſſors; nor can this be wondered, at ſeeing they were diſcharged without any concomitant puniſhment for their malverſations. Theſe coins are not at all current in trade, in which they uſe none but the *Mamoedjes-havaiſe*, a coin under the ancient Kings. This obliges the merchants to be diligent in looking out for them, and to give ſometimes one, two, and even ſix *per cent.* for them, beyond their intrinſic value, ſo that they tranſact a very great trade with this coin, which the traders of the country hoard up as ſoon as it comes out of the mint, and ſend them away to *Suratt*, where they find them to turn to better account than if they bought *Ducats*. 1704.

They have two ſorts of copper coin, the largeſt of which, and which is the tenth part of a *Mamoedje*, is round; the other, which is worth no more than the twenty fifth part of the ſame, is long.

There is little or no gold coin to be ſeen in *Perſia*; I have, however, ſeen *Ducats* there, but they are ſcarce and light.

All the goods brought from *Gamron*, and the money ſent thither by bills of exchange, are negotiated by the *Banians* or *Indian* brokers, and the money is carried in *Ducats* to the *Eaſt-Indies*.

Trade between the King of Perſia *and the* India *company.*

The King of *Perſia* is, by contract, obliged to deliver every year to our *India* company, one hundred bales of ſilk, each bale containing 408 pounds of *Dutch* weight, amounting in the whole to the weight of 4800 pounds. And the company, by way of return, ſend twelve hundred cheſts of ſugar to *Iſpahan*, each cheſt containing one hundred and fifty pounds weight, in all eighteen hundred thou-

1704. pounds weight; which is consumed in the city of *Ispahan* only. When the director and the other officers of the company have received this silk, they sort it, and make it up 1703. into less bales, which they send by horses to *Gamron*, and from thence by shipping to *Batavia*.

CHAP. XLV.

Description of several Birds; of certain Trees; of Fruits, Plants, and Flowers. Price of Goods. Famous Gum or Mummy.

Description of the birds. The Angoert.

HAVING spoken of the nature and customs of this country, I proceed to its productions, and shall begin with the birds, which are represented in number 91. The *Angoert*, distinguished by the letter *A*, is a sort of bird we have already mentioned in the course of these travels. I painted it from the life, and found it somewhat different from those of the kind I had seen before; for this had a black collar about its neck, and more green upon the wings than the rest I had seen. The birds distinguished by the letter *B*, are turtle-doves, which have also a kind of black collar about the neck, and which, for that reason, they call *Fargter-toog-begerde*, or turtle-doves with collars. Those distinguished by the letter *C*, are called *Fargter*, and the bird marked by the letter *D*, is called *Claegsebs*, or the green crow. The *E*, distinguishes certain yellow birds called *Gonsjes-zerde*, which appear when the corn begins to spring up, there to build their nests, and retire as soon as the husbandmen begin to reap it; they are of four or five sorts. The bird distinguished by the letter *A*, in number 92, is a spotted turtle-dove, with streaks of white and black upon the neck; it keeps commonly in the mountains; the *B*, points out an *Alla-fagter* or green turtle; the letter *C*, distinguishes a bird spotted with black and white, and called *Mahi-gieeck*, or the fisher, because it never leaves the banks of the rivers, or waters, like the gull. The *D*, shews two other *Mahi-gieecks*, which are small birds, blue and green behind, of an orange colour on the breast, and so called because they are generally upon trees near the water. The letter *E*, points out a bird with a green body and a yellow neck. The letter *F*, points at a bird which is black and grey mixed with white, spotted with yellow, and called *Dregtken*, or wood-pecker, because it is always pecking at the trees it perches upon, so as to be heard afar off. The letter *G*, distinguishes a bird marbled before, and behind, and called *Morje-inshir*, or the *Becco-fico*, with his breast striped with grey and white. He loves heat, sings sweetly, and tastes deliciously; but is very scarce.

Turtle-doves.

Backer-Kara.

Number 93, represents a bird called *Backer-Kara*, common all over *Turky*, and in the island of *Cyprus*. He is of an exquisite flavour, and his flesh is whiter than that of the partridge, beside that he is larger. For the rest, he has colour upon his back, but is grey and white before, and has a streak about his neck, as may be observed in number 94. The two birds represented in number 95, are called *Bol-bol*, and have nearly the nightingale's song. They are taken from the life, their heads are black and white, and the rest of their feathers are grey, except upon the belly, where they are yellow quite to the tail, the tip of which is white.

Of trees. The Sena.

Let us now proceed to describe the trees, the fruits and the plants. The tree of greatest esteem in this country is the *Sena*, unknown in all other

OISEAUX SINGULIERS. 91.

OISEAUX SINGULIERS.

92.



BAEKER-KARAE. 93.



BAEKER-KARAE. 94.



OISEAUX BOL-BOL. 95.





ARBRE LE SENNÉ. 96.






A


97
B
D
C



1704. other parts. They pretend that the firſt of them which was brought hither, came from the town of *Jeeſd*, which is ſeven or eight days journey from hence. Some of theſe trees are twenty or twenty-five palms in circumference, and particularly in the *Chiaer-baeg*, and in many other gardens where I have been. They are commonly forty or fifty foot high, and are as upright as a maſt, with few or no branches but at the very top. The bark is of a bright grey, and the leaves like thoſe repreſented in number 96. The planks of it are proper for gates and doors, ſhutters and the like, and the tree is yellow marbled within, which is very much eſteemed in this country. The largeſt and moſt robuſt of theſe trees are worth one hundred *Rix-dollars*.

Piſtachio *trees.* The *Piſtachio* is alſo of a good ſize there, and has a fine head, laden with fruit. The leaves of it are not very unlike thoſe of the laurel, except that they are a little rounder and larger; you ſee a branch of this tree in number 97, diſtinguiſhed by the letter *A*. The bark of it is red and yellow, when the tree is in full vigour, otherwiſe it is bright, green and yellow. Moſt of the leaves of it are upſide down, red and yellow. They make a comfit of the ſhell of this nut, which they eſteem very much, and pickle the kernels of it before it is ripe, juſt as we do green cucumbers. There are wild *Piſtachio* trees in the mountains, which bear a very ſmall nut. They produce a gum, which the inhabitants receive in a ſmall cup of clay, from a wound they make, either in the body of the tree or the branches of it. This gum has the ſcent and colour of terebinth: They collect it in the month of *Auguſt*, and put it up in little leathern pouches for ſale. It is a wonderful remedy or unguent.

Semaeg. This country produces another tree called *Semaeg*, not very unlike an alder, except that the leaves of it are ſhorter and more full of fibres, beſide that they are pointed in their rotundity. The fruit, you ſee diſtinguiſhed by the letter *B*, and which is ſourer than verjuice, is 1704. like a cat's tail, and full of ſmall excreſcencies. They uſe it in ſauces, and when it is dry they reduce it to a powder, and eat it with roaſted meat; it is medicinal alſo; they uſe it together with roſe water to rinſe the mouth and gums, and prevent the ſcurvy.

Perſia alſo produces a ſhrub called *Kakienets* or *Akekinſhe*, which Kakienets. riſes two foot above the ground, and ſhoots out branches which can hardly ſupport themſelves. Each of them bears four, five, ſix or ſeven of their fruit, which is like a bell cloſed in, and of a fine red orange colour within and without; you have a branch of it, laden with its fruit, in letter *C*, this fruit when dry is uſed to ſtaunch blood. They make it up into ſmall cakes, which they call *Trociſchi-Alkekingi*, which they again convert into ſmall pills, having previouſly boil'd them in water and terebinth, and they take them in a glaſs of wine or water.

The *Annaeb* is a tree of pretty Annaeb. tolerable growth, whoſe fruit is like the olive before it is ripe, and becomes red afterward. The taſte of it is admirable, and this they uſe alſo medicinally. There is a branch of it diſtinguiſhed by the letter *D*, and they are all after the life.

The chief fruits of *Perſia* are *Fruit of trees.* almonds, piſtachio's and peaches, of theſe laſt there are four or five ſorts, great and ſmall, ſome of which part from the ſtone, and ſome do not. The former are called *Sheſtaloe*, and thoſe whoſe ſtone opens with the fruit, *Hoe-loe*; they have ſome blue like plumbs, others are like apricots, and there are ſmall ones that are yellowiſh.

As for apricots they have eleven *Apricots.* or twelve ſorts of them, each of which have a particular name; but in general they call them *Zarda-loe*.

There are, however, but few *Cherries.* cherries in this country, ſome of which are like thoſe of *Spain*, and the reſt are like black morella's, the former are called *Gielas*, and the latthe *Aloe-baloe*.

1704. But they have many apples, and of ſeveral ſorts, which, in general, they call *Sien*, and many ſorts of pears, and among the reſt, the *Bergamot*, winter pears, and ſummer pears, of which ſome are very large, and eſpecially they have ſome of the former which keep all the year round.

Apples and pears.

Plumbs. They there have four ſorts, of plumbs, blue, white, red, and yellow. They eat the white half ripe with ſalt, and the blue are the true plumbs *de Brignole*.

Quinces. They have here alſo two or three ſorts of quince-trees, called *De-bée*, the fruit of which is admirable and eaten in the hand. It is very large, and very good to preſerve. They have alſo ſtore of walnuts and ſmall nuts.

Pomegranates. Pomegranate-trees abound here alſo, and bear a delicious fruit; tho' ſome there are of them that bear no fruit at all, and only a great red flower like a poppy. Some of them have their leaves ſtreaked with white, and are moſt charmingly beautiful, and others of them are yellow. I had the curioſity to paint ſome of them as you will find them repreſented in number 98, and in number 99 you have a pretty tree, all the branches of which hang down to the ground; the leaves of it are fine, long and thin, and they call it *Biede-makalagie*. They have but one ſort of figs, and thoſe none of the largeſt.

Grapes. But they have ten or twelve ſorts of grapes, which in general they call *Angoer*, tho' each ſort has a name peculiar to itſelf. They have three or four ſorts that are blue, ſome of them round, others long, and all very large. They have alſo two or three ſorts that are white, and ſome of them very ſweet, and without ſtones. They have another ſort, whoſe bunches are a promiſcuous mixture of large and ſmall grapes, different from all I had ever ſeen elſewhere. They dry them every year, and making them a kind of comfit, they put them into earthen pots, and ſend them to *Batavia* and elſewhere. In this manner it is they do it; they pick and cull the grapes very nicely, and cover them with dry roſe-leaves in a ſtone jug, which they then ſtop up ſo cloſe, that no air can have admiſſion, in this ſtate they leave them for ſome days, after which they break the neck of the veſſel and take out the roſe-leaves, and ſeparate all the grapes, which they put into another veſſel, and being thoroughly dry, they ſend them into foreign parts. The roſe-leaves are only intended to give a pleaſant flavour to the grapes; but care muſt be taken that none of them remain with the grapes, for fear they ſhould cauſe a rot. At the ſame time they ſend to the *Indies* almonds and piſtachio's, from whence in exchange they receive ſweatmeats and other dainties. 1703.

Plants and roots. Plants and roots abound as much in *Perſia* as the fruits. They reckon they have above twenty-five ſorts of melons, which in general they call *Garbie-ſa*, tho' each of them, moſt of which are excellent, has a name peculiar to itſelf. There are ſome of them that weigh twenty pound, and which they keep all the year round in cool and cloſe places, and eſpecially in the ſummer, to ſave them from the violent heats. Nor do they ever want ſnow for that purpoſe, and they there know how to condenſe it into ice to refreſh their wine. Theſe great melons are called *Garbie-ſai-belgience*. The firſt melons that appear are the moſt inſipid, but then they are the moſt wholeſome; they are almoſt all white. The water-melons abound there no leſs, and they have four or five ſorts of them, as well red as white, and which they call *Hindoen*. The ſmall *Citruls* are there alſo in the ſame plenty, ſome of them ſtriped with green and black, and very beautiful; others of them marbled with ſeveral colours, and not larger than a *China* orange. I have filled a picture with theſe fruits, intermixed with peaches, and another fruit called *Chamama* or *woman's breaſt*, of an admirable red. I have preſerved the ſtone or ſeed of this, and



98 FLEUR DE GRANADE



PETITES CITROUÏLLES ET AUTRE FRUITS. 100



ARBRE NOMMÉ BIEDE-MAHALAGIE. 99





1704. and a bunch of the grapes I mentioned to consist of great and small upon the same stalk; you have the representation of these fruits in number 100.

Productions of the Kitchen-garden. *Persia* also produces all sorts of carrots, beet-roots, and parsnips, horse-radish, radishes, turnips, topinambers, mushrooms, colly-flowers of extraordinary size, some of which weigh thirteen or fourteen pound, savoys, asparagus, artichokes, celery, leeks, onions, shalots, cresses, dragon-wort, parsley, chervil, savoy, mint, coriander, Anniseed, sorrel, purslane, marjoram, sage, borage, cabbage-lettice, succory, and Roman-lettice, with a long leaf, and which they eat in the hand, which is sweet and very pleasant to the taste. Nor do they want for spinage and rue.

Flowers. This country also produces very common tulips, and ugly carnations, the lily, the tuberose, narcissus, several sorts of junquils, the hyacinth, the marvel of *Peru*, the mallow, the sun-flower, the musk-flower, violets, and marigolds, most of which have been brought from *Europe*, for the flowers of their own are very indifferent. They have also the flowers of saffron, the finest sorts of which come from *Mazanderan*. Though roses both red and white are there very common, they make a prodigious quantity of rose-water, which they send to *India*, and elsewhere; and they use a great deal of it themselves, for they are great lovers of perfumes, and never fail to sprinkle their friends with rose-water whenever they entertain them, but it never spots their cloaths.

They have also two sorts of jessamine, the best of which is very much like the *Italian*, the smell excepted. The other is more common, and runs up very high upon trees, and has a particular love for the *Sena*; nothing can be more charming to the sight.

Abundance of provisions. Beside all this, *Persia* is productive of every necessary of life, and particularly abounds with poultry and game. You there do not commonly give above six pence for a hen; four pence or five pence for a pullet, and ten or twelve pence for a partridge. Of these there are some not bigger than quails and pigeons. Wild ducks are there worth about seven-pence or eight-pence a piece; a good tame goose forty or fifty, a large turkey seven or eight, and the young ones in proportion. Their capons are excessively fat, and not very plentiful and indeed they are seldom purchased but to make presents of. 1704.

Besides all this, they have plenty of snipes and woodcocks; many sorts of wild ducks, teal, cranes, wood-pigeons, turtles, larks, thrushes, and partridges with red heads, which can only be shot flying, or taken with the hawk.

However, every sort of deer is here scarce enough, but cattle, and especially beeves, abound; you may have twelve pound of beef for the value of twenty pence, tho' the *Persians* eat but little of it, if you except the dregs of the people: It is almost all sold at *Julfa*, and among the Christians. They likewise do not give above fifteen or sixteen pence for twelve pounds of mutton; but they raise the price of it as winter comes on. The same it is with regard to goats flesh. There are many wolves and foxes in this country, but they are very small.

They also commonly give but eight or ten pence for twelve pounds of bread, and twenty pence or four and twenty for the same quantity of rice, eight or nine pence for as much wheat, and seven or eight pence for as much barley when it is not winnowed. They give it to horses, because they have no oats in *Persia*; but they have store of *Spanish* wheat, which they dress before it is quite ripe, and sprinkling it over with salt water, cry it about the streets to sell. *Price of bread.*

The butter they use in their sauces, and in several of their dishes, is sold after the rate of five or six *Florins* for twelve pounds, and their fresh butter, which is admirable, for seven or eight *Florins*. *Butter.*

The oil they use for the same purpose, is made of the seed of *Oil.*

Kousjae,

1704. *Kousjae*, and is not very unlike our olive oil, except that it has a ſtronger ſmell with it. You have twelve pound of it for fifteen pence. They have, however, another ſort which is better, and extracted from the ſeed of *Kousjit*, which coſts as much again.

The ſeed of *Maize*, which, in the *Eaſt-Indies*, they call *Kajang*, is alſo of great uſe in ſauces. Beſides all this, *Perſia* produces ſmall red and white beans, not unlike thoſe of *Turkey*; peas, white and grey; ſmall black beans for horſes, and green peas of the growth of *Europe*.

They uſe camel's dung for firing inſtead of turf.

Wood is very dear in this country, and ſold by weight; they give you but twelve pounds of it for four pence or five pence, and the ſame it is with regard to coals. Whence it is they are obliged to make uſe of turf, made of camel's dung, cow dung, ſheep's dung, horſe dung, and aſs dung. The chief *Armenians* of *Julfa* do ſo as well as the reſt, or elſe the fire would coſt more than the victuals; whereas they give but thirty pence for two hundred and twenty or two thouſand and thirty pound weight of this turf. They uſe it more particularly for heating of ovens, in which they bake moſt of their meats in this country, without trouble and at a ſmall expence. The uſe they make of this dung contributes much to the cleanlineſs of the highways, whence they are careful to remove the filth as well for this purpoſe as to manure their lands. They even apply human dung this way.

Root of Rugnas.

I forgot to ſpeak of the root of *Rugnas*, which the *Indians* call *Soliman-doſtyn*, and which they find in the province of *Shirwan*, and in the neighbourhood about the city of *Tauris*. They trade greatly with it to the *Indies*, whither, one year with another, they ſend three hundred packs of it, each pack of about one hundred and fifty or one hundred and ſixty pound weight. The *Manſha*, or twelve light pounds of it, is commonly worth above twelve *Mamoedjes*, which make about two *Rix-dollars* or five *Florins*.

Orpiment.

They every year alſo, from *Tauris* and *Casbin*, ſend to the *Indies* ſeven or eight hundred hampers of *Auripigmentum* or *Orpiment*, which the *Perſians* call *Zernig*. Theſe baskets, each of them, contain one hundred and fifty or one hundred and ſixty pound weight, and a pound of it, according to its degree of goodneſs, is worth from three quarters of a crown to three half crowns. They uſe it much for painting in this country, and for ſeveral other purpoſes. I think they alſo ſend it into *Turky*.

Famous drug.

Perſia moreover produces a precious drug, unknown to many people even of the country itſelf. It is a kind of gum they call *Mummy*, which they find in the neighbourhood of the city of *Laer*, in certain ruins or grotto's. It is ſoft and black as pitch, but ſmells pleaſanter, and drops from the rock. That which affords the beſt is locked and ſealed up, and none but the Governour of *Laer*, and ſome other Grandees are allowed to go in and collect for the King; and they do not get together above eight or ten ounces of it a year, ſo that it is a very great rarity. This gum is admirable for fractured bones, and they aſſure you that let the human body be bruiſed and broken ever ſo much, it reſtores it in twenty four hours time. To this purpoſe they melt in, to the quantity of a pea, with butter in a ſpoon, which they make the patient ſwallow down, and then apply the ſame quantity of it, or a little more to the afflicted part, or in proportion as the caſe requires, and then they bind it about with linen, and uſe ſplints, for a broken leg. They attribute the diſcovery of this medicine to a hunter who had broke the leg of a ſtag, which neverthelеſs got from him. The ſtory relates, that the hunter returning the next day to his ſport, ſhot, as he thought, at another ſtag, but was much ſurprized to find it was the ſame, whoſe leg he had broken the day before, and eſpecially upon obſerving the fracture was almoſt cured.

1704. cured. The rumour of this accident ſpreading round about, they attributed the ſuddenneſs of this cure to the vertue of this gum, the affair happening near the place where it drops. They made experiments of it upon other wounds, and it failed not of exhibiting the ſame effect; nor was there more deſired to give it a great reputation.

In the country of *Loreſtan*, they find another ſort of it, which produces much the ſame effect, but it is three or four times as long in perfecting a cure. The difference between theſe two ſorts, is known by putting ſome of each upon burning coals; the ſmoke of this laſt has the ſmell of pitch, whereas the ſmoke of the firſt is much more pleaſant; but the beſt proof is by breaking the leg of a fowl, and then applying it as directed above; this is a proof that has been made ſeveral times. For the reſt, as this mummy belongs wholly to the King, and as there is but little of it produced, it is very difficult to get any of it, and eſpecially for money. Thoſe, however, who have the charge of it, do ſometimes ſend ſome of it privately as a preſent to the firſt miniſters of ſtate. That of *Loreſtan* is not quite ſo ſcarce to be met with, I flatter my ſelf I have ſome of each ſort; if I have not I am very much miſtaken. 1704.

CHAP. XLVI.

Deſcription of Julfa. *Dreſs of the* Armenians. *Cuſtoms obſerved by the* Armenians *at births, marriages and funerals. The education of their children and their manner of living. Of the* Europeans *that live there. Of foreign miniſters.*

Deſcription of Julfa.

THE town or ſuburb of *Julfa* is divided into ſeveral parts, and particularly into the old and new colony. The old one, which they call *Soeg-ga*, is inhabited by the principal merchants; and they ſay their anceſtors came thither from ſeveral parts, and even from the frontiers of *Turkey*, in the reign of *Abbas* the great, and that this Prince aſſigned them certain lands for their ſupport. The *Gawres*, the ancient followers of *Zoroaſter*, ſettled there likewiſe with ſome ſtrangers, we ſhall ſpeak of in the ſequel.

New Julfa.

New *Julfa* is higher up, and ſubdivided into ſeveral diſtricts, (1) that of *Gaif-rabaet* or of *Koets*, inhabited by ſtone-cutters, who work for buildings and tombs; (2) that of *Tabrieſe*, full of weavers and artificers in ſtuffs, among whom are ſome *Frenchmen*; (3) that of *Toeſt* or of *Samſha-baet*, which belongs to the old colony, and is inhabited by merchants and artificers; (4) that of *Eriwan*, full of common people; (5, 6, and 7) are called *Nagt-ſiewaen*, *Siachſa-baen* and *Kaſket-ſie*; theſe are inhabited by the ſame, and all theſe people are called after the diſtrict they live in, without any other diſtinction.

Old Julfa.

Old *Julfa* is much larger than all the other diſtricts put together, and contains near two thouſand families, of which are thoſe of ſome of the moſt wealthy, and moſt conſiderable merchants.

They have their own *Kalantaer* or burgo-maſter, and their *Betgoedaes* or chiefs of diſtricts, who are as judges to decide in all common cauſes, but thoſe of more importance are reſerved for the King or the council of ſtate, and are afterward put into

1704. into execution by the burgo-maſter and chiefs of the diſtricts.

The old *Julfa* properly belongs to the King's grand-mother, whom they call *Nawasb-ali*, a title they commonly confer upon perſons of great power and condition: But all the other diſtricts we have enumerated are under the *Nagaſi-baſhi* or chief of the King's painters. They have nevertheleſs their particular chiefs, and they had formerly a burgo-maſter.

Building of Julfa. The firſt diſtrict of *Julfa*, which is the ſouthward, conſiſts of a large ſtreet, inhabited by *Guebres*, that is, by thoſe who have embraced *Mohammediſm* within three years; their wives, by ancient cuſtom, go with the face bare. I never was able to get a thorough underſtanding of what theſe people were till after my return from the *Indies*, and therefore I ſhall defer what I have farther to ſay of them till that time.

The principal buildings of *Julfa* are the churches, the chief of which is that of *Anna-baet* or *of the biſhop*, concerning which, we ſhall declare ourſelves when we are to ſpeak of the baptiſm of the croſs. The ſecond, which has a fine dome, is that of *Surpa-kroop* or of St. *James*, full of paintings, repreſenting ſacred ſtories, like that of the biſhop; it has ſome vacant places on the right-hand, and the women are there divided from the men. The third, which is the largeſt, is that of *Surpon-tomaſa*, or of St. *Thomas*. It is long, and, on each ſide, ſupported by three ſquare columns. This church has no paintings, and all the walls of it are white; the dome of it is very low, and you go up to the altar by three ſteps on each ſide. Beſide theſe churches, there are eleven or twelve ſmaller, and leſs adorned. There are alſo thirteen or fourteen in the new *Julfa*, but they are ſmall, and not at all remarkable.

The principal *Armenians* have ſome tolerably fine houſes in the old *Julfa*. The chief of them is that of *Hodſhe-minozes*, whoſe great hall is all gilt, and painted with flowers and other ornaments, and 1704. has ſeveral looking glaſſes. The cieling of it is vaulted, and divided into four compartments, in the middle of each of which is a golden ſtar, intermixed with ſome colours, and the walls of it are cruſted with marble to the heighth of two or three foot. At the two ends of this hall there are niches full of feſtoons and foliages interwoven, of unſpeakable beauty. Through the front-gate, which leads to theſe houſes, you come into a court, in the middle of which there is a fine round parterre, and a court in the ſame form behind the houſe, with a building apart for the women, after the manner of the country.

When I had examined into what was curious and remarkable in this houſe, the maſter of which entertained me very ſplendidly, I went to ſee that of the burgo-maſter *Hogaes* or *Lucas*, which I found to be as large as the former, but not ſo gaudy. From this, I went to that of *Arjiet-Aga*, before which there was a great garden; it is alſo very large and full of fine apartments. That of *Hodſhe-Saffraes* has alſo a large garden, and all the walls of the houſe are painted and full of figures as big as the life. Among others there is a *Turkiſh* man and a *Turkiſh* woman, and ſeveral other figures dreſſed after the *Perſian* and *Spaniſh* manner, at ſome diſtance the one from the other. Upon the top of this houſe there is a fine terraſs, whence you have the moſt inchanting proſpect in the world, in which King *Abbas* took a ſingular pleaſure in his time. The houſe of *Hodſhe-Agamaet* is one of the loftieſt and beſt adorned; it has a beautiful apartment next to the ſtreet, with fine large windows, and the terraſs of it is charming. The houſes of *Hodſhe-Ovannis*, of *Hodſhe-Murſa*, and of ſeveral others yield in nothing to theſe. Some of them have a elegant marble fountain with a waterfall in the fineſt apartment, or at the entrance without.

All theſe houſes are extremely neat and well kept; the rooms of *Neatneſs of the houſes.*

2 them





1704. them are covered with fine carpets, and full of cuſhions of gold and ſilver brocade. The front-gate of moſt of theſe houſes is very ſmall, partly to prevent the *Perſians* from riding in on horſeback, and partly to avoid any ſhew of the magnificence within. The chief ſtreets are adorned with fine ſena's, planted on each ſide.

Dreſs of the Armenian *men.* The dreſs of the *Armenians* differs but little from that of the *Perſians*, except that they are not ſo neat, nor are their turbants ſo nicely folded: beſide that, they are not allowed to wear them of the *Perſian* mode any more than green ſlippers.

Of the women. As for the better ſort of the *Armenian* women, they, like the *Perſian* women, wear a half band upon the fore-head, adorned with precious ſtones and pearls. Under this band they have a golden *Chambara*, adorned in the ſame manner, and two fingers broad, and down the cheeks they have a ſcore of golden ducats, and other ornaments, enriched with pearl, which comes underneath the chin, and the lower part of their face, quite to the noſe, is covered with a veil, faſtened behind the head. Beſide this, they wear another veil about the neck, the ends of which are embroidered with gold and ſilver, and this is alſo faſtened behind the head, and theſe two veils are never taken off. They have a third embroidered, which covers their neck, and goes over the two others; this alſo is faſtened upon the head and falls down to the bottom of their upper garment, which is commonly of gold brocade, and lined with ſables. The garment they wear under this is of a flowered ſtuff, and they have a third which does not fall below the knee. Their ſhift is of embroidered taffeta, or ſome other rich ſtuff, and a little ſhorter than their upper garment. Under this they wear drawers of a fine ſtriped ſattin, buskins or boots after the *Perſian* mode, and ſlippers either yellow or red, for green they are no more allowed to wear than the men. The girdle is made of thin plates of gold or ſilver chaſed, and is four or five fingers broad, and under this they have a ſilken one with a buckle; for the reſt ſome of them ſet them with precious ſtones. They have commonly two or three gold chains about the neck, by one of which hang ſmall boxes of perfumes, and ducats by the reſt. Theſe chains they wear with the addition of a coral necklace, to every third bead of which they hang either a ſingle or a double ducat. They wear alſo golden bracelets, and have their fingers laden with rings. Inſtead of the furred gown, they, in ſummer, wear another garment, ſhorter and without ſleeves, which does not fall down below the knee. You have this dreſs repreſented in number 101.

Dreſs of the young women. The maids dreſs nearly after the manner of the married women, excepting with regard to the head, as likewiſe the veil which covers a part of the face, and the other which covers the neck and breaſt; ſo that they wear none but that which the women have about the neck. For the reſt, they wear a band, or rather a diadem, upon the forehead, embroidered with gold and ſilver and inriched with pearls. In ſhort, when the *Armenian* women appear abroad, they differ in nothing from the *Perſian*, except that they are obliged to cover their faces, with their cloaths which they hold in the right-hand, to prevent their being ſeen.

But it is now high time to proceed to the cuſtom or ceremonies obſerved by theſe people at births, marriages, and funerals.

Cuſtoms at births. When they have a child born among them, their firſt care is to give it a god-father, and at the end of ſome days, a woman carries this child to church that it may be baptized; ſhe delivers it into the hands of the prieſt, who dips it three times, naked, into a bucket of water, which ſerves them for a font; the prieſt all the while pronouncing a certain form of words, as the cuſtom is with us. He then anoints the child with holy oil, upon the head firſt, then upon the mouth, the breaſt,

1704. breast, the neck, the hands and feet; after which he wraps it up in its cloaths, and carries it up to the altar, where he crams the sacrament into its mouth. This done he puts it upon the arms of the god-father, who covers it with a stuff, he presents it; after all this they return, preceded by some priests, who have a cross in one hand and a taper in the other, and singing the Gospel to the sound of some instruments. The godfather, in this manner, follows them to the house of the child's parents, holding also two lighted tapers in his hands, and having delivered up the child to its mother, he diverts himself the rest of the day with the friends and relations. For the rest, they have here commonly the same godfather, for their children, and when a child happens to be born a little before *Easter*, or the festival of baptizing the cross, they are obliged to have it baptized upon that same day. It must here also be observed, that neither this godfather, nor any of his near relations, can marry with any of those of the child to the third or fourth degree of consanguinity. And even when it happens that a girl and a boy of different families have been represented by the same godfather, they may not marry together.

Marriage ceremonies. Their marriages have something odd enough in them; the parties do not go through a courtship as elsewhere: The parents on each side make the whole agreement among themselves, and draw up the marriage contract. Upon the wedding day the bridegroom sends for music, and invites some friends to his house, and they put a taper into the hand of those so invited. In the midst of this appear a group of young girls, who dance in the streets to the sound of drums and hautboys, and are followed by women laden with wearing apparel and jewels. These girls when they are got to the bridegroom's habitation, fasten a cross of green sattin upon his breast, and the men and the women retire into separate apartments, where 1704. they are entertained with conserves, and choice liquors. Then they bring the cloaths of the bride and bridegroom in two baskets, with some trifles to be presented to the young people who assist at the wedding; and the priests perform certain ceremonies by way of blessing this apparel, which when done the intended couple put them on. The bridegroom being thus dressed, goes with some of his friends, and two or three of his relations, to the apartment of his spouse that is to be, where he is received and complimented by his father, or brother, or nearest of his relations, who gives him some exhortations, and wishes him all sorts of joy and happiness. The young girls, formerly mentioned, then fasten another cross of red sattin, upon the first, and the women bring him a handkerchief, which they give him to hold by one corner, and the bride by the other. The bride is now covered with a fine embroidered veil, thro' which, however, you may see her cloaths, and her face is covered with a red taffety, which hangs down to her feet; and thus she follows her husband accompanied by several women veiled, while he is preceded by all the men, and thus they go to church, with each a lighted taper in hand. As soon as they are got thither, the relations take the handkerchief from the bridegroom, and then go each to his place. As soon as mass is begun the confessors appear, and confess the young couple, who then go up to the altar, where the priest asks the man, if he will have the woman offered to him to be his wife, and if he will honour and cherish her, whatever may happen to her for the time to come, whether she be taken blind, or lose the use of her limbs, or whether she be afflicted by any other accident of the kind? The man answering in the affirmative, the priest asks the woman the same question, she answering in the same manner, the priest first joins

1704. their hands, and then their heads, which a brideman keeps together with an handkerchief, and then he covers them with a croſs. In the mean time they read over the office for the occaſion, and ſay the uſual prayers; then the prieſt takes the croſs from off them, and adminiſters to them the ſacrament of the altar, and every one returns to his place. When maſs is over, they go out of the church; the prieſts walk before the new married couple, to the ſound of drums, hautboys and the like, the couple continuing to have the handkerchief, already mentioned, about their necks, and being followed by all their friends. At the bridgegroom's door, they meet with a great baſon full of ſherbet, with which they entertain the prieſts and all that are invited, whom they perfume with roſe-water, which they take out of a ſilver pot. Then they conduct the men and the women to two oppoſite apartments, in expectation of dinner, which being ready, they ſit about it, the women ſtill apart from the men. This dinner is placed upon a large carpet ſpread upon the ground, upon which they ſit after the manner of the *Orientals*. They firſt ſerve up conſerves, with all ſorts of liquors, and then the meats.

But we muſt not forget that when the bride and bridegroom have received the ſacrament at their marriage, they keep them ſeparated for three or four days; but when they have not, they conduct them that ſame night to the bridal chamber, where, having perfumed them with roſe-water, they leave them to themſelves.

The portion of Girls. Some days after the wedding, they bring the bride all that had been promiſed for her dower, which commonly conſiſts of apparel, of gold, ſilver and Jewels, in proportion to the means and condition of her Friends. Thereto they alſo add ſweatmeats and fruit, and the whole is brought in fine wooden pails, to the ſound of ſeveral inſtruments, as has already been obſerved with regard to the *Perſians*. This, however, is ſometimes deferred till the birth of the firſt child, and then they add a cradle and every thing elſe neceſſary for the infant. The couple alſo, ſometimes, go to church on horſeback, and return in the ſame manner; they even marry them in private upon certain occaſions, and in the night, in the preſence of a ſmall number of relations.

They marry in their childhood. But of all that is practiſed among the *Armenians*, nothing ſeemed more extraordinary to me, than their cuſtom of marrying their children in their moſt tender years, ſo that there are but few that have not been married at the age of ten or twelve years. They betroth them even when they are not above a year old, and frequently while they are as yet in their mother's womb. The reaſon they give for this is, that when girls are unmarried they are in danger of being taken away and locked up in the Seraglio, a miſfortune they hope to avert by this way of marriage, tho' there are not wanting inſtances to prove that this rule is not without exception.

Ceremonies at funerals. As I have already made mention of the ceremonies they obſerve at their funerals, in the account I formerly gave of my voyage upon the *Wolga*, I have here only to add, that the women are preſent upon theſe occaſions as well as the men, and that the prieſts and deacons ſing hymns and other funeral chaunts by the way. Four perſons carry the body upon a bier, and they have ſometimes eight or more to relieve each other by turns, when they have far to go. Theſe bearers are always of the common people. They put the body into the ground without any coffin, with the head raiſed a little up, and the prieſt throws three times earth upon it in the form of a croſs.

When they return from the funeral, the company goes to the houſe of the deceaſed, and are there entertained both at dinner and ſupper. The ſame ceremony is continued for forty days together, with regard to two prieſts and two deacons, who every morning go to the

1704. the grave of the deceafed, and read over it certain portions of the Gofpel, and fing fome verfes of the *Pfalms of David*: They are paid for this, and have commonly ten pence a time; fo that funerals are very expenfive mong thefe people.

The bad education of their children. Tho' the *Armenians* are very fuperftitious in exterior things, they are almoft quite carelefs of fuch as are more folid, and which they ought to have more at heart, and efpecially for what concerns the education of their children, who are oftentimes men before they can fay the *Lord's Prayer*; nor is this to be wondered at, feeing they are married fo very young, that they have frequently children before they themfelves are well out of the ftate of childhood. So that they are fo taken up with family affairs when they come to an age when they might be fit to learn fomething, that it is impoffible they fhould make a proper ufe of it. In a word, there is no likelihood that a mother, who has never been taught any thing herfelf, fhould be able to inftruct her children in any thing. And indeed the women are deftitute both of wit and genius, and entirely void of all charms; this is an obfervation I had made, and particularly at funerals, where there are fometimes two or three thoufand of them together, and who look like fo many aged matrons, paft all their bloom and beauty, however young they may be. This is fo much the ftranger as they have every day before their eyes the *Perfian* women, who are well fhaped, beautiful and agreeable, with a noble gate, and a charming air in every thing they do and every thing they have upon them, which appears even in the manner wherewith they adjuft the white veil that covers them. Nor are the *Turks* and the *Greeks* lefs taking in their air and all their motions; while, on the contrary, the *Armenian* women are quite difagreeable and difguft you. The linen with which they hide the mouth, contributes not a little to this, and makes their cheeks fwell; nor to fay that they are generally fmall of ftature, and clumfy of make. When you meet them in *Julfa*, they always turn the back upon you, a piece of rudenefs the *Mohammedans* are never guilty of, and they are to the full as unmannerly in company with their neareft relations, when they offer them a glafs of wine, which, turning themfelves to the wall, they never fail to tofs off, let the fize of the glafs be what it will. From the care they take to hide themfelves from the eyes of men, it might be imagined that they are invincibly chafte, and moft rigidly vertuous; but he that fhould conclude thus would be moft egregioufly miftaken; for there are a number of them who proftitute themfelves for money, and who, difguifing themfelves as men, go on horfeback with their mothers to *Ifpahan*, where they drive on a little trade, while the poor husband thinks them proof againft all temptation, only becaufe they never unveil themfelves; but men were not thus to be deceived in ancient times; for *Judah* took *Tamar* to be a proftitute, becaufe fhe was covered with a veil. 1704. *Incivility of the women.*

The men for their part, think of nothing but heaping up money, and how to make it turn to account when they have got it; their whole ftudy is fo bent upon this, that they are unmindful both of the other duties of life, and of what paffes in the world. And yet they cry up *Perfia* above all the other countries under the fun, and imagine it to be the fource of all arts and fciences, tho' they are as little able to judge of the matter as a blind man is of colours; for tho' they continually travel in *Europe*, and carry on a great trade there, they never give themfelves the trouble to examine into what is curious and remarkable there; nor, indeed, would they ftir a ftep out of their way, or be at the leaft expence whatfoever, to fee what is fine even in their own country. They know nothing but what they have heard from others, and I took notice that thofe who travelled with me, *Employments and Ignorance of the Armenians.*

1704. me, took no notice of what I inquired into with so much care. For this reason when I had a point of curiosity to satisfy, I always had recourse to strangers and the efficacy of my money, and had nothing to do with the *Armenians* but in the *Bazars*, where they trade; for all manner of things, out of the common course of their business, are above the reach of their understanding, which is altogether uncultivated. As soon as they have learned to read and to write, their masters, who live at *Julfa*, send them about, and when they go to, or come from *Ispahan*, they commonly ride double upon an horse, a mule, or an ass, which is to be seen in no other country.

When they trade with the *Persians*, upon their market days, in their little shops, in the city, where they sell cloth by the yard, they dare not drink wine, or any other strong liquor for fear they should be smelt; so that they groan under a more heavy slavery than even that of the *Greeks* under the *Turk*. And this slavery so presses them more and more every day by frequent additions of weight, that it is to be feared they may one day or other be stript of all their privileges, if they do not embrace the errors of *Mohammedism*. And this misfortune in their situation must, in part, be imputed to the disputes which rage among them, not only between several of the Bishops and the two Patriarchs, but even between the two Patriarchs themselves, who cannot agree together upon points of discipline and other particulars. Nor do the *Persians* neglect to make the most of these their differences, or to fish in these troubled waters, by summoning them to appear before them, and overwhelming them with impositions, two instances of which happened while I was in *Persia*; whereas if discord did not inflame and divide them against each other, they might do great things, since they are in no want of money, which commands all things in this country; but it is impossible to express the natural bent they have to disagree

Difficulty about divine service.

Dispute about divine service.

with each other; a judgment, however, may be formed of it by an example I was a witness to. Two brothers had had a dispute together upon some transaction in trade, which is in a manner the soul of an *Armenian*; they failed not to go to law together, and the eldest, who was in possession of what was disputed, and able to make large presents to the judges, failed not to gain them over to him; and being blind, he, one day, said he was heartily glad he had lost his sight, that he might not have the vexation of seeing his brother, and that he should not be sorry to be taken deaf as well as blind, that he might never hear of him again; a monstrous effect of hatred! His brother who had married in *France*, where he had left his wife, and whence he had brought two little girls he had by her, came every day to our director, to implore his protection against the injustice of his brother, who wanted to have him seized by the *Mohammedan* judges, as he had served him once before, and from whose clutches he could not be free but by a sound bastonading. 1704.

Implacable hatred of two brothers.

Many of the chief of them have already renounced their Saviour, and abjured the Christian Faith, for the sake of *Mohammedism*, and particularly with a view to enrich themselves, and to amass great fortunes.

Many Armenians forsake their Christian Faith.

One of these renegadoes, who had been upon the pilgrimage to *Mecca*, to visit the tomb of *Mohammed*, returned from thence while I was at *Ispahan*; most of the *Armenians* went out to meet and pay him a thousand compliments; whereas not a soul goes out to welcome the Christian pilgrims that come from *Jerusalem*; no body caresses them.

The authority of the *Mohammedans* is so great in this country, that two *Portuguese* Monks were obliged to embrace *Mohammedism*, the one in the year 1691, and the other in the year 1696. The first, whose name was *Emanuel*, assumed that of *Hussein Celiebek*, or the slave of *Hussein*, and the other, whose name was *Anthony*, was called *Ali-Celiebek*, or the slave of *Ali*.

Authority of the Mohammedans in Persia.

3 The

1704. The convent of these *Portuguese* fathers is in the city, and is a fine and a large building, well stored with apartments; but there is but one of them there now, namely father *Antonio Destiero*, whom we had occasion to mention formerly.

Portuguese convent.

Capuchins. There are also two *French* capuchins, whose convent is likewise in the city.

Carmelites. The *Carmelites* also have a fine convent there, and a large garden; but there is now only one of them, who is, by nation, a *Pole*. There are however two others, either *French* or *Danish*, who came from *Italy*, and live in a little house they have in *Julfa*; where four jesuits have built them a pretty chapel after the *Italian* manner, by the side of which they have a very fine house with a beautiful well-kept garden. Beside these there are three *Dominicans*, who have lately built them a new chapel.

Jesuits.

Dominicans.

There are several other *Europeans* at *Julfa*, most of them *French*, and three of *Geneva*, one of whom is a goldsmith, and the others are watchmakers; their names are *Siorde*, *de Finot* and *Batar*, and two physicians, the one a *Frenchman* called *Hermet*, and a *Greek* born at *Smyrna*. They are all of them, except *Finot*, married to *Armenians* of low birth, so that they have much ado to live; for there is no business here for strangers, as has already been observed. Moreover, the *Persians* have able physicians and tolerable mathematicians among themselves; but they know nothing of surgery, nor make any account of foreign surgeons. Nor indeed have they any great regard for those in the service of the King, whose allowances are paid them in bills upon other cities, which they are obliged sometimes to discount at a third, and sometimes at an half loss.

For the rest, it is impossible to expect an advantageous match with any woman here, seeing there is hardly one example of an *European* married into a rich or a considerable family. Nor are they sooner married than they conform to the customs and manners of their wives, whom they shew to none of their countrymen; but to say the truth of the matter, this change is chiefly seen among the *French*; for the *English* and *Dutch* adhere to the practices of their fathers. A signal example I saw of this in Mr. *Kastelein* our director, whose wife, a Lady of birth and merit, was esteemed by every body, and regretted by all. She appeared always, with her daughter of ten years old, at her husband's table, which was open to all the *Europeans*; but whenever he went to visit those in *Julfa*, their wives were not to be seen. And upon the whole they retain nothing of their country but the language.

1704.

It is not so with the strangers who reside at *Constantinople*, *Smyrna*, and other places under the dominion of the *Turk*, where the *Greek* women they marry, make no difficulty to submit to the customs and manners of their husbands, or to conform to their religion, in which they train up their children; whereas those of the *Armenian* women we have been speaking of, follow the religion of their mothers.

I am not ignorant that I might be here confronted with the example of the famous traveller *Pietro della Valle*, a *Roman* Gentleman, who married at *Bagdat*; but beside that love is apt to triumph over prudence, one single example can never be exhibited as a rule. For the rest, I hope I may be here allowed to stop my hand, with regard to this adventure and this marriage, which was transacted in the same convent where I lodged in my return from the *Indies*, that I may not be under a necessity of hurting the reputation of that illustrious *Roman*, who has left us such fine remains behind him.

Marriage of della Valle.

Nor have the *Armenians* alone been very ready to embrace *Mohammedism*, the *Georgians* have trod in the same path, the great among them as well as the small, as may be seen by daily examples;

Apostacy of the Georgians.

1704. amples; and indeed they are as little valued by the *Europeans* as the *Armenians* themſelves. There are, however, ſeveral of them who have gained great reputation for arms in *Perſia* and elſewhere.

Foreign Miniſters. Before I conclude this chapter, I ſhall by the way ſay a word concerning the public Miniſters who come to the Court of *Perſia* with letters from ſome of the Chriſtian Powers, and of whom there are ſeveral, who moſt aſſuredly deſerve not the ſtile of Miniſters, and who ought to be accounted no better than meſſengers, and letter carriers. And, to ſay the truth, they reflect but little honour on thoſe who ſend them, ſeeing the chief end of their journey is, that they may be exempt from paying the cuſtomary duties on the goods they bring along with them, a privilege granted to all who are charged with ſuch letters to the King of *Perſia*. They are even furniſhed with the carriages they want, wherever they go, and have likewiſe allowed them a certain ſum *per* day, in proportion to their number of followers, during all the time they are at this Court; but the ſum is ſo ſmall, that the meaneſt Miniſter might bluſh to receive it. Upon the whole, it cannot but be wondered at, that the Chriſtian Princes ſhould frequently employ *Armenians* to deliver ſuch letters to the King of *Perſia*; and that theſe people ſhould be ſo far able to impoſe upon them, as to make themſelves paſs for perſons of any conſideration; when nothing is more certain than that they have neither honour nor conſcience, and that without ſcruple they defraud and even ruin thoſe who are ſent with them to court. As for their religion, the facility with which they every day deny Chriſt to embrace the errors of *Mohammed*, makes it very evident that they are but little acquainted with the truths of their own religion. This is a neceſſary intimation to thoſe who are ſtrangers to this country. 1704.



CHAP. XLVII.

Dutchmen *who embrace* Mohammediſm. *The proclamation of the* Korog. *The Conſtancy of a poor* Armenian, *and his Death.*

ABOUT the end of this month of *May*, I went out of town with Mr. *Bakker*, our director's deputy, in queſt of game along the river, and particularly of a certain bird called *Morgh-ſacka*, or the *Water Carrier*, which had been often obſerved in that neighbourhood. We perceived him at a diſtance in the air, but could not get near him, which I was very ſorry for, having never ſeen the like, tho' he is often in the parts near the *Wolga*, *Aſtracan*, and the *Caſpian-Sea*. This bird is of an extraordinary ſize, and has a great pouch, filled with water, which, as they ſay, he diſtributes to other birds. In ſhort, finding we had no ſport this way, we threw nets into the water, and took a large quantity of fiſh, which we preſented to our director; and in the evening returned to town, where, the next day, there was a great hurricane.

Upon the *firſt day of June* there arrived at *Iſpahan* three *Dutchmen*, who had run away from our *India* company's ſhip at *Gamron*, and embraced *Mohammediſm*, in hopes to make their fortune; but they found they had taken the wrong ſtep to that end, and were reduced to the utmoſt miſery, no body having af- *Apoſtacy of ſome* Dutchmen.

1703. forded them the least assistance on the road. Nor, were they better used in this city, heaven, as it should seem, resolving to punish them for their apostacy. In this distress, they came and presented themselves at the gate of our director's house; but he sent them word to be gone, and apply themselves to those whose faith they had newly embraced; they, however, returned soon after, and intreated him to take them again into the company's service, assuring him they were in the deepest despair for the fault they had committed, and that they most earnestly desired to be received again into the bosom of the Christian Church. He told them it was not in his power to grant their request; that they were to throw themselves upon the company's mercy, and return to *Gamron*, where, according to the Laws, they had deserved death, and that, upon such condition, he would write to the director of that place, to desire him to send them back again to the *Indies*. They accordingly submitted themselves to this, declaring they had much rather expose themselves to the hazard of being put to death than perish in the sin they had been guilty of. Upon this condition they were received again, and cloathed; for which they seemed to be sincerely thankful, and soon after returned joyfully to *Gamron*, from whence they were sent to the *Indies*, where they obtained a pardon for their crime and apostacy.

Upon the *fifth of this month*, as I was busy in drawing a prospect on the river of the *Chiaer-baeg*, or the fine alley of *Ispahan*, I was interrupted by a confus'd noise, and upon listening to it, I found it was

Korog.

the *Korog*. This is a cry to warn all people that the King is coming with his concubines, and that every person is to get out of the way upon pain of most rigorous punishment. I accordingly retired among the rest, as fast as I could, and the Prince went by soon afterward. He was preceded by a man on horseback who rode full speed, to disperse such as had not been able to get out of the way soon enough; and he presently came up with me, and shewed me the way I was to go. I obeyed him instantly, and took a long circuit to return to the city, where all the avenues to the streets through which he was to pass, were lined with guards, to keep people from going that way, so that I had much ado to get to my lodging. The next day I went to the same place, and found all the ways guarded as the day before, and some avenues of the *Chiaer-baeg* spread with certain cloths. When a man, upon these occasions, happens to be surprised, he must get out of the way with the utmost diligence; but they commonly give warning to every one to keep out of the way and even to quit his house, whether by night or day, as long as the *Korog* lasts; and I have been often obliged to leave my *Caravanserai* upon that account.

Gunners from the Indies.

Soon after this, there arrived two gunners from the *Indies*, whence Mr. *Kastelin* had sent for them to serve the King. This Prince being informed of their arrival, acquainted them he would have but one of them, and him they did not keep long, and while they did, allowed him so small a salary that it is a shame to mention it. Indeed this gunner, who was cloathed before he was presented, was only to shoot at a mark with some small pieces of cannon, a diversion the King never was present at; but what is remarkable, they were as long in preparing what was necessary for this trifling exercise, as we should be in building a fortress. And indeed they soon dismissed this gunner, who to say the truth, was not of a turn to take with this people, who are not to be satisfied but by great assiduity, and the most extraordinary application.

Eclipse of the moon.

Upon the *seventeenth* of this month there was a great eclipse of the moon, which appeared red, and was almost entirely darkned. Upon the *twenty-first* there were some clouds in the sky, after a series of clear weather

1704. weather, during which there were none at all to be seen; they were of a fine blue, without any dusk, a sight common enough in this country. In the beginning of *July* there arose high winds, which were succeeded by a great heat.

Upon the third of this month they opened the shops, which had been shut up for five or six days together, for a time of mourning they observe at this season, and which, if I am not mistaken, they call *Waghme*. At this time those who have any differences between them, endeavour at a reconciliation, and to renew their former friendships, provided their interest have no share in the case, for then their consciences are not so mighty tender.

Quarrel between some English *and* Persians.

At this time there happened a dispute between some of the *English* Agent's servants and certain *Persians*, and from words they fell to blows. The *Persians* in a rage, and breathing nothing but vengeance, maliciously gave out that one of their countrymen had been killed by an *Armenian* in the service of that Minister, upon which all the shops in the district where he lived were shut up. The people, fired with the notion of this pretended murder, ran with their complaints to the high Bailiff who was a *Georgian*, and had been a Christian. This man, without any orders from his superiors, summoned the Agent's interpreter, who was an *Armenian*, and made him sign a paper, by which he obliged himself either to produce the murderer, or pay a certain sum of money in default thereof. This he did without any scruple, though in his conscience he knew there had been no murder, and even accused his countryman; which was the easier for him to do, as his master, who by his authority might have warded off the blow, was sick in his bed. In the mean time they cried aloud for vengeance for the death of a low rascal of a *Persian*, who had been only cudgelled for his great insolence; and they treated all the *Franks*, (so they call the *Europeans)* as murderers, and carried their complaints to the Court. Not satisfied with this, they in a rage carried the effigie of a dead body to the *Chiaer-baeg*, to inflame the minds of the populace; and even obliged the first Minister to demand the pretended murderer from the *English* Agent, who had sheltered him. This Minister, at the same time, had an order to discharge all his *Mohammedan* servants; upon which the *English* demanded a respite of eight days, which was granted them. The poor innocent *Armenian* had in the mean time concealed himself in *Julfa*, where he was betrayed by the interpreter, we have already mentioned, who produced him to the officers of justice, who carried him to prison; but the inraged and intoxicated multitude, not at all appeased by this, demanded him, and they were forced to deliver him into their hands. They then consulted what they should do with him, and the most moderate of them were of opinion they should release him, and would have made a present of him to the King; but the rest were violently against this, and laying their hands on their sabres, dragged him away, in defiance of law or justice. They were the more exasperated against him, as they had in vain endeavoured to seduce him over to *Mohammedism*, with a promise of life and liberty in that case, and of a considerable sum of money beside, and to procure him an advantageous marriage; but tho' he had immediate death before his eyes, he rejected all their offers with an unspeakable fortitude and heroic constancy. He even answered some *Armenians* who had themselves apostatised, and who exhorted him only to feign a compliance, saying, *He would never deny his Saviour and his God*; whereupon the *Persians* inflamed with frenzy and rage, fell upon him and cruelly deprived him of life. They then dragged him to the great square of the palace, where many of them thought they could never enough insult his body, or vent a sufficient number of imprecations

Treachery of an interpreter.

Constancy of an Armenian *and his cruel death.*

1704. tions enough upon him; they even tore out his bowels and threw them into the lay-ſtall; nor could even the women forbear to treat him with barbarity. Thus died this Chriſtian heroe, this faithful ſervant, who had never forſaken his maſter during the whole courſe of his illneſs, but had conſtantly and diligently tended him night and day. His name was *Gregory Aſſaſoer*, and he was but twenty years of age; a man of extraordinary fortitude and of an heroic courage, as appears by his death, ſo worthy to be admired by all Chriſtians. The proper officers ordered his body to be carried to *Julfa*, where he was buried in the church of St. *Savior*, the fineſt of all in that diſtrict; and an *Armenian*, a merchant, at his own expence, erected a tomb over him, that he might to generations to come tranſmit the memory of ſo glorious a death, and at the ſame time exhibit a teſtimony of the love and friendſhip he bore him.

It is eaſy to conceive what a terror this tragical and barbarous bloodſhed infuſed into all the ſtrangers at *Iſpahan*, who were ſome days before they dared to appear abroad, for fear of expoſing themſelves to the fury of a mercileſs multitude, who were drunk with the impunity of their crime. For the reſt, it muſt fairly be owned that, before this accident, they always paid a great regard to the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*. As at this time we expected ſome of the company's goods from *Gamron*, people were ſent to meet them according to cuſtom, and to carry them to our warehouſes. And this is done to prevent the *Perſians* from inſulting thoſe who brought them, and turning them out of the way, which, as it uſually happened, they failed not to do this time. Our people finding they were attacked and inſulted by theſe infidels, and their bales thrown down, made head againſt them, and it happened that the ſon of the King's firſt phyſician, who was preſent, received ſome blows of a cudgel. The *Perſians*, who proved to be the weakeſt, upon this 1703. occaſion, had recourſe to complaints, and demanded ſatisfaction for the injury they pretended to have received; and our director, to whom they addreſſed themſelves for this purpoſe, promiſed to ſatisfy them after he had examined into the matter; upon which they withdrew, but returned to the charge the next day; when, in their preſence, he cauſed one of his ſervants to be ſeized upon being found guilty, and ordered him a baſtinado upon the ſoles of his feet; but they had hardly begun to inflict that puniſhment upon him, before his accuſers interceded for him, and declared they were ſatisfied; a proceeding very different from what they had exerted ſome days before againſt the ſervant of the *Engliſh* Agent, who had been only guilty of cudgelling a low raſcal, which neverthleſs coſt the poor man his life.

For the reſt, this nation is ſo very vindictive and nice, that all the *European* Miniſters who are here to watch over the concerns of the powers that ſend them, ought to take particular care to maintain the dignity of their character, and never to ſuffer themſelves to be inſulted with impunity. Never was there any man who acquitted himſelf better of this duty than Mr. *Hooghkame*, with whom I had formerly travelled to *Conſtantinople*. He was afterward ſent to *Perſia* by the *India* company, and there gained the eſteem of every body. And yet he was once engaged in a troubleſome affair with one of the principal Lords of the Court, whoſe ſervants had ſome diſpute with his; and coming to blows, and the *Perſian* laying hand on his ſabre, this Miniſter ſnatched out a piſtol and declared to him, That if he dared to draw his ſword he would ſhoot him through the head; upon which the *Perſian* commanded his people to be quiet and withdrew. And it was prudently done of him, ſeeing he was the weakeſt; for the Miniſter was attended by ſome *European* ſoldiers,

1704. ſoldiers, againſt whom they would have been put to it to defend themſelves. Beſide all this, they ſupported the dignity of his character by a great magnificence, and by a conſtancy proof againſt all obſtacles, articles abſolutely neceſſary in ſo haughty and diſdainful a nation. And indeed they paid ſuch regard to him that they never failed to make room for him wherever he appeared; and even the King and the court eſteemed him as much as the *Europeans*, and they ſtill honour his memory. 1704.

CHAP. XLVIII.

Death of the Engliſh *Agent. His Funeral. Preparations for the marriage of the little Princeſs, his Majeſty's daughter. Mourning of the* Armenians. *Ancient Fortreſs. Mountain of* Sagte-Ruſtan.

Perſian *feaſt.* THE *Perſians* at this time ſolemnized the feaſt of *Baba-ſoeds-ja-adier*, that is, *of the invincible father of the divine ſervice*, a title they confer upon one of their ſaints, who was put to death by *Omar*. A little after this, there was another *Korog* in the neighbourhood of the royal palace, with orders for all who lived within the limits of it to go out of their houſes, and the *Caravanſera's*. The ſame thing happened again two days afterward, the King having a mind to recreate himſelf with his concubines without the walls of the palace. The muſic of this was heard in the evening and plaid all night, and the next day to the ſetting of the ſun, becauſe the feſtival of *Mohammed* was to be celebrated upon the *twentieth*.

Death of the Engliſh *Agent.* Upon the *twenty-firſt*, Mr. *Owen*, the *Engliſh* company's Agent, died, in the fortieth year of his age. He was a man of worth and honour, and very much eſteemed by every body. The next day, we paid him the laſt honours, and he was carried to the place where they bury all the Chriſtians, in the manner following.

Our director's deputy (the director himſelf was ill of the gout) went at break of day to the houſe of the deceaſed, with all our director's family, and fourteen horſes, among which there were two which we led, covered with black cloth, and preceded by a trumpet and thirteen runners. Firſt, before the body appeared the deceaſed's maſter of the horſe, with the interpreter and ſome others, followed by three led horſes covered with black cloth, and with plumes of white feathers upon their heads; then fourteen perſons on horſeback, attended by ten or twelve ſervants on foot, and a trumpet before the led horſes, after which appeared thoſe of our director, and then the body, covered with white ſilk, and over that with a black velvet pall. It was upon a bier, and carried by four perſons, who were, from time to time, relieved, becauſe of the length of the way.

The deceaſed's deputy followed next after the body, attended by ours, and all the *Dutch*, of the number of which I was; and likewiſe by father *Antonio Deſtiero*, the Reſident for the Crown of *Portugal*, and the *Engliſh Armenian* merchants of *Julfa*. In this order we proceeded through the *Chiaer-baeg*, each with a ſcarf of white ſilk over the ſhoulder, knot- *His funeral.*

1704. ted at bottom, and hanging down to the ground, which had been given at the house of the deceased, with another scarf of white gause about the hat, and which those who had no hats wore about their middle. The procession consisted of forty persons on horseback, and thirty servants on foot. The *French* waited for us at the burial ground with some monks, and the body was committed to the earth at seven of the clock; when the *English* company's deputy read over the funeral service, after the manner of his country, and then every one taking an handful of earth threw it into the grave, which was afterward filled up by the diggers. This done we returned in the same order we came, and were entertained at dinner at the deceased's house, where they presented scarves like ours to those who came back with us. They sent one also to our director, and having been very well entertained every body withdrew.

Strange marriage. Some days after this, I saw all the bazars adorned with little bands of paper of all sorts of colours, tinsel, many small figures, and other little trifles. In the evening they illuminated all the shops with little lamps, and the burghers in several places appeared under arms. This was upon account of the marriage of a young Princess, the King's daughter, who was but three years old, with the grandson of his Majesty's aunt, who was but five years old, and these rejoicings were upon the conducting this young Princess to the palace of this Lady, where she was to be brought up. This is perhaps the only example of a marriage of the kind, between such young children, among the *Persians*, tho' the same be common enough among the *Armenians*. This Princess his Majesty's aunt, and sister to the King his father, is called *Zynab-Beggum*, and had been married to the son of *Soltan Galliesa*, a confident of *Abbas* the second's.

Feast of the cross. Upon the *twenty second of August*, I went to *Julfa*, where I staid till the *twenty sixth*, a day upon which 1704. the *Armenians* celebrate the feast of *Soerpgaets*, or of the cross, in commemoration of the cross of Christ, discovered upon mount *Calvary* by saint *Helen*, the mother of *Constantine* the Emperor.

In order to this, their wives go two or three hours before day to the burying ground, where they interr the Christians, and thither they carry wood, coal, tapers, and incense. When they are got to this place they kindle fires by the tombs of their relations or friends, and upon those tombs they place burning tapers, and continually throw incense into the fire, making great lamentations, and addressing themselves to the dead that rest there, with more or less vehemence, according as they are more or less affected with sorrow. They even throw themselves upon these tombs, which they embrace, and bathe them with their tears; and persons of the better sort light up even five or six large tapers, and cry and bellow enough to frighten one. As I was desirous to be present at this solemnity, I went to the burying-ground two hours before it was day, with the son of our interpreter, with whom I lodged. I was surprised at the sight of these tombs, and of many objects that offered themselves to my sight; and when I was at some distance, the whole appeared to me like the ruins of a town that had been burnt, and where those who had escaped the flames, were come in the dark night with lights to look for their friends and relations, and the fragments of their wealth, at the same time weeping and bewailing their hard fate. Tho' the husbands stay at home while their wives are performing this service abroad, there are some men however to be seen, and priests who pray for those who pay them for it; some give them five pence, others ten, and the better sort twenty; and being dressed in black they make an odd kind of a figure among such numbers of women in white. The number of women who thus resort



DEUIL DES FEMM







1704. to these tombs commonly amounts to three thousand, and the number of little fires they light up, and the incense they continually feed them with, raises a smoke which spreads quite to *Ispahan*. Tho' this solemnity was in the night, I nevertheless traced out a representation of it in the best manner I could, taking my stand by the tomb of our director's wife, with my face turned to the city; you have it in number 102. It lasted till about two in the morning. As I returned, I found the ways crowded with people, and met with several women who were going back again to the tombs. When the sun was up, the common people resorted to the same place, but it was only to smoke and divert themselves.

Upon the *last day of the month* I went in the evening to our director's, in order to go that night with his deputy to the mountain of *Koesoffa*, where there are the ruins of an ancient fortress. We set out at four in the morning, and at seven reached a part of this same mountain, where we were obliged to alight, because our horses could carry us no farther. My companion, who was no very good walker, left me there, and went to wait for me at the Christian burying ground. At eight of the clock I went up the mountain, attended by a huntsman and a servant, provided with fire-arms, and at ten we came to an old gateway, by the side of which were the ruins of a wall, which formerly extended to the northward quite to the foot of the mountain in the place where it is steepest; this gate was much more worn away on the left hand than the right, you have it represented in number 103. A quarter of a league from hence we met with the remains of another building, destroyed to the very foundations, tho' they pretend it to have been a stable. From thence are discovered several fragments of an old wall, which extended far to the southward upon the top of the hill; from east to west, and to the northward toward the city, 1704. which is not far off. It might even have passed for a fortress without the assistance of art, being very steep from top to bottom, and indeed it never had any wall on that side. About eleven of the clock we with great difficulty got to the top of the mountain, where you have the ruins of a building, which has been twenty eight paces in length, tho' but little or nothing of it be now left. The wall of it was full four foot thick, and is still pretty lofty in some places, where withinside are the remains of arcades. The top of this mountain also is but twenty eight paces broad from north to south, and sixty four in length from east to west, and goes sloping away to the eastward. For the rest, it extends in length to the southward, from whence you may still see the ancient walls of the fortress which was there formerly, as they appear to the northward, in number 104. I took a draught of all this with all the care I could, because they will have it that *Darius* was in this fortress when *Alexander* attacked his army the second time in the plain. I went down thither about noon, and there to the southward drew the outward ruins that remain of this building, where are still to be seen two half rounds in the form of towers. Upon the rock also you see the place where this fortress was begun, as may visibly be seen in number 105. The huntsman, who was my guide, would have gone down on the north side, because it was the shortest way, and did all he could to persuade me to follow him; but the rock seemed to me to be so much upon the precipice, that I had not the courage to venture my self, for fear of breaking my bones. However I could not prevent the other servant from following him, which he had soon cause to repent him of; for I had scarce lost sight of them, when I heard the last call out to me to take care how I came down after them. He had stopped, not being able to follow

1704. follow his companion, and could now neither get up nor down. I encouraged him to endeavour to get up again by laying faſt hold on the rock; for he had now no other chance, and he had the good luck to ſucceed, while the other went down like a cat. For my part I was obliged to take a round-about ſweep of two leagues to the eaſtward, between the mountains, ſo that it was paſt three of the clock when I reached the Chriſtian burying-ground, where my friend waited for us with our horſes. After I had reſted and refreſhed my ſelf a little, we returned back to the city, with deſign, the next day, to viſit the reſt of the antiquities near us, being determined to go from hence toward the latter end of this month.

Tagte-Ruſtan. We went early in the morning to the mountain of *Tagte-Ruſtan*, a league and a half from the city, and 1704. upon the top of it we met with the ruins of a certain building, founded by a warrior, of whom they relate wonders. Beneath this mountain there is a grot, in which there are two or three ſprings, whoſe water continually drops from the top of the rock. Every year, in the beginning of the month of *April*, a great number of the *Indians*, called *Banians*, repair hither to celebrate a feſtival, in honour of a certain hermit, who for a long time took up his abode here; and indeed here is commonly one of their derviſes or ſaints. This grot is full of ſlips of ſtuffs of all colours, brought hither by perſons afflicted by illneſs, who come hither for relief, after the manner of the orientals, as we have already obſerved. This grot is repreſented in number 106.

Half



103. RUINES DES FORTERESSES.

105. RUINES DES FORTERESSES.

SUR LES MONTAGNES KOESOFFA. 104.



GROT DE LA MONTAGNE TAGTE RUSTAN. 106.



1704. Half a league from hence, on the side toward the city, is a mountain which affords the very hard blue stones, with which they build their tombs. We saw several of them thrown from the top of this mountain into the plain without breaking; but the stones of larger size they roll down the sides which are not so steep.

From hence you have a fine prospect to the westward, between the mountains and the plain, where you have a sight of beautiful villages and a great number of gardens. I have here exhibited the representation of it, with the mountain, upon the top of which is the house of *Rustan*. Having thus satisfied my curiosity I returned back to the city. 1704.

TAGTE-RUSTAN.



CHAP. XLIX.

Famous Plantations, or fine walks belonging to the King. The India *Company's House. A fine Caravansera.* Indians *or* Banians. *The Author prepares for his Departure to* Persepolis.

Famous plantation. SOME days after, I went with the same friend to see a fine plantation of the present King's ordering, three leagues to the westward of *Ispahan*. We went by the gardens of the suburbs, and left

1704. *Julfa* on the left hand. Having crossed the plain, we, at five of the clock, arrived at the entrance into these fine walks. The trees had hardly budded at this entrance, because they had not been able to conduct water enough to them; but we found them farther advanced as we went on; and at a small league from the entrance, we came to a very low mosch on the right-hand side of the way, and a

bath near it. They are to have four 1704.
gates to this fine plantation, which divides itself in the middle into four walks, and forms a round open on all sides, with a most charming perspective. The mountains are two leagues to the southward of it, and a league to the northward, where they have already begun the wall which is to inclose this pleasant place. It was about seven of the clock when we got to the o-



NAED-SJAF-ABAAT.

ther

MAISON DE LA COMPAGNIE. 107

JARDIN DE LA COMPAGNIE. 108

1704. ther end of it; for this plantation is two leagues in length, and proportionable in breadth, and the walks of it are bordered with ſena's, between which they have planted willows and other trees, which are to be plucked up as the ſena's ſpread. On all ſides you have alſo roſe buſhes, which produce a moſt charming effect in the ſeaſon. All the lands, at the diſtance of half a league round, belong to his Majeſty, and the reſt to the public, at leaſt what is there planted and ſown; for the King is proprietor, and they pay him ſo much a year. The old walk, planted in the reign of King *Abbas*, is at the end of this new plantation; and you enter it by a large gate, where this walk has but half the breadth it is of at the other end; and it extends a good half league in length. It is alſo planted with ſena's, at the diſtance of eight paces from each other, whoſe branches meet at top, and whoſe roots are watered by a ſmall gutter or canal. Upon the ſides of this walk are fine large gardens walled in, and at the end a royal houſe, which makes no great figure. About eight of the clock we went into the garden of a public houſe, where we feaſted ourſelves, and there my friend heard that Mr. *Oets*, who was to ſucceed him in quality of our director's deputy, was arrived from the *Indies* at *Iſpahan*. From hence we went to the King's houſe, which is not worth ſeeing, and from thence to the old

Second plantation. plantation, called *Chiaer-baeg Naedſhaf-Abaet*; and having paſſed thro' the village of that name, we met with another walk, almoſt all planted with willows, and which is nearly a league and an half in length, and extends to the weſtward. There is another again on the left-hand, whence you ſee the mountains about a league off, to the right and left, and on the weſt a plain which reaches beyond the ſight. The plate above repreſents this old plantation. About three leagues from hence there is a hill which the King has ſurrounded with a wall that incloſes a great number 1704. of deer, wild aſſes, rams, and other creatures peculiar to the mountains in theſe parts. The gardens here are full of fruit trees, and vines whoſe grapes, as well black as white, are ſent to *Iſpahan* to be preſſed into wine, which they were very buſy about when I was there. To the right and left of the old plantation, are five great gardens, which annually bring in to the King the ſum of twenty-five *Tomans*, and two ſmaller, in proportion. From hence, at one in the afternoon, we went toward the mountains to the ſouthward in order to ſee ſome villages; but we were obliged to go two leagues about, to paſs over the bridge of *Poelie-vergan*, where the country was covered with rice, ready to be cut; and here we ſaw great plains full of water-melons. The King has here another houſe, in the village of *Koetſhel*, upon the river of *Iſpahan*, which in this place is very narrow. There is nothing remarkable in this houſe tho' the King is often there. We alſo ſaw a lake full of all ſorts of ducks and other game, of moſt exquiſite beauty; near the village of *Kariskan*. None are permitted either to ſhoot, or frighten them away. From thence we returned to the city, where we arrived about eight at night.

Let us ſay a word of our *India* *The company's houſe at Iſpahan.* company's houſe, the reſidence of our director, and the other officers belonging to the company. It is ſurrounded with a high wall of earth, the gate of which is large and lofty, and from thence you proceed between two walls, to the ſtables, but the horſes are often tied to racks without. You leave the ſtables and garden on the left hand, to go to the houſe itſelf, in the midſt of the court of which is a canal which runs on the ſide of the place, where they receive ſtrangers; behind which is a fine apartment, ſpread with carpets and full of cuſhions to ſit and reſt upon, after the manner of the country. On one ſide are the apart-

1704. ments and office of the director's deputy, and other of the company's servants. From thence you go to the part belonging to the director himself, passing through a small passage to it, and it consists of three or four apartments, without reckoning the hall, where they dine, which looks upon this part; this house is represented in number 107. It has a very agreeable garden, in the midst of which is a *Talael* of wood, and a fine fountain with jets of water which, from thence, flows into a canal, and serves to water the garden, by the means of a machine, which conveys it to every part. Here also are great numbers of sena's and fruit trees, flowers and plants, as appears by number 108. And I often amused myself in this place with catching of butterflies, flies, and other insects, I had a mind to preserve. The bees here are of an extraordinary size, and sting very violently.

In the canal of this garden I took notice of small fish, whose hinder part resembles that of a frog. There are of the same in *Turkey*, in a lake about a league from *Smyrna*; which lake is half a league in breadth, and two leagues in circumference; it is upon an eminence, and its water is saltpetrous and foul. It is nevertheless full of fish, and especially of this sort, which they sometimes catch with a line, but very seldom. I did my utmost to take some of them, but to no purpose. They are said to be larger than those I saw in *Persia*.

It now remains that I speak of the *Caravanseras* or public-houses at *Ispahan*, and I shall begin with the description and representation of that of *Jedde*, which belongs to the Queen-mother of the King, near the *Meydoen* or great square, where I lodged all the time I was at *Ispahan*. The gate which opens into this square, is a large vaulted portal, under which are small shops kept by *Armenians*, and other strangers who sell cloth by retail. There is one of the same structure on the other side where they sell glasses. In the middle of the court of this building is a wooden barrack full of such sort of shops, and a little beyond it troughs for horses to drink at. This caravansera is surrounded with warehouses full of goods, which belong to the *Armenians* and other merchants, who come hither every day from *Julfa* to negociate their trade. Above these warehouses there is a large gallery full of chambers, with a great stair case to go up to them. 1704.

Among the foreign merchants who take up their abode here, there is a good number of *Indians* of several sorts, whom they there call *Banians*. The chief of them are possessed of great wealth, and yet work like slaves to heap up immense and useless riches, without any regard to honour or decency, insomuch that the most wealthy of them shall not think much to run up and down tho' it were but to earn a poor penny. There are some of them, and the most considerable too, who are brokers, and in that quality serve the *English* and *Dutch East-India* companies, whose favour and good graces they by all means endeavour to obtain, that they may enjoy their protection and get by them. Upon the whole, they are very much trusted, and it is no uncommon thing for them to have the cash of these two companies in their hands. Nor is there a less confidence reposed in the *Armenians*, who have also always a kind of bank in their possession, because money is there sure, and you may draw it out as you please, and in what specie you think proper. The whole trade of *Gamron* in like manner passes through their hands by bills of exchange. When I was at *Samashi*, the *Banians* there asked me, by the means of some *Armenians*, if I had no letters for our director at *Ispahan*, and if I did not want money, offering, in that case, to lend me what I would. I was surprized at this great civility to a stranger whom they knew nothing of, and who was not even recom- Indians or Banians.





KARWANSERA JEDDEE.



mended to them; but they told me this was done with a view to oblige the officers of the *India* company, and to inſinuate themſelves into their good graces.

As ſeveral authors have before me treated of the belief of this people, and of the worſhip they pay to idols, I ſhall only add, that they abſtain from taking away the life of any thing whatſoever, not excepting lice and fleas, and that they think they do a meritorious action when they prevent their being deſtroyed. I have even obſerved that they went away from me with an air of chagrin, when they ſaw me buſy in catching of certain inſects in a garden, well knowing what I intended to do with them.

Nor do the *Turks*, the *Perſians*, or even the *Armenians* care to kill a louſe or a flea, they only throw them upon the ground, as I have frequently obſerved. There are alſo ſeveral *Armenians* who abſtain from the fleſh of certain animals, and particularly will not taſte of an hare, becauſe they reckon it unclean; but they are not all ſo ſuperſtitious.

Dreſs of the Banians.

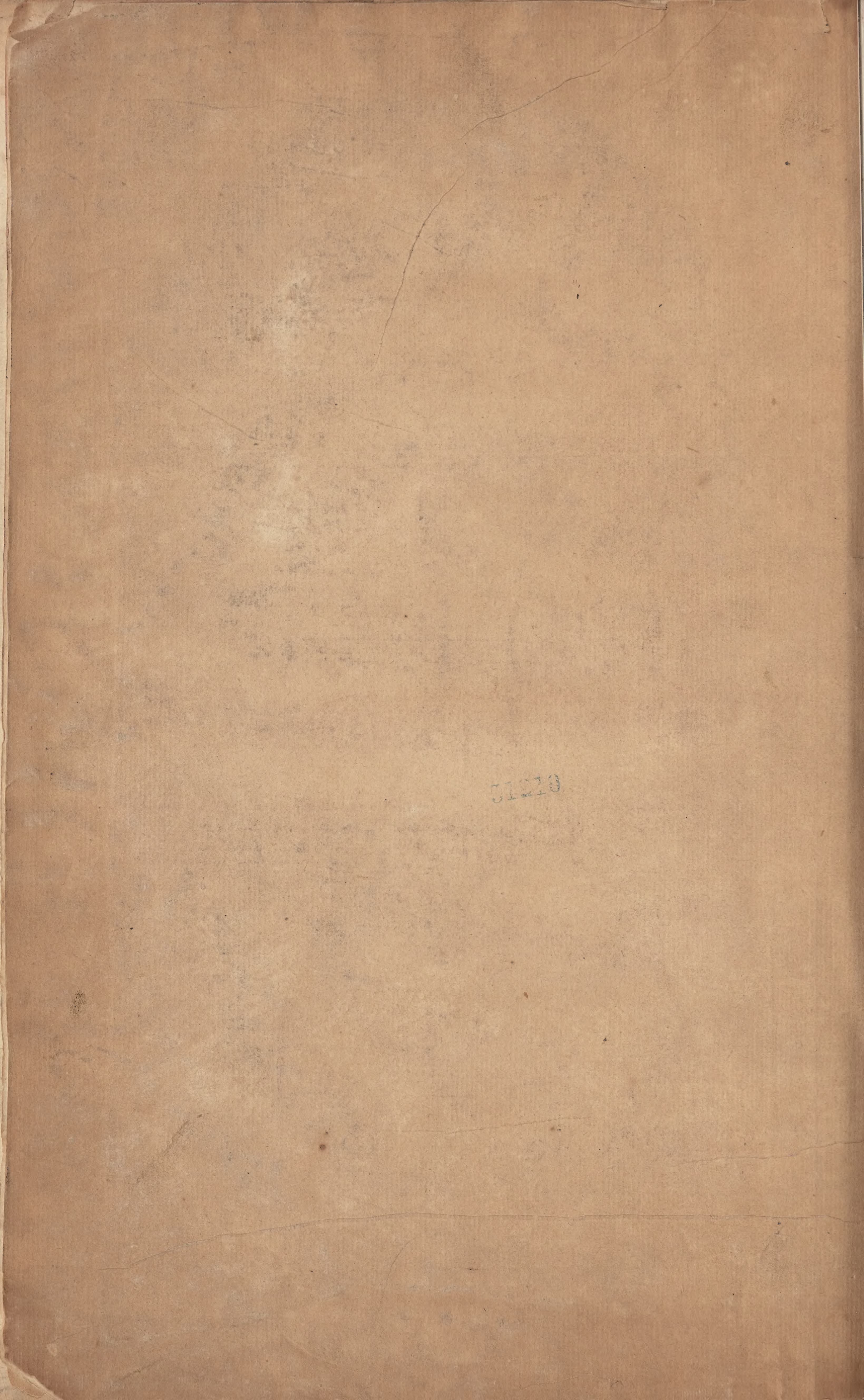
As the dreſs of the *Banians* has ſomething remarkable in it, I have drawn the habit of the chief of our *Indian* brokers, who was ſo obliging as to dreſs himſelf after the manner of his country for that purpoſe; you ſee him repreſented in number 109. They have no regard to the colour of their dreſs, but their turban is commonly white, to which they faſten little red bands or fillets, which fall upon the forehead and come down to the noſe; they are

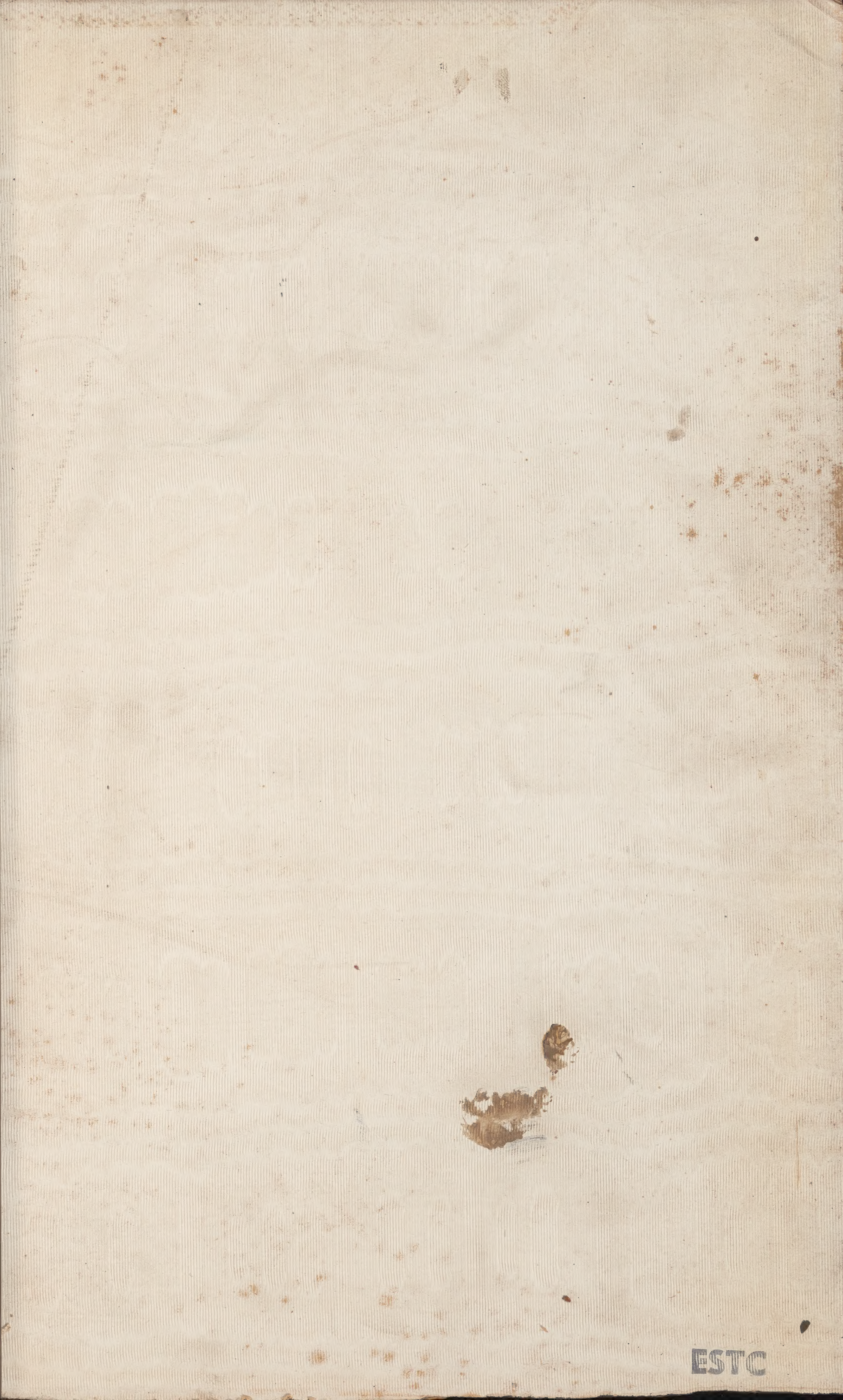
1704 commonly of ſandal wood, and ſerve them as an ornament of a kind with the patches worn by our Ladies. Moſt of them are of a ſallow complexion, their ſtature is fine. At their leiſure hours they divert themſelves and entertain each other with fruits, ſweet-meats, and other dainties, and upon theſe occaſions, they often invite the Chriſtians of their acquaintance to be of the company, and ſend alſo for dancing girls and jugglers to amuſe their gueſts.

Upon the *eighteenth* of this month, there came ſome couriers from *Gamron*, who informed us there were as yet no ſhips arrived from *Batavia*. This advice prevented our director from ſetting out for that place as he had deſigned, but five or ſix days afterward he ſent his deputy, Mr. *Bakker*, thither. I began alſo to prepare for my departure; and having received and paid ſome viſits among the *Engliſh*, I went to take leave of all my friends in the city and at *Julfa*, not forgetting Mr. *Sahid*, our interpreter, to whom I was indebted for a thouſand obligations. He had done me conſiderable ſervices, and had permitted me to draw all the curioſities in his fine gardens, by furnſhing me with all the lights neceſſary to attain that end. And as he was a perfect maſter of the *Perſian* tongue, he took the trouble of inſtructing me in all the nicety of its orthography, with regard to which moſt of our travellers are guilty of very extraordinay miſtakes. Hence it is that I write the word King in *Perſian*, *Sjae*, and not *Schach*, *Sciah*, or *Siah*; *Zje-raes*, inſtead *Schieras*; *Mey-doen* inſtead of *Meidan*, which is a *Turkiſh* word; *Mu-zjit*, or *Ma-zjit* in ſpeaking of their moſchs, and ſo with regard to other words, wherein, as to orthography, I differ from other travellers; in which I have followed the inſtructions of Mr. *Sahid*, and in which he was perfectly well skilled, tho' an *Armenian* by Nation. He alſo ſpoke *French* and *Dutch* perfectly well; for his father had lived a long time 1704 in *France*, and he himſelf had been brought up in the ſervice of our company. He had a perfect knowledge of the cuſtoms and manners of the country, and as he was pretty well advanced in years, he was alſo well verſed in the affairs and intrigues of the court. Theſe fine accompliſhments had gained him the friendſhip and eſteem of every body; nor did he fail to beſtow a good education on his ſon, who, as well as himſelf, was interpreter to our company, and in like manner underſtood *French* and *Dutch*, tho' he was but twenty three years of age.

As I had formed a reſolution to ſet out with Mr. *Bakker*, of *Fluſhing*, the firſt factor of *Gamron*, in order to go to *Perſepolis*, where I deſigned to make ſome ſtay, to examine with care into thoſe famous antiquities, and to take a draught of them, I went upon the *twenty-fourth*, to Mr. *Kaſtelein*, our director, who was ſo good as to lend me an horſe for my journey, and a courier to attend me. He was alſo ſo kind as to furniſh me with all the proviſions I might ſtand in need of, and loaded me with favours, as he had during all the time I was at *Iſpahan*, where he had always honoured me with a ſeat at his table from my firſt arrival. He even had often preſſed me to come and lodge with him, but I always excuſed myſelf, that I might be the more at liberty, and do ſeveral things I employed myſelf in morning and night. Beſide this, he had always been ſo obliging as to provide me with an horſe and an interpreter to attend me whereſoever I went. Nor am I leſs indebted to him for a great inſight into the *Perſian* affairs; for he had lived in *Perſia* one and twenty years, during which he had made himſelf a perfect maſter of the affairs and language of the country, and intrigues of the court; nor ſhall I, as long as I live, fail to make the moſt profound acknowledgments for his many favours.

The End of the Firſt Volume.


31210


ESTC

